RECORD OF CHANGES

DIRECTIVE NO. 7110.65L

CHANGE TO BASIC	SUPPLEMENTS			OPTIONAL	CHANGE TO BASIC	SUPPLEMENTS			OPTIONAL

FAA Form 1320-5 (6-80) USE PREVIOUS EDITION

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL
7110.65L
FOREWORD

This order prescribes air traffic control procedures and phraseology for use by personnel providing air traffic control services. Controllers are required to be familiar with the provisions of this order that pertain to their operational responsibilities and to exercise their best judgment if they encounter situations not covered by it.

James H Washington

for Ronald E. Morgan
Director of Air Traffic

For sale by the U.S. Government Printing Office
Superintendent of Documents, Mail Stop: SSOP, Washington, DC 20402-9328

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION
Section 1. GENERAL

Section 2. TERMS OF REFERENCE

Chapter 2. GENERAL CONTROL
Section 1. GENERAL

Chapter 3. AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL– TERMINAL

Section 1. GENERAL

Section 2. VISUAL SIGNALS

Section 3. AIRPORT CONDITIONS

Section 4. AIRPORT LIGHTING

Paragraph **Page**

Section 8. APPROACH CLEARANCE PROCEDURES

Chapter 5. RADAR

Section 1. GENERAL

Section 2. BEACON SYSTEMS

Section 3. RADAR IDENTIFICATION

Section 4. TRANSFER OF RADAR IDENTIFICATION

Section 5. RADAR SEPARATION

Paragraph	Page

Section 6. VECTORING

Section 7. SPEED ADJUSTMENT

Section 8. RADAR DEPARTURES

Section 9. RADAR ARRIVALS

Section 10. RADAR APPROACHES– TERMINAL

Section 16. TPX–42– TERMINAL

Chapter 6. NONRADAR

Section 1. GENERAL

Section 2. INITIAL SEPARATION OF SUCCESSIVE DEPARTING AIRCRAFT

Section 3. INITIAL SEPARATION OF DEPARTING AND ARRIVING AIRCRAFT

Section 4. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

Section 5. LATERAL SEPARATION

Section 6. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Section 7. TIMED APPROACHES

Chapter 7. VISUAL

Section 1. GENERAL

Section 2. VISUAL SEPARATION

Section 3. VFR-ON-TOP

Section 4. APPROACHES

Section 5. SPECIAL VFR (SVFR)

Section 6. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT– TERMINAL

Section 7. TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA (TRSA)– TERMINAL

Section 8. CLASS C SERVICE– TERMINAL

Section 9. CLASS B SERVICE AREA– TERMINAL

Chapter 8. OFFSHORE/OCEANIC PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL

Section 2. COORDINATION

Section 3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

Section 4. LATERAL SEPARATION

Section 5. OFFSHORE/OCEANIC TRANSITION PROCEDURES

Section 6. SEPARATION FROM AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS

Section 7. NORTH ATLANTIC ICAO REGION

Section 8. CARIBBEAN ICAO REGION

Section 9. PACIFIC ICAO REGION

Section 10. NORTH AMERICAN ICAO REGION – ARCTIC CTA

Chapter 9. SPECIAL FLIGHTS

Section 1. GENERAL

Section 2. SPECIAL INTEREST FLIGHTS

Section 3. SPECIAL OPERATIONS

Paragraph Page

Section 7. GROUND MISSILE EMERGENCIES

Chapter 11. TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL

Chapter 12. CANADIAN AIRSPACE PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL CONTROL

APPENDICES

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL EXPLANATION OF CHANGES

Direct questions through appropriate facility/region staff to the Office of Primary Interest (OPI)

a. Several procedural changes to the subject order were implemented by GENOT. However, we are using the DCP process and the Order Change Briefing Sheet to incorporate all changes into FAA Order 7110.65L. (ATO–100)

b. The following paragraphs were implemented via Notice: 2–1–19; 3–9–6e., f., g., g.1.; 3–9–7a.2., b.4.; 3–9–8; 3–10–4c.; 5–5–3d.2., d.4., e.2.; 5–8–3a. Note, b. Note; 8–9–9; and Appendices A and B. (ATO–100)

a. Numerous editorial changes were made throughout this order. Revision bars were not used due to the insignificant nature of the changes. (ATA–10/ATO–100)

b. Multiple changes were made updating references to other orders to reflect the correct paragraph numbers/titles. Revision bars were used. (ATA–10)

c. 1–1–7. PUBLICATION AND DELIVERY DATES.
Updates publication timetable. Also, changes Defense Mapping Agency to National Imagery and Mapping Agency. (ATA–10)

d. 1–1–9. CONSTRAINTS GOVERNING SUPPLEMENTS AND PROCEDURAL DEVIATIONS.
Revises USAF office and address. (ATO–120)

e. 1–2–6. ABBREVIATIONS.
Adds:
LAHSO – Land and Hold Short Operations (ATO–120)
LTD – Along Track Distance (ATO–120)
NRP – National Route Program (ATO–110)
TAA – Terminal Arrival Area (ATO–110)
CNLFP – Cancel flight plan (ATO–100)
Modifies: CNL, NAT, OTS and PAR. (ATO–100)

f. 2–1–4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY.
Publishes directions to the air traffic control specialist regarding the handling of flights participating in the National Route Program. (ATO–110)

g. 2–1–15. CONTROL TRANSFER.
Adds the word "and" to make the conditions listed inclusive. (ATO–110)

h. 2–1–19. WAKE TURBULENCE.
Reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757. (ATO–120)

i. 2–1–20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES.
Deletes Figure 2–1–1. (ATO–120)

j. 2–2–15. NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION.
New paragraph – publishes directions to the air traffic control specialist regarding the handling of flights participating in the National Route Program. (ATO–110)

k. 2–3–1. GENERAL.
Eliminates the requirement for facilities to adhere to the horizontal line strike–through process. (ATO–110)

l. 2–3–2. EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES.
Establishes procedures for data entries concerning the National Route Program (NRP). (ATO–110)

m. 2–3–4. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY.
Changes "M" to "RCH" in TBL 2–3–2, Military Mission Prefix. (ATO–100)

n. 2–3–7. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX.
TBL 2–3–3. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX.
Adds – Note 6 The /W suffix will identify aircraft that are approved for reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM). All aircraft will have area navigation and an operating transponder with altitude (Mode C). (ATO–110)
Also, deletes note in TBL 2–3–3. (ATO–110)

o. 2–4–20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION.
To minimize communication errors, for civil aircraft identification, use the term "November" or the same identification that the pilot used in his/her initial or subsequent call. (ATO–120)
Combines subparagraph b.3., with subparagraph b.2., and renumbers subparagraphs b.4. and b.5. (ATO–100)

p. 2–6–3. PIREP INFORMATION.
PIREP's which report icing, shall include the type and intensity of icing, and outside air temperature where icing is occurring. (ATO–120)

q. 2–7–2. ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL.
Requires controllers to issue any change to the altimeter setting when aircraft are using nonprecision approaches when the pressure is falling rapidly. (ATO–120)

r. 2–9–3. CONTENT.
Subparagraph a.
Editorial, adds the word "Airport" to the first sentence. (ATO–120)
Subparagraph e.
1 Requires specific taxiway closure information on the Automated Terminal Information Service (ATIS). (ATO–120)

[2] Requires controllers to broadcast all available bird activity information in accordance with paragraph 2–1–22, BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION, on the ATIS. (ATO–120)

Subparagraph g.
Reflects operational procedures instituted for conducting Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO). (ATO–120)

s. 3–1–8. LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES.
Changes the number of remote sensors that can be inoperative without total system failure from three to "more than 50 percent." Change to ATIS message for impaired LLWAS service. (ATO–120)

t. 3–7–5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA.
Editorial, adds the words "In addition to subpara a.1.(a)," to subparagraph a.1.(b). (ATO–120)

u. 3–9–6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION.
The criteria for same runway separation categories was previously loosely based on weight class plus performance characteristics. With the change to weight class definitions, the same runway separation categories had to be redefined also. (ATO–120)

v. 3–9–7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES.
Adds a 3 minute wake turbulence rule to small aircraft, weighing less than 12,500 lbs., departing from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. Reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757. Also, includes those aircraft weighing between 12,500 lbs. and 41,000 lbs., new small, that does not require the 3–minute interval. (ATO–120)

w. 3–9–8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION.
Reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a heavy jet/B757. (ATO–120)

x. 3–9–9. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE.
Editorial, adds USAF. (ATO–120)

y. 3–10–3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION.
Reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757. Also, updates paragraph number. (ATO–120)

z. 3–10–4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION.
Reflects operational procedures instituted for conducting Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO). Also, reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757. (ATO–120)

aa. 3–10–5. LANDING CLEARANCE.
In order to alleviate any pilot confusion, the runway number shall be stated with the landing clearance when more than one runway is active. (ATO–120)

ab. 4–1–2. EXCEPTIONS.
Precludes the controller from having to reroute aircraft capable of navigating on the original airway, route, or procedures such as STAR's. (ATO–120)

ac. 4–2–5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS.
Deletes the requirement of stating "Rest of Route Unchanged" when amending a route by clearing an aircraft direct to a point on a previously issued clearance. Also, publishes directions to the air traffic control specialist regarding the handling of flights participating in the National Route Program (NRP). (ATO–110)

ad. 4–4–4. ALTERNATIVE ROUTES.
Precludes the controller from having to reroute aircraft capable of navigating on the original airway, route, or procedures such as STAR's. (ATO–120)

ae. 4–5–1. VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA.
Allows application of 1,000 feet vertical separation minima between approved aircraft within any airspace designated for reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM) or RVSM transition. (ATO–110)

af. 4–5–2. FLIGHT DIRECTION.
Adds information to TBL 4–5–1. (ATO–110)

ag. 4–6–4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS.
Permits an aircraft that is restricted to a smaller pattern due to aircraft type to be cleared into a pattern that protects for a faster holding airspeed. (ATO–110)

ah. 4–6–6. HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION.
Obstructions have been added to the conditions for consideration prior to approving a request that may cause an aircraft to deviate from the holding pattern airspace area. (ATO–110)

ai. 4–7–1. CLEARANCE INFORMATION.
Adds example. (ATO–100)

aj. 4–7–11. APPROACH INFORMATION.
Directs the controller to rely on the pilot for current weather information at uncontrolled ASOS/AWOS equipped airports. Long line disseminates weather for these airports, which, will be used by the controller for weather trends only. (ATO–120)

ak. 4–8–1. APPROACH CLEARANCE.
The Standard T allows aircraft to proceed direct to the nearest initial approach fix (IAF) and virtually eliminates the need for procedure turns or course reversal. In the case of radar vectors within the TAA, the controller will have the option of clearing the aircraft direct to an appropriate IAF rather than vectors to the final approach course which entails making the baseleg and dogleg turns. Also, adds FIG 4–8–2. (ATO–110)

al. 4–8–5. SPECIFYING ALTITUDE.
Changes Defense Mapping Agency to National Imagery and Mapping Agency. (ATA–10)

am. 4–8–11. PRACTICE APPROACHES.
Reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757. (ATO–120)

an. 5–2–10. VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS.
Adds the code 1255 nationwide to firefighting aircraft. (ATO–110)

ao. 5–2–14. CODE MONITOR.
Adds the code 1255 nationwide to firefighting aircraft. (ATO–110)

ap. 5–3–3. BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS.
Revises phraseology. (ATO–100)

aq. 5–5–3. MINIMA.
Clarifies separation standards for B757's and wake turbulence for the terminal environment. (ATO–120)

ar. 5–5–9. ADJACENT AIRSPACE.
Editorial change to reflect previous changes to TRSA separation. (ATO–120)

as. 5–7–1. APPLICATION.
Adds paragraph 4–6–4, HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS, as a reference. (ATO–110)

at. 5–7–2. METHODS.
Removes text in subparagraph b. (ATO–100)

au. 5–8–3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES.
Adds the B757 to the procedure that is being applied to heavy jets with successive or simultaneous departures of small aircraft. (ATO–120)

av. 5–9–2. FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION.
Clarifies NOTE in subparagraph 5–9–2c. (ATO–110)

aw. 5–9–4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS.
The Standard T allows aircraft to proceed direct to the nearest initial approach fix (IAF) and virtually eliminates the need for procedure turns or course reversal. In the case of radar vectors within the TAA, the controller will have the option of clearing the aircraft direct to an appropriate IAF rather than vectors to the final approach course which entails making the baseleg and dogleg turns. Adds FIG 5–9–5. (ATO–110)

ax. 5–9–6. PARALLEL DEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES.
Renumbers FIG 5–9–5 to FIG 5–9–6 and FIG 5–9–6 to FIG 5–9–7 due to new figure being added (FIG 5–9–5). (ATA–10)
Also, changes "4300'" to "4301'" in new FIG 5–9–7. (ATO–100)

ay. 5–9–8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT DUAL ILS/MLS APPROACHES–HIGH UPDATE RADAR.
Authorizes simultaneous independent ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches to parallel dual runways with centerlines separated by at least 3,000 feet with one localizer offset by 2.5 degrees using a precision runway monitor system with a 1.0 second radar update system. (ATO–120)

az. 6–1–1. DISTANCE.
Changes paragraph title from "DME" to "DISTANCE." Also, allows controllers to separate aircraft using LTD by the same longitudinal standards authorized for DME–equipped aircraft. (ATO–120)

ba. 6–1–4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION.
Includes the B757 to procedures being applied to heavy jet aircraft when operating with an adjacent airport. (ATO–120)

bb. 6–1–5. ARRIVAL MINIMA.
Reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a heavy jet/B757. (ATO–120)

bc. 6–2–1. MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES.
Allows controllers to separate aircraft using LTD by the same longitudinal standards authorized for DME–equipped aircraft. (ATO–120)

bd. 6–2–2. MINIMA ON SAME COURSE.
Allows controllers to separate aircraft using LTD by the same longitudinal standards authorized for DME–equipped aircraft. (ATO–120)

be. 6–4–2. MINIMA ON SAME, CONVERGING, OR CROSSING COURSES.
Allows controllers to separate aircraft using LTD by the same longitudinal standards authorized for DME–equipped aircraft. (ATO–120)
Also, deletes subparagraph f. (ATO–100)

bf. 6–4–3. MINIMA ON OPPOSITE COURSES.
Allows controllers to separate aircraft using LTD by the same longitudinal standards authorized for DME–equipped aircraft. (ATO–120)

bg. 6–4–4. SEPARATION BY PILOTS.
Allows controllers to separate aircraft using LTD by the same longitudinal standards authorized for DME–equipped aircraft. (ATO–120)

bh. 7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH.
Reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a heavy jet/B757. (ATO–120)

bi. 7–4–4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS.
Makes the note in c.1. regulatory. (ATO–120)

bj. 7–4–5. CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE.
Reflects the current version requirements of FAA Order 7110.79, Charted Visual Flight Procedures, and deletes the requirement to conduct this type of approach in a radar environment. (ATO–120)

bk. 7–7–3. SEPARATION.
Editorial change that correctly addresses the position that is responsible for approving the application of target resolutions at locations not using broadband radar. (ATO–120)

bl. 7–9–4. SEPARATION.
With the change to small weight class definitions, additional guidance is needed in this paragraph to identify aircraft that weigh 19,000 lbs. or less. (ATO–120)

bm. 8–2–3. AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES INTERFACILITY DATA COMMUNICATIONS (AIDC).
New paragraph – provides improvements in the transfer of flight data for advance notification and coordination. (ATO–110)

bn. 8–9–9. PROCEDURES FOR WEATHER DEVIATIONS AND OTHER CONTINGENCIES IN OCEANIC CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.
New paragraph – provides guidance to air traffic controllers on managing weather deviations and other contingencies. (ATO–150)

bo. APPENDIX A. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION.
Adds aircraft weight classes and note. (ATO–120)

bp. APPENDICES A. and **B. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION.**
Amends Appendices A and B in accordance to the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) document 8643/25. (ATO–120)

bq. APPENDICES A, B and C. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION.
Deletes SOIR Category. (ATO–120)

br. PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY.

Terms added:
Airport Reference Point (ARP)
Area Navigation (RNAV) Approach Configuration
Available Landing Distance (ALD)
Contaminated Runway
Desired Course
Desired Track
Final Approach Waypoint (FAWP)
Fly–By Waypoint
Fly–Over Waypoint
Friction Measurement
Heliport Reference Point (HRP)
Hold–Short Point
Hold–Short Position Marking
Hold–Short Position Lights
Hold–Short Position Signs
Initial Approach Waypoint (IAWP)
Icing
Intermediate Fix/Initial Approach Waypoint (IF/IAWP)
Intermediate Fix Waypoint (IFWP)
ILS PRM Approach
Integrity
LAHSO
LAHSO–Dry
LAHSO–Wet
Land and Hold Short Operations
Missed Approach Holding Waypoint (MAHWP)
Maintenance Planning Friction Level
Missed Approach Waypoint (MAWP)
Minimum Friction Level
Monitor Alert (MA)
Monitor Alert Parameter (MAP)
National Route Program (NRP)
One–Minute Weather
Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM)
Turn Anticipation

Terms deleted:
Official Weather
Operational Acceptable Level of Traffic
Simultaneous Operations on Intersecting Runways

Terms modified:
Aircraft Classes
Charted Visual Flight Procedure Approach
Close Parallel Runways
Final Approach Course
Flight Management System Procedure
Minimum Navigation Performance Specifications Airspace
Precision Runway Monitor (PRM)
Resume Normal Speed
Traffic Advisories

(Terms submitted by multiple sources – approval by OPI, ATO–100)

bs. OFFICES OF PRIMARY INTEREST: Updates were made to reflect new offices of primary interest and changes in routing symbols. Revision bars were not used. (ATO–100)

Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION

Section 1. GENERAL

1-1-1. PURPOSE

This order prescribes air traffic control procedures and phraseology for use by persons providing air traffic control services. Controllers are required to be familiar with the provisions of this order that pertain to their operational responsibilities and to exercise their best judgment if they encounter situations that are not covered by it.

1-1-2. DISTRIBUTION

This order is distributed to selected offices in Washington Headquarters, Regional Offices, the Technical Center, and the Aeronautical Center. Also, copies are sent to all air traffic control facilities, all international aviation field offices, and the interested aviation public.

1-1-3. CANCELLATION

FAA Order 7110.65J, Air Traffic Control, dated July 20, 1995, and all changes to it are canceled. FAA Order 7110.65K, Air Traffic Control, dated July 17, 1997, was canceled by GENOT, N 7100.21, dated July 4, 1997.

1-1-4. EXPLANATION OF MAJOR CHANGES

The significant changes to this order are identified in the Explanation of Changes page(s). It is advisable to retain the page(s) throughout the duration of the basic order. If further information is desired, direct questions through the appropriate facility/region staff to the office shown in parentheses following the change.

1-1-5. EFFECTIVE DATE

This order is effective **February 26, 1998.**

1-1-6. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PROCEDURAL CHANGES

a. Personnel should submit recommended changes in procedures to facility management.

b. Recommendations from other sources should be submitted through appropriate FAA, military, or industry/user channels to Headquarters, FAA, Director of Air Traffic, AAT–1, attention ATO–100.

1-1-7. PUBLICATION AND DELIVERY DATES

a. This order and its changes are scheduled to be published according to TBL 1–1–1.

Publications Timetable

Basic or Change	*Cutoff Date for Submission*	*Effective Date of Publication*
7110.65L Basic	8/13/97	2/26/98
Change 1	2/26/98	8/13/98
Change 2	8/13/98	1/28/99
Change 3	1/28/99	7/15/99
7110.65M Basic	7/15/99	2/24/00

TBL 1-1-1

b. If an FAA facility **has not** received the order/changes at least 30 days before the above effective dates, the facility shall notify its regional distribution officer.

c. If a military facility **has not** received the order/changes at least 30 days before the above effective dates, the facility shall notify its appropriate military headquarters. (See TBL 1–1–2.)

Military Distribution Contacts

Military Headquarters	*DSN*	*Commercial*
U.S. Army, USAASA	656–4868	(703) 806–4868
U.S. Air Force		Contact Local *NIMA Customer Account Representative
U.S. Navy, CNO (N885F)	224–2710	(703) 614–2710
*NIMA–National Imagery and Mapping Agency		

TBL 1-1-2

1-1-8. PROCEDURAL LETTERS OF AGREEMENT

Procedures/minima which are applied jointly or otherwise require the cooperation or concurrence of more than one facility/organization must be documented in a letter of agreement. Letters of agreement only supplement this order. Any minima they specify must not be less than that specified herein unless appropriate military authority has authorized application of reduced separation between military aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ATC SERVICE, Para 2-1-1.
FAAO 7210.3, LETTERS OF AGREEMENT, Para 4-3-1.

1-1-9. CONSTRAINTS GOVERNING SUPPLEMENTS AND PROCEDURAL DEVIATIONS

a. Exceptional or unusual requirements may dictate procedural deviations or supplementary procedures to this order. Prior to implementing supplemental or any procedural deviation that alters the level, quality, or degree of service, obtain prior approval from the Director of Air Traffic, AAT-1.

b. If military operations or facilities are involved, prior approval by the following appropriate headquarters is required for subsequent interface with FAA. (See TBL 1-1-3.)

Military Operations Interface Offices

Branch	*Address*
U.S. Navy	CNO (OP-554)
U.S. Air Force....	HQ AFFSA/XA 1535 Command Drive, Suite D302, Andrews AFB, MD 20762-7002
U.S. Army	Director USAASA (MOAS-AS) 9325 Gunston Road, Suite N319 Ft. Belvoir, VA 22060-5582

TBL 1-1-3

NOTE-
Terminal: Headquarters USAF has delegated to major Air Commands authority to authorize base commanders to reduce same runway separation standards for military aircraft. These are specified and approved by affected ATC and user units. When applied, appropriate advisories may be required; e.g., "(A/C callsign) continue straight ahead on right side; F-16 landing behind on left." "((A/C callsign) hold position on right side; F-5 behind on left."

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS, Para 3-1-3.

Section 2. TERMS OF REFERENCE

1-2-1. WORD MEANINGS

As used in this manual:

a. *Shall,* or an action verb in the imperative sense, means a procedure is mandatory.

EXAMPLE-
The transferring controller *shall* forward this data to the receiving controller.

Issue an alternative clearance.

Authorize the aircraft to taxi.

Do not clear an aircraft to land on or takeoff from a closed runway.

b. *Should* means a procedure is recommended.

c. *May* or *need not* means a procedure is optional.

d. *Will* means futurity, not a requirement for the application of a procedure.

e. Singular words include the plural.

f. Plural words include the singular.

g. *Aircraft* means the airframe, crew members, or both.

h. *Approved separation* means separation in accordance with the applicable minima in this manual.

i. *Altitude* means indicated altitude mean sea level (MSL), flight level (FL), or both.

j. *Miles* means nautical miles unless otherwise specified, and means statute miles in conjunction with visibility.

k. *Course, bearing, azimuth, heading, and wind direction* information shall always be magnetic unless specifically stated otherwise.

l. *Time* when used for ATC operational activities, is the hour and the minute in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). Change to the next minute is made at the minute plus 30 seconds, except time checks are given to the nearest quarter minute.

m. *Runway* means the runway used by aircraft, and in discussions of separation standards is applicable to helipads with accompanying takeoff/landing courses. (See Pilot/Controller Glossary term- Runway.)

n. Flight operations in accordance with the options of *due regard* or *operational* obligates the authorized state aircraft commander to:

1. Separate his aircraft from all other air traffic; and

2. Assure that an appropriate monitoring agency assumes responsibility for search and rescue actions; and

3. Operate under at least one of the following conditions:

(a) In visual meteorological conditions (VMC); or

(b) Within radar surveillance and radio communications of a surface radar facility; or

(c) Be equipped with airborne radar that is sufficient to provide separation between his aircraft and any other aircraft he may be controlling and other aircraft; or

(d) Operate within Class G airspace.

(e) An understanding between the pilot and controller regarding the intent of the pilot and the status of the flight should be arrived at before the aircraft leaves ATC frequency.

NOTE-
1 *A pilot's use of the phrase "Going Tactical" does not indicate " Due Regard." An understanding between the pilot and controller regarding the intent of the pilot and the status of the flight should be arrived at before the aircraft leaves air traffic control (ATC) frequency.*

2 *The above conditions provide for a level of safety equivalent to that normally given by International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) ATC agencies and fulfills U.S. Government obligations under Article 3 of the Chicago Convention of 1944 (Reference (d)), which stipulates there must be "due regard for the safety of navigation of civil aircraft" when flight is not being conducted under ICAO flight procedures.*

o. *CFR* means Title 14, Code of Federal Regulations, Parts 1 through 199.

Divergence

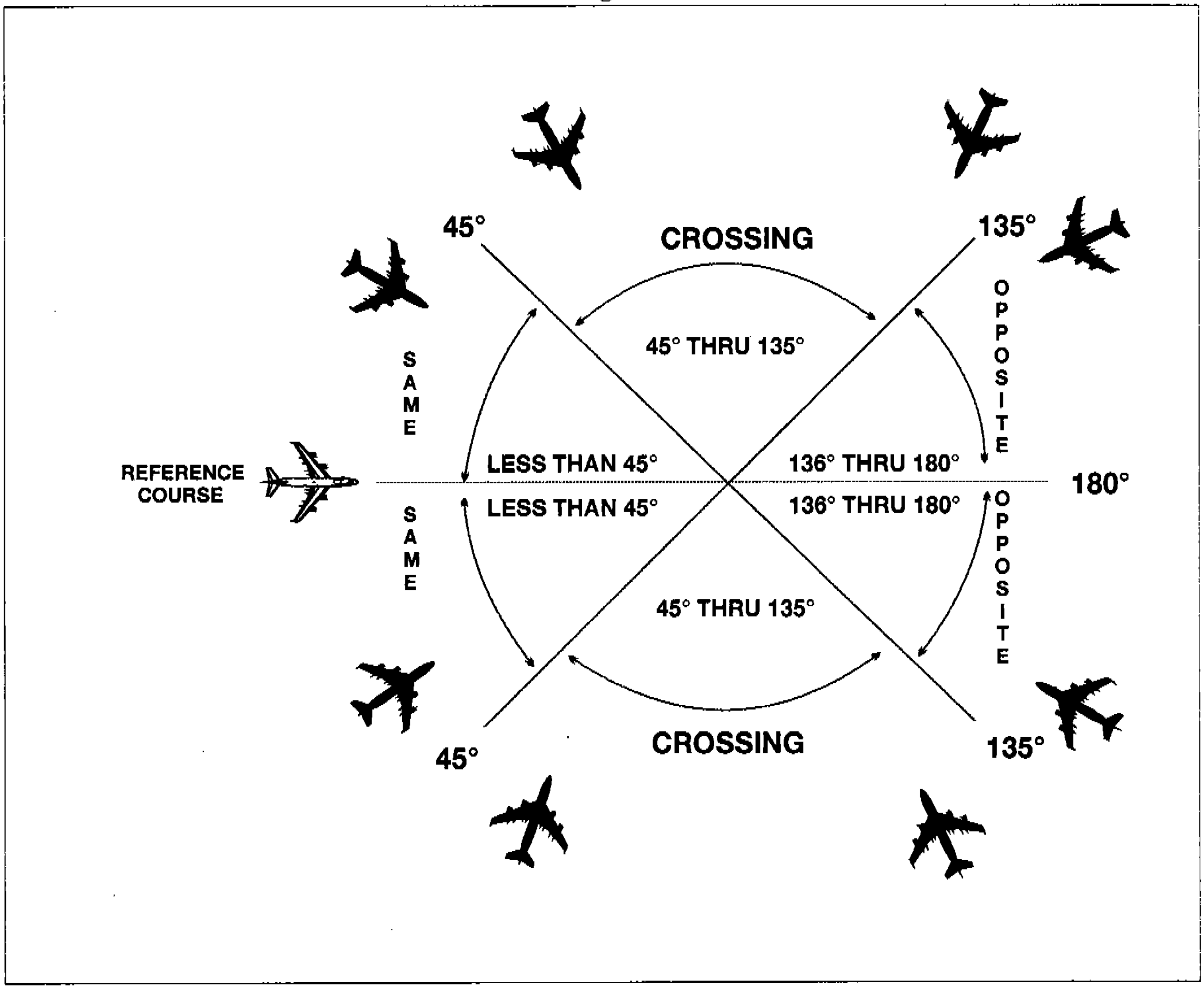


FIG 1-2-1

1-2-2. COURSE DEFINITIONS

The following definitions shall be used in the application of the separation criteria in this order.

NOTE-
The term "protected airspace," as used in this paragraph, is the airspace equal to one half the required applicable lateral separation on either side of an aircraft along its projected flight path. If the protected airspace of two aircraft does not overlap, applicable lateral separation is ensured.

a. *SAME COURSES* are courses whose protected airspaces are coincident, overlap, or intersect and whose angular difference is less than 45 degrees. (See FIG 1-2-1.)

b. *CROSSING COURSES* are intersecting courses whose angular difference is 45 through 135 degrees inclusive. (See FIG 1-2-1.)

c. *OPPOSITE/RECIPROCAL COURSES* are courses whose protected airspaces are coincident, overlap, or intersect and whose angular difference is 136 through 180 degrees inclusive. (See FIG 1-2-1.)

1-2-3. NOTES

Statements of fact, or of a prefatory or explanatory nature relating to directive material, are set forth as notes.

1-2-4. REFERENCES

As used in this order, references direct attention to an additional or supporting source of information such as FAA, NWS, and other agencies' orders, directives, notices, CFR's, and Advisory Circulars (AC's).

1-2-5. ANNOTATIONS

Revised, reprinted, or new pages are marked as follows:

a. The change number and the effective date are printed on each revised or additional page.

b. A page that does not require a change is reprinted in its original form.

c. Bold vertical lines in the margin of changed pages indicate the location of substantive revisions to the order. Bold vertical lines adjacent to the title of a chapter, section, or paragraph means that extensive changes have been made to that chapter, section, or paragraph.

d. Paragraphs/sections annotated with *EN ROUTE* or *TERMINAL* are only to be applied by the designated type facility. When they are not so designated, the paragraphs/sections apply to both types of facilities (en route and terminal).

e. The annotation, *USAF* for the U.S. Air Force, *USN* for the U.S. Navy, and *USA* for the U.S. Army denotes that the procedure immediately following the annotation applies only to the designated service.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY PROCEDURES, Para 2-1-12.

f. *WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION* inserted within a paragraph means that the remaining information in the paragraph requires the application of wake turbulence procedures.

g. The annotation PHRASEOLOGY denotes the prescribed words and/or phrases to be used in communications.

NOTE–
Controllers may, after first using the prescribed phraseology for a specific procedure, rephrase the message to ensure the content is understood. Good judgement shall be exercised when using nonstandard phraseology.

h. The annotation EXAMPLE provides a sample of the way the prescribed phraseology associated with the preceding paragraph(s) will be used. If the preceding paragraph(s) does (do) not include specific prescribed phraseology, the EXAMPLE merely denotes suggested words and/or phrases that may be used in communications.

NOTE–
The use of the exact text contained in an example not preceded with specific prescribed phraseology is not mandatory. However, the words and/or phrases are expected, to the extent practical, to approximate those used in the example.

1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS

As used in this manual, the following abbreviations have the meanings indicated. (See TBL 1-2-1.)

FAA Order 7110.65 Abbreviations

Abbreviation	*Meaning*
A/A	Air-to-Air
AAL	Above aerodrome level
AAR	Airport acceptance rate
AAT	Office of Air Traffic
AAT-1	Director of Air Traffic
ABM	Abeam
ABN	Aerodrome beacon
AC	Advisory Circular
ACC	Area Control Center
ACCID	Notification of an aircraft accident
ACLS	Automatic Carrier Landing System
ACP	Area Command Post
ADC	Aerospace Defense Command
ADIZ	Air defense identification zone (to be pronounced "AY DIZ")
ADJ	Adjacent
ADR	Advisory route
ADZ	Advise
ADZY	Advisory
AFD	Airport/Facility Directory
AFI	ICAO African Indian Ocean Region
AFIL	Flight plan filed in the air
AFIS	Aerodrome flight information service
AFM	Yes or affirm or affirmative or that is correct
AIM	Aeronautical Information Manual
AIP	Aeronautical Information Publication
AIREP	Air report

AIRMET	Airmen's meteorological information
ALERFA	Alert Phase code (Alerting Service)
ALNOT	Alert notice
ALS	Approach light system
ALTRV	Altitude reservation
AMB	Ambiguity–A disparity greater than 2 miles exists between the position declared for a target by ARTS and another facility's computer declared position during interfacility handoff
AMS	Aeronautical mobile service
AMSL	Above mean sea level
AMVER	Automated Mutual Assistance Vessel Rescue System
ANG	Air National Guard
ANS	Answer
APREQ	Approval request
AR	Atlantic Route
ARAC	Radar approach control facility (USA)
ARCP	Air refueling control point
ARINC	Aeronautical Radio Incorporated
ARIP	Air refueling initial point
ARS	Air Traffic System Requirements Service
ARSR	Air route surveillance radar
ARTCC	Air route traffic control center
ASD	Aircraft situation display
ASDE	Airport surface detection equipment
ASP	Arrival sequencing program
ASR	Airport surveillance radar
ATA	Air Traffic Airspace Management Program
ATC	Air traffic control
ATCAA	ATC assigned airspace
ATCRBS	Air traffic control radar beacon system
ATCSCC	Air Traffic Control System Command Center
ATCT	Airport traffic control tower
ATD	Actual time of departure
ATIS	Automatic terminal information service
ATO	Air Traffic Operations Program
ATPAC	Air Traffic Procedures Advisory Committee
ATS	Air Traffic Service
ATX	Air Traffic Resource Management Program
AVSNFO	Aviation Standards National Field Office
BASE	Cloud base
BR	Bahama Route
CACT	Civil air carrier turbojet
CAR	ICAO Caribbean Region
CARCAH	Chief, Aerial Reconnaissance Coordination, All Hurricanes
CARF	Central Altitude Reservation Function
CAT	Clear air turbulence
CAVOC	Visibility, cloud and present weather better than prescribed values or conditions (to be pronounced "KAV OH KAY")
CCC	Regional Communications Control Center
CELNAV	Celestial navigation training
CENPAC	Central North Pacific
CENRAP	Center Radar ARTS Presentation
CEP	Central East Pacific
CERAP	Combined Center/RAPCON
CFR	Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations, (Parts 1–199)
CFWSUM	Central flow weather service unit meteorologist
CH	Channel
CHG	Modification (message type designator)
CI	Cirrus
CIT	Near or over large towns
CIV	Civil
CM	Centimeter
CMB	Climb
CMPL	Completion or completed or complete
CNL	Cancel lation
CNLFP	Cancel flight plan
CNS	Continuous
COM	Communications
CONC	Concrete
COP	Changeover point
CPL	Current Flight Plan
CTA	Control Area
CVFP	Charted Visual Flight Procedure
CWA	Center Weather Advisory
DARC	Direct Access Radar Channel
DETRESFA	Distress Phase code (Alerting Service)
DF	Direction finder
DH	Decision height
DMAAC	Defense Mapping Agency Aerospace Center
DMAHC	Defense Mapping Agency Hydrographic Center
DME	Distance measuring equipment compatible with TACAN
DOE	Department of Energy
DR	Dead Reckoning
DSP	Departure sequencing program
DVFR	Defense Visual Flight Rules
EB	Eastbound
ECM	Electronic counter measure

EDARC	Enhanced Direct Access Radar Channel
EET	Estimated elapsed time
EFAS	En route flight advisory service
EFC	Expect further clearance
EFIS	Electronic Flight Information System
EFIS	Electronic Flight Instrument System
EFM	En Route flow management
EHF	Extremely high frequency [30,000 to 300,000 MHz]
ELBA	Emergency location beacon aircraft
ELT	Emergency locator transmitter
EOVM	Emergency obstruction video map
ESP	En Route spacing program
ETA	Estimated time of arrival
EUR	ICAO European Region
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FAAO	FAA Order
FDEP	Flight data entry and printout
FDIO	Flight Data Input/Output
FIFO	Flight Inspection Field Office
FIR	Flight information region
FL	Flight level
FLIP	Flight Information Publication
FLY	Fly or flying
FM	From
FMS	Flight Management System
FMSP	Flight Management System Procedure
FNA	Final approach
FPL	Filed flight plan (message type designator)
FRC	Full route clearance necessary
FRONT	Front (relating to weather)
FSDO	Flight Standards District Office
FSS	Flight Service Station
FW/SVFR	Fixed Wing Special Visual Flight Rules
GCA	Ground controlled approach
GEN	General
GEO	Geographic of true
GLD	Glider
GND	Ground
GNDCK	Ground check
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System
GP	Glide path
GPS	Global Positioning System
GR	Hail or soft hail
GRADU	Gradual or gradually

HIRL	High intensity runway lights
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization
IDENT	Aircraft identification
IFIM	International Flight Information Manual
IFR	Instrument flight rules
IFSS	International flight service station
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IMC	Instrument Meteorological Conditions
INCERFA	Uncertainty Phase code (Alerting Service)
INF	Inland Navigation Facility
INREQ	Information request
INS	Inertial Navigation System
IR	IFR military training route
JATO	Jet assisted takeoff
LAHSO	Land and Hold Short Operations
LAWRS	Limited aviation weather reporting station
LLWAS	Low level wind shear alert system
L/MF	Low/medium frequency
LORAN	Long Range Navigation System
LTD	Along Track Distance
Mach	Mach Number
MALS	Medium intensity approach light system
MALSR	Medium approach light system with runway alignment indicator lights
MAP	Missed approach point
MARSA	Military authority assumes responsibility for separation of aircraft
MCA	Minimum crossing altitude
MCI	Mode C Intruder
MDA	Minimum descent altitude
MEA	Minimum en route (IFR) altitude
MIA	Minimum IFR altitude
MID/ASIA	ICAO Middle East/Asia Region
MIRL	Medium intensity runway lights
MIT	Miles in trail
MITO	Minimum interval takeoff
MLS	Microwave Landing System
MNPS	Minimum Navigation Performance Specifications
MNPSA	Minimum Navigation Performance Specification Airspace
MNT	Monitor or monitoring or monitored
MNTN	Maintain
MOA	Military operations area
MOC	Minimum obstacle clearance (required)
MOCA	Minimum obstruction clearance altitude

MOD	Moderate (used to qualify icing, turbulence, interference or static reports)
MRA	Minimum reception altitude
MSAW	Minimum Safe Altitude Warning
MSL	Mean sea level
MTI..........	Moving target indicator
MTR	Military training route
MVA	Minimum vectoring altitude
NADIN	National Airspace Data Interchange Network
NAM.........	ICAO North American Region
NAR	North American Route
NAS	National Airspace System
NAT	ICAO North Atlantic Region
NAT	No ARTS tracked
NBCAP.......	National Beacon Code Allocation Plan
NDB	Nondirectional radio beacon
NHOP	National Hurricane Operations Plan
NM	Nautical Mile
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOPAC.......	North Pacific
NORAD	North American Aerospace Defense Command
NOS	National Ocean Service
NOTAM	Notice to Airmen
NRP	National Route Program
NWS.........	National Weather Service
NWSOP	National Winter Storm Operations Plan
NTZ	No transgression zone
OALT	Operational acceptable levels of traffic
ODALS.......	Omnidirectional approach lighting system
ODAPS.......	Oceanic Display and Planning System
ONER	Oceanic Navigational Error Report
OROCA	Off Route Obstruction Clearance Altitude
OTR	Oceanic Transition Route
OTS	Organized Track System
PAC	ICAO Pacific Region
PAR	Precision approach radar
PAR	Preferred arrival route
PBCT	Proposed Boundary Crossing Time
P/CG.........	Pilot/Controller Glossary
PDAR	Preferential departure arrival route
PDR	Preferential departure route
PIDP	Programmable Indicator Data Processor
PO...........	Dust devils
POB	Persons on board
PPI	Plan position indicator
PPR..........	Prior permission required
PTS..........	Polar Track Structure
RAC	Department of Energy special flight
RAIL.........	Runway alignment indicator lights
RAPCON	Radar approach control facility (USAF)
RATCF	Radar air traffic control facility (USN)
RBS	Radar bomb scoring
RCC	Rescue Coordination Center
RCLS	Runway centerline system
RCR	Runway condition reading
RE...........	Recent (used to qualify weather phenomena such as rain, e.g. recent rain = RERA)
REC	Receive or receiver
REDL	Runway edge light(s)
REF..........	Reference to...or refer to...
REIL.........	Runway end identifier lights
RITE.........	Right (direction of turn)
RL...........	Report leaving
RLA	Relay to
RLLS	Runway lead in lighting system
RMK.........	Remark
RNAV........	Area Navigation
RNG	Radio range
ROBEX	Regional OPMET bulletin exchange (scheme)
RRTE	Reroute
RVR	Runway visual range
RVV	Runway visibility value
SAC	Strategic Air Command
SAM	ICAO South American Region
SAR	Search and rescue
SARPS	Standards and Recommended Practices (ICAO)
SC...........	Stratocumulus
SELCAL......	Selective calling system
SFA..........	Single frequency approach
SFO..........	Simulated flameout
SID	Standard instrument departure
SIGMET......	Significant meteorological information
STAR	Standard terminal arrival
STMC........	Supervisory traffic management coordinator
STMP	Sector traffic management program
STOL	Short takeoff and landing
STR..........	Strategic Training Range
SURPIC	Surface Picture
SVFR	Special Visual Flight Rules
SWAP	Severe weather avoidance plan

TAA	Terminal Arrival Area
TACAN	TACAN UHF navigational aid (omnidirectional course and distance information)
TCAS	Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System
TDZL	Touchdown zone light system
TMC	Traffic management coordinator
TMCIC	Traffic management coordinator in charge
TMU	Traffic management unit
TRACAB	Terminal radar approach control in tower cab
TRACON	Terminal radar approach control
TRSA	Terminal radar service area
UHF	Ultra high frequency
USA	United States Army
USAF	United States Air Force
USN	United States Navy
UTC	Coordinated Universal Time
UTM	Unsuccessful transmission message
VCE	VSCS Console Equipment
VFR	Visual flight rules
VHF	Very High Frequency
VLF	Very Low Frequency
VMC	Visual Meteorological Conditions
VOR	VHF navigational aid (omnidirectional course information)
VOR DME	Collocated VOR and DME navigational aids (VHF course and UHF distance information)
VORTAC	Collocated VOR and TACAN navigation aids (VHF and UHF course and UHF distance information)
VR	VFR military training route
VSCS	Voice Switching and Control System
WATRS	West Atlantic Route System
WSFO	Weather Service Forecast Office
WSO	Weather Service Office

TBL 1-2-1

Chapter 2. GENERAL CONTROL

Section 1. GENERAL

2-1-1. ATC SERVICE

The primary purpose of the ATC system is to prevent a collision between aircraft operating in the system and to organize and expedite the flow of traffic. In addition to its primary function, the ATC system has the capability to provide (with certain limitations) additional services. The ability to provide additional services is limited by many factors, such as the volume of traffic, frequency congestion, quality of radar, controller workload, higher priority duties, and the pure physical inability to scan and detect those situations that fall in this category. It is recognized that these services cannot be provided in cases in which the provision of services is precluded by the above factors. Consistent with the aforementioned conditions, controllers shall provide additional service procedures to the extent permitted by higher priority duties and other circumstances. The provision of additional services is not optional on the part of the controller, but rather is required when the work situation permits. Provide air traffic control service in accordance with the procedures and minima in this order except when:

a. A deviation is necessary to conform with ICAO Documents, National Rules of the Air, or special agreements where the United States provides air traffic control service in airspace outside the United States and its possessions or:

NOTE–
Pilots are required to abide by CFR's or other applicable regulations regardless of the application of any procedure or minima in this order.

b. Other procedures/minima are prescribed in a letter of agreement, FAA directive, or a military document, or:

NOTE–
These procedures may include altitude reservations, air refueling, fighter interceptor operations, law enforcement, etc.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PROCEDURAL LETTERS OF AGREEMENT, Para 1-1-8.

c. A deviation is necessary to assist an aircraft when an emergency has been declared.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SAFETY ALERT, Para 2-1-6.
FAAO 7110.65, EMERGENCIES, Chapter 10.
FAAO 7110.65, MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES, Para 5-1-8.

2-1-2. DUTY PRIORITY

a. Give first priority to separating aircraft and issuing safety alerts as required in this order. Good judgment shall be used in prioritizing all other provisions of this order based on the requirements of the situation at hand.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SAFETY ALERT, Para 2-1-6.

NOTE–
Because there are many variables involved, it is virtually impossible to develop a standard list of duty priorities that would apply uniformly to every conceivable situation. Each set of circumstances must be evaluated on its own merit, and when more than one action is required, controllers shall exercise their best judgment based on the facts and circumstances known to them. That action which is most critical from a safety standpoint is performed first.

b. Provide additional services to the extent possible, contingent only upon higher priority duties and other factors including limitations of radar, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, and workload.

2-1-3. PROCEDURAL PREFERENCE

a. Use automation procedures in preference to non-automation procedures when workload, communications, and equipment capabilities permit.

b. Use radar separation in preference to nonradar separation when it will be to an operational advantage and workload, communications, and equipment permit.

c. Use nonradar separation in preference to radar separation when the situation dictates that an operational advantage will be gained.

NOTE–
One situation may be where vertical separation would preclude excessive vectoring.

2-1-4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY

Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:

NOTE–
It is solely the pilot's prerogative to cancel an IFR flight plan. However, a pilot's retention of an IFR flight plan does not afford priority over VFR aircraft. For example, this does not preclude the requirement for the pilot of an arriving IFR aircraft to adjust his flight path, as necessary, to enter a traffic pattern in sequence with arriving VFR aircraft.

a. An aircraft in distress has the right of way over all other air traffic.

REFERENCE–
CFR PART 91.113(c).

b. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights "LIFEGUARD". Air carrier/taxi usage of the "LIFEGUARD" call sign, indicates that operational priority is requested. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/air taxi flights. Assist the pilots of air ambulance/evacuation aircraft to avoid areas of significant weather and turbulent conditions. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.

c. Provide maximum assistance to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PROVIDING ASSISTANCE, Para 10–1–3.

d. Expedite the movement of presidential aircraft and entourage and any rescue support aircraft as well as related control messages when traffic conditions and communications facilities permit.

NOTE–
As used herein the terms presidential aircraft and entourage include aircraft and entourage of the President, Vice President, or other public figures when designated by the White House.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, Para 2–4–20.
FAAO 7210.3, ADVANCE COORDINATION, Para 6–1–1.

e. Provide special handling, as required to expedite Flight Check aircraft.

NOTE–
It is recognized that unexpected wind conditions, weather, or heavy traffic flows may affect controller's ability to provide priority or special handling at the specific time requested.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FLIGHT CHECK AIRCRAFT, Para 9–1–3.

f. Expedite movement of NIGHT WATCH aircraft when NAOC (pronounced NA–YOCK) is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ground communications.

NOTE–
The term "NAOC" will not be a part of the call sign but may be used when the aircraft is airborne to indicate a request for special handling.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7610.4, APPLICATIONS, Para 12–1.

g. Provide expeditious handling for any civil or military aircraft using the code name "FLYNET."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FLYNET, Para 9–3–6.
FAAO 7610.4, "FLYNET" FLIGHTS, NUCLEAR EMERGENCY TEAMS, Para 12–41.

h. Provide expeditious handling of aircraft using the code name "Garden Plot" only when CARF notifies you that such priority is authorized. Refer any questions regarding flight procedures to CARF for resolution.

NOTE–
Garden Plot flights require priority movement and are coordinated by the military with CARF. State authority will contact the Regional Director to arrange for priority of National Guard troop movements within a particular state.

i. Provide special handling for USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions using the code name "SAMP".

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SAMP, Para 9–3–14.
FAAO 7210.3, ATMOSPHERE SAMPLING FOR NUCLEAR CONTAMINATION, Para 6–3–4.
FAAO 7610.4, ATMOSPHERIC SAMPLING FOR NUCLEAR CONTAMINATION, Para 12–43.

j. Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense missions until the unknown aircraft is identified.

k. Expedite movement of Special Air Mission aircraft when SCOOT is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ground communications.

NOTE–
The term "SCOOT" will not be part of the call sign but may be used when the aircraft is airborne to indicate a request for special handling.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, LAW ENFORCEMENT OPERATIONS BY CIVIL AND MILITARY ORGANIZATIONS, Para 9–3–9.
FAAO 7610.4, APPLICATIONS, Para 12–71.

l. When requested, provide priority handling to TEAL and NOAA mission aircraft.

NOTE–
Priority handling may be requested by the pilot, or via telephone from CARCAH or the 53rd Weather Reconnais-

sance Squadron (53WRS) operations center personnel, or in the remarks section of the flight plan.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE FLIGHTS, Para 9–3–16.

m. IFR aircraft shall have priority over SVFR aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, Chapter 7, Section 5. SPECIAL VFR.

n. Providing priority and special handling to expedite the movement of OPEN SKIES observation and demonstration flights.

NOTE–
An Open Skies aircraft has priority over all "regular" air traffic. "Regular" is defined as all aircraft traffic other than:
1. *Emergencies.*
2. *Aircraft directly involved in presidential movement.*
3. *Forces or activities in actual combat.*
4. *Lifeguard, MED EVAC, AIR EVAC and active SAR missions.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65 OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT, Para 9–3–19.
FAAO 7210.3, OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT, Para 6–3–7.
TREATY ON OPEN SKIES, TREATY DOCUMENT, 102–37.

o. Aircraft operating under the National Route Program are not subject to route limiting restrictions (e.g. published preferred IFR routes, letter of agreement requirements, standard operating procedures).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES, Para 2–3–2.
FAAO 7110.65, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION, Para 2–2–15.
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS, Para 4–2–5.
FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 18, Section 17, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM.

2–1–5. EXPEDITIOUS COMPLIANCE

a. Use the word "immediately" only when expeditious compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

b. Use the word "expedite" only when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation.

c. In either case, if time permits, include the reason for this action.

2–1–6. SAFETY ALERT

Issue a safety alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is in a position/attitude which, in your judgment, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. Once the pilot informs you action is being taken to resolve the situation, you may discontinue the issuance of further alerts. Do not assume that because someone else has responsibility for the aircraft that the unsafe situation has been observed and the safety alert issued; inform the appropriate controller.

NOTE–
1 The issuance of a safety alert is a first priority (see para 2–1–2, DUTY PRIORITY) once the controller observes and recognizes a situation of unsafe aircraft proximity to terrain, obstacles, or other aircraft. Conditions, such as workload, traffic volume, the quality/limitations of the radar system, and the available lead time to react are factors in determining whether it is reasonable for the controller to observe and recognize such situations. While a controller cannot see immediately the development of every situation where a safety alert must be issued, the controller must remain vigilant for such situations and issue a safety alert when the situation is recognized.

2 Recognition of situations of unsafe proximity may result from MSAW/E–MSAW/LAAS, automatic altitude readouts, Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert, observations on a PAR scope, or pilot reports.

3 Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, will be taken.

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert– Immediately issue/initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in your judgment, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions. Issue the alert as follows:

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) LOW ALTITUDE ALERT,

CHECK YOUR ALTITUDE IMMEDIATELY.

THE (as appropriate) MEA/MVA/MOCA/MIA IN YOUR AREA IS (altitude),

or if an aircraft is past the final approach fix (nonprecision approach),

or the outer marker,

or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker (precision approach),

and, if known, issue

THE (as appropriate) MDA/DH IS (altitude).

b. Aircraft Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert– Immediately issue/initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware of another aircraft at an altitude which you believe places them in unsafe proximity. If feasible, offer the pilot an alternate course of action.

c. When an alternate course of action is given, end the transmission with the word "immediately."

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) TRAFFIC ALERT (position of traffic if time permits),

ADVISE YOU TURN LEFT/RIGHT (specific heading, if appropriate),

and/or

CLIMB/DESCEND (specific altitude if appropriate) IMMEDIATELY.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CONFLICT ALERT AND MODE C INTRUDER ALERT, Para 5-14-1.
FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (E-MSAW), Para 5-14-2.
FAAO 7110.65, CONFLICT ALERT/MODE C INTRUDER (MCI), Para 5-15-6.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE FILTERS, Para 5-2-24.

2-1-7. INFLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS

a. When a pilot reports an inflight equipment malfunction, determine the nature and extent of any special handling desired.

NOTE–
In-flight equipment malfunctions include partial or complete failure of equipment which may affect either safety and/or the ability of the flight to proceed under IFR in the ATC system. Controllers may expect reports from pilots regarding VOR, TACAN, ADF, GPS, or low frequency navigation receivers, impairment of air-ground communications capability, or other equipment deemed appropriate by the pilot (e.g. airborne weather radar). Pilots should communicate the nature and extent of any assistance desired from ATC.

b. Provide the maximum assistance possible consistent with equipment, workload, and any special handling requested.

c. Relay to other controllers or facilities who will subsequently handle the aircraft, all pertinent details concerning the aircraft and any special handling required or being provided.

2-1-8. MINIMUM FUEL

If an aircraft declares a state of "minimum fuel," inform any facility to whom control jurisdiction is transferred of the minimum fuel problem and be alert for any occurrence which might delay the aircraft en route.

NOTE–
Use of the term "minimum fuel" indicates recognition by a pilot that his fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching destination, he cannot accept any undue delay. This is not an emergency situation but merely an advisory that indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur. A minimum fuel advisory does not imply a need for traffic priority. Common sense and good judgment will determine the extent of assistance to be given in minimum fuel situations. If, at any time, the remaining usable fuel supply suggests the need for traffic priority to ensure a safe landing, the pilot should declare an emergency and report fuel remaining in minutes.

2-1-9. REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION

Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.

NOTE–
FSS's are responsible for classifying and disseminating Notices to Airmen.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, TIMELY INFORMATION, Para 3-3-3.
FAAO 7110.65, SERVICE LIMITATIONS, Para 5-1-6.
FAAO 7210.3, PERIODIC MAINTENANCE, Para 3-1-2.
USN, SEE OPNAVINST 3721.30.

2-1-10. NAVAID MALFUNCTIONS

When an aircraft reports a NAVAID malfunction, take the following actions:

NOTE–
The sequence of the actions stated in this paragraph, are not intended to circumvent good judgment should the circumstances so dictate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, SYSTEM COMPONENT MALFUNCTIONS, Para 3-5-2.

a. Request a report from a second aircraft.

b. If the second aircraft reports normal operations, continue use and inform the first aircraft. Record the incident on FAA Form 7230-4 or appropriate military form.

c. If the second aircraft confirms the malfunction or in the absence of a second aircraft report, activate the standby equipment or request the monitor facility to activate.

d. If normal operation is reported after the standby equipment is activated, continue use, record the incident on FAA Form 7230-4 or appropriate military form, and notify Airway Facilities (AF) personnel (the Systems Engineer of the ARTCC when an en route aid is involved).

e. If continued malfunction is reported after the standby equipment is activated or the standby equipment cannot be activated, inform AF personnel and request advice on whether or not the aid should be shut down. In the absence of a second aircraft report, advise the AF personnel of the time of the initial aircraft report and the estimated time a second aircraft report could be obtained.

2-1-11. USE OF MARSA

a. MARSA may only be applied to military operations specified in a letter of agreement or other appropriate FAA or military document.

NOTE-
Application of MARSA is a military command prerogative. It will not be invoked indiscriminately by individual units or pilots. It will be used only for IFR operations requiring its use. Commands authorizing MARSA will ensure that its implementation and terms of use are documented and coordinated with the control agency having jurisdiction over the area in which the operations are conducted. Terms of use will assign responsibility and provide for separation among participating aircraft.

b. ATC facilities do not invoke or deny MARSA. Their sole responsibility concerning the use of MARSA is to provide separation between military aircraft engaged in MARSA operations and other nonparticipating IFR aircraft.

c. DOD shall ensure that military pilots requesting special-use airspace/ATCAA's have coordinated with the scheduling agency, have obtained approval for entry, and are familiar with the appropriate MARSA procedures. ATC is not responsible for determining which military aircraft are authorized to enter special-use airspace/ATCAA's.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING, Para 9-3-10.

2-1-12. MILITARY PROCEDURES

Military procedures in the form of additions, modifications, and exceptions to the basic FAA procedure are prescribed herein when a common procedure has not been attained or to fulfill a specific requirement. They shall be applied by:

a. ATC facilities operated by that military service.

EXAMPLE-
1 An Air Force facility providing service for an Air Force base would apply USAF procedures to all traffic regardless of class.

2 A Navy facility providing service for a Naval Air Station would apply USN procedures to all traffic regardless of class.

b. ATC facilities, regardless of their parent organization (FAA, USAF, USN, USA), supporting a designated military airport exclusively. This designation determines which military procedures are to be applied.

EXAMPLE-
1 An FAA facility supports a USAF base exclusively; USAF procedures are applied to all traffic at that base.

2 An FAA facility provides approach control service for a Naval Air Station as well as supporting a civil airport; basic FAA procedures are applied at both locations by the FAA facility.

3 A USAF facility supports a USAF base and provides approach control service to a satellite civilian airport; USAF procedures are applied at both locations by the USAF facility.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ANNOTATIONS, Para 1-2-5.

c. Other ATC facilities when specified in a letter of agreement.

EXAMPLE-
A USAF unit is using a civil airport supported by an FAA facility- USAF procedures will be applied as specified in a letter of agreement between the unit and the FAA facility to the aircraft of the USAF unit. Basic FAA procedures will be applied to all other aircraft.

2-1-13. FORMATION FLIGHTS

Control formation flights as a single aircraft. When individual control is requested, issue advisory information which will assist the pilots in attaining separation. When pilot reports indicate separation has been established, issue control instructions as required.

NOTE-
1 Separation responsibility between aircraft within the formation during transition to individual control rests with the pilots concerned until standard separation has been attained.

2 Formation join-up and breakaway will be conducted in VFR weather conditions unless prior authorization has been obtained from ATC or individual control has been approved.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS, Para 5-5-7.
P/CG TERM-FORMATION FLIGHT.

2-1-14. COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE

a. Ensure that the necessary coordination has been accomplished before you allow an aircraft under your control to enter another controller's area of jurisdiction.

b. Before you issue control instructions directly or relay through another source to an aircraft which is within another controller's area of jurisdiction that will change that aircraft's heading, route, speed, or altitude, ensure that coordination has been accomplished with each of the controllers listed below whose area of jurisdiction is affected by those instructions unless otherwise specified by a letter of agreement or a facility directive:

1. The controller within whose area of jurisdiction the control instructions will be issued.

2. The controller receiving the transfer of control.

3. Any intervening controller(s) through whose area of jurisdiction the aircraft will pass.

c. If you issue control instructions to an aircraft through a source other than another controller (e.g. ARINC, FSS, another pilot) ensure that the necessary coordination has been accomplished with any controllers listed in subparas b.1., 2., and 3., whose area of jurisdiction is affected by those instructions unless otherwise specified by a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, CONTROL TRANSFER, Para 2-1-15.
FAAO 7110.65, ADJACENT AIRSPACE, Para 5-5-9.
FAAO 7110.65, TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, Para 5-4-5.
FAAO 7110.65, RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, Para 5-4-6.

2-1-15. CONTROL TRANSFER

a. Transfer control of an aircraft in accordance with the following conditions:

1. At a prescribed or coordinated location, time, fix, or altitude; or,

2. At the time a radar handoff and frequency change to the receiving controller have been completed and when authorized by a facility directive or letter of agreement which specifies the type and extent of control that is transferred.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE, Para 2-1-14.
FAAO 7110..65, TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, Para 5-4-5.
FAAO 7110.65, RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, Para 5-4-6.

b. Transfer control of an aircraft only after eliminating any potential conflict with other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.

c. Assume control of an aircraft only after it is in your area of jurisdiction unless specifically coordinated or as specified by letter of agreement or a facility directive.

2-1-16. SURFACE AREAS

a. Coordinate with the appropriate nonapproach control tower on an individual aircraft basis before issuing a clearance which would require flight within a surface area for which the tower has responsibility unless otherwise specified in a letter of agreement.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, LETTERS OF AGREEMENT, Para 4-3-1.
CFR PART 91.127, OPERATING ON OR IN THE VICINITY OF AN AIRPORT IN CLASS E AIRSPACE.
P/CG TERM-SURFACE AREA.

b. Coordinate with the appropriate control tower for transit authorization when you are providing radar traffic advisory service to an aircraft that will enter another facility's airspace.

NOTE-
The pilot is not expected to obtain his own authorization through each area when in contact with a radar facility.

c. Transfer communications to the appropriate facility, if required, prior to operation within a surface area for which the tower has responsibility.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER, Para 2-1-17.
FAAO 7110.65, SURFACE AREA RESTRICTIONS, Para 3-1-11.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7-6-1.
CFR PART 91.129, OPERATIONS IN CLASS D AIRSPACE.

2-1-17. RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER

a. Transfer radio communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated or specified by a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

b. Transfer radio communications by specifying the following:

NOTE-
Radio communications transfer procedures may be specified by a letter of agreement or contained in the route description of an MTR as published in the DOD Planning AP/1B (AP/3).

1. The facility name or location name and terminal function to be contacted. *TERMINAL:* Omit the location name when transferring communications to another controller within your facility; except when instructing the aircraft to change frequency for final approach guidance include the name of the facility.

2. Frequency to use except the following may be omitted:

(a) FSS frequency.

(b) Departure frequency if previously given or published on a SID chart for the procedure issued.

(c) *TERMINAL:*

(1) Ground or local control frequency if in your opinion the pilot knows which frequency is in use.

(2) The numbers preceding the decimal point if the ground control frequency is in the 121 MHz bandwidth.

EXAMPLE–
"Contact Tower."
"Contact Ground."
"Contact Ground Point Seven."
"Contact Ground, One Two Zero Point Eight."
"Contact Huntington Radio."
"Contact Departure."
"Contact Los Angeles Center, One Two Three Point Four."

3. Time, fix, altitude, or specifically when to contact a facility. You may omit this when compliance is expected upon receipt.

NOTE–
AIM, para 5–3–1, ARTCC COMMUNICATIONS, informs pilots that they are expected to maintain a listening watch on the transferring controller's frequency until the time, fix, or altitude specified.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CONTACT (facility name or location name and terminal function), (frequency).

If required,

AT (time, fix, or altitude).

c. In situations where an operational advantage will be gained, and following coordination with the receiving controller, you may instruct aircraft on the ground to monitor the receiving controller's frequency.

EXAMPLE–
"Monitor Tower."
"Monitor Ground."
"Monitor Ground Point Seven."
"Monitor Ground, One Two Zero Point Eight."

d. In situations where a sector has multiple frequencies or when sectors are combined using multiple frequencies and the aircraft will remain under your jurisdiction, transfer radio communication by specifying the following:

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) CHANGE TO MY FREQUENCY (state frequency).

EXAMPLE–
"United two twenty-two change to my frequency one two three point four."

REFERENCE–
AIM, CONTACT PROCEDURES, Para 4–2–3.

e. Avoid issuing a frequency change to helicopters known to be single-piloted during air-taxiing, hovering, or low-level flight. Whenever possible, relay necessary control instructions until the pilot is able to change frequency.

NOTE–
Most light helicopters are flown by one pilot and require the constant use of both hands and feet to maintain control. Although Flight Control Friction Devices assist the pilot, changing frequency near the ground could result in inadvertent ground contact and consequent loss of control. Pilots are expected to advise ATC of their single-pilot status if unable to comply with a frequency change.

REFERENCE–
AIM, COMMUNICATIONS, Para 4–3–14.

f. In situations where the controller does not want the pilot to change frequency but the pilot is expecting or may want a frequency change, use the following phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REMAIN THIS FREQUENCY.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CLEARANCE INFORMATION, Para 4–7–1.
FAAO 7110.65, COMMUNICATION TRANSFER, Para 5–12–8.

2–1–18. OPERATIONAL REQUESTS

Respond to a request from another controller, a pilot or vehicle operator by one of the following verbal means:

a. Restate the request in complete or abbreviated terms followed by the word "APPROVED." The phraseology "APPROVED AS REQUESTED" may be substituted in lieu of a lengthy read back.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Requested operation) APPROVED.

or

APPROVED AS REQUESTED.

b. State restrictions followed by the word "APPROVED."

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Restriction and/or additional instructions, requested operation) APPROVED.

c. State the word "UNABLE" and, time permitting, a reason.

PHRASEOLOGY-
UNABLE (requested operation).

and when necessary,

(reason and/or additional instructions.)

d. State the words "STAND BY."

NOTE-
"Stand By" is not an approval or denial. The controller acknowledges the request and will respond at a later time.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, Para 2-1-21.
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS, Para 4-2-5.
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 7-9-3.

2-1-19. WAKE TURBULENCE

a. Apply wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind heavy jets/B757's and, where indicated, to small aircraft behind large aircraft.

NOTE-
Para 5-5-3, MINIMA, specifies increased radar separation for small type aircraft landing behind large, heavy, or B757 aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

b. The separation minima shall continue to touchdown for all IFR aircraft not making a visual approach or maintaining visual separation.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5-9-5.

c. When parallel runways are less than 2,500 feet apart, do not permit a heavy jet/B757 aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.

2-1-20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES

a. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jet or B757 to:

REFERENCE-
AC 90-23, PILOT RESPONSIBILITY, Para 12.

1. *TERMINAL:* VFR aircraft not being radar vectored but are behind heavy jets or B757's.

2. IFR aircraft that accept a visual approach or visual separation.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7-4-1.

3. *TERMINAL:* VFR arriving aircraft that have previously been radar vectored and the vectoring has been discontinued.

b. Issue cautionary information to any aircraft if in your opinion, wake turbulence may have an adverse effect on it. When traffic is known to be a heavy aircraft, include the word *heavy* in the description.

NOTE-
Wake turbulence may be encountered by aircraft in flight as well as when operating on the airport movement area. Because wake turbulence is unpredictable, the controller is not responsible for anticipating its existence or effect. Although not mandatory during ground operations, controllers may use the words jet blast, propwash, or rotorwash, in lieu of wake turbulence, when issuing a caution advisory.

REFERENCE-
AC 90-23, AIRCRAFT WAKE TURBULENCE.
P/CG TERM-AIRCRAFT CLASSES.
P/CG TERM-WAKE TURBULENCE.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CAUTION WAKE TURBULENCE (traffic information).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.

2-1-21. TRAFFIC ADVISORIES

Unless an aircraft is operating within Class A airspace or omission is requested by the pilot, issue traffic advisories to all aircraft (IFR or VFR) on your frequency when, in your judgment, their proximity may diminish to less than the applicable separation minima. Where no separation minima applies, such as for VFR aircraft outside of Class B/Class C airspace, or a TRSA, issue traffic advisories to those aircraft on your frequency when in your judgment their proximity warrants it. Provide this service as follows:

a. To radar identified aircraft:

1. Azimuth from aircraft in terms of the 12-hour clock, or

2. When rapidly maneuvering aircraft prevent accurate issuance of traffic as in 1 above, specify the direction from an aircraft's position in terms of the eight cardinal compass points (N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, and NW). This method shall be terminated at the pilot's request.

3. Distance from aircraft in miles.

4. Direction in which traffic is proceeding and/or relative movement of traffic.

NOTE–
Relative movement includes closing, converging, parallel same direction, opposite direction, diverging, overtaking, crossing left to right, crossing right to left.

5. If known, type of aircraft and altitude.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES, Para 2–4–21.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC, (number) O'CLOCK,

or when appropriate,

(direction) (number) MILES, (direction)–BOUND and/or (relative movement),

and if known,

(type of aircraft and altitude).

or when appropriate,

(type of aircraft and relative position), (number of feet) FEET ABOVE/BELOW YOU.

If altitude is unknown,

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, eleven o'clock, one zero miles, southbound, converging, Boeing Seven Twenty Seven, one seven thousand."
"Traffic, twelve o'clock, one five miles, opposite direction, altitude unknown."
"Traffic, ten o'clock, one two miles, southeast bound, one thousand feet below you."

6. When requested by the pilot, issue radar vectors to assist in avoiding the traffic, provided the aircraft to be vectored is within your area of jurisdiction or coordination has been effected with the sector/facility in whose area the aircraft is operating.

7. If unable to provide vector service, inform the pilot.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL REQUESTS, Para 2–1–18.

8. Inform the pilot of the following when traffic you have issued is not reported in sight:

(a) The traffic is no factor.

(b) The traffic is no longer depicted on radar.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED,
or

(number) O'CLOCK TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED,
or

(direction) TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED.

b. To aircraft that are not radar identified:

1. Distance and direction from fix.

2. Direction in which traffic is proceeding.

3. If known, type of aircraft and altitude.

4. ETA over the fix the aircraft is approaching, if appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC, (number) MILES/MINUTES (direction) OF (airport or fix), (direction)–BOUND,

and if known,

(type of aircraft and altitude),

ESTIMATED (fix) (time),

or

TRAFFIC, NUMEROUS AIRCRAFT VICINITY (location).

if altitude is unknown,

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, one zero miles east of Forsythe V–O–R, Southbound, M–D Eighty, descending to one six thousand."
"Traffic, reported one zero miles west of Downey V–O–R, northbound, Apache, altitude unknown, estimated Joliet V–O–R one three one five."
"Traffic, eight minutes west of Chicago Heights V–O–R, westbound, Mooney, eight thousand, estimated Joliet V–O–R two zero three five."
"Traffic, numerous aircraft, vicinity of Delia airport."

c. For aircraft displaying Mode C, not radar identified, issue indicated altitude.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, one o'clock, six miles, eastbound, altitude indicates six thousand five hundred."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, TRAFFIC INFORMATION, Para 3–1–6.
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.
FAAO 7110.65, VFR DEPARTURE INFORMATION, Para 7–6–10.

2-1-22. BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION

a. Issue advisory information on pilot-reported, tower-observed, or radar-observed and pilot-verified bird activity. Include position, species or size of birds, if known, course of flight, and altitude. Do this for at least 15 minutes after receipt of such information from pilots or from adjacent facilities unless visual observation or subsequent reports reveal the activity is no longer a factor.

EXAMPLE–
"Flock of geese, one o'clock, seven miles, northbound, last reported at four thousand."
"Flock of small birds, southbound along Mohawk river, last reported at three thousand."
"Numerous flocks of ducks, vicinity Lake Winnebago, altitude unknown."

b. Relay bird activity information to adjacent facilities and to FSS's whenever it appears it will become a factor in their areas.

2-1-23. TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

The transfer of position responsibility shall be accomplished in accordance with the "Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of Position Responsibility," and appropriate facility directives each time operational responsibility for a position is transferred from one specialist to another.

2-1-24. WHEELS DOWN CHECK

USA/USAF/USN

Remind aircraft to check wheels down on each approach unless the pilot has previously reported wheels down for that approach.

NOTE–
The intent is solely to remind the pilot to lower the wheels, not to place responsibility on the controller.

a. Tower shall issue the wheels down check at an appropriate place in the pattern.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHECK WHEELS DOWN.

b. Approach/arrival control, GCA shall issue the wheels down check as follows:

1. To aircraft conducting ASR, PAR, or radar monitored approaches, before the aircraft starts descent on final approach.

2. To aircraft conducting instrument approaches and remaining on the radar facility's frequency, before the aircraft passes the outer marker/final approach fix.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WHEELS SHOULD BE DOWN.

2-1-25. SUPERVISORY NOTIFICATION

Ensure supervisor/controller-in-charge (CIC) is aware of conditions which impact sector/position operations including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Weather.

b. Equipment status.

c. Potential sector overload.

d. Emergency situations.

e. Special flights/operations.

2-1-26. PILOT DEVIATION NOTIFICATION

When it appears that the actions of a pilot constitute a pilot deviation, notify the pilot, work load permitting.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) POSSIBLE PILOT DEVIATION ADVISE YOU CONTACT (facility) AT (telephone number).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 8020.11, PILOT DEVIATIONS, Para 82.

2-1-27. TCAS RESOLUTION ADVISORIES

a. When an aircraft under your control jurisdiction informs you that it is responding to a TCAS Resolution Advisory (RA), do not issue control instructions that are contrary to the RA procedure that a crew member has advised you that they are executing. Provide safety alerts regarding terrain or obstructions and traffic advisories for the aircraft responding to the RA and all other aircraft under your control jurisdiction, as appropriate.

b. Unless advised by other aircraft that they are also responding to a TCAS RA, do not assume that other aircraft in the proximity of the responding aircraft are involved in the RA maneuver or are aware of the responding aircraft's intended maneuvers. Continue to provide control instructions, safety alerts, and traffic advisories as appropriate to such aircraft.

c. Once the responding aircraft has begun a maneuver in response to an RA, the controller is not responsible for providing standard separation between the aircraft that is responding to an RA and any other aircraft, airspace, terrain or obstructions. Responsibility for standard separation resumes when one of the following conditions are met:

1. The responding aircraft has returned to its assigned altitude, or

2. A crew member informs you that the TCAS maneuver is completed and you observe that standard separation has been reestablished, or

3. The responding aircraft has executed an alternate clearance and you observe that standard separation has been reestablished.

NOTE–
[1] AC 120–55A, Air Carrier Operational Approval and Use of TCAS II, suggests pilots use the following phraseology to notify controllers during TCAS events. When a TCAS RA may affect an ATC clearance, inform ATC when beginning the maneuver, or as soon as workload permits.

EXAMPLE–
[1] "New York Center, United 321, TCAS climb."

NOTE–
[2] When the RA has been resolved, the flight crew should advise ATC they are returning to their previously assigned clearance or subsequent amended clearance.

EXAMPLE–
[2] "New York Center, United 321, clear of conflict, returning to assigned altitude."

Section 2. FLIGHT PLANS AND CONTROL INFORMATION

2-2-1. RECORDING INFORMATION

a. Record flight plan information required by the type of flight plan and existing circumstances. Use authorized abbreviations when possible.

NOTE-
Generally, all military overseas flights are required to clear through a specified military base operations office (BASOPS). Pilots normally will not file flight plans directly with an FAA facility unless a BASOPS is not available. BASOPS will, in turn, forward the IFR flight notification message to the appropriate center.

b. *EN ROUTE:* When flight plans are filed directly with the center, record all items given by the pilot either on a flight progress strip/flight data entry or on a voice recorder. If the latter, enter in box 26 of the initial flight progress strip the sector or position number to identify where the information may be found in the event search and rescue (SAR) activities become necessary.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES, Para 2-3-2.

2-2-2. FORWARDING INFORMATION

a. Except during NAS Stage A operation, forward the flight plan information to the appropriate ATC facility, FSS, or BASOPS and record the time of filing and delivery on the form.

b. *EN ROUTE:* During NAS Stage A operation, the above manual actions are required in cases where the data is not forwarded automatically by the computer.

NOTE-
During NAS Stage A operation, data is exchanged between interfaced automated facilities and both the data and time of transmission are recorded automatically.

c. *EN ROUTE:* Forward proposed tower en route flight plans and any related amendments to the appropriate departure terminal facility.

2-2-3. FORWARDING VFR DATA

TERMINAL

Forward aircraft departure times to FSS's or military operations offices when they have requested them. Forward other VFR flight plan data only if requested by the pilot.

2-2-4. MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES

TERMINAL

Forward departure times on all military DVFR departures from joint-use airports to the military operations office.

NOTE-
1 Details for handling air carrier, nonscheduled civil, and military DVFR flight data are contained in FAAO 7610.4.

2 Military pilots departing DVFR from a joint-use airport will include the phrase "DVFR to (destination)" in their initial call-up to an FAA operated tower.

2-2-5. IFR TO VFR FLIGHT PLAN CHANGE

Request a pilot to contact the appropriate FSS if the pilot informs you of a desire to change from an IFR to a VFR flight plan.

2-2-6. IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA

Forward control information from controller to controller within a facility, then to the receiving facility as the aircraft progresses along its route. Where appropriate, use computer equipment in lieu of manual coordination procedures. Do not use the remarks section of flight progress strips in lieu of voice coordination to pass control information. Ensure that flight plan and control information is correct and up-to-date. When covered by a letter of agreement/facility directive, the time requirements of subpara a. may be reduced, and the time requirements of subpara b.1. and para 2-2-11, FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA, subpara a. may be increased up to 15 minutes when facilitated by automated systems or mandatory radar handoffs; or if operationally necessary because of manual data processing or nonradar operations, the time requirements of subpara a. may be increased.

NOTE-
1 The procedures for preparing flight plan and control information related to altitude reservations (ALTRV's) are contained in FAAO 7210.3, ALTRV FLIGHT DATA PROCESSING, Para 9-1-2. Development of the methods of assuring the accuracy and completeness of ALTRV flight plan and control information is the responsibility of the military liaison and security officer.

2 The term facility in this paragraph refers to centers and terminal facilities when operating in an en route capacity.

a. Forward the following information at least 15 minutes before the aircraft is estimated to enter the receiving facility's area:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. TCAS or heavy aircraft indicator if appropriate, type of aircraft, and appropriate aircraft equipment suffix. The TCAS indicator is "T/" and the heavy aircraft indicator is "H/." For aircraft that are both TCAS and heavy, the indicator is "B/". For B757, the indicator is "F/" and for B757 with TCAS, the indicator is "L/".

3. Assigned altitude and ETA over last reporting point/fix in transferring facility's area or assumed departure time when the departure point is the last point/fix in the transferring facility's area.

4. Altitude at which aircraft will enter the receiving facility's area if other than the assigned altitude.

5. True airspeed.

6. Point of departure.

7. Route of flight remaining.

8. Destination airport and clearance limit if other than destination airport.

9. ETA at destination airport (not required for military or scheduled air carrier aircraft).

10. Altitude requested by the aircraft if assigned altitude differs from requested altitude (within a facility only).

NOTE–
When an aircraft has crossed one facility's area and assignment at a different altitude is still desired, the pilot will reinitiate the request with the next facility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ANTICIPATED ALTITUDE CHANGES, Para 4-5-8.

11. When flight plan data must be forwarded manually and an aircraft has been assigned a beacon code by the computer, include the code as part of the flight plan.

NOTE–
When an IFR aircraft, or a VFR aircraft that has been assigned a beacon code by the host computer and whose flight plan will terminate in another facility's area cancels ATC service or does not activate the flight plan, send a remove strips (RS) message on that aircraft via the host keyboard, the FDIO keyboard or call via service F.

12. Longitudinal separation being used between aircraft at the same altitude if it results in these aircraft having less than 10 minutes separation at the facilities' boundary.

13. Any additional nonroutine operational information pertinent to flight safety.

NOTE–
En Route: This includes alerting the receiving controller that the flight is conducting celestial navigation training.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CELESTIAL NAVIGATION TRAINING, Para 9-3-2.

b. Forward position report over last reporting point in the transferring facility's area if any of the following conditions exist:

1. Time differs more than 3 minutes from estimate given.

2. Requested by receiving facility.

3. Agreed to between facilities.

2-2-7. MANUAL INPUT OF COMPUTER-ASSIGNED BEACON CODES

When a flight plan is manually entered into the computer and a computer-assigned beacon code has been forwarded with the flight plan data, insert the beacon code in the appropriate field as part of the input message.

2-2-8. ALTRV INFORMATION

EN ROUTE

When an aircraft is a part of an approved ALTRV, forward only those items necessary to properly identify the flight, update flight data contained in the ALTRV APVL, or revise previously given information.

2-2-9. COMPUTER MESSAGE VERIFICATION

EN ROUTE

Unless your facility is equipped to automatically obtain acknowledgment of receipt of transferred data, when you transfer control information by computer message, obtain, via Service F, acknowledgment that the receiving center has received the message and verification of the following:

a. Within the time limits specified by a letter of agreement or when not covered by a letter of agreement, at least 15 minutes before the aircraft is estimated to enter the receiving facility's area, or at the time of a radar handoff, or coordination for transfer of control:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Assigned altitude.

3. Departure or coordination fix time.

b. Any cancellation of IFR or HOST generated VFR flight plan.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA, Para 2-2-6.

2-2-10. TRANSMIT PROPOSED FLIGHT PLAN

EN ROUTE

a. Transmit proposed flight plans which fall within an ARTCC's Proposed Boundary Crossing Time (PBCT) parameter to adjacent ARTCC's via the Computer B network during hours of inter-center computer operation. In addition, when the route of flight of any proposed flight plan exceeds 20 elements external to the originating ARTCC's area, NADIN shall be used to forward the data to all affected centers.

b. During nonautomated operation, the proposed flight plans shall be sent via NADIN to the other centers involved when any of the following conditions are met:

1. The route of flight external to the originating center's area consists of 10 or more elements and the flight will enter 3 or more other center areas.

NOTE–
An element is defined as either a fix or route as specified in FAAO 7110.10, IFR FLIGHT PLAN CONTROL MESSAGES, Para 6-3-3.

2. The route of flight beyond the first point of exit from the originating center's area consists of 10 or more elements, which are primarily fixes described in fix-radial-distance or latitude/longitude format, regardless of the number of other center areas entered.

3. The flight plan remarks are too lengthy for interphone transmission.

2-2-11. FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA

a. Forward any amending data concerning previously forwarded flight plans except that revisions to ETA information in para 2-2-6, IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA, need only be forwarded when the time differs by more than 3 minutes from the estimate given.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification), REVISED (revised information).

EXAMPLE–
"American Two, revised flight level, three three zero."

"United Eight Ten, revised estimate, Front Royal two zero zero five."

"Douglas Five Zero One Romeo, revised altitude, eight thousand."
"U.S. Air Eleven Fifty One, revised type, Heavy Boeing Seven Sixty-seven."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA, Para 2-2-6.

b. Computer acceptance of an appropriate input message fulfills the requirement for sending amended data. During NAS Stage A operations, the amendment data are considered acknowledged on receipt of a Computer Readout Device (CRD) update message or a computer-generated flight progress strip containing the amended data.

NOTE–
1 The successful utilization of automation equipment requires timely and accurate insertion of changes and/or new data.

2 If a pilot is not issued a computer-generated PDR/PDAR/PAR and if amendment data is not entered into the computer, the next controller will have incorrect route information.

c. Forward any amended control information and record the action on the appropriate flight progress strip. Additionally, when a route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended within 15 minutes of an aircraft's proposed departure time, the facility that amended the clearance shall coordinate the amendment with the receiving facility via verbal AND automated means to ensure timely passage of the information.

NOTE–
The term "receiving" facility means the ATC facility that is expected to transmit the amended clearance to the intended aircraft/pilot.

d. *EN ROUTE:* Effect manual coordination on any interfacility flight plan data that is not passed through automated means.

2-2-12. AIRBORNE MILITARY FLIGHTS

Forward to FSS's the following information received from airborne military aircraft:

a. IFR flight plans and changes from VFR to IFR flight plans.

b. Changes to an IFR flight plan as follows:

1. Change in destination.

(a) Aircraft identification and type.

(b) Departure point.

(c) Original destination.

(d) Position and time.

(e) New destination.

(f) ETA.

(g) Remarks including change in fuel exhaustion time.

(h) Revised ETA.

2. Change in fuel exhaustion time.

NOTE–
This makes current information available to FSSs for relay to military bases concerned and for use by centers in the event of two-way radio communications failure.

2-2-13. FORWARDING FLIGHT PLAN DATA BETWEEN U.S. ARTCC'S AND CANADIAN ACC'S

EN ROUTE

a. *Domestic–* (Continental U.S./Canadian Airspace except Alaska) Proposed departure flight plans and en route estimates will be handled on a 30 minute lead time (or as bilaterally agreed) between any ACC and ARTCC.

b. *International–* Any route changes (except SID's) must be forwarded to the appropriate Oceanic/Pre-oceanic ACC or ARTCC with an optimum lead time of 30 minutes or as soon as this information becomes available.

c. Initially, if a flight goes from U.S. airspace into Canadian airspace and returns to U.S. airspace, the ACC will be responsible for forwarding the flight plan data to the appropriate ARTCC by voice transmission except for flights which traverse mutually agreed on airways/fixes. These airways/fixes will be determined on a case-by-case basis and will be based on time and distance considerations at the regional level.

2-2-14. TELETYPE FLIGHT DATA FORMAT- U.S. ARTCC'S - CANADIAN ACC'S

EN ROUTE

The exchange of flight plan data between Canadian ACC's and U.S. ARTCC's shall be made as follows:

a. The U.S. ARTCC's will transmit flight data to the Canadian ACC's in one of the following formats:

1. NADIN II input format as described in the NAS Management Directives (MD's) for:

(a) Flight Plan Messages:

(1) Active.

(2) Proposed.

(b) Amendment Messages.

(c) Cancellation Messages.

(d) Response Messages to Canadian Input:

(1) Acknowledgment Messages.

(2) Error Messages.

(3) Rejection Messages.

2. Transport Canada (TC) ACC Flight Strip Format: Where the data to be printed on the ACC strip form exceeds the strip form field size, the NADIN II input format in 1 above will be used. Input sequentially fields 1 through 8 in para 2-2-6, IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA, subpara a.

b. TC's ACC's will transmit flight data to the FAA ARTCC's in the following format:

1. NADIN II input format as described in NAS MD's for:

(a) Flight Plan Messages:

(1) Active.

(2) Proposed.

(b) Amendment Messages.

(c) Cancellation Messages.

(d) Correction Messages.

2-2-15. NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION

a. "NRP" shall be retained in the remarks section of the flight plan if the aircraft is moved due to weather, traffic, or other tactical reasons.

NOTE–
Every effort should be made to ensure the aircraft is returned to the original filed flight plan/altitude as soon as conditions warrant.

b. If the route of flight is altered due to a pilot request, "NRP" shall be removed from the remarks section of the flight plan.

c. "NRP" shall not be entered in the remarks section of a flight plan, unless prior coordination is accomplished with the ATCSCC or as prescribed by international NRP flight operations procedures.

d. The en route facility within which an international flight entering the conterminous United States requests to participate in the NRP shall enter "NRP" in the remarks section of the flight plan.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.
FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES, Para 2-3-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS, Para 4-2-5.
FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 18, Section 17, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM.

Section 3. FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS

2-3-1. GENERAL

Unless otherwise authorized in a facility directive, use flight progress strips to post current data on air traffic and clearances required for control and other air traffic control services. To prevent misinterpretation when data is hand printed, use standard hand-printed characters.

En route: Flight progress strips shall be posted.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP USAGE, Para 7-1-6.

a. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes. To correct, update, or preplan information:

1. Do not erase or overwrite any item. Use an "X" to delete a climb/descend and maintain arrow, an at or above/below symbol, a cruise symbol, and unwanted altitude information. Write the new altitude information immediately adjacent to it and within the same space.

2. Do not draw a horizontal line through an altitude being vacated until after the aircraft has reported or is observed (valid Mode C) leaving the altitude.

3. Preplanning may be accomplished in red pencil.

b. Manually prepared strips shall conform to the format of machine-generated strips and manual strip preparation procedures will be modified simultaneously with the operational implementation of changes in the machine-generated format. (See FIG 2-3-1.)

c. Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e. 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.

NOTE–
A slant line crossing through the number zero and underline of the letter "s" on handwritten portions of flight progress strips are required only when there is reason to believe the lack of these markings could lead to misunderstanding. A slant line crossing through the number zero is required on all weather data.

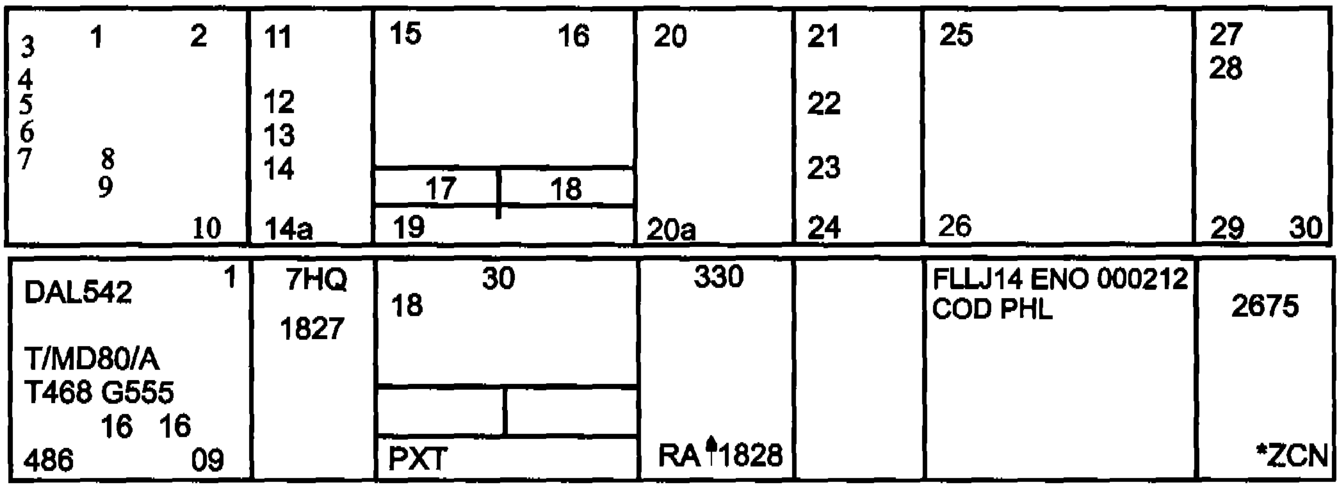
Standard Recording of Hand-printed Characters

Typed	Hand Printed	Typed	Hand Printed
A	A	T	T
B	B	U	U
C	C	V	V
D	D	W	W
E	E	X	X
F	F	Y	Y
G	G	Z	Ƶ
H	H		
I	I	1	1
J	J	2	2
K	K	3	3
L	L	4	4
M	M	5	5
N	N	6	6
O	O	7	7
P	P	8	8
Q	Q	9	9
R	R	0	Ø
S	S		

FIG 2-3-1

2-3-2. EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES

Flight Progress Strip
(7230-19)



a. Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230-19) shall be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces:

Block	*Information Recorded*
1.	Verification symbol if required.
2.	Revision number.
3.	Aircraft identification.
4.	Number of aircraft if more than one, TCAS/ heavy aircraft indicator if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix. The TCAS indicator is "T/" and the heavy aircraft indicator is "H/". For aircraft that are both TCAS and heavy, the indicator is "B/". For B757, the indicator is "F/" and for B757 with TCAS, the indicator is "L/".
5.	Filed true airspeed.
6.	Sector number.
7.	Computer identification number if required.
8.	Estimated ground speed.
9.	Revised ground speed or strip request (SR) originator.
10.	Strip number.
11.	Previous fix.
12.	Estimated time over previous fix.
13.	Revised estimated time over previous fix.
14.	Actual time over previous fix, or actual departure time entered on first fix posting after departure.
14a.	Plus time expressed in minutes from the previous fix to the posted fix.

Block	*Information Recorded*
15.	Center-estimated time over fix (in hours and minutes), or clearance information for departing aircraft.
16.	Arrows to indicate if aircraft is departing (↑) or arriving (↓).
17.	Pilot-estimated time over fix.
18.	Actual time over fix, time leaving holding fix, arrival time at nonapproach control airport, or symbol indicating cancellation of IFR flight plan for arriving aircraft, or departure time (actual or assumed).
19.	Fix. For departing aircraft, add proposed departure time.
20.	Altitude information (in hundreds of feet) or as noted below.
NOTE	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e. FL 330 as 33, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
20a.	**OPTIONAL USE,** when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE,** when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being use at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.

Block	Information Recorded
21.	Next posted fix or coordination fix.
22.	Pilot's estimated time over next fix.
23.	Arrows to indicate north (↑), south (↓), east (→), or west (←) direction of flight if required.
24.	Requested altitude.
NOTE	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e. FL 330 as 33, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
25.	Point of origin, route as required for control and data relay, and destination.
26.	Pertinent remarks, minimum fuel, point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information or sector/position number (when applicable in accordance with para 2–2–1, RECORDING INFORMATION), or NRP.
27.	Mode 3/A beacon code if applicable.
28.	Miscellaneous control data (expected further clearance time, time cleared for approach, etc.).
29–30.	Transfer of control data and coordination indicators.

FIG 2–3–2

b. Latitude/longitude coordinates may be used to define waypoints and may be substituted for nonadapted NAVAID's in space 25 of domestic en route flight progress strips provided it is necessary to accommodate a random RNAV or GNSS route request.

c. Facility Air Traffic managers may authorize the optional use of spaces 13, 14, 14a, 22, 23, 24, and 28 for point out information, radar vector information, speed adjustment information, or transfer of control data.

2-3-3. TERMINAL DATA ENTRIES

a. Arrivals:

Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230-7.1, 7230-7.2, and 7230-8) shall be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces. Facility managers can authorize omissions and/or optional use of spaces 2A , 9A, and 10-18, if no misunderstanding will result. These omissions and/or optional uses shall be specified in a facility directive.

1	5	8	9	10	11	12
2 2A	6			13	14	15
3				16	17	18
4	7	8A	9A			

Block	*Information Recorded*
1.	Aircraft identification.
2.	Revision number (FDIO locations only).
2A.	Strip request originator. (At FDIO locations this indicates the sector or position that requested a strip be printed.)
3.	Number of aircraft if more than one, TCAS/heavy aircraft indicator if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix. The TCAS indicator is "T/" and the heavy aircraft indicator is "H/". For aircraft that are both TCAS and heavy, the indicator is "B/". For B757, the indicator is "F/" and for B757 with TCAS, the indicator is "L/".
4.	Computer identification number if required.
5.	Secondary radar (beacon) code assigned.
6.	(FDIO Locations.) The previous fix will be printed. (Non-FDIO Locations.) Use of the inbound airway. This function is restricted to facilities where flight data is received via interphone when agreed upon by the center and terminal facilities.
7.	Coordination fix.
8.	Estimated time of arrival at the coordination fix or destination airport.
8A.	**OPTIONAL USE,** when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE,** when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being used at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events when the voice recorders are not operational and strips are being used at the facility. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.
9.	Altitude (in hundreds of feet) and remarks.
NOTE	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i. e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
9A.	Minimum fuel, destination airport/point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information. Air Traffic managers may authorize in a facility directive the omission of any of these items, **except minimum fuel,** if no misunderstanding will result.
NOTE	*Authorized omissions and optional use of spaces shall be specified in the facility directive concerning strip marking procedures.*
10-18.	Enter data as specified by a facility directive. Radar facility personnel need not enter data in these spaces except when nonradar procedures are used or when radio recording equipment is inoperative.

FIG 2-3-3

b. Departures:

Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230–7.1, 7230–7.2, and 7230–8) shall be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces. Facility managers can authorize omissions and/or optional use of spaces 2A , 9A, and 10–18, if no misunderstanding will result. These omissions and/or optional uses shall be specified in a facility directive.

1		5	8	9	10	11	12
2	2A	6			13	14	15
3							
4		7	8A	9A	16	17	18

Block	*Information Recorded*
1.	Aircraft identification.
2.	Revision number (FDIO locations only).
2A.	Strip request originator. (At FDIO locations this indicates the sector or position that requested a strip be printed.)
3.	Number of aircraft if more than one, TCAS/heavy aircraft indicator if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix. The TCAS indicator is "T/" and the heavy aircraft indicator is "H/". For aircraft that are both TCAS and heavy, the indicator is "B/". For B757, the indicator is "F/" and for B757 with TCAS, the indicator is "L/".
4.	Computer identification number if required.
5.	Secondary radar (beacon) code assigned.
6.	Proposed departure time.
7.	Requested altitude.
NOTE	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i. e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
8.	Departure airport.

Block	*Information Recorded*
8A.	**OPTIONAL USE,** when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE,** when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being used at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events when the voice recorders are not operational and strips are being used at the facility. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.
9.	**Computer–generated:** Route, destination, and remarks. Manually enter altitude/altitude restrictions in the order flown, if appropriate, and remarks.
9.	**Hand–prepared:** Clearance limit, route, altitude/altitude restrictions in the order flown, if appropriate, and remarks.
NOTE	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i. e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
9A.	Point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information.
10–18.	Enter data as specified by a facility directive. Items, such as departure time, runway used for takeoff, check marks to indicate information forwarded or relayed, may be entered in these spaces.

FIG 2–3–4

c. Overflights:

Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230–7.1, 7230–7.2, and 7230–8) shall be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces. Facility managers can authorize omissions and/or optional use of spaces 2A , 9A, and 10–18, if no misunderstanding will result. These omissions and/or optional uses shall be specified in a facility directive.

1		5	8	9	10	11	12
2	2A	6			13	14	15
3							
4		7	8A	9A	16	17	18

Block	*Information Recorded*
1.	Aircraft identification.
2.	Revision number (FDIO locations only).
2A.	Strip request originator. (At FDIO locations this indicates the sector or position that requested a strip be printed.)
3.	Number of aircraft if more than one, TCAS/heavy aircraft indicator if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix. The TCAS indicator is "T/" and the heavy aircraft indicator is "H/". For aircraft that are both TCAS and heavy, the indicator is "B/". For B757, the indicator is "F/" and for B757 with TCAS, the indicator is "L/".
4.	Computer identification number if required.
5.	Secondary radar (beacon) code assigned.
6.	Coordination fix.
7.	Overflight coordination indicator (FDIO locations only).
NOTE	*The overflight coordination indicator identifies the facility to which flight data has been forwarded.*
8.	Estimated time of arrival at the coordination fix.
8A.	**OPTIONAL USE,** when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE,** when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being used at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events when the voice recorders are not operational and strips are being used at the facility. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.
9.	Altitude and route of flight through the terminal area.
NOTE	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i. e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
9A.	Point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information.
10–18.	Enter data as specified by a facility directive.

FIG 2–3–5

NOTE–

National standardization of items (10 through 18) is not practical because of regional and local variations in operating methods; e.g., single fix, multiple fix, radar, tower en route control, etc..

d. Air traffic managers at automated terminal radar facilities may waive the requirement to use flight progress strips provided:

1. Backup systems such as multiple radar sites/systems or single site radars with CENRAP are utilized.

2. Local procedures are documented in a facility directive. These procedures should include but not be limited to:

(a) Departure areas and/or procedures.

(b) Arrival procedures.

(c) Overflight handling procedures.

(d) Transition from radar to nonradar.

(e) Transition from arts to nonarts.

(f) Transition from ASR to CENRAP.

3. No misunderstanding will occur as a result of no strip usage.

4. Unused flight progress strips, facility developed forms and/or blank notepads shall be provided for controller use.

5. Facilities shall revert to flight progress strip usage if backup systems referred to in subpara a. are not available.

e. Air traffic managers at FDIO locations may authorize reduced lateral spacing between fields so as to print all FDIO data to the left of the strip perforation when using FAA form 7230–7.2. all items will retain the same relationship to each other as they do when the full length strip (FAA form 7230–7.1) is used.

2–3–4. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY

Indicate aircraft identity by one of the following using combinations not to exceed seven alphanumeric characters:

a. Civil aircraft, including air-carrier aircraft letter-digit registration number including the letter "T" prefix for air taxi aircraft, the letter "L" for lifeguard aircraft, 3–letter aircraft company designator specified in the Contractions Handbook followed by the trip or flight number. Use the operating air carrier's company name in identifying equipment interchange flights.

EXAMPLE–
"N12345."
"TN5552Q."
"AAl192."
"LN751B."

NOTE–
The letter "L" is not to be used for air carrier /air taxi lifeguard aircraft.

b. Military Aircraft–

1. Prefixes indicating branch of service and/or type of mission followed by the last 5 digits of the serial number (the last 4 digits for CAF/CAM/CTG). (See TBL 2–3–1 and TBL 2–3–2.)

2. Pronounceable words of 3, 4, 5, and 6 letters followed by a 4–, 3–, 2–, or 1–digit number.

EXAMPLE–
"Samp Three One Six."

3. Assigned double-letter 2–digit flight number.

4. Navy or Marine fleet and training command aircraft, one of the following:

(a) The service prefix and 2 letters (use phonetic alphabet equivalent) followed by 2 or 3 digits.

Branch of Service Prefix

Prefix	*Branch*
A	U.S. Air Force
C	U.S. Coast Guard
G	Air or Army National Guard
R	U.S. Army
VM	U.S. Marine Corps
VV	U.S. Navy
CAF	Canadian Armed Force
CAM	Canadian Armed Force (Transport Command)
CTG	Canadian Coast Guard

TBL 2–3–1

Military Mission Prefix

Prefix	*Mission*
E	Medical Air Evacuation
F	Flight Check
L	LOGAIR (USAF Contract)
RCH	AMC (Air Mobility Command)
S	Special Air Mission

TBL 2–3–2

(b) The service prefix and a digit and a letter (use phonetic alphabet equivalent) followed by 2 or 3 digits.

c. Special-use– approved special-use identifiers.

2-3-5. AIRCRAFT TYPE

Use the approved codes listed in Appendices A thru C to indicate aircraft type.

2-3-6. USAF/USN UNDERGRADUATE PILOTS

To identify aircraft piloted by solo USAF/USN undergraduate student pilots (who may occasionally request revised clearances because they normally are restricted to flight in VFR conditions), the aircraft identification in the flight plan shall include the letter "Z" as a suffix. Do not use this suffix, however, in ground-to-air communication.

NOTE–
USAF solo students who have passed an instrument certification check may penetrate cloud layers in climb or descent only. Requests for revised clearances to avoid clouds in level flight can still be expected. This does not change the requirement to use the letter "Z" as a suffix to the aircraft identification.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, Para 2-4-20.
FAAO 7610.4, CHAPTER 12, SECTION 10, USAF UNDERGRADUATE FLYING TRAINING (UFT)/PILOT INSTRUCTOR TRAINING (PIT).

2-3-7. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or navigation capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant. (See TBL 2-3-3.)

b. When forwarding this information, state the aircraft type followed by the word "slant" and the appropriate phonetic letter equivalent of the suffix.

EXAMPLE–
"Cessna Three-Ten slant tango."
"A-Ten slant november."
"F-Sixteen slant papa."
"Seven-Sixty-Seven slant golf."

2-3-8. CLEARANCE STATUS

Use an appropriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (–) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft. To indicate delay status use:

a. The symbol "H" at the clearance limit when holding instructions have been included in the aircraft's original clearance. Show detailed holding information following the dash when holding differs from the established pattern for the fix; i.e., turns, leg lengths, etc.

b. The symbols "F" or "O" to indicate the clearance limit when a delay is not anticipated.

2-3-9. CONTROL SYMBOLOGY

Use authorized control and clearance symbols or abbreviations for recording clearances, reports, and instructions. Control status of aircraft must always be current. You may use:

a. Plain language markings when it will aid in understanding information.

b. Locally approved identifiers. Use these only within your facility and not on teletypewriter or interphone circuits.

c. Plain sheets of paper or locally prepared forms to record information when flight progress strips are not used. (See TBL 2-3-4 and TBL 2-3-5.)

d. Control Information Symbols
(See FIG 2-3-6 and FIG 2-3-7.)

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 4-5-3.

Aircraft Equipment Suffix

	NO DME	*DME*	*TACAN ONLY*	*AREA NAVIGATION*
No Transponder	/X	/D	/M	/Y
Transponder (no altitude capability)	/T	/B	/N	/C
Transponder (with altitude encoding)	/U	/A	/P	/R /G /F /E /W

NOTE–
1 The /F and /E suffixes will only be used by aircraft operating to and from airports within the United States and U.S. territories unless authorized by the controlling authority.
2 Aircraft that will file /R (RNAV) are those equipped with: OMEGA, very low frequency (VLF), inertial systems (INS) and/or any of these systems combined with VOR, DME, and/or ILS/MLS systems.
3 Aircraft that will file /G (GPS) are those equipped with: GPS/GNSS approach capable.
4 Aircraft that will file /F (FMS) are those equipped with: a single FMS that is capable of vertical navigation (VNAV).
5 Aircraft that will file /E (FMS) are those equipped with: dual inertial reference units (IRU's), dual FMS's, and an electronic map. All /E aircraft are authorized to fly all FMS procedures including those designated "for use by /F aircraft only."
6 The /W suffix will identify aircraft that are approved for reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM). In addition to enhanced altimetry systems, all aircraft will have area navigation and an operating transponder with altitude (Mode C).
7 All aircraft operating with these equipment suffixes will have operating transponders with altitude (Mode C) capability. If an aircraft is unable to operate with a transponder and altitude encoding, it will revert to the appropriate code listed above under Area Navigation.

TBL 2–3–3

Clearance Abbreviations

Abbreviation	*Meaning*
A	Cleared to airport (point of intended landing)
B	Center clearance delivered
C	ATC clears (when clearance relayed through non–ATC facility)
CAF	Cleared as filed
D	Cleared to depart from the fix
F	Cleared to the fix
H	Cleared to hold and instructions issued
L	Cleared to land
N	Clearance not delivered
O	Cleared to the outer marker
PD	Cleared to climb/descend at pilot's discretion
Q	Cleared to fly specified sectors of a NAVAID defined in terms of courses, bearings, radials or quadrants within a designated radius.
T	Cleared through (for landing and takeoff through intermediate point)
V	Cleared over the fix
X	Cleared to cross (airway, route, radial) at (point)
Z	Tower jurisdiction

TBL 2–3–4

Miscellaneous Abbreviations

Abbreviation	*Meaning*
BC	Back course approach
CT	Contact approach
FA	Final approach
FMS	Flight Management System Approach
GPS	GPS Approach
I	Initial approach
ILS	ILS approach
MA	Missed approach
MLS	MLS approach
NDB	Nondirectional radio beacon approach
OTP	VFR conditions–on–top
PA	Precision approach
PT	Procedure turn
RA	Resolution Advisory (Pilot reported TCAS event)
RH	Runway Heading
RP	Report immediately upon passing (fix / altitude)
RX	Report crossing
SA	Surveillance approach
SI	Straight–in approach
TA	TACAN approach
TL	Turn left
TR	Turn right
VA	Visual approach
VR	VOR approach

TBL 2–3–5

Control Information Symbols [Part 1]

Symbols	*Meaning*
T→( )	Depart (direction, if specified)
↑	Climb and maintain
↓	Descend and maintain
→	Cruise
@	At
X	Cross
→M→	Maintain
$\overline{\overline{7}}$	Join or intercept airway/jet route/track or course
=	While in controlled airspace
△	While in control area
→△	Enter control area
△→	Out of control area
NW↘◯ ◯↗NE ◯→ E	Cleared to enter, depart or through surface area. Indicated direction of flight by arrow and appropriate compass letter. Maintain Special VFR conditions (altitude if appropriate) while in surface area.
250 K	Aircraft requested to adjust speed to 250 knots.
-20 K	Aircraft requested to reduce speed 20 knots.
+30 K	Aircraft requested to increase speed 30 knots.
Ⓦ	Local Special VFR operations in the vicinity of (name) airport are authorized until(time). Maintain special VFR conditions (altitude if appropriate).
>	Before
<	After or Past
$\underline{170}$ (red)	Inappropriate altitude/flight level for direction of flight. (Underline assigned altitude/flight level in red).
/	Until
( )	Alternate instructions
$\overline{\textit{Restriction}}$	Restriction
$\overline{\downarrow}$	At or Below
$\underline{\uparrow}$	At or Above
-(Dash)	From-to (route, time, etc.)
(Alt)B(Alt)	Indicates a block altitude assignment. Altitudes are inclusive, and the first altitude shall be lower than the second. *Example*: 310B370
v <	Clearance void if aircraft not off ground by (time)

NOTE: The absence of an airway route number between two fixes in the route of flight indicates "direct"; no symbol or abbreviation is required.

FIG 2-3-6

Control Information Symbols [Part 2]

Symbols	*Meaning*
℄	Pilot canceled flight plan
✓	*EN ROUTE*: Aircraft has reported at assigned altitude, *Example*: 80 ✓
✓	*TERMINAL/FSS*: Information forwarded (indicated information forwarded as required)
○ (red)	*EN ROUTE*: Information or revised information forwarded. (Circle, in red, inappropriate altitude/flight level for direction of flight or other control information when coordinated. Also circle, in red, the time (minutes and altitude) when a flight plan or estimate is forwarded. Use method in both inter-center and intra-center coordination.)
(50)	Other than assigned altitude reported (circle reported altitude)
10 / 6	DME holding (use with mileages)(Upper figure indicates distance from station to DME fix, lower figure indicates length of holding pattern.) In this example, the DME fix is 10 miles out with a 6 mile pattern indicated.
(mi.)(dir.)	DME arc of VORTAC, TACAN, or MLS.
⊖(freq.)	Contact (facility) or (freq.), (time, fix, or altitude if appropriate). Insert frequency only when it is other than standard.
R	Radar contact.
R	*EN ROUTE*: Requested altitude (preceding altitude information)
~~R~~	Radar service terminated
>R<	Radar contact lost
RV	Radar vector
RX	Pilot resumed own navigation
Ⓡ	Radar handoff (circle symbol when handoff completed)
E (red)	EMERGENCY
W (red)	WARNING
P	Point out initiated. Indicate the appropriate facility, sector or position. *Example*: PZFW.
FUEL	Minimum fuel

NOTE: The absence of an airway route number between two fixes in the route of flight indicates "direct"; no symbol or abbreviation is required.

FIG 2-3-7

Section 4. RADIO AND INTERPHONE COMMUNICATIONS

2-4-1. RADIO COMMUNICATIONS

Use radio frequencies for the special purposes for which they are intended. A single frequency may be used for more than one function except as follows:

TERMINAL: When combining positions in the tower, do not use ground control frequency for airborne communications.

NOTE-
Due to the limited number of frequencies assigned to towers for the ground control function, it is very likely that airborne use of a ground control frequency could cause interference to other towers or interference to your aircraft from another tower. When combining these functions, it is recommended combining them on local control. The ATIS may be used to specify the desired frequency.

2-4-2. MONITORING

Monitor interphones and assigned radio frequencies continuously.

NOTE-
Although all FAA facilities, including RAPCON's and RATCF's, are required to monitor all assigned frequencies continuously, USAF facilities may not monitor all unpublished discrete frequencies.

2-4-3. PILOT ACKNOWLEDGMENT/READ BACK

a. When issuing clearances or instructions ensure acknowledgment by the pilot.

NOTE-
Pilots may acknowledge clearances, instructions, or other information by using "Wilco," "Roger," "Affirmative," or other words or remarks.

REFERENCE-
AIM, CONTACT PROCEDURES, Para 4-2-3.

b. If altitude, heading, or other items are read back by the pilot, ensure the read back is correct. If incorrect or incomplete, make corrections as appropriate.

2-4-4. AUTHORIZED INTERRUPTIONS

As necessary, authorize a pilot to interrupt his communications guard.

NOTE-
Some users have adopted procedures to insure uninterrupted receiving capability with ATC when a pilot with only one operative communications radio must interrupt his communications guard because of a safety related problem requiring airborne communications with his company. In this event, pilots will request approval to abandon guard on the assigned ATC frequency for a mutually agreeable time period. Additionally, they will inform controllers of the NAVAID voice facility and the company frequency they will monitor.

2-4-5. AUTHORIZED TRANSMISSIONS

Transmit only those messages necessary for air traffic control or otherwise contributing to air safety.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, AUTHORIZED MESSAGES NOT DIRECTLY ASSOCIATED WITH AT SERVICES, Para 3-2-2.

2-4-6. FALSE OR DECEPTIVE COMMUNICATIONS

Take action to detect, prevent, and report:

a. False, deceptive, or phantom controller communications to an aircraft or controller. The following shall be accomplished when false or deceptive communications occur:

1. Correct false information.

2. Broadcast an alert to aircraft operating on all frequencies within the area where deceptive or phantom transmissions have been received.

EXAMPLE-
"Attention all aircraft. False ATC instructions have been received in the area of Long Beach Airport. Exercise extreme caution on all frequencies and verify instructions."

3. Collect pertinent information regarding the incident.

4. Notify the operational supervisor of the false, deceptive, or phantom transmission and report all relevant information pertaining to the incident.

2-4-7. AUTHORIZED RELAYS

a. Relay operational information to aircraft or aircraft operators as necessary. Do not agree to handle such messages on a regular basis. Give the source of any such message you relay.

b. Relay official FAA messages as required.

NOTE-
The FAA Administrator and Deputy Administrator will sometimes use code phrases to identify themselves in air-to-ground communications as follows:
Administrator- "SAFEAIR ONE."
Deputy Administrator- "SAFEAIR TWO."

EXAMPLE-
"Miami Center, Jetstar One, this is SAFEAIR ONE, (message)."

c. Relay operational information to military aircraft operating on, or planning to operate on IR's.

2-4-8. RADIO MESSAGE FORMAT

Use the following format for radio communications with an aircraft:

a. Sector/position on initial radio contact:

1. Identification of aircraft.

2. Identification of ATC unit.

3. Message (if any).

4. The word "over" if required.

b. Subsequent radio transmissions from the same sector/position shall use the same format, except the identification of the ATC unit may be omitted.

TERMINAL: You may omit aircraft identification after initial contact when conducting the final portion of a radar approach.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, Para 2-4-20.

2-4-9. ABBREVIATED TRANSMISSIONS

Transmissions may be abbreviated as follows:

a. Use the identification prefix and the last 3 digits or letters of the aircraft identification after communications have been established. Do not abbreviate similar sounding aircraft identifications or the identification of an air carrier or other civil aircraft having an FAA authorized call sign.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, Para 2-4-20.

b. Omit the facility identification after communication has been established.

c. Transmit the message immediately after the callup (without waiting for the aircraft's reply) when the message is short and receipt is generally assured.

d. Omit the word "over" if the message obviously requires a reply.

2-4-10. INTERPHONE TRANSMISSION PRIORITIES

Give priority to interphone transmissions as follows:

a. First priority– Emergency messages including essential information on aircraft accidents or suspected accidents. After an actual emergency has passed, give a lower priority to messages relating to that accident.

b. Second priority– Clearances and control instructions.

c. Third priority– Movement and control messages using the following order of preference when possible:

1. Progress reports.

2. Departure or arrival reports.

3. Flight plans.

d. Fourth priority– Movement messages on VFR aircraft.

2-4-11. PRIORITY INTERRUPTION

Use the words "emergency" or "control" for interrupting lower priority messages when you have an emergency or control message to transmit.

2-4-12. INTERPHONE MESSAGE FORMAT

Use the following format for interphone intra/interfacility communications:

a. Both the caller and receiver identify their facility and/or position in a manner that insures they will not be confused with another position.

NOTE–
Other means of identifying a position, such as substituting departure or arrival gate/fix names for position identification, may be used. However, it must be operationally beneficial, and the procedure fully covered in a letter of agreement or a facility directive, as appropriate.

EXAMPLE–
Caller– *"Albuquerque Center Sixty Three, Amarillo Departure."*

Receiver– *"Albuquerque Center."*

b. Between two facilities which utilize numeric position identification, the caller must identify both facility and position.

EXAMPLE–
Caller– *"Albuquerque Sixty Three, Fort Worth Eighty Two."*

c. Caller states the type of coordination to be accomplished when advantageous. For example, handoff or APREQ.

d. The caller states the message.

e. The receiver states the response to the caller's message followed by the receiver's operating initials.

f. The caller states his or her operating initials.

EXAMPLE–

1
Caller– *"Denver High, R Twenty–five."*

Receiver– *"Denver High."*

Caller– *"Request direct Denver for Northwest Three Twenty–eight."*

Receiver– *"Northwest Three Twenty–eight direct Denver approved. H.F."*

Caller– *"G.M."*

2
Receiver– *"Denver High, Go ahead override."*

Caller– *"R Twenty–five, Request direct Denver for Northwest Three Twenty–eight."*

Receiver– *"Northwest Three Twenty–eight direct Denver approved. H.F."*

Caller– *"G.M."*

3
Caller– *("Bolos" is a departure gate in Houston ARTCC's Sabine sector)–"Bolos, Houston local."*

Receiver– *"Bolos."*

Caller– *"Request Flight Level three five zero for American Twenty–five."*

Receiver– *"American twenty–five Flight Level three five zero approved, A.C."*

Caller– *"G.M."*

4
Caller– *"Sector Twelve, Ontario Approach, APREQ."*

Receiver– *"Sector Twelve."*

Caller– *"Cactus Five forty–two heading one three zero and climbing to one four thousand."*

Receiver– *"Cactus Five forty–two heading one three zero and climbing to one four thousand approved. B.N."*

Caller– *"A.M."*

5
Caller– *"Zanesville, Columbus, seventy–three line, hand-off."*

Receiver– *"Zanesville."*

Caller– *"Five miles east of Appleton VOR, United Three Sixty–six."*

Receiver– *"United Three Sixty–six, radar contact, A.Z."*

Caller– *"M.E."*

g. Identify the interphone voice line on which the call is being made when two or more such lines are collocated at the receiving operating position.

EXAMPLE–
"Washington Center, Washington Approach on the Fifty Seven line."

"Chicago Center, O'Hare Tower handoff on the Departure West line."

h. TERMINAL: The provisions of subparas a., b., c., e., f., g., and para 2–4–13, INTERPHONE MESSAGE TERMINATION, may be omitted provided:

1. Abbreviated standard coordination procedures are contained in a facility directive describing the specific conditions and positions that may utilize an abbreviated interphone message format; and

2. There will be no possibility of misunderstanding which positions are using the abbreviated procedures.

2–4–13. INTERPHONE MESSAGE TERMINATION

Terminate interphone messages with your operating initials.

2–4–14. WORDS AND PHRASES

Use the words or phrases in radiotelephone and interphone communication as contained in the P/CG. The word "heavy" shall be used as part of the identification of heavy jet aircraft as follow:

TERMINAL: In all communications with or about heavy jet aircraft.

EN ROUTE: The use of the word heavy may be omitted except as follows:

a. In communications with a terminal facility about heavy jet operations.

b. In communications with or about heavy jet aircraft with regard to an airport where the en route center is providing approach control service.

c. In communications with or about heavy jet aircraft when the separation from a following aircraft may become less than 5 miles by approved procedure.

d. When issuing traffic advisories.

EXAMPLE-
"United Fifty-Eight Heavy."

NOTE-
Most airlines will use the word "heavy" following the company prefix and flight number when establishing communications or when changing frequencies within a terminal facility's area.

e. When in radio communications with "Air Force One" or "Air Force Two", do not add the heavy designator to the call sign. State only the call sign "Air Force One/Two" regardless of the type aircraft.

2-4-15. EMPHASIS FOR CLARITY

Emphasize appropriate digits, letters, or similar sounding words to aid in distinguishing between similar sounding aircraft identifications. Additionally:

a. Notify each pilot concerned when communicating with aircraft having similar sounding identifications.

EXAMPLE-
"United Thirty-one United, Miami Center, U.S. Air Thirty-one is also on this frequency, acknowledge."

"U.S. Air Thirty-one U.S. Air, Miami Center, United Thirty-one is also on this frequency, acknowledge."

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, Para 2-4-20.
FAAO 7210.3, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION PROBLEMS, Para 2-1-12.

b. Notify the operational supervisor- in-charge of any duplicate flight identification numbers or phonetically similar-sounding call signs when the aircraft are operating simultaneously within the same sector.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION PROBLEMS, Para 2-1-12.

NOTE-
This is especially important when this occurs on a repetitive, rather than an isolated, basis.

2-4-16. ICAO PHONETICS

Use the ICAO pronunciation of numbers and individual letters. (See the ICAO radiotelephony alphabet and pronunciation in TBL 2-4-1.)

ICAO Phonetics

Character	*Word*	*Pronunciation*
0	Zero	ZE-RO
1	One	WUN
2	Two	TOO
3	Three	TREE
4	Four	FOW-ER
5	Five	FIFE
6	Six	SIX
7	Seven	SEV-EN
8	Eight	AIT
9	Nine	NIN-ER
A	Alfa	**AL**FAH
B	Bravo	**BRAH**VOH
C	Charlie	**CHAR**LEE
D	Delta	**DELL**TAH
E	Echo	**ECK**OH
F	Foxtrot	**FOKS**TROT
G	Golf	GOLF
H	Hotel	HOH**TELL**
I	India	**IN**DEE AH
J	Juliett	**JEW**LEE **ETT**
K	Kilo	**KEY**LOH
L	Lima	**LEE**MAH
M	Mike	MIKE
N	November	NO**VEM**BER
O	Oscar	**OSS**CAH
P	Papa	PAH**PAH**
Q	Quebec	KEH**BECK**
R	Romeo	**ROW**ME OH
S	Sierra	SEE**AIR**RAH
T	Tango	**TANG**GO
U	Uniform	**YOU**NEE FORM
V	Victor	**VIK**TAH
W	Whiskey	**WISS**KEY
X	X-ray	**ECKS**RAY
Y	Yankee	**YANG**KEY
Z	Zulu	**ZOO**LOO

TBL 2-4-1

NOTE-
Syllables to be emphasized in pronunciation are in bold face.

2-4-17. NUMBERS USAGE

State numbers as follows:

a. Serial numbers– The separate digits.

EXAMPLE–

Number	*Statement*
11,495	"One one four niner five."
20,069	"Two zero zero six niner."

b. Altitudes or flight levels:

1. Altitudes– Pronounce each digit in the number of hundreds or thousands followed by the word "hundred" or "thousand" as appropriate.

EXAMPLE–

Number	*Statement*
10,000	"One zero thousand."
11,000	"One one thousand."
17,900	"One seven thousand niner hundred."

NOTE–
Altitudes may be restated in group form for added clarity if the controller chooses.

EXAMPLE–

Number	*Statement*
10,000	"Ten thousand."
11,000	"Eleven thousand."
17,900	"Seventeen thousand niner hundred."

2. Flight levels– The words "flight level" followed by the separate digits of the flight level.

EXAMPLE–

Flight level	*Statement*
180	"Flight level one eight zero."
275	"Flight level two seven five."

3. MDA/DH Altitudes– The separate digits of the MDA/DH altitude.

EXAMPLE–

MDA/DH Altitude	*Statement*
1,320	"Minimum descent altitude, one three two zero."
486	"Decision height, four eight six."

c. Time:

1. General time information– The four separate digits of the hour and minute/s in terms of UTC.

EXAMPLE–

UTC	*Time (12 hr.)*	*Statement*
0715	1:15 a.m. CST	"Zero seven one five."
1915	1:15 p.m. CST	"One niner one five."

2. Upon request– The four separate digits of the hours and minute/s in terms of UTC followed by the local standard time equivalent; or the local time equivalent only. Local time may be based on the 24–hour clock system, and the word "local" or the time zone equivalent shall be stated when other than UTC is referenced. The term "ZULU" may be used to denote UTC.

EXAMPLE–

UTC	*Time (24 hr.)*	*Time (12 hr)*	*Statement*
2230	1430 PST	2:30 p.m.	"Two two three zero, one four three zero Pacific or Local." or "Two–thirty P–M."

3. Time check– The word "time" followed by the four separate digits of the hour and minutes, and nearest quarter minute. Fractions of a quarter minute less than eight seconds are stated as the preceding quarter minute; fractions of a quarter minute of eight seconds or more are stated as succeeding quarter minute.

EXAMPLE–

Time	*Statement*
1415:06	"Time, one four one five."
1415:10	"Time, one four one five and one–quarter."

4. Abbreviated time– The separate digits of the minutes only.

EXAMPLE–

Time	*Statement*
1415	"One five."
1420	"Two zero."

5. Field elevation– The words "field elevation" followed by the separate digits of the elevation.

EXAMPLE–

Elevation	*Statement*
17 feet	"Field elevation, one seven."
817 feet	"Field elevation, eight one seven."
2,817 feet	"Field elevation, two eight one seven."

d. The number "0" as "zero" except where it is used in approved "group form" for authorized aircraft call signs, and in stating altitudes.

EXAMPLE–

As Zero	*As Group*
"Field elevation one six zero." "Heading three zero zero." "One zero thousand five hundred."	"Western five thirty." "EMAIR One Ten." "Ten thousand five hundred."

e. Altimeter setting– The word "altimeter" followed by the separate digits of the altimeter setting.

EXAMPLE–

Setting	*Statement*
30.01	"Altimeter, three zero zero one."

f. Surface wind– The word "wind" followed by the separate digits of the indicated wind direction to the nearest 10–degree multiple, the word "at" and the separate digits of the indicated velocity in knots.

EXAMPLE–
"Wind zero three zero at two five."
"Wind two seven zero at one five gusts three five."

g. Heading– The word "heading" followed by the three separate digits of the number of degrees, omitting the word "degrees." Use heading 360 degrees to indicate a north heading.

EXAMPLE–

Heading	*Statement*
5 degrees	"Heading zero zero five."
30 degrees	"Heading zero three zero."
360 degrees	"Heading three six zero."

h. Radar beacon codes– The separate digits of the 4–digit code.

EXAMPLE–

Code	*Statement*
1000	"One zero zero zero."
2100	"Two one zero zero."

i. Runways– The word "runway," followed by the separate digits of the runway designation. For a parallel runway, state the word "left," "right," or "center" if the letter "L," "R," or "C" is included in the designation.

EXAMPLE–

Designation	*Statement*
3	"Runway Three."
8L	"Runway Eight Left."
27R	"Runway Two Seven Right."

j. Frequencies–

1. The separate digits of the frequency, inserting the word "point" where the decimal point occurs.

(a) Omit digits after the second digit to the right of the decimal point.

(b) When the frequency is in the L/MF band, include the word "kiloHertz."

EXAMPLE–

Frequency	*Statement*
126.55 MHz	"One two six point five five."
369.0 MHz	"Three six niner point zero."
121.5 MHz	"One two one point five."
135.275 MHz	"One three five point two seven."
302 kHz	"Three zero two kiloHertz."

2. *USAF/USN:* Local channelization numbers may be used in lieu of frequencies for locally based aircraft when local procedures are established to ensure that local aircraft and ATC facilities use the same channelization.

EXAMPLE–

Frequency	*Statement*
275.8 MHz	"Local channel one six."

3. Issue MLS/TACAN frequencies by stating the assigned two– or three–digit channel number.

EXAMPLE–
"M–L–S channel Five Three Zero."
"TACAN channel Nine Seven."

k. Speeds–

1. The separate digits of the speed followed by "knots" except as required by para 5–7–2, METHODS.

EXAMPLE–

Speed	*Statement*
250	"Two five zero knots."
190	"One niner zero knots."

2. The separate digits of the Mach number preceded by "Mach."

EXAMPLE–

Mach Number	*Statement*
1.5	"Mach one point five."
0.64	"Mach point six four."
0.7	"Mach point seven."

l. Miles– The separate digits of the mileage followed by the word "mile."

EXAMPLE–
"Three zero mile arc east of Nottingham."
"Traffic, one o'clock, two five miles, northbound, D–C Eight, flight level two seven zero."

2–4–18. NUMBER CLARIFICATION

a. If deemed necessary for clarity, and after stating numbers as specified in para 2–4–17, NUMBERS USAGE, controllers may restate numbers using either group or single-digit form.

EXAMPLE–
"One Seven Thousand, Seventeen Thousand."
"Altimeter Two Niner Niner Two, Twenty Nine Ninety Two."
"One Two Six Point Five Five, One Twenty Six Point Fifty Five."

2–4–19. FACILITY IDENTIFICATION

Identify facilities as follows:

a. Airport traffic control towers– State the name of the facility followed by the word "tower." Where military and civil airports are located in the same general area and have similar names, state the name of the military service followed by the name of the military facility and the word "tower."

EXAMPLE–
"Columbus Tower."
"Barksdale Tower."
"Navy Jacksonville Tower."

b. Air route traffic control centers– State the name of the facility followed by the word "center."

c. Approach control facilities, including RAPCON's, RATCF's, and ARAC's– State the name of the facility followed by the word "approach." Where military and civil facilities are located in the same general area and have similar names, state the name of the military service followed by the name of the military facility and the word "approach."

EXAMPLE–
"Denver Approach."
"Griffiss Approach."
"Navy Jacksonville Approach."

d. Functions within a terminal facility– State the name of the facility followed by the name of the function.

EXAMPLE–
"Boston Departure."
"LaGuardia Clearance Delivery."
"O'Hare Ground."

e. When calling or replying on an interphone line which connects only two non–VSCS equipped facilities, you may omit the facility name.

EXAMPLE–
"Bradford High, Handoff."

f. FAA flight service stations– State the name of the station followed by the word "radio."

EXAMPLE–
"Altoona Radio."

g. Radar facilities having ASR or PAR but not providing approach control service– State the name of the facility, followed by the letters "G–C–A."

EXAMPLE–
"Corpus Christi G–C–A."
"Davison G–C–A."

2–4–20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

Use the full identification in reply to aircraft with similar sounding identifications. For other aircraft, the same identification may be used in reply that the pilot used in his initial callup except use the correct identification after communications have been established. Identify aircraft as follows:

a. U.S. registry aircraft– State one of the following:

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADIO MESSAGE FORMAT, Para 2–4–8.
FAAO 7110.65, ABBREVIATED TRANSMISSIONS, Para 2–4–9.
FAAO 7110.65, EMPHASIS FOR CLARITY, Para 2–4–15.
FAAO 7110.65, NUMBERS USAGE, Para 2–4–17.

1. Civil – State the prefix "November" when establishing initial communications with U.S. registered aircraft followed by the ICAO phonetic pronunciation of the numbers/letters of the aircraft registration. The controller may state the aircraft type, the model, the manufacturer's name, followed by the ICAO phonetic pronunciation of the numbers/letters of the aircraft registration if used by the pilot on the initial or subsequent call.

EXAMPLE–
Air traffic controller's initiated call:

"November One Two Three Four Golf."
"November One Two Three Four."

Responding to pilot's initial or subsequent call:

"Jet Commander One Two Three Four Papa."
"Bonanza One Two Three Four Tango."

NOTE–
If aircraft identification becomes a problem when the procedures specified above are used, the call sign shall be restated after the flight number of the aircraft involved.

EXAMPLE–
"American Five Twenty-One American."
"Commuter Six Eleven Commuter."
"General Motors Thirty-Seven General Motors."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION PROBLEMS, Para 2-1-12.

2. Air carrier and other civil aircraft having FAA authorized call signs– State the call sign followed by the flight number in group form.

NOTE–
"Group form" is the pronunciation of a series of numbers as the whole number, or pairs of numbers they represent rather than pronouncing each separate digit. The use of group form may, however, be negated by four-digit identifiers or the placement of zeros in the identifier.

EXAMPLE–
"American Fifty-Two."
"Delta One Hundred."
"Eastern Metro One Ten."
"General Motors Thirty Fifteen."
"United One Zero One."
"Delta Zero One Zero."
"TWA Ten Zero Four."

NOTE–
Air carrier and other civil aircraft having FAA authorized call signs may be pronounced using single digits if necessary for clarity.

EXAMPLE–
"United Five One Seven."
"United Five Seven Zero."

3. Air taxi and commercial operators not having FAA authorized call signs– State the prefix "TANGO" on initial contact, if used by the pilot, followed by the registration number. The prefix may be dropped in subsequent communications.

EXAMPLE–
"Tango Mooney Five Five Five Two Quebec."
"Tango November One Two Three Four."

4. Air carrier/taxi ambulance– State the prefix, "Lifeguard," if used by the pilot, followed by the call sign and flight number in group form.

EXAMPLE–
"Lifeguard Delta Fifty-One."

5. Civilian air ambulance– State the word "LIFEGUARD" followed by the numbers/letters of the registration number.

EXAMPLE–
"Lifeguard Two Six Four Six."

6. U.S. military– State one of the following:

(a) The service name, followed by the word "copter," when appropriate, and the last 5 digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE–
"Navy Five Six Seven One Three."
"Coast Guard Six One Three Two Seven."
"Air Guard One Three Five Eight Six"
"Army Copter Three Two One Seven Six."

NOTE–
If aircraft identification becomes a problem, the procedures reflected in FAAO 7210.3, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION PROBLEMS, Para 2-1-12, will apply.

(b) Special military operations– State one of the following followed by the last 5 digits of the serial number:

(c) Air evacuation flights– "AIR EVAC," "MARINE AIR EVAC," or "NAVY AIR EVAC."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Evac One Seven Six Five Two."

(d) Rescue flights– (Service name) "RESCUE."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Force Rescue Six One Five Seven Niner."

(e) Air Mobility Command – "REACH."

EXAMPLE–
"Reach Seven Eight Five Six Two."

(f) Special Air Mission– "SAM."

EXAMPLE–
"U.S. Sam Niner One Five Six Two."

(g) USAF Contract Aircraft "LOGAIR."

EXAMPLE–
"Logair Seven Five Eight Two Six."

(h) Military tactical and training:

(1) U.S. Air Force, Air National Guard, Military District of Washington priority aircraft, and USAF civil disturbance aircraft– Pronounceable words of 3 to 6 letters followed by a 1 to 5 digit number.

EXAMPLE–
"Paul Two Zero."
"Pat One Five Seven."
"Gaydog Four."

NOTE–
When the "Z" suffix described in para 2-3-6, USAF/USN UNDERGRADUATE PILOTS, is added to identify aircraft piloted by USAF undergraduate pilots, the call sign will be limited to a combination of six characters.

(2) Navy or Marine fleet and training command aircraft– The service name and 2 letters, or a digit and a letter (use letter phonetic equivalents), followed by 2 or 3 digits.

EXAMPLE–
"Navy Golf Alfa Two One."
"Marine Four Charlie Two Three Six."

(i) NORAD interceptors– An assigned double letter 2-digit flight number.

EXAMPLE–
"Alfa Kilo One Five."

7. Presidential aircraft and Presidential family aircraft:

(a) When the President is aboard a military aircraft, state the name of the military service, followed by the word "One."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Force One."
"Army One."
"Marine One."

(b) When the President is aboard a civil aircraft, state the words "Executive One."

(c) When a member of the President's family is aboard any aircraft, if the U.S. Secret Service or the White House Staff determines it is necessary, state the words "Executive One Foxtrot."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.

8. Vice Presidential aircraft:

(a) When the Vice President is aboard a military aircraft, state the name of the military service, followed by the word "Two."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Force Two."
"Army Two."
"Marine Two."

(b) When the Vice President is aboard a civil aircraft, state the words "Executive Two."

(c) When a member of the Vice President's family is aboard any aircraft, if the U.S. Secret Service or the White House Staff determines it is necessary, state the words "Executive Two Foxtrot."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.

9. DOT and FAA flights: The following alphanumeric identifiers and radio/interphone call–signs are established for use in air/ground communications when the Secretary of Transportation, Deputy Secretary of Transportation, FAA Administrator or FAA Deputy Administrator have a requirement to identify themselves. (See TBL 2–4–2.)

DOT and FAA Alphanumeric Identifiers and Call Signs

Official	*Identifier*	*Call Sign*
Secretary of Transportation	DOT–1	Transport–1
Deputy Secretary of Transportation	DOT–2	Transport–2
Administrator, Federal Aviation Administration	FAA–1	Safeair–1
Deputy Administrator, Federal Aviation Administration	FAA–2	Safeair–2

TBL 2-4-2

10. Other Special Flights:

(a) Department of Energy flights– State the letters "R–A–C" (use phonetic alphabet equivalents) followed by the last 4 separate digits of the aircraft registration number.

EXAMPLE–
"ROMEO ALFA CHARLIE ONE SIX FIVE THREE."

(b) Flight Inspection of navigational aids– State the call sign "FLIGHT CHECK" followed by the digits of the registration number.

EXAMPLE–
"Flight Check Three Niner Six Five Four."

(c) USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions– State the call sign "SAMP" followed by the last three digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE–
"Samp Three One Six."

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SAMP, Para 9-3-14.

11. Use a pilot's name in identification of an aircraft only in special or emergency situations.

b. Foreign registry- State one of the following:

1. Civil- State the aircraft type or the manufacturer's name followed by the letters/numbers of the aircraft registration, or state the letters or digits of the aircraft registration or call sign.

EXAMPLE-
"Stationair F-L-R-B."
"C-F-L-R-B."

NOTE-
Letters may be spoken individually or phonetically.

2. Air carrier- The abbreviated name of the operating company followed by the letters or digits of the registration or call sign.

EXAMPLE-
"AIR FRANCE F-L-R-L-G."

3. The flight number in group form, or you may use separate digits if that is the format used by the pilot.

EXAMPLE-
"Scandinavian Sixty-eight."
"Scandinavian Six Eight."

4. Foreign Military- Except Canada, the name of the country and the military service followed by the separate digits or letters of the registration or call sign. Canadian Armed Force aircraft shall be identified by the word "Canforce" followed by the separate digits of the serial number, except that the Transport Command of the Canadian Armed Force shall be identified by the words "Canadian Military" and the Canadian Coast Guard shall be identified as "Canadian Coast Guard" followed by the separate digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE-
"Canforce Five Six Two Seven."
"Brazilian Air Force Five Three Two Seven Six."

2-4-21. DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES

Except for heavy aircraft, describe aircraft as follows when issuing traffic information.

a. Military:

1. Military designator, with numbers spoken in group form, or

2. Service and type, or

3. Type only if no confusion or misidentification is likely.

b. Air Carrier:

1. Manufacturer's model or designator.

2. Add the manufacture's name, company name or other identifying features when confusion or misidentification is likely.

EXAMPLE-
"L-Ten-ELeven."
"American MD-Eighty. Seven Thirty-Seven."
"Boeing Seven Fifty-Seven."

NOTE-
Pilots of "interchange" aircraft are expected to inform the tower on the first radio contact the name of the operating company and trip number followed by the company name, as displayed on the aircraft, and the aircraft type.

c. General Aviation and Air Taxi:

1. Manufacturer's model, or designator.

2. Manufacture's name, or add color when considered advantageous.

EXAMPLE-
"Tri-Pacer."
"P A Twenty-Two."
"Cessna Four-Oh-One."
"Blue And White King Air."
"Airliner."
"Sikorsky S-Seventy-Six."

d. When issuing traffic information to aircraft following a heavy jet, specify the word "heavy" before the manufacturer's name and model.

EXAMPLE-
"Heavy L-Ten-Eleven."
"Heavy C-Five."
"Heavy Boeing Seven Forty-Seven."

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, Para 2-1-21.

2-4-22. AIRSPACE CLASSES

A, B, C, D, E, and G airspace are pronounced in the ICAO phonetics for clarification. The term "Class" may be dropped when referring to airspace in pilot/controller communications.

EXAMPLE-
"Cessna 123 Mike Romeo cleared to enter Bravo airspace."
"Sikorsky 123 Tango Sierra cleared to enter New York Bravo airspace."

Section 5. ROUTE AND NAVAID DESCRIPTION

2-5-1. AIRWAYS AND ROUTES

Describe airways, routes, or jet routes as follows:

a. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN airways or jet routes- State the word "Victor" or the letter "J" followed by the number of the airway or route in group form. For RNAV routes add the word "Romeo."

EXAMPLE-
"Victor Twelve."
"J Five Thirty-Three."
"Victor Seven Ten Romeo."
"J Eight Thirty Romeo."
"Offset One Zero miles right of J Eight Thirty Romeo."

b. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN alternate airways- State the word "Victor" followed by the number of the airway in group form and the alternate direction.

EXAMPLE-
"Victor Twelve South."

c. Colored/L/MF airways- State the color of the airway followed by the number in group form.

EXAMPLE-
"Blue Eighty-One."

d. Named Routes- State the words "North American Route" or "Bahama Route" followed by the number of the route in group form.

EXAMPLE-
"North American Route Sixty-Seven Bravo "
"Bahama Route Fifty-Five Victor."

e. Air Traffic Service (ATS) routes- State the letter (s) of the route phonetically, followed by the number of the route in group form.

EXAMPLE-
"ROMEO TWENTY."
"ALFA FIFTY."
"GOLF SIXTY-ONE."
"ALFA SEVEN HUNDRED."

f. Military Training Routes (MTR's)- State the letters "I-R "or "V-R" followed by the number of the route in group form.

EXAMPLE-
"I-R FIVE THIRTY-ONE"
"V-R FIFTY -TWO"

2-5-2. NAVAID TERMS

Describe radials, arcs, courses, bearings, and quadrants of NAVAID's as follows:

a. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN/MLS/GPS Waypoint- State the name of the NAVAID or GPS Waypoint followed by the separate digits of the radial/azimuth/bearing (omitting the word "degrees") and the word "radial/azimuth/bearing."

EXAMPLE-
"Appleton Zero Five Zero Radial."
"Lindburg Runway Two Seven M-L-S, Two Six Zero Azimuth."

b. Arcs about VOR-DME/VORTAC/TACAN/MLS NAVAID's- State the distance in miles from the NAVAID followed by the words "mile arc," the direction from the NAVAID in terms of the eight principal points of the compass, the word "of," and the name of the NAVAID.

EXAMPLE-
"Two Zero mile arc southwest of O'Hare Runway Two Seven Left M-L-S."

c. Quadrant within a radius of NAVAID- State direction from NAVAID in terms of the quadrant; e.g., NE, SE, SW, NW, followed by the distance in miles from the NAVAID.

EXAMPLE-
"Cleared to fly northeast quadrant of Phillipsburg VORTAC within Four Zero mile radius."

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE USE, Para 4-4-1.
P/CG TERM-QUADRANT.

d. Nondirectional beacons- State the course to or the bearing from the radio beacon, omitting the word "degree," followed by the words "course to" or "bearing from," the name of the radio beacon, and the words "radio beacon."

EXAMPLE-
"Three Four Zero bearing from Randolph Radio Beacon."

e. MLS- State the azimuth to or azimuth from the MLS, omitting the word "degree" followed by the words "azimuth to" or "azimuth from," the name of the MLS, and the term MLS.

EXAMPLE-
"Two Six Zero azimuth to Linburgh Runway Two Seven MLS."

2-5-3. NAVAID FIXES

Describe fixes determined by reference to a radial/ localizer/azimuth and distance from a VOR-DME/ VORTAC/TACAN/ILS-DME or MLS as follows:

a. When a fix is not named, state the name of the NAVAID followed by a specified radial /localizer/azimuth, and state the distance in miles followed by the phrase "mile fix."

EXAMPLE-
"Appleton Zero Five Zero radial Three Seven mile fix."
"Reno localizer back course Four mile fix."
"Hobby Runway One Two M-L-S Zero Niner Zero azimuth One Two mile fix."

b. When a fix is charted on a SID, STAR, en route chart, or approach plate, state the name of the fix.

c. Use specific terms to describe a fix. Do not use expressions such as "passing Victor Twelve" or "passing J Eleven."

Section 6. WEATHER INFORMATION

2-6-1. FAMILIARIZATION

Become familiar with pertinent weather information when coming on duty, and stay aware of current weather information needed to perform ATC duties.

2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)

Controllers shall advise pilots of hazardous weather that may impact operations within 150 NM of their sector or area of jurisdiction. Hazardous weather information contained in HIWAS broadcasts includes Airmen's Meteorological Information (AIRMET), Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMET), Convective SIGMET (WST), Urgent Pilot Weather Reports (UUA), and Center Weather Advisories (CWA). Facilities shall review alert messages to determine the geographical area and operational impact for hazardous weather information broadcasts. The broadcast is not required if aircraft on your frequency (s) will not be affected.

a. Controllers within commissioned HIWAS areas shall broadcast a HIWAS alert on all frequencies, except emergency frequency, upon receipt of hazardous weather information. Controllers are required to disseminate data based on the operational impact on the sector or area of control jurisdiction.

NOTE–
The inclusion of the type and number of weather advisory responsible for the HIWAS advisory is optional.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION (SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, AIRMET, Urgent Pilot Weather Report (UUA), or Center Weather Advisory (CWA), Number or Numbers) FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE ON HIWAS, FLIGHT WATCH, OR FLIGHT SERVICE FREQUENCIES.

b. Controllers outside of commissioned HIWAS areas shall:

1. Advise pilots of the availability of hazardous weather advisories. Pilots requesting additional information should be directed to contact the nearest Flight Watch or Flight Service.

2. Apply the same procedure when HIWAS outlets, or outlets with radio coverage extending into your sector or airspace under your jurisdiction, are out of service.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE FROM FLIGHT WATCH OR FLIGHT SERVICE.

c. Terminal facilities have the option to limit hazardous weather information broadcasts as follows: Tower cab and approach control facilities may opt to broadcast hazardous weather information alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 NM of the airspace under their jurisdiction.

REFERENCE–
AIM, CHAPTER 7, SECTION 1. METEOROLOGY, Para 7-1-5 through Para 7-1-9.

2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION

Significant PIREP information includes reports of strong frontal activity, squall lines, thunderstorms, light to severe icing, wind shear and turbulence (including clear air turbulence) of moderate or greater intensity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, and other conditions pertinent to flight safety.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES, Para 3-1-8.
FAAO 7210.3, HANDLING OF SIGMET'S, CWA'S, AND PIREP'S, Para 7-3-1.
AIM, FLIGHT OPERATIONS IN VOLCANIC ASH, Para 7-5-7.
FAAO 7210.3, SIGMET AND PIREP HANDLING, Para 10-3-1.

a. Solicit PIREP's when requested or when one of the following conditions exists or is forecast for your area of jurisdiction:

1. Ceilings at or below 5,000 feet. These PIREP's shall include cloud base/top reports when feasible.

TERMINAL: Ensure that at least one descent/climb-out PIREP, including cloud base/s, top/s, and other related phenomena, is obtained each hour.

EN ROUTE: When providing approach control services, the requirements stated in TERMINAL above apply.

2. Visibility (surface or aloft) at or less than 5 miles.

3. Thunderstorms and related phenomena.

4. Turbulence of moderate degree or greater.

5. Icing of light degree or greater.

6. Wind shear.

7. Volcanic ash clouds.

NOTE–
Pilots may forward PIREP's regarding volcanic activity using the format described in the Volcanic Activity Reporting Form (VAR) as depicted in the AIM, Appendix 2.

8. *TERMINAL:* Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES, Para 3–3–5.
P/CG TERM–BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES.

b. Record with the PIREP's:

1. Time.

2. Aircraft position.

3. Type aircraft.

4. Altitude.

5. When the PIREP involves icing include:

(a) Icing type and intensity.

(b) Air temperature in which icing is occurring.

c. Obtain PIREP's directly from the pilot, or if the PIREP has been requested by another facility, you may instruct the pilot to deliver it directly to that facility.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REQUEST FLIGHT CONDITIONS.

or if appropriate,

REQUEST (specific conditions; i.e., ride, ceiling, visibility, etc.) CONDITIONS.

If necessary,

OVER (fix),

or

ALONG PRESENT ROUTE,

or

BETWEEN (fix) AND (fix).

d. Handle PIREP's as follows:

1. Relay pertinent PIREP information to concerned aircraft in a timely manner.

2. *EN ROUTE:* Relay all operationally significant PIREP's to the facility weather coordinator.

3. *TERMINAL:* Relay all operationally significant PIREP's to:

(a) The appropriate intrafacility positions.

(b) The FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained.

NOTE–
The FSS is responsible for long line dissemination.

(c) Other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non–FAA facilities.

(d) Use the word *gain* and/or *loss* when describing to pilots the effects of wind shear on airspeed.

EXAMPLE–
"Delta Seven Twenty–One, a Boeing Seven Twenty–Seven, previously reported wind shear, loss of Two Five knots at Four Hundred feet."

"U.S. Air Seventy–Six, a D–C Niner, previously reported wind shear, gain of Twenty–Five knots between Niner Hundred and Six Hundred feet, followed by a loss of Five Zero knots between Five Hundred feet and the surface."

REFERENCE–
AIM, WIND SHEAR PIREP'S, Para 7–1–21.

2–6–4. WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES

a. Issue pertinent information on observed/reported weather or chaff areas. Provide radar navigational guidance and/or approve deviations around weather or chaff areas when requested by the pilot. Do not use the word "turbulence" in describing radar-derived weather.

1. Issue weather and chaff information by defining the area of coverage in terms of azimuth (by referring to the 12–hour clock) and distance from the aircraft or by indicating the general width of the area and the area of coverage in terms of fixes or distance and direction from fixes.

2. Issue the level of echo intensity when that information is available. When utilizing ASR–9 radar equipment, controllers shall ensure that the highest available level of echo intensity within their area of jurisdiction is displayed.

3. When a deviation cannot be approved as requested and the situation permits, suggest an alternative course of action.

b. In areas of significant weather, plan ahead and be prepared to suggest, upon pilot request, the use of alternative routes/altitudes.

NOTE–
Weather significant to the safety of aircraft includes such conditions as tornadoes, lines of thunderstorms, embedded thunderstorms, large hail, wind shear, moderate to extreme turbulence (including CAT), and light to severe icing.

c. Inform any tower for which you provide approach control services if you observe any weather echoes on radar which might affect their operations.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WEATHER/CHAFF AREA BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK (number) MILES,

or

(number) MILE BAND OF WEATHER/CHAFF FROM (fix or number of miles and direction from fix) TO (fix or number of miles and direction from fix),

or

LEVEL (number) WEATHER ECHO BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK, (number) MILES. MOVING (direction) AT (number) KNOTS, TOPS (altitude),

or

DEVIATION APPROVED, (restrictions if necessary), ADVISE WHEN ABLE TO:

RETURN TO COURSE,
or
RESUME OWN NAVIGATION
or
FLY HEADING (heading)
or
PROCEED DIRECT TO (name of NAVAID). UNABLE DEVIATION (state possible alternate course of action).

EXAMPLE–
1 *"Level five weather echo between eleven o'clock and one o'clock, one zero miles. Moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three niner zero."*

2 *"Level four weather echo between ten o'clock and two o'clock, one five miles. Weather area is two five miles in diameter."*

NOTE–
Phraseology using level number is only applicable when the radar weather echo intensity information is determined by NWS radar equipment or ASR–9 radar equipment.

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Radar Weather Echo Intensity Levels.

d. The operational supervisor/operations manager/controller-in-charge shall verify the ASR–9 weather information by the best means available (e.g., pilot reports, local tower personnel, etc.) if the weather data displayed by the ASR–9 is reported as questionable or erroneous. Errors in weather radar presentation shall be reported to the AF technician and the AT supervisor shall determine if the ASR–9 derived weather data is to be displayed and a NOTAM distributed.

NOTE–
Anomalous propagation (AP) is a natural occurrence affecting radar and does not in itself constitute a weather circuit failure.

2–6–5. CALM WIND CONDITIONS

TERMINAL: Describe the wind as calm when the wind velocity is less than three knots.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, TAILWIND COMPONENTS, Para 3–5–3.
FAAO 7110.65, INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION, Para 3–10–4.

2–6–6. REPORTING WEATHER CONDITIONS

a. When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, tower personnel shall take prevailing visibility observations and apply the observations as follows:

1. Use the lower of the two observations (tower or surface) for aircraft operations.

2. Forward tower visibility observations to the weather observer.

3. Notify the weather observer when the tower observes the prevailing visibility decrease to less than 4 miles or increase to 4 miles or more.

b. Forward current weather changes to the appropriate control facility as follows:

1. When the official weather changes to a condition which is below 1,000–foot ceiling or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or less than 3 miles visibility, and when it improves to a condition which is better than those above.

2. Changes which are classified as special weather observations during the time that weather conditions are below 1,000–foot ceiling or the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or less than 3 miles visibility.

c. Towers at airports where military turbo-jet en route descents are routinely conducted shall also report the conditions to the ARTCC even if it is not the controlling facility.

d. If the receiving facility informs you that weather reports are not required for a specific time period, discontinue the reports. The time period specified should not exceed the duration of the receiving controller's tour of duty.

e. *EN ROUTE:* When you determine that weather reports for an airport will not be required for a specific time period, inform the FSS or tower of this determination. The time period specified should not exceed the duration of receiving controller's tour of duty.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NON-APPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES, Para 3–10–2.

2–6–7. DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION

TERMINAL: Observed elements of weather information shall be disseminated as follows:

a. General weather information, such as "large breaks in the overcast," "visibility lowering to the south," or similar statements which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.

b. Specific values, such as ceiling and visibility, may be transmitted if obtained by one of the following means:

1. You are properly certificated and acting as official weather observer for the elements being reported.

NOTE–
USAF controllers do not serve as official weather observers.

2. You have obtained the information from the official observer for the elements being reported.

3. The weather report was composed or verified by the weather station.

4. The information is obtained from an official Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS) or an Automated Surface Observation System (ASOS).

c. Differences between weather elements observed from the tower and those reported by the weather station shall be reported to the official observer for the element concerned.

Section 7. ALTIMETER SETTINGS

2-7-1. CURRENT SETTINGS

a. Current altimeter settings shall be obtained from direct-reading instruments or directly from weather reporting stations.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, CHAPTER 2, SECTION 8, WIND/ALTIMETER INFORMATION.

b. If a pilot requests the altimeter setting in millibars, ask the nearest weather reporting station for the equivalent millibar setting.

c. USAF/USA: Use the term "Estimated Altimeter" for altimeter settings reported or received as estimated.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE INFORMATION, Para 3-9-1.
FAAO 7110.65, LANDING INFORMATION, Para 3-10-1.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 4-7-11.

2-7-2. ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL

a. *TERMINAL:* Identify the source of an altimeter setting when issued for a location other than the aircraft's departure or destination airport.

b. *EN ROUTE:* Identify the source of all altimeter settings when issued.

PHRASEOLOGY-
THE (facility name) (time of report if more than one hour old) ALTIMETER (setting).

c. Issue the altimeter setting:

1. To en route aircraft at least one time while operating in your area of jurisdiction. Issue the setting for the nearest reporting station along the aircraft's route of flight:

NOTE-
CFR 91.121(1) requires that the pilot set his altimeter to the setting of a station along his route of flight within 100 miles of the aircraft if one is available. However, issuance of the setting of an adjacent station during periods that a steep gradient exists will serve to inform the pilot of the difference between the setting he is using and the pressure in the local area and better enable him to choose a more advantageous setting within the limitations of CFR 91.121.

2. *TERMINAL:* To all departures. Unless specifically requested by the pilot, the altimeter setting need not be issued to local aircraft operators who have requested this omission in writing or to scheduled air carriers.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE INFORMATION, Para 3-9-1.

3. *TERMINAL:* To arriving aircraft on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter. The tower may omit the altimeter if the aircraft is sequenced or vectored to the airport by the approach control having jurisdiction at that facility.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 4-7-11.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 5-10-2.

4. *EN ROUTE:* For the destination airport to arriving aircraft, approximately 50 miles from the destination, if an approach control facility does not serve the airport.

5. In addition to the altimeter setting provided on initial contact, issue changes in altimeter setting to aircraft executing a nonprecision instrument approach as frequently as practical when the official weather report includes the remarks "pressure falling rapidly."

d. If the altimeter setting must be obtained by the pilot of an arriving aircraft from another source, instruct the pilot to obtain the altimeter setting from that source.

NOTE-
1 The destination altimeter setting, whether from a local or remote source, is the setting upon which the instrument approach is predicated.

2 Approach charts for many locations specify the source of altimeter settings as non-FAA facilities, such as UNICOM's.

e. When issuing clearance to descend below the lowest usable flight level, advise the pilot of the altimeter setting of the weather reporting station nearest the point the aircraft will descend below that flight level.

f. Department of Defense (DOD) aircraft which operate on "single altimeter settings" (CFR Exemption 2861A) shall be issued altimeter settings in accordance with standard procedures while the aircraft are en route to and from their restricted areas, MOA's, and ATC assigned airspace areas.

g. When the barometric pressure is greater than 31.00 inches Hg., issue the altimeter setting and:

1. En Route/Arrivals- Advise pilots to remain set on altimeter 31.00 until reaching final approach segment.

2. Departures- Advise pilots to set altimeter 31.00 prior to reaching any mandatory/crossing altitude or 1,500 feet AGL, whichever is lower.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ALTIMETER, THREE ONE TWO FIVE, SET THREE ONE ZERO ZERO UNTIL REACHING THE FINAL APPROACH FIX.

or

ALTIMETER, THREE ONE ONE ZERO, SET THREE ONE ZERO ZERO PRIOR TO REACHING ONE THOUSAND THREE HUNDRED.

NOTE–
1 Aircraft with Mode C altitude reporting will be displayed on the controller's radar scope with a uniform altitude offset above the assigned altitude. With an actual altimeter of 31.28 inches Hg, the Mode C equipped aircraft will show 3,300 feet when assigned 3,000 feet. This will occur unless local directives authorize entering the altimeter setting 31.00 into the computer system regardless of the actual barometric pressure.

2 Flight Standards will implement high barometric pressure procedures by NOTAM defining the geographic area affected.

3 Airports unable to accurately measure barometric pressures above 31.00 inches Hg. will report the barometric pressure as "missing" or "in excess of 31.00 inches of Hg." Flight operations to or from those airports are restricted to VFR weather conditions.

REFERENCE–
AIM, PROCEDURES, Para 7–2–2.
FAAO 7110.65, LANDING INFORMATION, Para 3–10–1.

Section 8. RUNWAY VISIBILITY REPORTING– *TERMINAL*

2–8–1. FURNISH RVR/RVV VALUES

Where RVR or RVV equipment is operational, irrespective of subsequent operation or nonoperation of navigational or visual aids for the application of RVR/RVV as a takeoff or landing minima, furnish the values for the runway in use in accordance with para 2–8–3, TERMINOLOGY.

NOTE–
Readout capability of different type/model RVR equipment varies. For example, older equipment minimum readout value is 600 feet. Newer equipment may have minimum readout capability as low as 100 feet. Readout value increments also may differ. Older equipment have minimum readout increments of 200 feet. New equipment increments below 800 feet are 100 feet.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 6560.10, RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE (RVR).
FAAO 6750.24, INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM (ILS) AND ANCILLARY ELECTRONIC COMPONENT CONFIGURATION & PERF. REQ.

2–8–2. ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE RUNWAY VISIBILITY

a. Issue current touchdown RVR/RVV for the runway(s) in use:

1. When prevailing visibility is 1 mile or less regardless of the value indicated.

2. When RVR/RVV indicates a reportable value regardless of the prevailing visibility.

NOTE–
Reportable values are: RVR 6,000 feet or less; RVV $1^1/_2$ miles or less.

3. When it is determined from a reliable source that the indicated RVR value differs by more than 400 feet from the actual conditions within the area of the transmissometer, the RVR data is not acceptable and shall not be reported.

NOTE–
A reliable source is considered to be a certified weather observer, automated weather observing system, air traffic controller, flight service specialist, or pilot.

4. When the observer has reliable reports, or has otherwise determined that the instrument values are not representative of the associated runway, the data shall not be used.

b. Issue both mid-point and roll-out RVR when the value of either is less than 2,000 feet and the touchdown RVR is greater than the mid-point or roll-out RVR.

c. Local control shall issue the current RVR/RVV to each aircraft prior to landing or departure in accordance with subparas a. and b.

2–8–3. TERMINOLOGY

a. Provide RVR/RVV information by stating the runway, the abbreviation RVR/RVV, and the indicated value. When issued along with other weather elements, transmit these values in the normal sequence used for weather reporting.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway One Four RVR Two Thousand Four Hundred."

"Runway Three Two RVV Three Quarters."

b. When two or more RVR systems serve the runway in use, report the indicated values for the different systems in terms of touchdown, mid, and rollout as appropriate.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two Two Left RVR Two Thousand, rollout One Thousand Eight Hundred."

"Runway Two Seven Right RVR One Thousand, mid Eight Hundred, rollout Six Hundred."

c. When there is a requirement to issue an RVR or RVV value and a visibility condition greater or less than the reportable values of the equipment is indicated, state the condition as "MORE THAN" or "LESS THAN" the appropriate minimum or maximum readable value.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Three Six RVR more than Six Thousand."

"Runway Niner RVR One Thousand, rollout less than Six Hundred."

d. When a readout indicates a rapidly varying visibility condition (1,000 feet or more for RVR; one or more reportable values for RVV), report the current value followed by the range of visibility variance.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two Four RVR Two Thousand, variable One Thousand Six Hundred to Three Thousand."

"Runway Three One RVV Three-quarters, variable One-quarter to One."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FURNISH RVR/RVV VALUES, Para 2–8–1.

Section 9. AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE PROCEDURES

2-9-1. APPLICATION

Use the ATIS, where available, to provide advance non-control airport/terminal area and meteorological information to aircraft.

a. Identify each ATIS message by a phonetic letter code word at both the beginning and the end of the message. Automated systems will have the phonetic letter code automatically appended. Exceptions may be made where omissions are required because of special programs or equipment.

1. Each alphabet letter phonetic word shall be used sequentially, except as authorized in subpara a.2., beginning with "Alpha," ending with "Zulu," and repeated without regard to the beginning of a new day. Identify the first resumed broadcast message with "Alpha" or the first assigned alphabet letter word in the event of a broadcast interruption of more than 12 hours.

2. Specific sequential portions of the alphabet may be assigned between facilities or an arrival and departure ATIS when designated by a letter of agreement or facility directive.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (ATIS), Para 11-4-1.

b. The ATIS recording shall be reviewed for completeness, accuracy, speech rate, and proper enunciation before being transmitted.

c. Arrival and departure messages, when broadcast separately, need only contain information appropriate for that operation.

2-9-2. OPERATING PROCEDURES

Maintain an ATIS message that reflects the most current arrival and departure information.

a. Make a new recording when any of the following occur:

1. Upon receipt of any new official weather regardless of whether there is or is not a change in values.

2. When runway braking action reports are received that indicate runway braking is worse than that which is included in the current ATIS broadcast.

3. When there is a change in any other pertinent data, such as runway change, instrument approach in use, new or canceled NOTAM's / PIREP's / HIWAS Update, etc..

b. When a pilot acknowledges that he has received the ATIS broadcast, controllers may omit those items contained in the broadcasts if they are current. Rapidly changing conditions will be issued by ATC, and the ATIS will contain the following:

EXAMPLE-
"Latest ceiling/visibility/altimeter/wind/(other conditions) will be issued by approach control/tower."

c. Broadcast on all appropriate frequencies to advise aircraft of a change in the ATIS code/message.

d. Controllers shall ensure that pilots receive the most current pertinent information. Ask the pilot to confirm receipt of the current ATIS information if the pilot does not initially state the appropriate ATIS code. Controllers shall ensure that changes to pertinent operational information is provided after the initial confirmation of ATIS information is established. Issue the current weather, runway in use, approach information, and pertinent NOTAM's to pilots who are unable to receive the ATIS.

EXAMPLE-
"Verify you have information ALPHA."

"Information BRAVO now current, visibility three miles."

"Information CHARLIE now current, Measured Ceiling 1500 Broken."

2-9-3. CONTENT

Include the following in ATIS broadcast as appropriate:

a. Airport/facility name, phonetic letter code, time of weather sequence (UTC). Weather information consisting of ceiling, visibility, obstructions to vision, temperature, dew point, wind direction and velocity, altimeter, a density altitude advisory when appropriate, and other pertinent remarks included in the official weather observation. Wind direction, velocity, and altimeter shall be reported from certified direct reading instruments. Temperature and dew point should be reported from certified direct reading sensors when available. Always include weather observation remarks of lightning, cumulonimbus, and towering cumulus clouds.

NOTE–
ASOS/AWOS is to be considered the primary source of wind direction, velocity, and altimeter data at those locations that are so equipped. The ASOS Operator Interface Device (OID) displays the magnetic wind as "MAG WND" in the auxiliary data location in the lower left hand portion of the screen. Other OID displayed winds are true and are not to be used for operational purposes.

b. The ceiling/sky condition, visibility, and obstructions to vision may be omitted if the ceiling is above 5,000 feet and the visibility is more than 5 miles.

EXAMPLE–
A remark may be made, "The weather is better than five thousand and five."

c. Instrument/visual approach/s in use. Specify landing runway/s unless the runway is that to which the instrument approach is made.

d. Departure runway/s (to be given only if different from landing runway/s or in the instance of a "departure only" ATIS).

e. Taxiway closures which affect the entrance or exit of active runways, other closures which impact airport operations, other NOTAM's and PIREP's pertinent to operations in the terminal area. Inform pilots of where hazardous weather is occurring and how the information may be obtained. Include available information of known bird activity.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION, Para 2–1–22.

f. Runway braking action or friction reports when provided. Include the time of the report and a word describing the cause of the runway friction problem.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) MU (first value, second value, third value) AT (time), (cause).

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two Seven, MU forty–two, forty–one, twenty–eight at one zero one eight Zulu, ice."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES, Para 3–3–5.

g. Other optional information as local conditions dictate in coordination with ATC. This may include such items as VFR arrival frequencies, temporary airport conditions, LAHSO operations being conducted, or other perishable items that may appear only for a matter of hours or a few days on the ATIS message.

h. Low level wind shear (LLWS) when reported by pilots or is detected on a low level wind shear alert system (LLWAS).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES, Para 3–1–8.

i. A statement which advises the pilot to read back instructions to hold short of a runway. The air traffic manager may elect to remove this requirement 60 days after implementation provided that removing the statement from the ATIS does not result in increased requests from aircraft for read back of hold short instructions.

j. Instructions for the pilot to acknowledge receipt of the ATIS message by informing the controller on initial contact.

EXAMPLE–
"Boston Tower Information Delta. One four zero zero Zulu. Wind two five zero at one zero. Visibility one zero. Ceiling four thousand five hundred broken. Temperature three four. Dew point two eight. . Altimeter three zero one zero. ILS–DME Runway Two Seven Approach in use. Departing Runway Two Two Right. Hazardous Weather Information for (geographical area) available on HIWAS, Flight Watch, or Flight Service Frequencies. Advise on initial contact you have Delta."

Section 10. TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

a. En Route Sector Team Concept and Intent:

1. There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that sector.

2. The intent of the team concept is not to hold the team accountable for the action of individual members, in the event of an operational accident/incident.

b. *Terms:* The following terms will be used in en route facilities for the purpose of standardization:

1. *Sector:* The area of control responsibility (delegated airspace) of the en route sector team, and the team as a whole.

2. *Radar Position (R):* That position which is in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses radar information as the primary means of separation.

3. *Radar Associate (RA):* That position sometimes referred to as "D-Side" or "Manual Controller."

4. *Radar Coordinator Position (RC):* That position sometimes referred to as "Coordinator," "Tracker," or "Handoff Controller" (En Route).

5. *Radar Flight Data (FD):* That position commonly referred to as "Assistant Controller" or "A-Side" position.

6. *Nonradar Position (NR):* That position which is usually in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses nonradar procedures as the primary means of separation.

c. Primary responsibilities of the En Route Sector Team Positions:

1. ***Radar Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate automated handoffs.

(e) Assist the radar associate position with nonautomated handoff actions when needed.

(f) Assist the radar associate position in coordination when needed.

(g) Scan radar display. Correlate with flight progress strip information.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(i) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(j) Adjust equipment at radar position to be usable by all members of the team.

(k) The radar controller shall not be responsible for G/G communications when precluded by VSCS split functionality.

2. ***Radar Associate Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Operate interphones.

(d) Accept and initiate nonautomated handoffs, and ensure radar position is made aware of the actions.

(e) Assist the radar position by accepting or initiating automated handoffs which are necessary for the continued smooth operation of the sector, and ensure that the radar position is made immediately aware of any action taken.

(f) Coordinate, including pointouts.

(g) Monitor radios when not performing higher priority duties.

(h) Scan flight progress strips. Correlate with radar data.

(i) Manage flight progress strips.

(j) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions issued or received. Enter instructions issued or received by the radar position when aware of those instructions.

(k) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions issued or received, and write instructions issued or received by the radar position when aware of them.

(l) Adjust equipment at radar associate position to be usable by all members of the team.

3. ***Radar Coordinator Position:***

(a) Perform interfacility/ intrafacility/ sector/position coordination of traffic actions.

(b) Advise the radar position and the radar associate position of sector actions required to accomplish overall objectives.

(c) Perform any of the functions of the en route sector team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

(d) The RC controller shall not be responsible for monitoring or operating radios when precluded by VSCS split functionality.

NOTE–
The Radar Position has the responsibility of managing the overall sector operations, including aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Radar Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Radar Position retains responsibility for aircraft separation when the Radar Coordinator Position is staffed.

4. ***Radar Flight Data:***

(a) Operate interphone.

(b) Assist Radar Associate Position in managing flight progress strips.

(c) Receive/process and distribute flight progress strips.

(d) Ensure flight data processing equipment is operational.

(e) Request/receive and disseminate weather, NOTAM's, NAS status, traffic management, and Special Use Airspace status messages.

(f) Manually prepare flight progress strips when automation systems are not available.

(g) Enter flight data into computer.

(h) Forward flight data via computer.

(i) Assist facility/sector in meeting situation objectives.

5. ***En Route Nonradar Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate transfer of control, communications, and flight data.

(e) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(f) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(g) Facilities utilizing nonradar positions may modify the standards contained in the radar associate, radar coordinator, and radar flight data sections to accommodate facility/sector needs, i.e., nonradar coordinator, nonradar data positions.

2–10–2. TERMINAL RADAR/NONRADAR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

a. *Terminal Radar Team Concept and Intent:*

1. There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a facility/sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that facility/sector.

2. The intent of the team concept is not to hold the team accountable for the action of individual members in the event of an operational error/deviation.

b. *Terms:* The following terms will be used in terminal facilities for the purposes of standardization.

3. *Facility/Sector:* The area of control responsibility (delegated airspace) of the radar team, and the team as a whole.

4. *Radar Position (R):* That position which is in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses radar information as the primary means of separation.

5. *Radar Associate Position (RA):* That position commonly referred to as "Handoff Controller" or "Radar Data Controller."

6. *Radar Coordinator Position (RC):* That position commonly referred to as "Coordinator," "Tracker," "Sequencer," or "Overhead."

7. *Radar Flight Data (FD):* That position commonly referred to as "Flight Data."

8. *Nonradar Position (NR).* That position which is usually in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses nonradar procedures as the primary means of separation.

c. Primary Responsibilities of the Terminal Radar Team Positions:

1. *Radar Position:*

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate automated handoffs.

(e) Assist the Radar Associate Position with nonautomated handoff actions when needed.

(f) Assist the Radar Associate Position in coordination when needed.

(g) Scan radar display. Correlate with flight progress strip information.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(i) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(j) Adjust equipment at Radar Position to be usable by all members of the team.

2. *Radar Associate Position:*

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Operate interphones.

(d) Maintain awareness of facility/sector activities.

(e) Accept and initiate nonautomated handoffs.

(f) Assist the Radar Position by accepting or initiating automated handoffs which are necessary for the continued smooth operation of the facility/sector and ensure that the Radar Position is made immediately aware of any actions taken.

(g) Coordinate, including point outs.

(h) Scan flight progress strips. Correlate with radar data.

(i) Manage flight progress strips.

(j) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions issued or received, and enter instructions issued or received by the Radar Position aware of those instructions.

(k) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions issued or received, and write instructions issued or received by the Radar Position when aware of them.

(l) Adjust equipment at Radar Associate Position to be usable by all members of the Radar Team.

3. *Radar Coordinator Position:*

(a) Perform interfacility/sector / position coordination of traffic actions.

(b) Advise the Radar Position and the Radar Associate Position of facility/sector actions required to accomplish overall objectives.

(c) Perform any of the functions of the Radar Team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

NOTE–
The Radar Position has the responsibility of managing the overall sector operations, including aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Radar Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Radar Position retains responsibility for aircraft separation when the Radar Coordinator Position is staffed.

4. *Radar Flight Data:*

(a) Operate interphones.

(b) Process and forward flight plan information.

(c) Compile statistical data.

(d) Assist facility/sector in meeting situation objectives.

5. *Terminal Nonradar Position:*

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate transfer of control, communications and flight data.

(e) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(f) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(g) Facilities utilizing nonradar positions may modify the standards contained in the radar associate, radar coordinator, and radar flight data sections to accommodate facility/sector needs, i.e. nonradar coordinator, nonradar data positions.

2-10-3. TOWER TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

a. *Tower Team Concept and Intent:*

1. There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a tower cab. The team as a whole has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that tower cab.

2. The intent of the team concept is not to hold the team accountable for the action of individual members in the event of an operational error/deviation.

b. *Terms:* The following terms will be used in terminal facilities for the purpose of standardization.

1. *Tower Cab:* The area of control responsibility (delegated airspace and/or airport surface areas) of the tower team, and the team as a whole.

2. *Tower Position(s) (LC or GC):* That position which is in direct communications with the aircraft and ensures separation of aircraft in/on the area of jurisdiction.

3. *Tower Associate Position(s):* That position commonly referred to as "Local Assist," "Ground Assist," "Local Associate," or "Ground Associate."

4. *Tower Cab Coordinator Position (CC):* That position commonly referred to as "Coordinator."

5. *Flight Data (FD):* That position commonly referred to as "Flight Data."

6. *Clearance Delivery (CD):* That position commonly referred to as "Clearance."

c. Primary responsibilities of the Tower Team Positions

1. ***Tower Position(s) (LC or GC):***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate communications equipment.

(d) Utilize tower radar display(s).

(e) Utilize alphanumerics.

(f) Assist the Tower Associate Position with coordination.

(g) Scan tower cab environment.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed for instructions or clearances issued or received.

(i) Ensure strip marking is completed for instructions or clearances issued or received.

(j) Process and forward flight plan information.

(k) Perform any functions of the Tower Team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

2. ***Tower Associate Position(s):***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Operate interphones.

(c) Maintain awareness of tower cab activities.

(d) Utilize alphanumerics.

(e) Utilize tower radar display(s).

(f) Assist Tower Position by accepting/initiating coordination for the continued smooth operation of the tower cab and ensure that the Tower Position is made immediately aware of any actions taken.

(g) Manage flight plan information.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed for instructions issued or received and enter instructions issued or received by a Tower Position.

(i) Ensure strip marking is completed for instructions issued or received and enter instructions issued or received by a Tower Position.

3. ***Tower Coordinator Position:***

(a) Perform interfacility/ position coordination for traffic actions.

(b) Advise the tower and the Tower Associate Position(s) of tower cab actions required to accomplish overall objectives.

(c) Perform any of the functions of the Tower Team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

NOTE–
The Tower Positions have the responsibility for aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Tower Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Tower Positions retain responsibility for aircraft separation when the Tower Coordinator Position is staffed.

4. ***Flight Data:***

(a) Operate interphones.

(b) Process and forward flight plan information.

(c) Compile statistical data.

(d) Assist tower cab in meeting situation objectives.

(e) Observe and report weather information.

(f) Utilize alphanumerics.

5. *Clearance Delivery:*

(a) Operate communications equipment.

(b) Process and forward flight plan information.

(c) Issue clearances and ensure accuracy of pilot read back.

(d) Assist tower cab in meeting situation objectives.

(e) Operate tower equipment.

(f) Utilize alphanumerics.

NOTE–
The Tower Positions have the responsibility for aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Tower Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Tower Positions retain responsibility for aircraft separation when the Tower Coordinator Position is staffed.

Chapter 3. AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL– TERMINAL

Section 1. GENERAL

3–1–1. PROVIDE SERVICE

Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.

NOTE–
When operating in accordance with CFR's, it is the responsibility of the pilot to avoid collision with other aircraft. However, due to the limited space around terminal locations, traffic information can aid pilots in avoiding collision between aircraft operating within Class B, Class C, or Class D surface areas and the terminal radar service areas, and transiting aircraft operating in proximity to terminal locations.

3–1–2. PREVENTIVE CONTROL

Provide preventive control service only to aircraft operating in accordance with a letter of agreement. When providing this service, issue advice or instructions only if a situation develops which requires corrective action.

NOTE–
Preventive control differs from other airport traffic control in that repetitious, routine approval of pilot action is eliminated. Controllers intervene only when they observe a traffic conflict developing.

3–1–3. USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS

The local controller has primary responsibility for operations conducted on the active runway and must control the use of those runways. Positive coordination and control is required as follows:

NOTE–
Exceptions may be authorized only as provided in para 1–1–9, CONSTRAINTS GOVERNING SUPPLEMENTS AND PROCEDURAL DEVIATIONS, and FAAO 7210.3, USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS, para 11–1–7, where justified by extraordinary circumstances at specific locations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CONSTRAINTS GOVERNING SUPPLEMENTS AND PROCEDURAL DEVIATIONS, Para 1–1–9.
FAAO 7210.3, USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS, Para 11–1–7.

a. Ground control must obtain approval from local control before authorizing an aircraft or a vehicle to cross or use any portion of an active runway.

b. When the local controller authorizes another controller to cross an active runway, the local controller shall verbally specify the runway to be crossed preceded by the word "cross."

PHRASEOLOGY–
CROSS (runway) AT (intersection if necessary).

c. The ground controller shall advise the local controller when the coordinated runway operation is complete. This may be accomplished verbally or through visual aids as specified by a facility directive.

d. *USA/USAF NOT APPLICABLE* Authorization for aircraft/vehicles to taxi/proceed on or along an active runway, for purposes other than crossing, shall be provided via direct communications on the appropriate local control frequency. This authorization may be provided on the ground control frequency after coordination with local control is completed for those operations specifically described in a facility directive.

NOTE–
The USA and USAF establish local operating procedures in accordance with USA and USAF directives.

e. The local controller shall coordinate with the ground controller before using a runway not previously designated as active.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS, Para 3–1–4.

3–1–4. COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS

Local and ground controllers shall exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas. This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays. As a minimum, provide aircraft identification and applicable runway/intersection/taxiway information as follows:

a. Ground control shall notify local control when a departing aircraft has been taxied to a runway other than one previously designated as active.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS, Para 3–1–3.
FAAO 7210.3, SELECTING ACTIVE RUNWAYS, Para 11–1–6.

b. Ground control shall notify local control of any aircraft taxied to an intersection for takeoff, unless departure from that intersection is specifically designated via prior coordination or facility directive as the standard operating procedure for the runway to be used. When standard procedures require departures to use a specific intersection, ground control shall notify local control when aircraft are taxied to other portions of the runway for departure.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES, Para 3–9–7.

c. When the runways in use for landing/departing aircraft are not visible from the tower or the aircraft using them are not visible on radar, advise the local/ground controller of the aircraft's location before releasing the aircraft to the other controller.

3–1–5. VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS

a. Ensure that the runway to be used is free of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.

b. Vehicles, equipment, and personnel in direct communications with the control tower may be authorized to operate up to the edge of an active runway surface when necessary. Provide advisories as specified in para 3–1–6, TRAFFIC INFORMATION, and para 3–7–5, PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA, as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY–
PROCEED AS REQUESTED; AND IF NECESSARY, (additional instructions or information).

NOTE–
Establishing hold lines/signs is the responsibility of the airport manager. Standards for surface measurements, markings, and signs are contained in the following Advisory Circulars; AC 150/5300–13, AC 150/5340–1, AC 150/5340–18 and AC 150/5340–1G. The operator is responsible to properly position the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in para 3–1–12, VISUALLY SCANNING RUNWAYS, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RUNWAY PROXIMITY, Para 3–7–4.
FAAO 7110.65, TOUCH-AND-GO OR STOP-AND-GO OR LOW APPROACH, Para 3–8–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3–10–10.
AC 150/5300–13, AIRPORT DESIGN.
AC 150/5340–1G, STANDARDS FOR AIRPORT MARKINGS.
14 CFR 91.129.
AIM, OBSTRUCTION LIGHTS, Para 2–2–3.
P/CG, RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.

3–1–6. TRAFFIC INFORMATION

a. Describe vehicles, equipment, or personnel on or near the movement area in a manner which will assist pilots in recognizing them.

EXAMPLE–
"Mower left of runway two seven."
"Trucks crossing approach end of runway two five."
"Workman on taxiway Bravo."
"Aircraft left of runway one eight."

b. Describe the relative position of traffic in an easy to understand manner, such as "to your right" or "ahead of you."

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, U.S. Air MD–Eighty on downwind leg to your left."
"Kingair inbound from outer marker on straight-in approach to runway one seven."

c. When using a certified tower radar display, you may issue traffic advisories using the standard radar phraseology prescribed in para 2–1–21, TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3–10–10.

3–1–7. POSITION DETERMINATION

Determine the position of an aircraft before issuing taxi instructions or takeoff clearance.

NOTE–
The aircraft's position may be determined visually by the controller, by pilots, or through the use of the ASDE.

3–1–8. LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES

a. When low level wind shear is reported by pilots or detected on any of the Doppler or Low Level Wind Shear Alert Systems (LLWAS), controllers shall issue the alert to all arriving and departing aircraft until the alert is broadcast on the ATIS and pilots indicate they have received the appropriate ATIS code. A statement shall be included on the ATIS for 20 minutes following the last report or indication of wind shear.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PIREP INFORMATION, Para 2–6–3.
FAAO 7110.65, CONTENT, Para 2–9–3.
FAAO 7110.65, LANDING INFORMATION, Para 3–10–1.

PHRASEOLOGY–
LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES IN EFFECT.

b. At facilities without ATIS, ensure that wind shear information is broadcast to all arriving and departing aircraft for 20 minutes following the last report or indication of wind shear.

1. At locations equipped with LLWAS, the local controller shall provide wind information as follows:

NOTE–
The LLWAS is designed to detect low level wind shear conditions around the periphery of an airport. It does not detect wind shear beyond that limitation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (LLWAS), Para 11-3-3.

(a) If an alert is received, issue the centerfield wind and the displayed field boundary wind.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WIND SHEAR ALERT. CENTERFIELD WIND (direction) AT (velocity). (Location of sensor) BOUNDARY WIND (direction) AT (velocity).

(b) If multiple alerts are received, issue an advisory that there are wind shear alerts in two/several/all quadrants. After issuing the advisory, issue the centerfield wind in accordance with para 3-9-1, DEPARTURE INFORMATION, followed by the field boundary wind most appropriate to the aircraft operation.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WIND SHEAR ALERTS TWO/SEVERAL/ALL QUADRANTS. CENTERFIELD WIND (direction) AT (velocity). (location of sensor) BOUNDARY WIND (direction) AT (velocity).

(c) If requested by the pilot, issue specific field boundary wind information even though the LLWAS may not be in alert status.

NOTE–
The requirements for issuance of wind information remain valid as appropriate under this paragraph, para 3-9-1, DEPARTURE INFORMATION and para 3-10-1, LANDING INFORMATION.

2. LLWAS "Network Expansion" (LLWAS III) and LLWAS systems that are integrated with TDWR, provide the capability of displaying microburst alerts, wind shear alerts and wind information oriented to the threshold or departure end of a runway. TDWR is designed to detect wind shear and microburst activity. The associated ribbon display allows the controller to read the displayed alert without any need for interpretation.

(a) If a wind shear or microburst alert is received for the runway in use, issue the alert information for that runway to arriving and departing aircraft as it is displayed on the ribbon display.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Runway) (arrival/departure) WIND SHEAR/MICROBURST ALERT, (windspeed) KNOT GAIN/LOSS, (location).

EXAMPLE–
17A MBA 40K - 3MF

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY 17 ARRIVAL MICROBURST ALERT 40 KNOT LOSS 3 MILE FINAL.

EXAMPLE–
17D WSA 25K+ 2MD

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY 17 DEPARTURE WIND SHEAR ALERT 25 KNOT GAIN 2 MILE DEPARTURE.

(b) If requested by the pilot or deemed appropriate by the controller, issue the displayed wind information oriented to the threshold or departure end of the runway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Runway) DEPARTURE/THRESHOLD WIND (direction) AT (velocity).

(c) Alerts occurring on the edge of the system, or if the system is unable to distinguish between wind shear and microbursts; an alert message will be displayed advising of a possible wind shear outside of the system network.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Appropriate wind or alert information) POSSIBLE WIND SHEAR OUTSIDE THE NETWORK.

(d) If unstable conditions produce multiple alerts, issue an advisory of multiple wind shear/microburst alerts followed by specific alert or wind information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR/MICROBURST ALERTS (specific alert or wind information).

(e) When a microburst is detected, a statement shall be included on the ATIS broadcast, "MICROBURST ADVISORIES IN EFFECT." This item shall be included on the ATIS for at least 20 MINUTES following the microburst alert.

(f) The LLWAS "Network Expansion" is designed to operate with as many as 50 percent of the total sensors inoperative. When all three remote sensors designated for a specific runway arrival or departure wind display line are inoperative then the LLWAS-NE for that runway arrival/departure shall be considered out of service. When a specific runway arrival or departure wind display line is inoperative and wind shear/microburst activity is likely; (e.g.; frontal activity, convective storms, PIREP's), a statement shall be included on the ATIS, "WIND SHEAR AND MICROBURST INFORMATION FOR RUNWAY *(runway number)* ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE, NOT AVAILABLE."

NOTE–
The geographic situation display (GSD) is a supervisory planning tool and is not intended to be a primary tool for microburst or wind shear alerts.

3–1–9. USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS

a. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays for the following purposes:

1. To determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.

NOTE–
This authorization does not alter visual separation procedures. When employing visual separation, the provisions of para 7–2–1, VISUAL SEPARATION, apply unless otherwise authorized by AAT–1.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PRIMARY RADAR IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–2.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.
FAAO 7110.65, ARTS/PIDP IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–4.

2. To provide aircraft with radar traffic advisories.

3. To provide a direction or suggested headings to VFR aircraft as a method for radar identification or as an advisory aid to navigation.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification), PROCEED (direction)–BOUND, (other instructions or information as necessary),

or

(identification), SUGGESTED HEADING (degrees), (other instructions as necessary).

NOTE–
It is important that the pilot be aware of the fact that the directions or headings being provided are suggestions or are advisory in nature. This is to keep the pilot from being inadvertently mislead into assuming that radar vectors (and other associated radar services) are being provided when, in fact, they are not.

4. To provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the surface area for which the tower has responsibility.

EXAMPLE–
"TURN BASE LEG NOW."

NOTE–
Unless otherwise authorized, tower radar displays are intended to be an aid to local controllers in meeting their responsibilities to the aircraft operating on the runways or within the surface area. They are not intended to provide radar benefits to pilots except for those accrued through a more efficient and effective local control position. In addition, local controllers at nonapproach control towers must devote the majority of their time to visually scanning the runways and local area; an assurance of continued positive radar identification could place distracting and operationally inefficient requirements upon the local controller. Therefore, since the requirements of para 5–3–1, APPLICATION, cannot be assured, the radar functions prescribed above are not considered to be radar services and pilots should not be advised of being in "radar contact."

b. Additional functions may be performed provided the procedures have been reviewed and authorized by appropriate management levels.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMA, Para 5–5–3.

3–1–10. OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES

When requested by a pilot or when you deem it necessary, inform an aircraft of any observed abnormal aircraft condition.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Item) APPEAR/S (observed condition).

EXAMPLE–
"Landing gear appears up."
"Landing gear appears down and in place."
"Rear baggage door appears open."

3–1–11. SURFACE AREA RESTRICTIONS

a. If traffic conditions permit, approve a pilot's request to cross Class C or Class D surface areas or exceed the Class C or Class D airspace speed limit. Do not, however, approve a speed in excess of 250 knots (288 mph) unless the pilot informs you a higher minimum speed is required.

NOTE–
CFR Part 91.117 permits speeds in excess of 250 knots (288 mph) when so required or recommended in the airplane flight manual or required by normal military operating procedures.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SURFACE AREAS, Para 2–1–16.

b. Do not approve a pilot's request or ask a pilot to conduct unusual maneuvers within surface areas of Class B, C, or D airspace if they are not essential to the performance of the flight.

EXCEPTION: A pilot's request to conduct aerobatic practice activities may be approved, when operating in accordance with a letter of agreement, and the activity will have no adverse affect on safety of the air traffic operation or result in a reduction of service to other users.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, AEROBATIC PRACTICE AREAS, Para 6–4–7.

NOTE–
These unusual maneuvers include unnecessary low passes, unscheduled flybys, practice instrument approaches to altitudes below specified minima (unless a landing or touch-and-go is to be made), or any so-called "buzz jobs" wherein a flight is conducted at a low altitude and/or a high rate of speed for thrill purposes. Such maneuvers increase hazards to persons and property and contribute to noise complaints.

3–1–12. VISUALLY SCANNING RUNWAYS

a. Local controllers shall visually scan runways to the maximum extent possible.

b. Ground control shall assist local control in visually scanning runways, especially when runways are in close proximity to other movement areas.

3–1–13. ESTABLISHING TWO-WAY COMMUNICATIONS

Pilots are required to establish two-way radio communications before entering the Class D airspace. If the controller responds to a radio call with, "(a/c callsign) standby," radio communications have been established and the pilot can enter the Class D airspace. If workload or traffic conditions prevent immediate provision of Class D services, inform the pilot to remain outside the Class D airspace until conditions permit the services to be provided.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(a/c callsign) REMAIN OUTSIDE DELTA AIRSPACE AND STANDBY.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

3–1–14. GROUND OPERATIONS WHEN VOLCANIC ASH IS PRESENT

When volcanic ash is present on the airport surface, and to the extent possible:

a. Avoid requiring aircraft to come to a full stop while taxiing.

b. Provide for a rolling takeoff for all departures.

NOTE–
When aircraft begin a taxi or takeoff roll on ash contaminated surfaces, large amounts of volcanic ash will again become airborne. This newly airborne ash will significantly reduce visibility and will be ingested by the engines of following aircraft.

REFERENCE–
AIM, FLIGHT OPERATIONS IN VOLCANIC ASH, Para 7–5–7.

Section 2. VISUAL SIGNALS

3-2-1. LIGHT SIGNALS

Use ATC light signals from TBL 3-2-1 to control aircraft and the movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel on the movement area when radio communications cannot be employed.

ATC Light Signals

	Meaning		
Color and type of signal	*Aircraft on the ground*	*Aircraft in flight*	*Movement of vehicles, equipment and personnel*
Steady green	Cleared for takeoff	Cleared to land	Cleared to cross; proceed; go
Flashing green	Cleared to taxi	Return for landing (to be followed by steady green at the proper time)	Not applicable
Steady red	Stop	Give way to other aircraft and continue circling	Stop
Flashing red	Taxi clear of landing area or runway in use	Airport unsafe– Do not land	Clear the taxiway/runway
Flashing white	Return to starting point on airport	Not applicable	Return to starting point on airport
Alternating red and green	General Warning Signal–Exercise Extreme Caution	General Warning Signal–Exercise Extreme Caution	General Warning Signal–Exercise Extreme Caution

TBL 3-2-1

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3-10-10.
FAAO 7210.3, LETTERS OF AGREEMENT, Para 4-3-1.

3-2-2. WARNING SIGNAL

Direct a general warning signal, alternating red and green, to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate, when:

NOTE–
The warning signal is not a prohibitive signal and can be followed by any other light signal, as circumstances permit.

a. Aircraft are converging and a collision hazard exists.

b. Mechanical trouble exists of which the pilot might not be aware.

c. Other hazardous conditions are present which call for intensified pilot or operator alertness. These conditions may include obstructions, soft field, ice on the runway, etc.

3-2-3. RECEIVER-ONLY ACKNOWLEDGMENT

To obtain acknowledgment from an aircraft equipped with receiver only, request the aircraft to do the following:

a. *Fixed-wing aircraft–*

1. Between sunrise and sunset–

(a) Move ailerons or rudders while on the ground.

(b) Rock wings while in flight.

2. Between sunset and sunrise– Flash navigation or landing lights.

b. *Helicopters–*

1. Between sunrise and sunset–

(a) While hovering, either turn the helicopter toward the controlling facility and flash the landing light or rock the tip path plane.

(b) While in flight, either flash the landing light or rock the tip path plane.

2. Between sunset and sunrise–Flash landing light or search light.

Section 3. AIRPORT CONDITIONS

3-3-1. LANDING AREA CONDITION

If you observe or are informed of any condition which affects the safe use of a landing area:

NOTE–
[1] The airport management/military operations office is responsible for observing and reporting the condition of the landing area.

[2] It is the responsibility of the agency operating the airport to provide the tower with current information regarding airport conditions.

[3] A disabled aircraft on a runway, after occupants are clear, is normally handled by flight standards and airport management/military operations office personnel in the same manner as any obstruction; e.g., construction equipment.

a. Relay the information to the airport manager/military operations office concerned.

b. Copy verbatim any information received and record the name of the person submitting it.

c. Confirm information obtained from other than authorized airport or FAA personnel unless this function is the responsibility of the military operations office.

NOTE–
Civil airport managers are required to provide a list of airport employees who are authorized to issue information concerning conditions affecting the safe use of the airport.

d. If you are unable to contact the airport management or operator, issue a NOTAM publicizing an unsafe condition and inform the management or operator as soon as practicable.

EXAMPLE–
"DISABLED AIRCRAFT ON RUNWAY."

NOTE–
[1] Legally, only the airport management/military operations office can close a runway.

[2] Military controllers are not authorized to issue NOTAM's. It is the responsibility of the military operations office.

e. Issue to aircraft only factual information, as reported by the airport management concerning the condition of the runway surface, describing the accumulation of precipitation.

EXAMPLE–
"ALL RUNWAYS COVERED BY COMPACTED SNOW SIX INCHES DEEP."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, Para 4-7-13.

3-3-2. CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION

If an aircraft requests to takeoff, land, or touch-and-go on a closed or unsafe runway, inform the pilot the runway is closed or unsafe, and

a. If the pilot persists in his request, quote him the appropriate parts of the NOTAM applying to the runway and inform him that a clearance cannot be issued.

b. Then, if the pilot insists and in your opinion the intended operation would not adversely affect other traffic, inform him that the operation will be at his own risk.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (runway number) CLOSED/UNSAFE.

If appropriate, (quote NOTAM information),

UNABLE TO ISSUE DEPARTURE/LANDING/TOUCH-AND-GO CLEARANCE.
DEPARTURE/LANDING/TOUCH-AND-GO WILL BE AT YOUR OWN RISK.

c. Except as permitted by para 4-8-7, SIDE-STEP MANEUVER, where parallel runways are served by separate ILS/MLS systems and one of the runways is closed, the ILS/MLS associated with the closed runway should not be used for approaches unless not using the ILS/MLS would have an adverse impact on the operational efficiency of the airport.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, LANDING CLEARANCE, Para 3-10-5.
FAAO 7110.65, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, Para 4-7-13.

3-3-3. TIMELY INFORMATION

Issue airport condition information necessary for an aircraft's safe operation in time for it to be useful to the pilot. Include the following, as appropriate:

a. Construction work on or immediately adjacent to the movement area.

b. Rough portions of the movement area.

c. Braking conditions caused by ice, snow, slush, or water.

d. Snowdrifts or piles of snow on or along the edges of the area and the extent of any plowed area.

e. Parked aircraft on the movement area.

f. Irregular operation of part or all of the airport lighting system.

g. Volcanic ash on any airport surface area and whether the ash is wet or dry (if known).

NOTE–
Braking action on wet ash may be degraded. Dry ash on the runway may necessitate minimum use of reverse thrust.

h. Other pertinent airport conditions.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, Para 4-7-13.
FAAO 7110.65, REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION, Para 2-1-9.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3-10-10.

3-3-4. BRAKING ACTION

Furnish quality of braking action, as received from pilots or the airport management, to all aircraft as follows:

a. Describe the quality of braking action using the terms "good," "fair," "poor," "nil," or a combination of these terms. If the pilot or airport management reports braking action in other than the foregoing terms, ask him to categorize braking action in these terms.

NOTE–
The term "nil" is used to indicate bad or no braking action.

b. Include type of aircraft or vehicle from which the report is received.

EXAMPLE–
"Braking action fair to poor, reported by a heavy D-C Ten."
"Braking action poor, reported by a Boeing Seven Twenty-Seven."

c. If the braking action report affects only a portion of a runway, obtain enough information from the pilot or airport management to describe the braking action in terms easily understood by the pilot.

EXAMPLE–
"Braking action poor first half of runway, reported by a Lockheed Ten Eleven."
"Braking action poor beyond the intersection of runway two seven, reported by a Boeing Seven Twenty-Seven."

NOTE–
Descriptive terms, such as the first or the last half of the runway, should normally be used rather than landmark descriptions, such as opposite the fire station, south of a taxiway, etc. Landmarks extraneous to the landing runway are difficult to distinguish during low visibility, at night, or anytime a pilot is busy landing an aircraft.

d. Furnish runway friction measurement readings/values as received from airport management to aircraft as follows:

1. Furnish information as received from the airport management to pilots on the ATIS at locations where friction measuring devices, such as MU-Meter, Saab Friction Tester (SFT), and Skiddometer are in use. Use the runway followed by the MU number for each of the three runway segments, time of report, and a word describing the cause of the runway friction problem.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway two seven, MU forty-two, forty-one, twenty-eight at one zero one eight Zulu, ice."

2. Issue the runway surface condition and/or the Runway Condition Reading (RCR), if provided, to all USAF and ANG aircraft. Issue the RCR to other aircraft upon pilot request.

EXAMPLE–
"Ice on runway, RCR zero five, patchy."

NOTE–
1 *USAF has established RCR procedures for determining the average deceleration readings of runways under conditions of water, slush, ice, or snow. The use of the RCR code is dependent upon the pilot's having a "stopping capability chart" specifically applicable to his aircraft.*

2 *USAF offices furnish RCR information at airports serving USAF and ANG aircraft*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, Para 4-7-13.
FAAO 7110.65, BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES, Para 3-3-5.

3-3-5. BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES

a. When runway braking action reports are received from pilots or the airport management which include the terms "poor" or "nil" or whenever weather conditions are conducive to deteriorating or rapidly changing runway conditions, include on the ATIS broadcast the statement "Braking Action Advisories are in effect."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (ATIS), Para 11-4-1.

b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect, take the following action:

1. Issue the latest braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft early enough to be of benefit to the pilot. When possible, include reports from heavy jet aircraft when the arriving or departing aircraft is a heavy jet.

2. If no report has been received for the runway of intended use, issue an advisory to that effect.

PHRASEOLOGY–
NO BRAKING ACTION REPORTS RECEIVED FOR RUNWAY (runway number).

3. Advise the airport management that runway braking action reports of "poor" or "nil" have been received.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, LETTERS OF AGREEMENT, Para 4–3–1.

4. Solicit PIREP's of runway braking action.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PIREP INFORMATION, Para 2–6–3.

c. Include runway friction measurement/values received from airport management on the ATIS. Furnish the information when requested by the pilot in accordance with para 3–3–4, BRAKING ACTION.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CONTENT, Para 2–9–3.
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE INFORMATION, Para 3–9–1.
FAAO 7110.65, LANDING INFORMATION, Para 3–10–1.
FAAO 7110.65, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, Para 4–7–13.

3–3–6. ARRESTING SYSTEM OPERATION

a. For normal operations, arresting systems remotely controlled by ATC shall remain in the retracted or down position.

NOTE–
1 *USN– Runway Arresting Gear– barriers are not operated by ATC personnel. Readiness/rigging of the equipment is the responsibility of the operations department.*

2 *A request to raise a barrier or hook cable means the barrier or cable on the departure end of the runway. If an approach end engagement is required, the pilot or military authority will specifically request that the approach end cable be raised.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7610.4, SECTION 3. AIRCRAFT ARRESTING SYSTEM, SFA, SFO, CELNAV, Para 9–31 THROUGH Para 9–35.

b. Raise aircraft arresting systems whenever:

1. Requested by a pilot.

NOTE–
The standard emergency phraseology for a pilot requesting an arresting system to be raised for immediate engagement is:

"BARRIER – BARRIER – BARRIER"

or

"CABLE – CABLE – CABLE."

2. Requested by military authority; e.g., airfield manager, supervisor of flying, mobile control officer, etc.

NOTE–
USAF– Web barriers at the departure end of the runway may remain in the up position when requested by the senior operational commander. The IFR Enroute Supplement and AP-1will describe specific barrier configuration. ATC will advise transient aircraft of the barrier configuration using the phraseology in subpara c. below.

3. A military jet aircraft is landing with known or suspected radio failure or conditions (drag chute/hydraulic/electrical failure, etc.) that indicate an arresting system may be needed. Exceptions are authorized for military aircraft which cannot engage an arresting system (C–9, C–141, C–5, T–39, etc.) and should be identified in a letter of agreement and/or appropriate military directive.

c. When requested by military authority due to freezing weather conditions or malfunction of the activating mechanism, the barrier/cable may remain in a raised position provided aircraft are advised.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOUR DEPARTURE/LANDING WILL BE TOWARD/ OVER A RAISED BARRIER/CABLE ON RUNWAY (number), (location, distance, as appropriate).

d. Inform civil and U.S. Army aircraft whenever rubber supported cables are in place at the approach end of the landing runway, and include the distance of the cables from the threshold. This information may be omitted if it is published in the "Notices to Airmen" publication/DOD FLIP.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway One Four arresting cable one thousand feet from threshold."

e. When arresting system operation has been requested, inform the pilot of the indicated barrier/cable position.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification), BARRIER/CABLE INDICATES UP/ DOWN. CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF/TO LAND.

f. Time permitting, advise pilots of the availability of all arresting systems on the runway in question when a pilot requests barrier information.

g. If an aircraft engages a raised barrier/cable, initiate crash alarm procedures immediately.

h. For preplanned practice engagements not associated with emergencies, crash alarm systems need not be activated if, in accordance with local military operating procedures, all required notifications are made before the practice engagement.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, Para 4–7–13.

3–3–7. FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT

a. *Background.*

1. To meet the demand for more facilities capable of operating under CAT III weather, Type II equipment is being upgraded to Integrity Level 3. This integrity level will support operations which place a high degree of reliance on ILS guidance for positioning through touchdown.

2. Installation of the FFM remote status indicating units is necessary to attain the integrity necessary to meet internationally agreed upon reliability values in support of CAT III operations on Type II ILS equipment. The remote status indicating unit used in conjunction with Type II equipment adds a third integrity test; thereby, producing an approach aid which has integrity capable of providing Level 3 service.

3. The remote status sensing unit, when installed in the tower cab, will give immediate indications of localizer out-of-tolerance conditions. The alarm in the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates an inoperative or an out-of-tolerance localizer signal; e.g., the course may have shifted due to equipment malfunction or vehicle/aircraft encroachment into the critical area.

b. *Procedures.*

1. Operation of the FFM remote sensing unit will be based on the prevailing weather. The FFM remote sensing unit shall be operational when the weather is below CAT I ILS minimums.

2. When the weather is less than that required for CAT I operations, the GRN–27 FFM remote status sensing unit shall be set at:

(a) "CAT II" when the RVR is less than 2,400 feet;

(b) "CAT III" when the RVR is less than 1,200 feet.

3. When the remote status unit indicates that the localizer FFM is in alarm (aural warning following the preset delay) and:

(a) The aircraft is outside the middle marker (MM), check for encroachment those portions of the critical area that can be seen from the tower. It is understood that the entire critical area may not be visible due to low ceilings and poor visibility. The check is strictly to determine possible causal factors for the out-of-tolerance situation. If the alarm has not cleared prior to the aircraft's arriving at the MM, immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.

(b) The aircraft is between the MM and the inner marker (IM), immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CAUTION, MONITOR INDICATES RUNWAY (number) LOCALIZER UNRELIABLE.

(c) The aircraft has passed the IM, there is no action requirement. Although the FFM has been modified with filters which dampen the effect of false alarms, you may expect alarms when aircraft are located between the FFM and the localizer antenna either on landing or on takeoff.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRPORT CONDITIONS, Para 4–7–13.

Section 4. AIRPORT LIGHTING

3-4-1. EMERGENCY LIGHTING

Whenever you become aware that an emergency has or will occur, take action to provide for the operation of all appropriate airport lighting aids as required.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS, Para 10-4-2.

3-4-2. RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS

When separate on-off controls are provided, operate runway end identifier lights:

a. When the associated runway lights are lighted. Turn the REIL off after:

1. An arriving aircraft has landed.

2. A departing aircraft has left the traffic pattern area.

3. It is determined that the lights are of no further use to the pilot.

b. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

c. As requested by the pilot.

d. Operate intensity setting in accordance with the values in TBL 3-4-1 except as prescribed in subparas b. and c. above.

REIL Intensity Setting-Three Step System

Settings	*Visibility*	
	Day	*Night*
3	Less than 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
2	2 to 5 miles inclusive	1 to but not including 3 miles
1	When requested	3 miles or more

TBL 3-4-1

3-4-3. VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATORS (VASI)

VASI systems with remote on-off switching shall be operated when they serve the runway in use and where intensities are controlled in accordance with TBL 3-4-1 and TBL 3-4-2 except:

a. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

b. As required by the pilot.

VASI Intensity Setting-Two Step System

Step	*Period/Condition*
High	Day-Sunrise to sunset.
Low	Night-Sunset to sunrise.

TBL 3-4-2

VASI Intensity Setting-Three Step System

Step	*Period/Condition*
High	Day-Sunrise to sunset.
Medium	Twilight-From sunset to 30 minutes after sunset and from 30 minutes before sunrise to sunrise,* and during twilight in Alaska.
Low	Night-Sunset to sunrise.
* During a 1 year period, twilight may vary 26 to 43 minutes between 25 and 49N latitude.	

TBL 3-4-3

NOTE-
The basic FAA standard for VASI systems permits independent operation by means of photoelectric device. This system has no on-off control feature and is intended for continuous operation. Other VASI systems in use include those that are operated remotely from the control tower. These systems may consist of either a photoelectric intensity control with only an on-off switch, a two step intensity system, or a three step intensity system.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR (VASI) SYSTEMS, Para 11-6-5.
FAAO 6850.2, VISUAL GUIDANCE LIGHTING SYSTEMS.

3-4-4. APPROACH LIGHTS

Operate approach lights:

a. Between sunset and sunrise when one of the following conditions exists:

1. They serve the landing runway.

2. They serve a runway to which an approach is being made but aircraft will land on another runway.

b. Between sunrise and sunset when the ceiling is less than 1,000 feet or the prevailing visibility is 5 miles or less and approaches are being made to:

1. A landing runway served by the lights.

2. A runway served by the lights but aircraft are landing on another runway.

3. The airport, but landing will be made on a runway served by the lights.

c. As requested by the pilot.

d. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

NOTE–
In the interest of energy conservation, the ALS should be turned off when not needed for aircraft operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALS INTENSITY SETTINGS, Para 3–4–5.

3–4–5. ALS INTENSITY SETTINGS

When operating ALS as prescribed in para 3–4–4, APPROACH LIGHTS, operate intensity controls in accordance with the values in TBL 3–4–4 except:

a. When facility directives specify other settings to meet local atmospheric, topographic, and twilight conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

ALS Intensity Setting

Step	*Visibility–(Applicable to runway served by lights)*	
	Day	*Night*
5	Less than 1 mile*	When requested
4	1 to but not including 3 miles	When requested
3	3 to but not including 5 miles	Less than 1 mile*
2	5 to but not including 7 miles	1 to 3 miles inclusive
1	When requested	Greater than 3 miles
*and/or 6,000 feet or less of the RVR on the runway served by the ALS and RVR.		

TBL 3–4–4

NOTE–
Daylight steps 2 and 3 provide recommended settings applicable to conditions in subparas b. and c. At night, use step 4 or 5 only when requested by a pilot.

3–4–6. SEQUENCED FLASHING LIGHTS (SFL)

Operate Sequenced Flashing Lights:

NOTE–
SFL are a component of the ALS and cannot be operated when the ALS is off.

a. When the visibility is less than 3 miles and instrument approaches are being made to the runway served by the associated ALS.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

3–4–7. MALSR/ODALS

Operate MALSR/ODALS that have separate on–off and intensity setting controls in accordance with TBL 3–4–5 and TBL 3–4–6 except:

a. When facility directives specify other settings to meet local atmospheric, topographic, and twilight conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

Two Step MALS/One Step RAIL/Two Step ODALS

Settings		*Visibility*	
		Day	*Night*
MALS/ODALS RAIL	Hi On	Less than 3 miles	Less than 3 miles
MALS/ODALS RAIL	Low Off	When requested	3 miles or more
*At locations providing part–time control tower service, if duplicate controls are not provided in the associated FSS, the MALSR/ODALS shall be set to low intensity during the hours of darkness when the tower is not staffed.			

TBL 3–4–5

Three Step MALS/Three Step RAIL/Three Step ODALS

Settings	*Visibility*	
	Day	*Night*
3	Less than 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
2	2 to 5 miles inclusive	1 to but not including 3 miles*
1	When requested	3 miles or more
*At locations providing part–time control tower service, if duplicate controls are not provided in the FSS on the airport, the air–to–ground radio link shall be activated during the hours of darkness when the tower is unmanned. If there is no radio air–to–ground control, the MALSR/ODALS shall be set on intensity setting 2 during the hours of darkness when the tower is not staffed.		

TBL 3–4–6

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, OPERATION OF LIGHTS WHEN TOWER IS CLOSED, Para 11–6–2.

3–4–8. ALSF–2/SSALR

a. When the prevailing visibility is 3/4 mile or less or the RVR is 4,000 feet or less, operate the ALSF–2 system as follows:

1. As requested by the pilot.

2. As you deem necessary if not contrary to pilot request.

b. Operate the SSALR system when the conditions in subpara a. are not a factor.

3-4-9. RUNWAY EDGE LIGHTS

Operate the runway edge light system/s serving the runway/s in use as follows:

a. Between sunset and sunrise, turn the lights on:

1. For departures–Before an aircraft taxies onto the runway and until it leaves the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area.

2. For arrivals–

(a) IFR aircraft–Before the aircraft begins final approach, or

(b) VFR aircraft–Before the aircraft enters the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area, and

(c) Until the aircraft has taxied off the landing runway.

b. Between sunrise and sunset, turn the lights on as shown in subparas a.1. and a.2. when the surface visibility is less than 2 miles.

c. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

d. Different from subparas a., b., or c. above, when:

1. You consider it necessary, or

2. Requested by a pilot and no other known aircraft will be adversely affected.

NOTE–
Pilots may request lights to be turned on or off contrary to subparas a., b., or c. However, CFR Part 135 operators are required to land/takeoff on lighted runways/heliport landing areas at night.

e. Do not turn on the runway edge lights when a NOTAM closing the runway is in effect.

NOTE–
Application concerns use for takeoffs/landings/approaches and does not preclude turning lights on for use of unaffected portions of a runway for taxiing aircraft, surface vehicles, maintenance, repair, etc.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SIMULTANEOUS APPROACH AND RUNWAY EDGE LIGHT OPERATION, Para 3-4-14.
FAAO 7210.3, INCOMPATIBLE LIGHT SYSTEM OPERATION, Para 11-6-3.
FAAO 7210.3, RUNWAY EDGE LIGHTS ASSOCIATED WITH MEDIUM APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEM/RUNWAY ALIGNMENT INDICATOR LIGHTS, Para 11-6-8.

3-4-10. HIGH INTENSITY RUNWAY, RUNWAY CENTERLINE, AND TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTS

Operate high intensity runway and associated runway centerline and touchdown zone lights in accordance with TBL 3-4-7, except:

a. Where a facility directive specifies other settings to meet local conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot request.

HIRL, RCLS, TDZL Intensity Setting

Step	*Visibility*	
	Day	*Night*
5	Less than 1 mile*	When requested
4	1 to but not including 2 miles*	Less than 1 mile*
3	2 to but not including 3 miles	1 to but not including 3 miles*
2	When requested	3 to 5 miles inclusive
1	When requested	More than 5 miles
*and/or appropriate RVR/RVV equivalent.		

TBL 3-4-7

3-4-11. HIRL ASSOCIATED WITH MALSR

Operate HIRL which control the associated MALSR in accordance with TBL 3-4-8, except:

a. As requested by the pilot.

b. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to the pilot's request.

HIRL Associated with MALSR

Step	*Visibility*	
	Day	*Night*
5	Less than 1 mile	When requested
4	1 to but not including 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
3	2 to but not including 3 miles	1 to but not including 3 miles
2	When requested	3 to 5 miles inclusive
1	When requested	More than 5 miles

TBL 3-4-8

NOTE–
When going from a given brightness step setting to a lower setting, rotation of the brightness control to a point below the intended step setting and then back to the appropriate step setting will ensure that the MALSR will operate at the appropriate brightness.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, MEDIUM INTENSITY RUNWAY LIGHTS, Para 3-4-13.

3-4-12. HIRL CHANGES AFFECTING RVR

Keep the appropriate approach controller or PAR controller informed, in advance if possible, of HIRL changes that affect RVR.

3-4-13. MEDIUM INTENSITY RUNWAY LIGHTS

Operate MIRL or MIRL which control the associated MALSR in accordance with TBL 3-4-9, except:

a. As requested by the pilot.

b. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to the pilot's request.

MIRL Intensity Setting

Step	*Visibility*	
	Day	*Night*
3	Less than 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
2	2 to 3 miles	1 to 3 miles
1	When requested	More than 3 miles

TBL 3-4-9

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, HIRL ASSOCIATED WITH MALSR, Para 3-4-11.

3-4-14. SIMULTANEOUS APPROACH AND RUNWAY EDGE LIGHT OPERATION

Turn on the runway edge lights for the runway in use whenever the associated approach lights are on. If multiple runway light selection is not possible, you may leave the approach lights on and switch the runway lights to another runway to accommodate another aircraft

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, RUNWAY EDGE LIGHTS, Para 3-4-9.

3-4-15. HIGH SPEED TURNOFF LIGHTS

Operate high speed turnoff lights:

a. Whenever the associated runway lights are used for arriving aircraft. Leave them on until the aircraft has either entered a taxiway or passed the last light.

b. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

c. As requested by the pilot.

3-4-16. TAXIWAY LIGHTS

Operate taxiway lights in accordance with TBL 3-4-9, TBL 3-4-10, or TBL 3-4-11 except:

a. Where a facility directive specifies other settings or times to meet local conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot request.

Three Step Taxiway Lights

Step	*Visibility*	
	Day	*Night*
3	Less than 1 mile	When requested
2	When requested	Less than 1 mile
1	When requested	1 mile of more

TBL 3-4-10

Five Step Taxiway Lights

Step	*Visibility*	
	Day	*Night*
5	Less than 1 mile	When requested
4	When requested	Less than 1 mile
3	When requested	1 mile or more
1 & 2	When requested	When requested

TBL 3-4-11

One Step Taxiway Lights

Day	*Night*
Less than 1 mile	On

TBL 3-4-12

NOTE-
AC/150 5340-24 contains recommended brightness levels for variable setting taxiway lights.

3-4-17. OBSTRUCTION LIGHTS

If controls are provided, turn the lights on between sunset and sunrise.

3-4-18. ROTATING BEACON

If controls are provided, turn the rotating beacon on:

a. Between sunset and sunrise.

b. Between sunrise and sunset when the reported ceiling or visibility is below basic VFR minima.

Section 5. RUNWAY SELECTION

3-5-1. SELECTION

a. Except where a "runway use" program is in effect, use the runway most nearly aligned with the wind when 5 knots or more or the "calm wind" runway when less than 5 knots (set tetrahedron accordingly) unless use of another runway:

NOTE-
1 If a pilot prefers to use a runway different from that specified, the pilot is expected to advise ATC.

2 At airports where a "runway use" program is established, ATC will assign runways deemed to have the least noise impact. If in the interest of safety a runway different from that specified is preferred, the pilot is expected to advise ATC accordingly. ATC will honor such requests and advise pilots when the requested runway is noise sensitive.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 8400.9, NATIONAL SAFETY AND OPERATIONAL CRITERIA FOR RUNWAY USE PROGRAMS.

1. Will be operationally advantageous, or
2. Is requested by the pilot.

b. When conducting aircraft operations on other than the advertised active runway, state the runway in use.

3-5-2. STOL RUNWAYS

Use STOL runways as follows:

a. A designated STOL runway may be assigned only when requested by the pilot or as specified in a letter of agreement with an aircraft operator.

b. Issue the measured STOL runway length if the pilot requests it.

3-5-3. TAILWIND COMPONENTS

When authorizing use of runways and a tailwind component exists, always state both wind direction and velocity.

NOTE-
The wind may be described as "calm" when appropriate.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, CALM WIND CONDITIONS, Para 2-6-5.

Section 6. AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION PROCEDURES

3-6-1. EQUIPMENT USAGE

Use ASDE to augment visual observation of aircraft and/or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways, or other areas of the movement area:

a. When visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, and

b. When, in your judgment, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.

c. ASDE-3 shall be operated continuously between sunset and sunrise regardless of visibility.

3-6-2. INFORMATION USAGE

a. Use ASDE derived information to assist with:

1. Formulating clearances and control instructions to aircraft and vehicles on the movement area.

2. Determining when the runway is clear of aircraft and vehicles prior to a landing or departure.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, RADAR USE, Para 3-7-2.

3. Positioning aircraft and vehicles using the movement area.

4. Determining the exact location of aircraft and vehicles, or spatial relationship to other aircraft/vehicles on the movement area.

5. Monitoring compliance with control instructions by aircraft and vehicles on taxiways and runways.

6. Confirming pilot reported positions.

7. Providing directional taxi information on pilot request.

PHRASEOLOGY-
TURN (left/right) ON THE TAXIWAY/RUNWAY YOU ARE APPROACHING.

b. Do not provide specific navigational guidance (exact headings to be followed) unless an emergency exists or by mutual agreement with the pilot.

NOTE-
It remains the pilot's responsibility to navigate visually via routes to the clearance limit specified by the controller and to avoid other parked or taxiing aircraft, vehicles, or persons in the movement area.

3-6-3. IDENTIFICATION

To identify an observed target on the ASDE display, correlate its position with one or more of the following:

a. Pilot's report.

b. Controller's visual observation.

c. An identified target observed on the ASR or BRITE/DBRITE display.

Section 7. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT PROCEDURES

3-7-1. GROUND TRAFFIC MOVEMENT

Issue by radio or directional light signals specific instructions which approve or disapprove the movement of aircraft, vehicles, equipment, or personnel on the movement area.

a. Do not issue *conditional* instructions that are dependent upon the movement of an arrival aircraft on or approaching the runway or a departure aircraft established on a takeoff roll. Do not say, "Taxi into position and hold behind landing traffic," or "Taxi/proceed across Runway Three Six behind departing/landing Jetstar." The above requirements do not preclude issuing instructions to follow an aircraft observed to be operating on the movement area in accordance with an ATC clearance/instruction and in such a manner that the instructions to follow are not ambiguous.

b. Do not use the word "cleared" in conjunction with authorization for aircraft to taxi or equipment/vehicle/personnel operations. Use the prefix "taxi," "proceed," or "hold," as appropriate, for aircraft instructions and "proceed" or "hold" for equipment/vehicles/personnel.

c. Intersection departures may be initiated by a controller or a controller may authorize an intersection departure if a pilot requests. Issue the measured distance from the intersection to the runway end rounded "down" to the nearest 50 feet to any pilot who requests and to all military aircraft, unless use of the intersection is covered in appropriate directives.

NOTE–
Exceptions are authorized where specific military aircraft routinely make intersection takeoffs and procedures are defined in appropriate directives. The authority exercising operational control of such aircraft ensures that all pilots are thoroughly familiar with these procedures, including the usable runway length from the applicable intersection.

d. State the runway intersection when authorizing an aircraft to taxi into position to hold or when clearing an aircraft for takeoff from an intersection.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) (further instructions as needed).

RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator), TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD.

If requested or required,

RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) INTERSECTION DEPARTURE, (remaining length) FEET AVAILABLE.

3-7-2. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

Issue, as required or requested, the route for the aircraft/vehicle to follow on the movement area in concise and easy to understand terms. When a taxi clearance to a runway is issued to an aircraft, confirm the aircraft has the correct runway assignment.

NOTE–
1 A pilot's read back of taxi instructions with the runway assignment can be considered confirmation of runway assignment.

2 Movement of aircraft or vehicles on nonmovement areas is the responsibility of the pilot, the aircraft operator, or the airport management.

a. When authorizing a vehicle to proceed on the movement area, or an aircraft to taxi to any point other than an assigned takeoff runway, absence of holding instructions authorizes an aircraft/vehicle to cross all taxiways and runways that intersect the taxi route. If it is the intent to hold the aircraft/vehicle short of any given point along the taxi route, issue the route, if necessary, then state the holding instructions.

NOTE–
Movement of aircraft or vehicles on nonmovement areas is the responsibility of the pilot, the aircraft operator, or the airport management.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD POSITION.

HOLD FOR (reason)

CROSS (runway/taxiway)

or

TAXI/CONTINUE TAXIING/PROCEED/VIA (route),

or

ON (runway number or taxiways, etc.),

or

TO (location),

or

(direction),

or

ACROSS RUNWAY (number).

or

VIA (route), HOLD SHORT OF (location)

or

FOLLOW (traffic) (restrictions as necessary)

or

BEHIND (traffic).

EXAMPLE–
"Cross Runway Two Eight Left."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed to the hangar."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed straight ahead then via ramp to the hangar."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed on Taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway Two Seven."

b. When authorizing an aircraft to taxi to an assigned takeoff runway and hold short instructions are not issued, specify the runway preceded by "taxi to," and issue taxi instructions if necessary. This authorizes the aircraft to "cross" all runways/taxiways which the taxi route intersects except the assigned takeoff runway. This does not authorize the aircraft to "enter" or "cross" the assigned takeoff runway at any point.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TAXI TO RUNWAY (number) VIA . . .

EXAMPLE–
"Taxi to Runway One Two."
"Taxi to Runway Three Six via Taxiway Echo."

c. Specify the runway for departure, any necessary taxi instructions, and hold short restrictions when an aircraft will be required to hold short of a runway along the taxi route.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number),
TAXI/PROCEED VIA (route if necessary),

HOLD SHORT OF (runway number)

or

HOLD SHORT OF (location)

or

ON (taxi strip, runup pad, etc.),

and if necessary,

TRAFFIC (traffic information),

or

FOR (reason).

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Three Six Left, taxi via taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway Two Seven Right."
"Runway Three Six Left, hold short of Runway Two Seven Right."

d. Request a read back of runway hold short instructions when it is not received from the pilot/vehicle operator.

PHRASEOLOGY–
READ BACK HOLD INSTRUCTIONS.

EXAMPLE–
[1] *"American Four Ninety Two, Runway Three Six Left, taxi via taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway Two Seven Right."*

"American Four Ninety Two, Roger."

"American Four Ninety Two, read back hold instructions."

[2] *"Cleveland Tower, American Sixty Three is ready for departure."*

"American Sixty Three, hold short of Runway Two Three Left, traffic one mile final."

"American Sixty Three, Roger."

"American Sixty Three, read back hold instructions."

[3] *"OPS Three proceed via taxiway Charlie hold short of Runway Two Seven."*

"OPS Three, Roger."

"OPS Three, read back hold instructions."

NOTE–
Read back hold instructions phraseology may be initiated for any point on a movement area when the controller believes the read back is necessary.

e. Issue progressive taxi/ground movement instructions when:

1. Pilot/operator requests.

2. The specialist deems it necessary due to traffic or field conditions, e.g., construction or closed taxiways.

3. As necessary during reduced visibility, especially when the taxi route is not visible from the tower.

f. Progressive ground movement instructions include step-by-step routing directions.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, RUNWAY PROXIMITY, Para 3-7-4.
FAAO 7110.65, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION, Para 3-11-1.

g. Instructions to expedite a taxiing aircraft or a moving vehicle.

PHRASEOLOGY-
TAXI WITHOUT DELAY (traffic if necessary).

EXIT/PROCEED/CROSS (runway/taxiway) WITHOUT DELAY.

3-7-3. GROUND OPERATIONS

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

Avoid clearances which require:

a. Heavy jet aircraft to use greater than normal taxiing power.

b. Small aircraft or helicopters to taxi in close proximity to taxiing or hover-taxi helicopters.

REFERENCE-
AC 90-23, AIRCRAFT WAKE TURBULENCE, Para 10 and Para 11.

3-7-4. RUNWAY PROXIMITY

Hold a taxiing aircraft or vehicle clear of the runway as follows:

a. Instruct aircraft or vehicle to hold short of a specific runway.

b. Instruct aircraft or vehicle to hold at a specified point.

c. Issue traffic information as necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY-
HOLD SHORT OF/AT (runway number or specific point), (traffic or other information).

NOTE-
Establishing hold lines/signs is the responsibility of the airport manager. The standards for surface measurements, markings, and signs are contained in AC 150/5300-13, AC 150/5340-1 AND AC 150/5340-18. The operator is responsible for properly positioning the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in para 3-1-12, VISUALLY SCANNING RUNWAYS, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS, Para 3-7-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3-10-10.
FAAO 7110.65, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS, Para 3-1-5.

3-7-5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA

a. ILS critical area dimensions are described in FAAO 6750.16, Siting Criteria for Instrument Landing Systems. Aircraft and vehicle access to the ILS/MLS critical area must be controlled to ensure the integrity of ILS/MLS course signals whenever conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet and/or visibility less than 2 miles. Do not authorize vehicles/aircraft to operate in or over the critical area, except as specified in subpara a.1., whenever an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS outer marker (OM) or the fix used in lieu of the OM unless the arriving aircraft has reported the runway in sight or is circling to land on another runway.

PHRASEOLOGY-
HOLD SHORT OF (runway) ILS/MLS CRITICAL AREA.

1. LOCALIZER CRITICAL AREA

(a) Do not authorize vehicle or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM when conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet and/or visibility 2 miles, except:

(1) A preceding arriving aircraft on the same or another runway that passes over or through the area while landing or exiting the runway.

(2) A preceding departing aircraft or missed approach on the same or another runway that passes through or over the area.

(b) In addition to subpara a.1.(a), do not authorize vehicles or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the middle marker when conditions are less than reported ceiling 200 feet and/or RVR 2,000 feet.

2. GLIDESLOPE CRITICAL AREA- Do not authorize vehicles or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM unless the arriving aircraft has reported the runway in sight or is circling to land on another runway when conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet and/or visibility less than 2 miles.

b. Air carriers commonly conduct "coupled" or "autoland" operations to satisfy maintenance, training, or reliability program requirements. Promptly issue an advisory if the critical area will not be protected when an arriving aircraft advises that a "coupled," "CATIII," "autoland," or similar type approach will be conducted and the weather is reported ceiling of 800 feet or more, and the visibility is 2 miles or more.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ILS/MLS CRITICAL AREA NOT PROTECTED.

c. The Department of Defense (DOD) is authorized to define criteria for protection of precision approach critical areas at military controlled airports. This protection is provided to all aircraft operating at that military controlled airport. Waiver authority for DOD precision approach critical area criteria rests with the appropriate military authority.

NOTE–
Signs and markings are installed by the airport operator to define the ILS/MLS critical area. No point along the longitudinal axis of the aircraft is permitted past the hold line for holding purposes. The operator is responsible to properly position the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in para 3–1–12, VISUALLY SCANNING RUNWAYS, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
AC150/5340–1, AIRPORT MARKINGS.

Section 8. SPACING AND SEQUENCING

3-8-1. SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION

Establish the sequence of arriving and departing aircraft by requiring them to adjust flight or ground operation, as necessary, to achieve proper spacing.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF OR HOLD SHORT / HOLD IN POSITION / TAXI OFF THE RUNWAY (traffic).

EXTEND DOWNWIND.

MAKE SHORT APPROACH.

NUMBER (landing sequence number),

FOLLOW (description and location of traffic),

or if traffic is utilizing another runway,

TRAFFIC (description and location) LANDING RUNWAY (number of runway being used).

CIRCLE THE AIRPORT.

MAKE LEFT / RIGHT THREE-SIXTY / TWO SEVENTY.

GO AROUND.

CLEARED TO LAND.

CLEARED:

TOUCH-AND-GO,
or

STOP-AND-GO,
or

LOW APPROACH.

CLEARED FOR THE OPTION,

or

OPTION APPROVED,

or

UNABLE OPTION, (alternate instructions).

or

UNABLE (type of option), OTHER OPTIONS APPROVED.

NOTE-
1. *The "Cleared for the Option" procedure will permit an instructor pilot / flight examiner / pilot the option to make a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing. This procedure will only be used at those locations with an operational control tower and will be subject to ATC approval.*

2. *For proper helicopter spacing, speed adjustments may be more practical than course changes.*

3. *Read back of hold short instructions apply when hold instructions are issued to a pilot in lieu of a takeoff clearance.*

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS, Para 3-7-2.

3-8-2. TOUCH-AND-GO OR STOP-AND-GO OR LOW APPROACH

Consider an aircraft cleared for touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach as an arriving aircraft until it touches down (for touch-and-go), or makes a complete stop (for stop-and-go), or crosses the landing threshold (for low approach), and thereafter as a departing aircraft.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS, Para 3-1-5.
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES, Para 3-9-7.

3-8-3. SIMULTANEOUS SAME DIRECTION OPERATION

Authorize simultaneous, same direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when the following conditions are met:

a. Operations are conducted in VFR conditions unless visual separation is applied.

b. Two-way radio communication is maintained with the aircraft involved and pertinent traffic information is issued.

c. The distance between the runways or landing strips is in accordance with the minima in TBL 3-8-1 (use the greater minimum if two categories are involved).

Same Direction Distance Minima

Aircraft category	*Minimum distance (feet) between parallel*	
	Runway centerlines	*Edges of adjacent strips or runway and strip*
Lightweight, single engine, propeller driven	300	200
Twin-engine, propeller driven	500	400
All others	700	600

TBL 3-8-1

3-8-4. SIMULTANEOUS OPPOSITE DIRECTION OPERATION

Authorize simultaneous opposite direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when the following conditions are met:

a. Operations are conducted in VFR conditions.

b. Two-way radio communication is maintained with the aircraft involved and pertinent traffic information is issued.

PHRASEOLOGY-
TRAFFIC (description) ARRIVING / DEPARTING / LOW APPROACH, OPPOSITE DIRECTION ON PARALLEL RUNWAY / LANDING STRIP.

c. The distance between the runways or landing strips is in accordance with the minima in TBL 3-8-2.

Opposite Direction Distance Minima

Type of Operation	*Minimum distance (feet) between parallel*	
	Runway centerlines	*Edges of adjacent strips or runway and strip*
Between sunrise and sunset	1,400	1,400
Between sunset and sunrise	2,800	Not authorized

TBL 3-8-2

Section 9. DEPARTURE PROCEDURES AND SEPARATION

3-9-1. DEPARTURE INFORMATION

Provide current departure information, as appropriate, to departing aircraft.

a. Departure information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

b. Issue departure information by including the following:

1. Runway in use. (May be omitted if pilot states "have the numbers.")

2. Surface wind from direct readout dial, LLWAS, or automated weather observing system information display. (May be omitted if pilot states "have the numbers.")

3. Altimeter setting. (May be omitted if pilot states "have the numbers.")

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, CURRENT SETTINGS, Para 2-7-1.

c. Time, when requested.

d. Issue the official ceiling and visibility, when available, to a departing aircraft before takeoff as follows:

1. To a VFR aircraft when weather is below VFR conditions.

2. To an IFR aircraft when weather is below VFR conditions or highest takeoff minima, whichever is greater.

NOTE-
Standard takeoff minimums are published in CFR Part 91.175(f). Takeoff minima other than standard are prescribed for specific airports/runways and published in a tabular form supplement to the NOS Instrument Approach Procedures Charts and appropriate FAA Forms 8260.

e. Taxi information, as necessary. You need not issue taxi route information unless the pilot specifically requests it.

f. *USAF NOT APPLICABLE.* An advisory to "check density altitude" when appropriate.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, BROADCAST DENSITY ALTITUDE ADVISORY, Para 2-8-6.

g. Issue braking action for the runway in use as received from pilots or the airport management when Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL, Para 2-7-2.
FAAO 7110.65, LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES, Para 3-1-8.
FAAO 7110.65, BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES, Para 3-3-5.
P/CG TERM-BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES.

3-9-2. DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION

USA/USAF/USN NOT APPLICABLE

When gate-hold procedures are in effect, issue the following departure delay information as appropriate:

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, GATE HOLD PROCEDURES, Para 11-4-3.

a. Advise departing aircraft the time at which the pilot can expect to receive engine startup advisory.

PHRASEOLOGY-
GATE HOLD PROCEDURES ARE IN EFFECT. ALL AIRCRAFT CONTACT (position) ON (frequency) FOR ENGINE START TIME. EXPECT ENGINE START/TAXI (time).

b. Advise departing aircraft when to start engines and/or to advise when ready to taxi.

PHRASEOLOGY-
START ENGINES, ADVISE WHEN READY TO TAXI,

or

ADVISE WHEN READY TO TAXI.

c. If the pilot requests to hold in a delay absorbing area, the request shall be approved if space and traffic conditions permit.

d. Advise all aircraft on GC/FD frequency upon termination of gate hold procedures.

PHRASEOLOGY-
GATE HOLD PROCEDURES NO LONGER IN EFFECT.

3-9-3. DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS

Inform departing IFR, SVFR, VFR aircraft receiving radar service, and TRSA VFR aircraft of the following:

a. Before takeoff-

1. Issue the appropriate departure control frequency and beacon code. The departure control frequency may be omitted if a SID has been or will be assigned and the departure control frequency is published on the SID.

PHRASEOLOGY-
DEPARTURE FREQUENCY WILL BE (frequency), SQUAWK (code).

2. Inform all departing IFR military turboprop/ turbojet aircraft (except transport and cargo types) to change to departure control frequency. If the local controller has departure frequency override, transmit urgent instructions on this frequency. If the override capability does not exist, transmit urgent instructions on the emergency frequency.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHANGE TO DEPARTURE.

b. After takeoff–

1. When the aircraft is about $^1/_2$ mile beyond the runway end, instruct civil aircraft, and military transport, and cargo types to contact departure control, provided further communication with you is not required.

2. Do not request departing military turboprop/turbojet aircraft (except transport and cargo types) to make radio frequency or radar beacon changes before the aircraft reaches 2,500 feet above the surface.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

3–9–4. TAKEOFF POSITION HOLD

a. Authorize an aircraft to taxi into position and hold, except as restricted in subpara e., when takeoff clearance cannot be issued because of traffic. Issue traffic information to any aircraft so authorized. Traffic information may be omitted when the traffic is another aircraft which has landed on or is taking off the same runway and is clearly visible to the holding aircraft. Do not use conditional phrases such as "behind landing traffic" or "after the departing aircraft."

b. *USN NOT APPLICABLE.* First state the runway number followed by the taxi into position clearance when more than one runway is active.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number), TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD

or,

when only one runway is active:

TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD.

c. When an aircraft is authorized to taxi into takeoff position to hold, inform it of the closest traffic that is cleared to land, touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or unrestricted low approach on the same runway.

EXAMPLE–
" United Five, runway one eight, taxi into position and hold. Traffic a Boeing Seven Thirty Seven, six mile final."

or, when only one runway is active:

"United Five, taxi into position and hold. Traffic a Boeing Seven Thirty Seven, six mile final."

d. *USAF:* When an aircraft is authorized to taxi into takeoff position to hold, inform it of the closest traffic within 6 miles on final approach to the same runway. If the approaching aircraft is on a different frequency, inform it of the aircraft taxing into position.

e. Do not authorize an aircraft to taxi into position and hold at an intersection between sunset and sunrise or at anytime when the intersection is not visible from the tower.

f. *USN:* Do not authorize aircraft to taxi into takeoff position to hold simultaneously on intersecting runways.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CONTINUE HOLDING,

or

TAXI OFF THE RUNWAY.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3–10–10.

g. When a local controller delivers or amends an ATC clearance to an aircraft awaiting departure and that aircraft is holding short of a runway or is holding in position on a runway, an additional clearance shall be issued to prevent the possibility of the aircraft inadvertently taxiing onto the runway and/or beginning takeoff roll. In such cases, append one of the following ATC instructions as appropriate:

1. HOLD SHORT OF RUNWAY, *or*

2. HOLD IN POSITION.

h. *USAF/USN:* When issuing additional instructions or information to an aircraft holding in takeoff position, include instructions to continue holding or taxi off the runway, unless it is cleared for takeoff.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CONTINUE HOLDING,

or

TAXI OFF THE RUNWAY.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3–10–10.

3-9-5. ANTICIPATING SEPARATION

Takeoff clearance needs not be withheld until prescribed separation exists if there is a reasonable assurance it will exist when the aircraft starts takeoff roll.

3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

Separate a departing aircraft from a preceding departing or arriving aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that it does not begin takeoff roll until:

a. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the runway end or turned to avert any conflict. If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks, the other aircraft needs only be airborne if the following minimum distance exists between aircraft:
(See FIG 3-9-1 and FIG 3-9-2.)

1. When only Category I aircraft are involved– *3,000 feet.*

2. When a Category I aircraft is preceded by a Category II aircraft– *3,000 feet.*

3. When either the succeeding or both are Category II aircraft– *4,500 feet.*

4. When either is a Category III aircraft– *6,000 feet.*

5. When the succeeding aircraft is a helicopter, visual separation may be applied in lieu of using distance minima.

Same Runway Separation
[View 1]

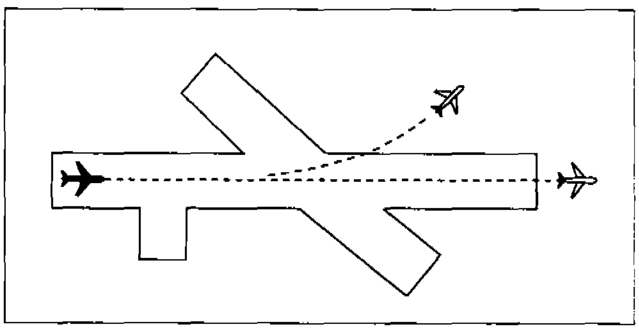


FIG 3-9-1

Same Runway Separation
[View 2]

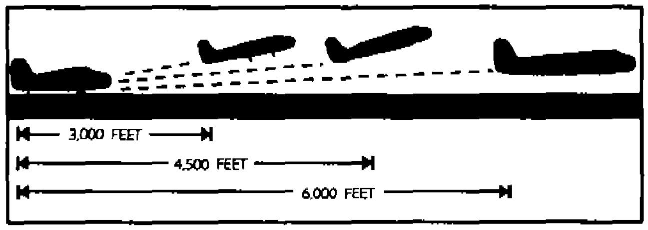


FIG 3-9-2

NOTE–
Aircraft same runway separation (SRS) categories are specified in Appendices A, B, and C and based upon the following definitions:

CATEGORY I– small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, with a single propeller driven engine, and all helicopters.

CATEGORY II– small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, with propeller driven twin-engines.

CATEGORY III– all other aircraft.

b. A preceding landing aircraft is clear of the runway. (See FIG 3-9-3.)

Preceding Landing Aircraft Clear of Runway

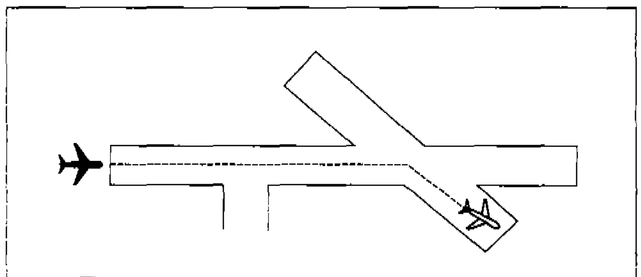


FIG 3-9-3

REFERENCE–
P/CG TERM– CLEAR OF THE RUNWAY.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

c. Do not issue clearances which imply or indicate approval of rolling takeoffs by heavy jet aircraft except as provided in para 3-1-14, GROUND OPERATIONS WHEN VOLCANIC ASH IS PRESENT.

d. Do not issue clearances to a small aircraft to taxi into position and hold on the same runway behind a departing heavy jet aircraft to apply the necessary intervals.

REFERENCE–
AC 90-23, AIRCRAFT WAKE TURBULENCE.

e. The minima in para 5–5–3, MINIMA, may be applied in lieu of the 2 minute requirement in subpara f. When para 5–5–3, MINIMA, are applied, ensure that the appropriate radar separation exists at or prior to the time an aircraft becomes airborne when taking off behind a heavy jet/B757.

NOTE–
The pilot may request additional separation; i.e., 2 minutes vs. 4 miles, but should make this request before taxiing on the runway.

f. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet/B757 departure by 2 minutes, when departing:

NOTE–
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet/B757 begins takeoff roll.

1. The same runway. (See FIG 3–9–4.)

2 Minute Separation

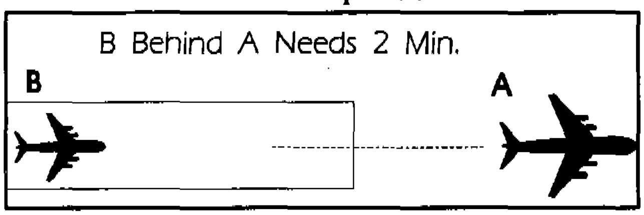


FIG 3–9–4

2. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet.

g. Separate an aircraft from a heavy jet/B757 when operating on a runway with a displaced landing threshold if projected flight paths will cross–*2 minutes when:*

1. A departure follows a heavy jet/B757 arrival.

2. An arrival follows a heavy jet/B757 departure.

h. Air traffic controllers shall not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.

i. Separate a small aircraft behind a large aircraft taking off or making a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs on the same runway by *3 minutes* unless a pilot has initiated a request to deviate from the 3–minute interval. In the latter case, issue a wake turbulence advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff.

NOTE–
1 A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request.

2 To initiate a waiver of the 3 minute rule, the request for takeoff must be accompanied by a request to deviate from the 3–minute rule.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT INFORMATION: APPENDIX A, APPENDIX B, AND APPENDIX C.

j. Separate aircraft behind a heavy jet/B757 departing or making a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet– *3 minutes.*

k. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required *3–minute* interval.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD FOR WAKE TURBULENCE.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES, Para 3–9–7.

3–9–7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES

a. Apply the following wake turbulence criteria for intersection departures:

1. Separate a small aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding departing large aircraft by ensuring that the small aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after the large aircraft has taken off.

2. Separate any aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) and parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after a heavy aircraft/B757 has taken off.

3. Separate a small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. by ensuring the following small aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after the preceding aircraft has taken off.

4. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3–minute interval.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD FOR WAKE TURBULENCE.

NOTE–
Aircraft conducting touch-and-go and stop-and-go operations are considered to be departing from an intersection.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, TOUCH AND GO OR STOP AND GO OR LOW APPROACH, Para 3-8-2.

b. The 3-minute interval is not required when:

1. A pilot has initiated a request to deviate from that interval unless the preceding departing aircraft is a heavy aircraft/B757.

NOTE-
A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request; the request for takeoff must be accomplished by a request to deviate from the 3-minute interval.

2. USA NOT APPLICABLE. The intersection is 500 feet or less from the departure point of the preceding aircraft and both aircraft are taking off in the same direction.

3. Successive touch-and-go and stop-and-go operations are conducted with a small aircraft following another small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. or a large aircraft in the pattern, or a small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. or a large aircraft departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the small aircraft is maintaining visual separation/spacing behind the preceding large aircraft. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the large aircraft.

EXAMPLE-
"Caution wake turbulence, DC-9 on base leg."

4. Successive touch-and-go and stop-and-go operations are conducted with any aircraft following a heavy aircraft/B757 in the pattern, or heavy aircraft/B757 departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the aircraft is maintaining visual separation/spacing behind the preceding heavy aircraft/B757. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the heavy aircraft/B757.

EXAMPLE-
"Caution wake turbulence, heavy Lockheed C5A departing runway two three."

5. If action is initiated to reduce the separation between successive touch-and-go or stop-and-go operations, apply 3 minutes separation.

c. When applying the provision of subpara b.:

1. Issue a wake turbulence advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff.

2. Do not clear the intersection departure for an immediate takeoff.

3. Issue a clearance to permit the trailing aircraft to deviate from course enough to avoid the flight path of the preceding large departure when applying supara b.1. or b.2.

4. Separation requirements in accordance with para 3-9-6, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION, must also apply.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION, Para 3-9-6.

3-9-8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION

Separate departing aircraft from an aircraft using an intersecting runway, or nonintersecting runways when the flight paths intersect, by ensuring that the departure does not begin takeoff roll until one of the following exists:

a. The preceding aircraft has departed and passed the intersection, has crossed the departure runway, or is turning to avert any conflict. (See FIG 3-9-5 and FIG 3-9-6.)

Intersecting Runway Separation

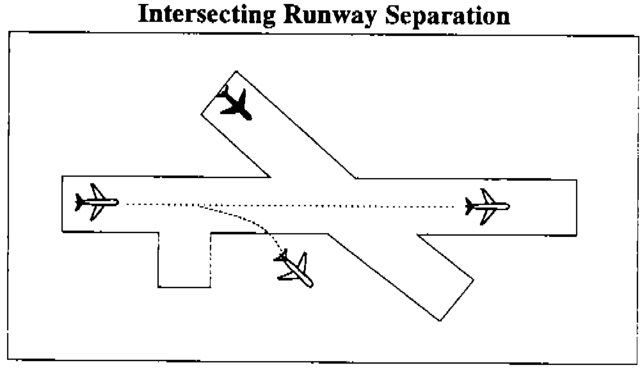


FIG 3-9-5

Intersecting Runway Separation

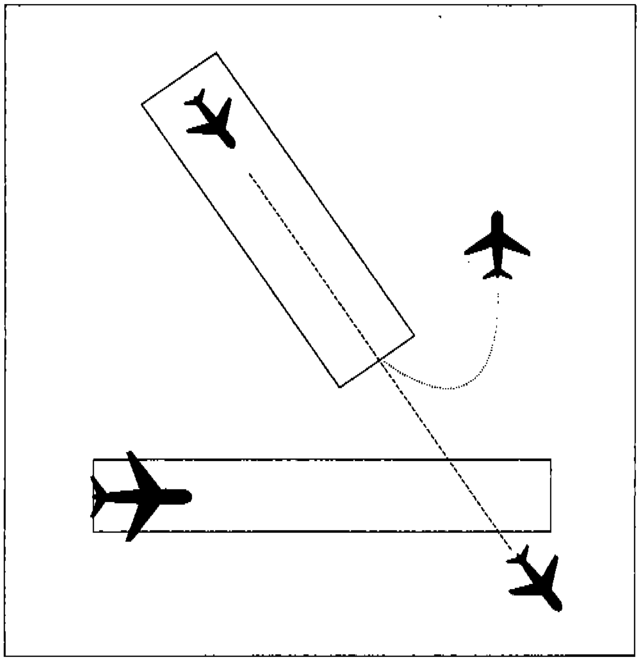


FIG 3-9-6

b. A preceding arriving aircraft is clear of the landing runway, completed the landing roll and will hold short of the intersection, passed the intersection, or has crossed over the departure runway. (See FIG 3-9-7 and FIG 3-9-8.)

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-CLEAR OF THE RUNWAY.

Intersecting Runway Separation

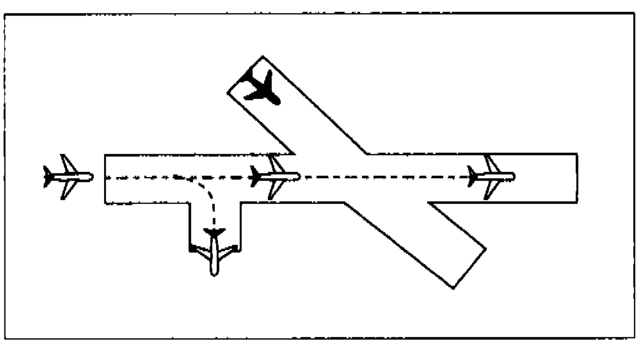


FIG 3-9-7

Intersecting Runway Separation

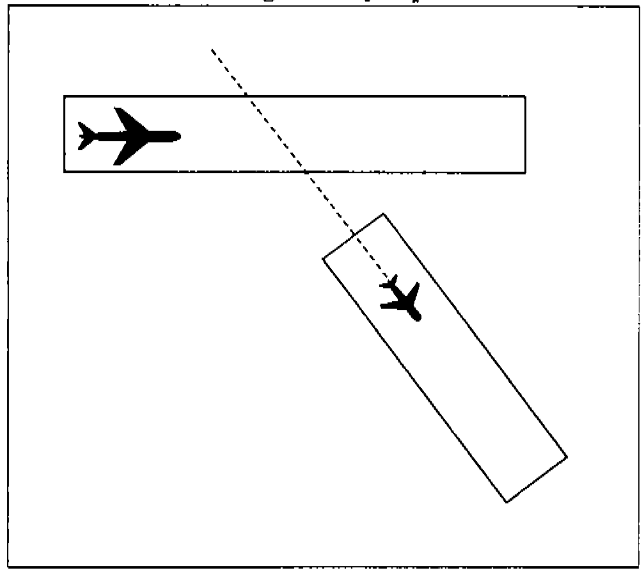


FIG 3-9-8

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet/B757 departure by *2 minutes* when departing:

NOTE-
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet/B757 begins takeoff roll.

1. Crossing runways if projected flight paths will cross. (See FIG 3-9-9.)

2. A parallel runway separated by 2,500 feet or more if projected flight paths will cross. (See FIG 3-9-10.)

Crossing Runways

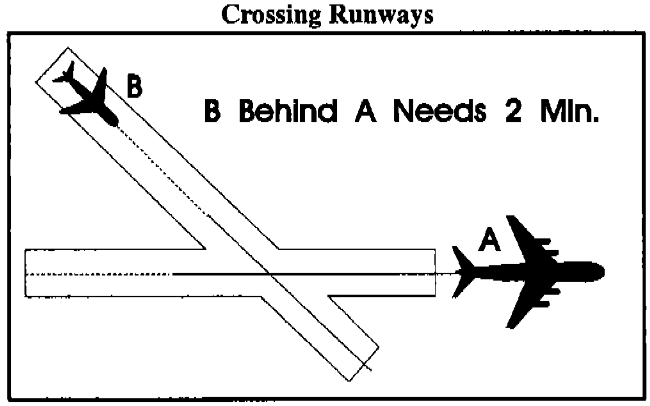


FIG 3-9-9

Parallel Runway

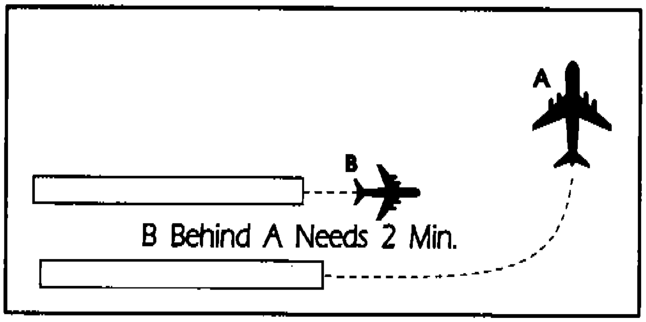


FIG 3-9-10

d. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing heavy jet/B757 on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival– *2 minutes.* (See FIG 3–9–11.)

Departure on Crossing Runway

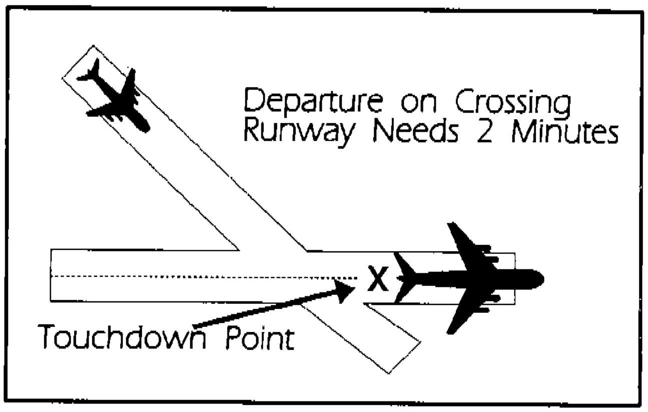


FIG 3-9-11

e. Air traffic controllers shall not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES, Para 5-8-3
FAAO 7110.65 DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NON-INTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS, Para 5-8-5.

3-9-9. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

a. When only one runway is active, issue takeoff clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

NOTE-
Turbine-powered aircraft may be considered ready for takeoff when they reach the runway unless they advise otherwise.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE TERMINOLOGY, Para 4-3-1.

b. When more than one runway is active, first state the runway number followed by the takeoff clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RUNWAY (number), CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE-
"RUNWAY TWO SEVEN, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF."

c. *USA/USN/USAF:* Issue surface wind and takeoff clearance to aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY-
WIND (surface wind in direction and velocity).
CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

d. *USAF:* When an aircraft is cleared for takeoff, inform it of the closest traffic within 6 miles on final approach to the same runway. If the approaching aircraft is on a different frequency, inform it of the departing aircraft.

3-9-10. CANCELLATION OF TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

Cancel a previously issued clearance for takeoff and inform the pilot of the reason if circumstances require. Once an aircraft has started takeoff roll, cancel the takeoff clearance only for the purpose of safety.

NOTE-
In no case should a takeoff clearance be canceled after an aircraft has started its takeoff roll solely for the purpose of meeting traffic management requirements/EDC times.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CANCEL TAKEOFF CLEARANCE (reason).

Section 10. ARRIVAL PROCEDURES AND SEPARATION

3–10–1. LANDING INFORMATION

Provide current landing information, as appropriate, to arriving aircraft. Landing information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code. Runway, wind, and altimeter may be omitted if a pilot uses the phrase "have numbers." Issue landing information by including the following:

NOTE–
Pilot use of "have numbers" does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast.

a. Specific traffic pattern information (may be omitted if the aircraft is to circle the airport to the left).

PHRASEOLOGY–
ENTER LEFT/RIGHT BASE.

STRAIGHT–IN.

MAKE STRAIGHT–IN.

STRAIGHT–IN APPROVED.

RIGHT TRAFFIC.

MAKE RIGHT TRAFFIC.

RIGHT TRAFFIC APPROVED. CONTINUE.

b. Runway in use.

c. Surface wind.

d. Altimeter setting.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CURRENT SETTINGS, Para 2–7–1.

e. Any supplementary information.

f. Clearance to land.

g. Requests for additional position reports. Use prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air, preferably those depicted on sectional charts. This does not preclude the use of the legs of the traffic pattern as reporting points.

NOTE–
At some locations, VFR checkpoints are depicted on sectional aeronautical and terminal area charts. In selecting geographical fixes, depicted VFR checkpoints are preferred unless the pilot exhibits a familiarity with the local area.

h. Ceiling and visibility if either is below basic VFR minima.

i. Low level wind shear advisories when available.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES, Para 3–1–8.

j. Issue braking action for the runway in use as received from pilots or the airport management when Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES, Para 3–3–5.

3–10–2. FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NONAPPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES

a. Forward the following, as appropriate, to the control facility having IFR jurisdiction in your area. You may eliminate those items that, because of local conditions or situations, are fully covered in a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

1. When you clear an arriving aircraft for a visual approach.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7–4–1.

2. Aircraft arrival time.

3. Cancellation of IFR flight plan.

4. Information on a missed approach, unreported, or overdue aircraft.

5. Runway in use.

6. Weather as required.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, REPORTING WEATHER CONDITIONS, Para 2–6–6.

b. When the weather is below 1,000 feet or 3 miles or the highest circling minimums, whichever is greater, issue current weather to aircraft executing an instrument approach if it changes from that on the ATIS or that previously forwarded to the center/approach control.

3–10–3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

a. Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists or unless authorized in para 3–10–10, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH.

1. The other aircraft has landed and is clear of the runway. Between sunrise and sunset, if you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft has landed, it need not be clear of the runway if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:
(See FIG 3-10-1.)

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-CLEAR OF THE RUNWAY.

Same Runway Separation

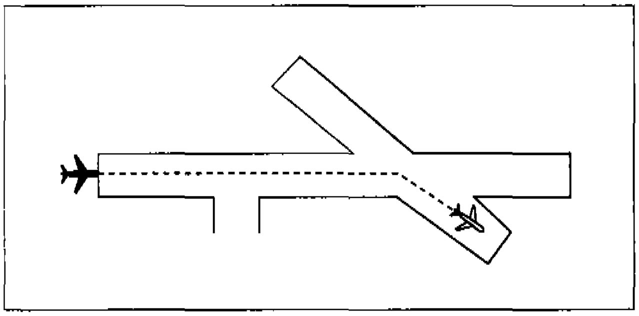


FIG 3-10-1

(a) When a Category I aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II- *3,000 feet.*
(See FIG 3-10-2.)

Same Runway Separation

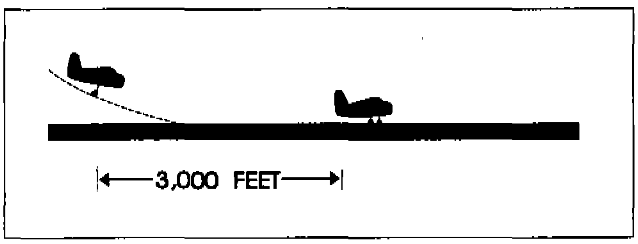


FIG 3-10-2

(b) When a Category II aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II- *4,500 feet.*
(See FIG 3-10-3.)

Same Runway Separation

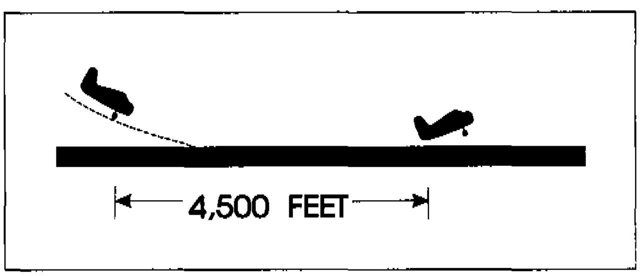


FIG 3-10-3

2. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the runway end. If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft is airborne, it need not have crossed the runway end if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

(a) Category I aircraft landing behind Category I or II- *3,000 feet.*

(b) Category II aircraft landing behind Category I or II- *4,500 feet.*

(c) When either is a category III aircraft- *6,000 feet.*
(See FIG 3-10-4 and FIG 3-10-5.)

Same Runway Separation

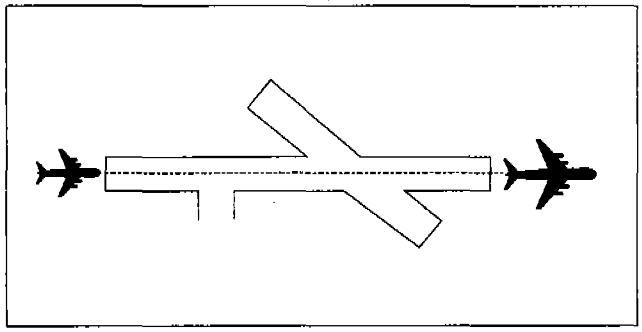


FIG 3-10-4

3. When the succeeding aircraft is a helicopter, visual separation may be applied in lieu of using distance minima.

Same Runway Separation

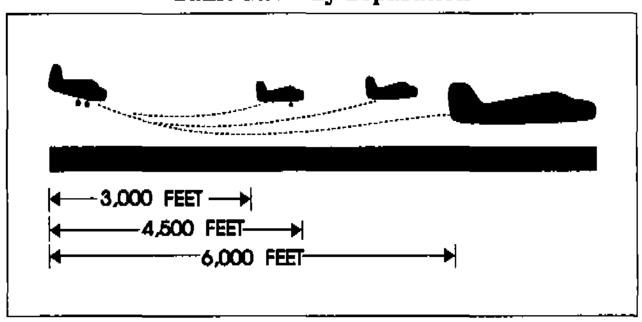


FIG 3-10-5

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

b. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories, and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jet/B757 to aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving heavy jet/B757 on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

REFERENCE-
AC 90-23, PILOT RESPONSIBILITY, Para 12.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH, Para 3-10-10.

EXAMPLE-
1 *"Runway two seven left cleared to land, caution wake turbulence, heavy Boeing 747 departing runway two seven right."*

2 *"Number two follow Boeing 757 on two-mile final. Caution wake turbulence."*

3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION

a. Separate an arriving aircraft using one runway from another aircraft using an intersecting runway or a nonintersecting runway when the flight paths intersect by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold or flight path of the other aircraft until one of the following conditions exists:

1. The preceding aircraft has departed and passed the intersection/flight path or is airborne and turning to avert any conflict.
(See FIG 3-10-6 and FIG 3-10-7.)

Intersecting Runway Separation

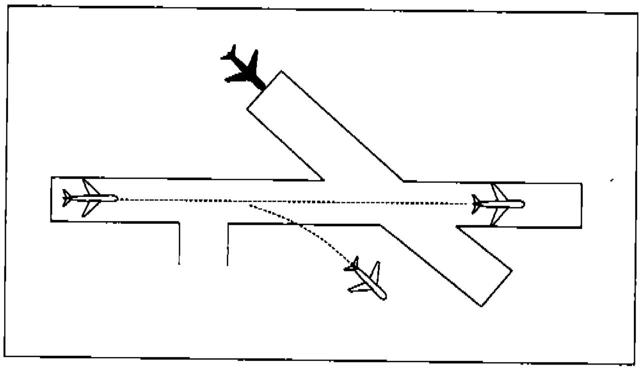


FIG 3-10-6

2. A preceding arriving aircraft is clear of the landing runway, completed landing roll and will hold short of the intersection/flight path, or has passed the intersection/flight path.
(See FIG 3-10-8 and FIG 3-10-9.)

Intersecting Runway Separation

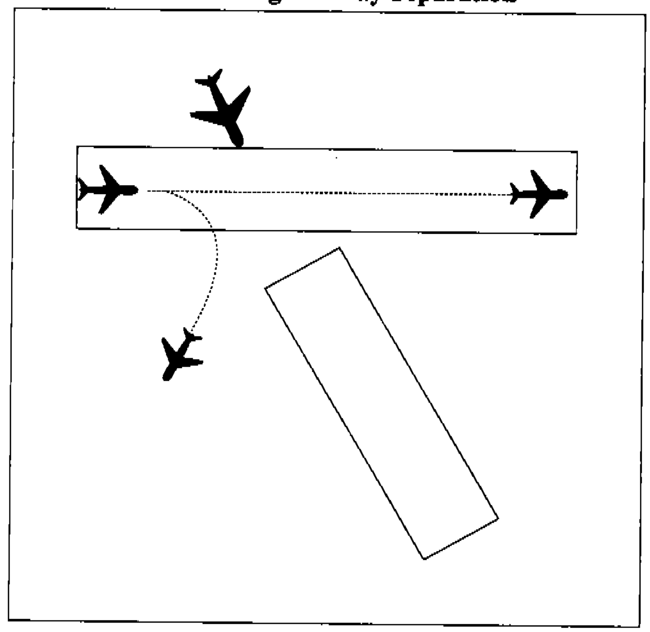


FIG 3-10-7

Intersection Runway Separation

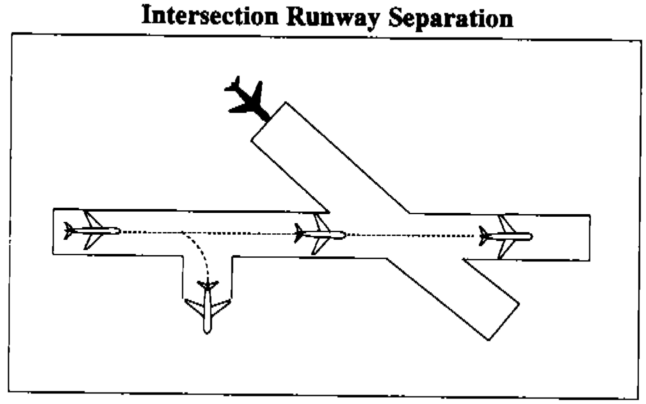


FIG 3-10-8

b. *USAF must secure major command approval prior to conducting Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO).* An aircraft may be authorized to takeoff from one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway or an aircraft lands on one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway, or an aircraft lands to hold short of an intersecting taxiway or some other predetermined point such as an approach/departure flight path using procedures specified in FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations. The procedure shall be approved by the air traffic manager and be in accordance with a facility directive. The following conditions apply:

NOTE–
Application of these procedures does not relieve controllers from the responsibility of providing other appropriate separation contained in this order.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, LAND AND HOLD SHORT OPERATIONS (LAHSO), Para 11-3-7.

Intersection Runway Separation

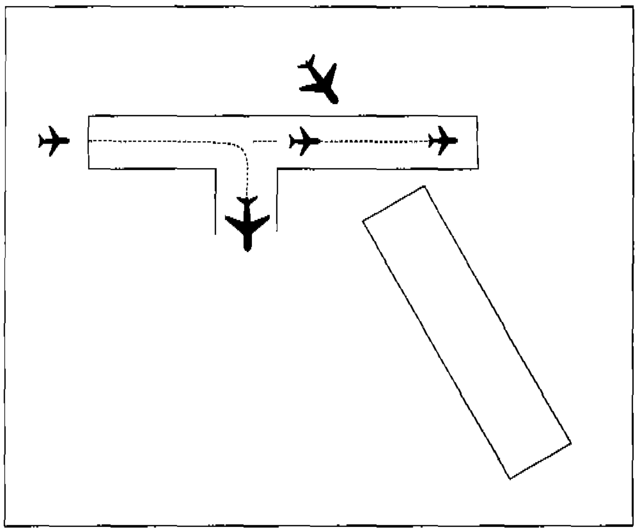


FIG 3-10-9

1. A simultaneous takeoff and landing operation shall only be conducted in VFR conditions.

2. Instruct the landing aircraft to hold short of the intersecting runway being used by the aircraft taking off. In the case of simultaneous landings and no operational benefit is lost, restrict the aircraft of the lesser weight category (if known). LAHSO clearances shall only be issued to aircraft that are listed in the LAHSO Information Management Systems (LIMS) and/or FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations, Appendix 1, whose Available Landing Distance (ALD) does not exceed the landing distance requirement for the runway condition WET or DRY.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD SHORT OF RUNWAY (runway number), (traffic, type aircraft or other information).

NOTE–
Pilots who prefer to use the full length of the runway or a runway different from that specified are expected to advise ATC prior to landing.

3. Issue traffic information to both aircraft involved and obtain an acknowledgment from each. Request a read back of hold short instructions when they are not received from the pilot of the restricted aircraft.

EXAMPLE–
1 *"Runway one eight cleared to land, hold short of runway one four left, traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway one four left."*

(When pilot of restricted aircraft responds with only acknowledgment):

"Runway one four left cleared to land, traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway one eight will hold short of the intersection."

"Read back hold short instructions."

2 *"Runway three six cleared to land, hold short of runway three three, traffic, (type aircraft) departing runway three three."*

"Traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway three six will hold short of the intersection, runway three three cleared for takeoff."

4. Issue the measured distance from the landing threshold to the hold short point rounded "down" to the nearest 50-foot increment if requested by either aircraft.

EXAMPLE–
"Five thousand fifty feet available."

5. The conditions in subparas b.2., 3., and 4., shall be met in sufficient time for the pilots to take other action, if desired, and no later than the time landing clearance is issued.

6. Land and Hold Short runways must be free of any contamination as described in FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations, with no reports that braking action is less than good.

7. There is no tailwind for the landing aircraft restricted to hold short of the intersection. The wind may be described as "calm" when appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CALM WIND CONDITIONS, Para 2-6-5.

8. The aircraft required landing distances (WET) and (DRY) are listed in the LIMS database and/or FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations, Appendix 1.

9. STOL aircraft operations are in accordance with a letter of agreement with the aircraft operator/pilot or the pilot confirms that it is a STOL aircraft.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing heavy jet/B757 on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure– *2 minutes* or the appropriate radar separation minima. (See FIG 3–10–10.)

Intersecting Runway Separation

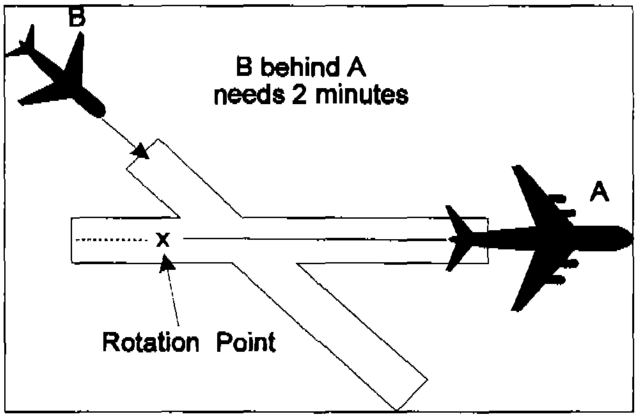


FIG 3–10–10

d. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories, the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jet/B757 to:

REFERENCE–
AC 90–23, PILOT RESPONSIBILITY, Para 12.

1. IFR/VFR aircraft landing on crossing runways behind a departing heavy jet/B757; if the arrival flight path will cross the takeoff path behind the heavy jet/B757 and behind the heavy jet/B757 rotation point. (See FIG 3–10–11.)

Intersecting Runway Separation

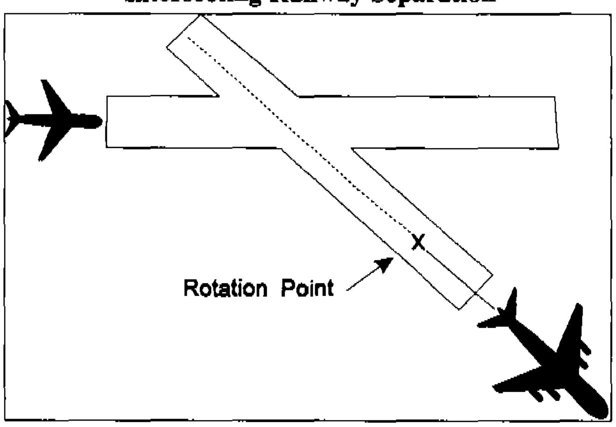


FIG 3–10–11

EXAMPLE–
"Runway niner cleared to land. caution wake turbulence, heavy C–One Forty One departing runway one five."

2. VFR aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind an arriving heavy jet/B757 if the arrival flight path will cross. (See FIG 3–10–12.)

Intersecting Runway Separation

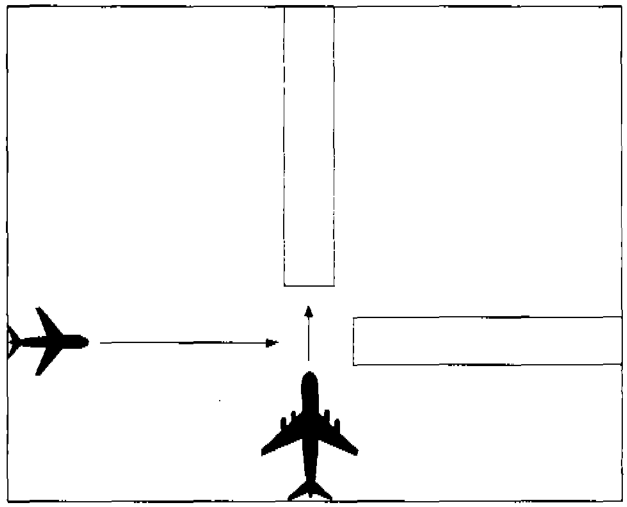


FIG 3–10–12

EXAMPLE–
"Runway niner cleared to land. Caution wake turbulence, Boeing Seven Fifty Seven landing runway three six."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS, Para 7–4–4.

3–10–5. LANDING CLEARANCE

a. Issue landing clearance. Restate the landing runway whenever more than one runway is active, or an instrument approach is being conducted to a closed runway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO LAND,

or

RUNWAY (designator) CLEARED TO LAND.

b. "USN NOT APPLICABLE." Inform the closest aircraft that is cleared to land, touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or unrestricted low approaches when there is traffic holding on the same runway.

EXAMPLE–
"Delta One, cleared to land. Traffic holding in position."

or

"Delta One, runway one eight, cleared to land. Traffic holding in position."

c. *USA/USAF/USN.* Issue surface wind when clearing an aircraft to land, touch-and-go, stop-and-go, low approach, or the option. Restate the landing runway whenever there is a possibility of a conflict with another aircraft which is using or is planning to use another runway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WIND (surface wind direction and velocity), CLEARED TO LAND,

or

WIND (surface wind direction and velocity), RUNWAY (designator) CLEARED TO LAND.

NOTE–
A clearance to land means that appropriate separation on the landing runway will be ensured. A landing clearance does not relieve the pilot from compliance with any previously issued restriction.

3–10–6. ANTICIPATING SEPARATION

Landing clearance to a succeeding aircraft in a landing sequence need not be withheld if you observe the positions of the aircraft and determine that prescribed runway separation will exist when the aircraft cross the landing threshold. Issue traffic information to the succeeding aircraft if not previously reported.

EXAMPLE–
"Delta Forty–Two cleared to land. Traffic is U.S. Air MD–Eighty over approach lights."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION, Para 3–3–2.

3–10–7. LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION

When an arriving aircraft reports at a position where he should be seen but has not been visually observed, advise the aircraft as a part of the landing clearance that it is not in sight and restate the landing runway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
NOT IN SIGHT, RUNWAY (number) CLEARED TO LAND.

NOTE–
Aircraft observance on the BRITE/DBRITE radar display satisfies the visually observed requirement.

3–10–8. WITHHOLDING LANDING CLEARANCE

Do not withhold a landing clearance indefinitely even though it appears a violation of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations has been committed. The apparent violation might be the result of an emergency situation. In any event, assist the pilot to the extent possible.

3–10–9. RUNWAY EXITING

a. Instruct aircraft where to turn-off the runway after landing, when appropriate, and advise the aircraft to hold short of a runway or taxiway if required for traffic.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TURN LEFT/RIGHT (turning point),

or

IF ABLE, TURN LEFT/RIGHT (turning point)

and if required

HOLD SHORT OF (runway).

NOTE–
Runway exiting or taxi instructions should not normally be issued to an aircraft prior to, or immediately after, touchdown.

b. Taxi instructions shall be provided to the aircraft by the local controller when:

1. Compliance with ATC instructions will be required before the aircraft can change to ground control, or

2. The aircraft will be required to enter a taxiway/runway/ramp area, other than the one used to exit the landing runway, in order to taxi clear of the landing runway.

EXAMPLE–
"U.S. Air Ten Forty Two, turn right next taxiway, cross taxiway Bravo, hold short of taxiway Charlie, contact ground point seven."

NOTE–
1 *An aircraft is expected to taxi clear of the runway unless otherwise directed by ATC. In the absence of ATC instructions, an aircraft should taxi clear of the landing runway even if that requires the aircraft to protrude into or enter another taxiway/runway/ramp area. This does not authorize an aircraft to cross a subsequent taxiway/runway/ramp after clearing the landing runway.*

2 *The pilot is responsible for ascertaining when the aircraft is clear of the runway.*

c. Ground control and local control shall protect a taxiway/runway/ramp intersection if an aircraft is required to enter that intersection to clear the landing runway.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS, Para 11–1–7.

d. Request a read back of runway hold short instructions when not received from the pilot.

EXAMPLE-
"American Four Ninety Two, turn left at taxiway charlie, hold short of runway 27 right."

"American Four Ninety Two, roger."

"American Four Ninety Two, read back hold instructions."

NOTE-
Read back hold instructions phraseology may be initiated for any point on a movement area when the controller believes the read back is necessary.

3-10-10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH

A low approach with an altitude restriction of not less than 500 feet above the airport may be authorized except over an aircraft in takeoff position or a departure aircraft. Do not clear aircraft for restricted altitude low approaches over personnel unless airport authorities have advised these personnel that the approaches will be conducted. Advise the approaching aircraft of the location of applicable ground traffic, personnel, or equipment.

NOTE-
1 *The 500 feet restriction is a minimum. Higher altitudes should be used when warranted. For example, 1,000 feet is more appropriate for heavy aircraft operating over unprotected personnel or small aircraft on or near the runway.*
2 *This authorization includes altitude restricted low approaches over preceding landing or taxiing aircraft. Restricted low approaches are not authorized over aircraft in takeoff position or departing aircraft.*

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED LOW APPROACH AT OR ABOVE (altitude). TRAFFIC (description and location).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS, Para 3-1-5.
FAAO 7110.65, TRAFFIC INFORMATION, Para 3-1-6.
FAAO 7110.65, LIGHT SIGNALS, Para 3-2-1.
FAAO 7110.65, TIMELY INFORMATION, Para 3-3-3.
FAAO 7110.65, TAKEOFF POSITION HOLD, Para 3-9-4.
FAAO 7110.65, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION, Para 3-10-3.

3-10-11. CLOSED TRAFFIC

Approve/disapprove pilot requests to remain in closed traffic for successive operations subject to local traffic conditions.

PHRASEOLOGY-
LEFT/RIGHT (if required) CLOSED TRAFFIC APPROVED. REPORT (position if required),

or

UNABLE CLOSED TRAFFIC, (additional information as required).

NOTE-
Segregated traffic patterns for helicopters to runways and other areas may be established by letter of agreement or other local operating procedures.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, RUNWAY PROXIMITY, Para 3-7-4.
FAAO 7110.65, TAKEOFF POSITION HOLD, Para 3-9-4.
FAAO 7110.65, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION, Para 3-10-3.

3-10-12. OVERHEAD MANEUVER

Issue the following to arriving aircraft that will conduct an overhead maneuver:

a. Pattern altitude and direction of traffic. Omit either or both if standard or when you know the pilot is familiar with a nonstandard procedure.

PHRASEOLOGY-
PATTERN ALTITUDE (altitude). RIGHT TURNS.

b. Request for report on initial approach.

PHRASEOLOGY-
REPORT INITIAL.

c. "Break" information and request for pilot report. Specify the point of "break" only if nonstandard. Request the pilot to report "break" if required for traffic or other reasons.

PHRASEOLOGY-
BREAK AT (specified point).

REPORT BREAK.

d. Overhead maneuver patterns are developed at airports where aircraft have an operational need to conduct the maneuver. An aircraft conducting an overhead maneuver is on VFR and the IFR flight plan is cancelled when the aircraft reaches the "initial point" on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. The existence of a standard overhead maneuver pattern does not eliminate the possible requirement for an aircraft to conform to conventional rectangular patterns if an overhead maneuver cannot be approved.

NOTE-
Aircraft operating to an airport without a functioning control tower must initiate cancellation of the IFR flight plan prior to executing the overhead maneuver or after landing.

Overhead Maneuver

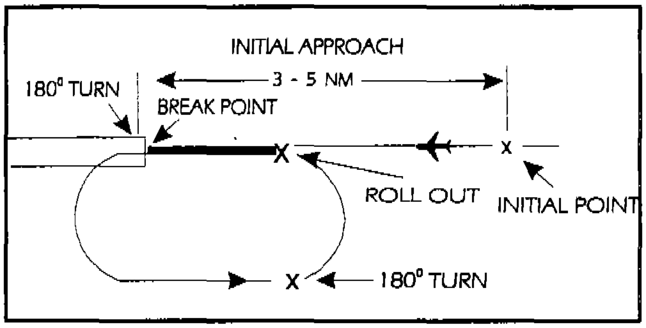


FIG 3-10-13

EXAMPLE-
"Air Force Three Six Eight, Runway Six, wind zero seven zero at eight, pattern altitude six thousand, report initial."

"Air Force Three Six Eight, break at midfield, report break."

"Air Force Three Six Eight, cleared to land."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, Runway Three One, wind three three zero at one four, right turns, report initial."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, report break."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, cleared to land."

e. Timely and positive controller action is required to prevent a conflict when an overhead pattern could extend into the path of a departing or a missed approach aircraft. Local procedures and/or coordination requirements should be set forth in an appropriate letter of agreement, facility directive, base flying manual etc., when the frequency of occurrence warrants.

3-10-13. SIMULATED FLAMEOUT (SFO) APPROACHES/PRACTICE PRECAUTIONARY APPROACHES

a. Authorize military aircraft to make SFO/practice precautionary approaches if the following conditions are met:

1. A letter of agreement or local operating procedure is in effect between the military flying organization and affected ATC facility.

(a) Include specific coordination, execution and approval procedures for the operation.

(b) The exchange or issuance of traffic information as agreed to in any interfacility letter of agreement is accomplished.

(c) Include a statement in the procedure that clarifies at which points SFO's may/may not be terminated. (See FIG 3-10-14.)

2. Traffic information regarding aircraft in radio communication with or visible to tower controllers which are operating within or adjacent to the flameout maneuvering area is provided to the SFO aircraft and other concerned aircraft.

3. The high-key altitude or practice precautionary approach maneuvering altitudes of the aircraft concerned are obtained prior to approving the approach. (See FIG 3-10-14.)

NOTE-
1 *Practice precautionary/flameout approaches are authorized only for specific aircraft. Precautionary approaches, however, might be made by any aircraft when engine failure is considered possible. The practice precautionary approach maneuvering area/altitudes may not conform to the standard flameout maneuvering area/altitudes.*

2 *Simulated flameout approaches generally require high descent rates. Visibility ahead and beneath the aircraft is greatly restricted.*

3 *Pattern adjustments for aircraft conducting SFO's may impact the effectiveness of SFO training.*

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH-AND-GO, Para 4-8-12.
FAAO 7610.4, SIMULATED FLAME-OUT (SFO) OPERATIONS Para 9-37.

b. For overhead simulated flameout approaches:

1. Request a report at the entry point.

PHRASEOLOGY-
REPORT (high or low) KEY (as appropriate).

2. Request a report at low key.

PHRASEOLOGY-
REPORT LOW KEY.

3. At low key, issue low approach clearance or alternate instructions.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION, Para 3-8-1.
FAAO 7110.65, IN-FLIGHT EMERGENCIES INVOLVING MILITARY FIGHTER-TYPE AIRCRAFT, Para 10-1-7.
FAAO 7610.4, SIMULATED FLAME-OUT (SFO) OPERATIONS, Para 9-37.

c. For straight-in simulation flameout approaches:

1. Request a position report from aircraft conducting straight-in SFO approaches.

PHRASEOLOGY-
REPORT (distance) MILE SIMULATED FLAMEOUT FINAL.

Simulated Flameout [1]

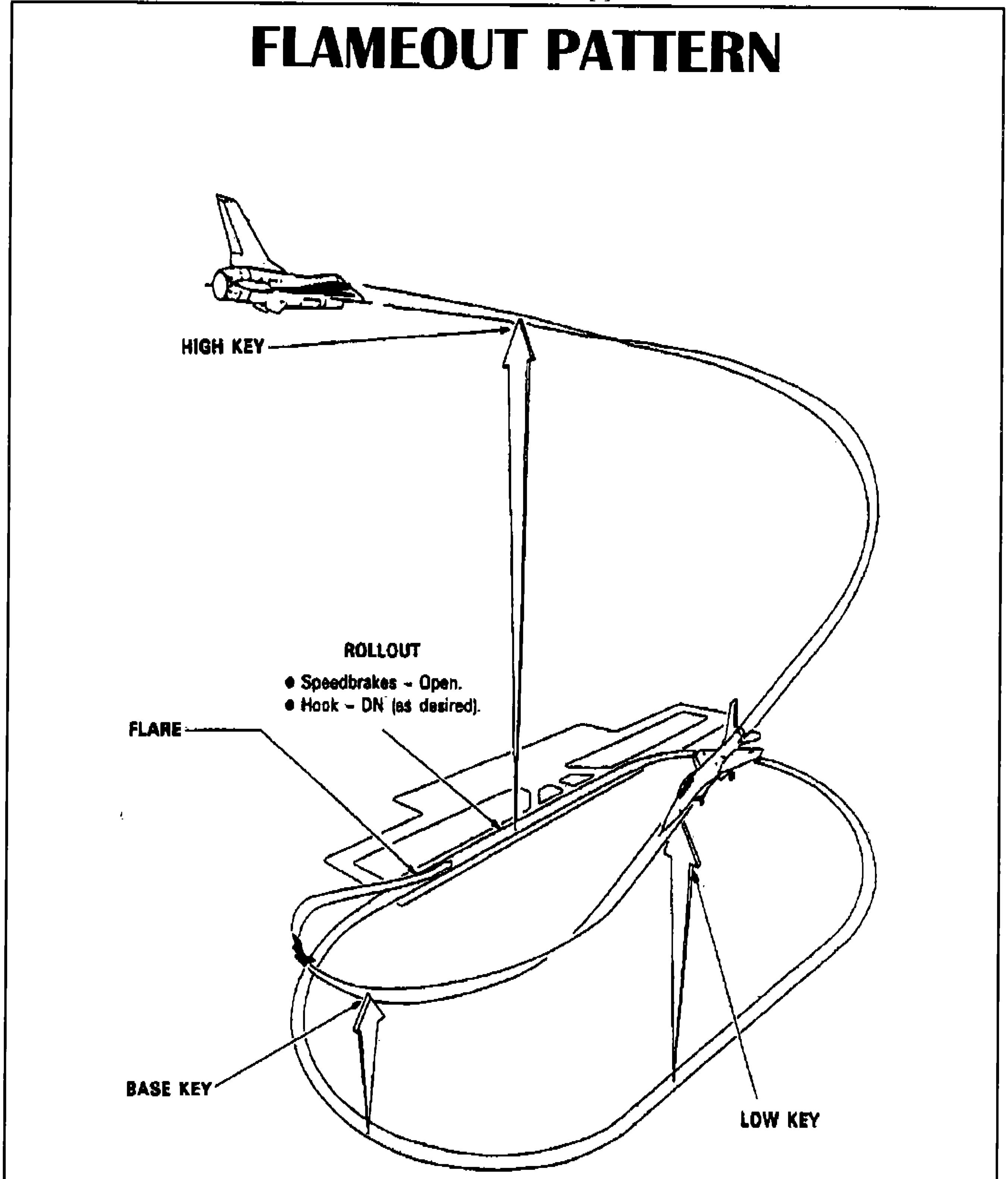


FIG 3-10-14

2. At the appropriate position on final (normally no closer than 3 miles), issue low approach clearance or alternate instruction. (See FIG 3–10–15.)

Simulated Flameout [2]

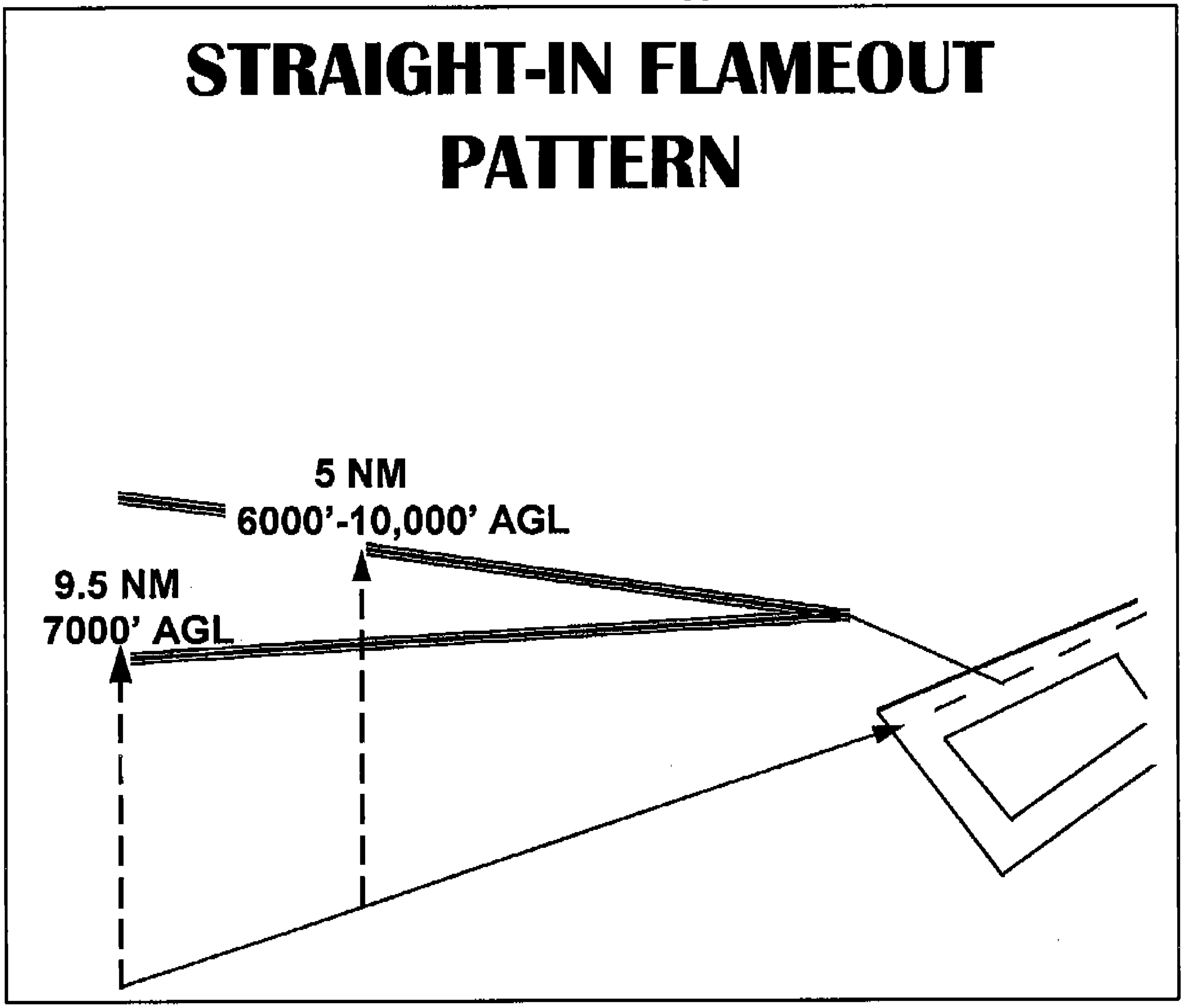


FIG 3–10–15

Section 11. HELICOPTER OPERATIONS

3-11-1. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION

a. When necessary for a wheeled helicopter to taxi on the surface, use the phraseology in para 3-7-2, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS.

NOTE–
Ground taxiing uses less fuel than hover-taxiing and minimizes air turbulence. However, under certain conditions, such as rough, soft, or uneven terrain, it may become necessary to hover/air-taxi for safety considerations. Helicopters with articulating rotors (usually designs with three or more main rotor blades) are subject to "ground resonance" and may, on rare occasions, suddenly lift off the ground to avoid severe damage or destruction.

b. When requested or necessary for a helicopter/ VTOL aircraft to proceed at a slow speed above the surface, normally below 20 knots and in ground effect, use the following phraseology, supplemented as appropriate with the phraseology in para 3-7-2, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOVER-TAXI (supplemented, as appropriate, from para 3-7-2, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS.)

CAUTION (dust, blowing snow, loose debris, taxiing light aircraft, personnel, etc.).

NOTE–
Hover-taxiing consumes fuel at a high burn rate, and helicopter downwash turbulence (produced in ground effect) increases significantly with larger and heavier helicopters.

REFERENCE–
PCG TERM–HOVER TAXI
AIM, VFR HELICOPTER OPERATIONS AT CONTROLLED AIRPORTS, Para 4-3-17.

c. When requested or necessary for a helicopter to proceed expeditiously from one point to another, normally below 100 feet AGL and at airspeeds above 20 knots, use the following phraseology, supplemented as appropriate with the phraseology in para 3-7-2, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AIR-TAXI:

VIA (direct, as requested, or specified route)

TO (location, heliport, helipad, operating/movement area, active/inactive runway).

AVOID (aircraft/vehicles/personnel).
if required,

REMAIN AT OR BELOW (altitude).

CAUTION (wake turbulence or other reasons above).

LAND AND CONTACT TOWER,

or

HOLD FOR (reason– takeoff clearance, release, landing/taxiing aircraft, etc.).

NOTE–
Air-taxi is the preferred method for helicopter movements on airports provided ground operations/conditions permit. Air-taxi authorizes the pilot to proceed above the surface either via hover-taxi or flight at speeds more than 20 knots. Unless otherwise requested or instructed, the pilot is expected to remain below 100 feet AGL. The pilot is solely responsible for selecting a safe airspeed for the altitude/operation being conducted.

REFERENCE–
PCG TERM–AIR TAXI
AIM, VFR HELICOPTER OPERATIONS AT CONTROLLED AIRPORTS, Para 4-3-17.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

d. Avoid clearances which require small aircraft or helicopters to taxi in close proximity to taxiing or hover-taxi helicopters.

REFERENCE–
AC 90-23, AIRCRAFT WAKE TURBULENCE, Para 10 and Para 11.

3-11-2. HELICOPTER TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

a. Issue takeoff clearance from movement areas other than active runways, or in diverse directions from active runways, with additional instructions, as necessary. Whenever possible, issue takeoff clearance in lieu of extended hover-taxi or air-taxi operations.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Present position, taxiway, helipad, numbers) MAKE RIGHT/LEFT TURN FOR (direction, points of compass, heading, NAVAID radial) DEPARTURE/DEPARTURE ROUTE (number, name, or code), AVOID (aircraft/vehicles/personnel),

or

REMAIN (direction) OF (active runways, parking areas, passenger terminals, etc.).

CAUTION (power lines, unlighted obstructions, trees, wake turbulence, etc.).

CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

b. If takeoff is requested from nonmovement areas and, in your judgment, the operation appears to be reasonable, use the following phraseology instead of the takeoff clearance in subpara a.

PHRASEOLOGY–
PROCEED AS REQUESTED, USE CAUTION (reason and additional instructions, as appropriate).

c. If takeoff is requested from an area not visible, an area not authorized for helicopter use, an unlighted nonmovement area at night, or an area off the airport, and traffic is not a factor, use the following phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DEPARTURE FROM (requested location) WILL BE AT YOUR OWN RISK (reason and additional instructions, as necessary).

TRAFFIC (as applicable),

or

TRAFFIC NOT A FACTOR.

d. Unless requested by the pilot, do not issue downwind takeoffs if the tailwind exceeds 5 knots.

NOTE–
A pilot request to takeoff from a given point in a given direction constitutes such a request.

3–11–3. HELICOPTER DEPARTURE SEPARATION

Separate a departing helicopter from other helicopters by ensuring that it does not takeoff until one of the following conditions exists:

NOTE–
Helicopters performing air-taxiing operations within the boundary of the airport are considered to be taxiing aircraft.

a. A preceding, departing helicopter has left the takeoff area. (See FIG 3–11–1.)

Helicopter Departure Separation

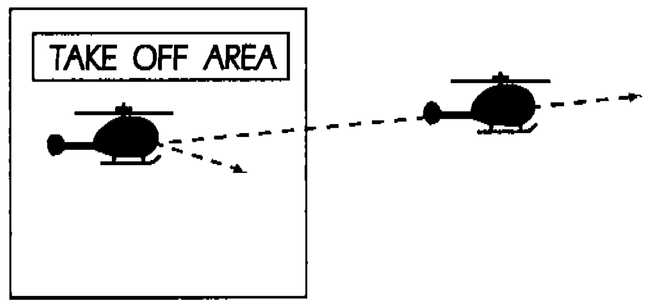


FIG 3–11–1

b. A preceding, arriving helicopter has taxied off the landing area. (See FIG 3–11–2.)

Helicopter Departure Separation

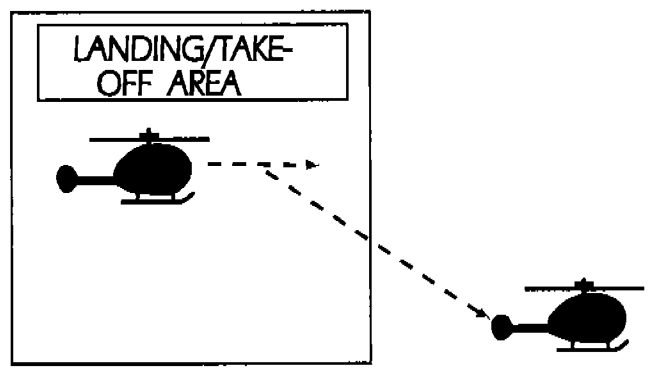


FIG 3–11–2

3–11–4. HELICOPTER ARRIVAL SEPARATION

Separate an arriving helicopter from other helicopters by ensuring that it does not land until one of the following conditions exists:

a. A preceding, arriving helicopter has come to a stop or taxied off the landing area. (See FIG 3–11–3 and FIG 3–11–4.)

Helicopter Arrival Separation

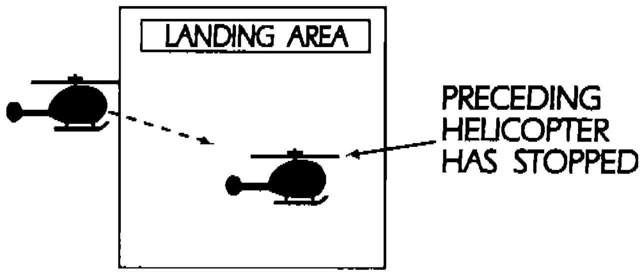


FIG 3-11-3

Helicopter Arrival Separation

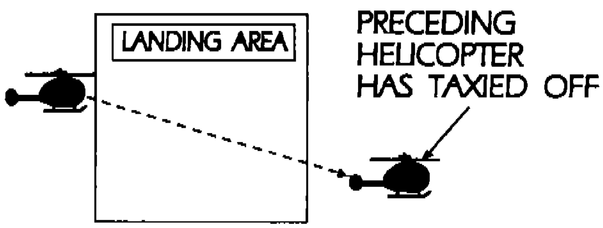


FIG 3-11-4

b. A preceding, departing helicopter has left the landing area. (See FIG 3-11-5.)

Helicopter Arrival Separation

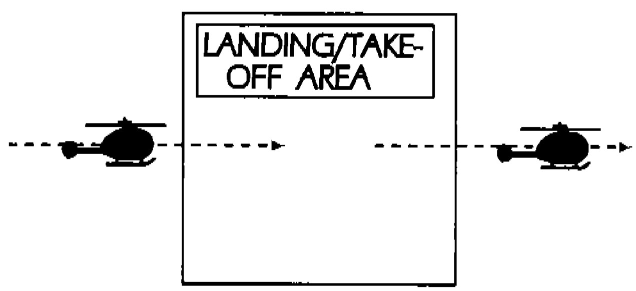


FIG 3-11-5

3-11-5. SIMULTANEOUS LANDINGS OR TAKEOFFS

Authorize helicopters to conduct simultaneous landings or takeoffs if the distance between the landing or takeoff points is at least 200 feet and the courses to be flown do not conflict. Refer to surface markings to determine the 200 foot minimum, or instruct a helicopter to remain at least 200 feet from another helicopter. (See FIG 3-11-6.)

Simultaneous Helicopter Landings or Takeoffs

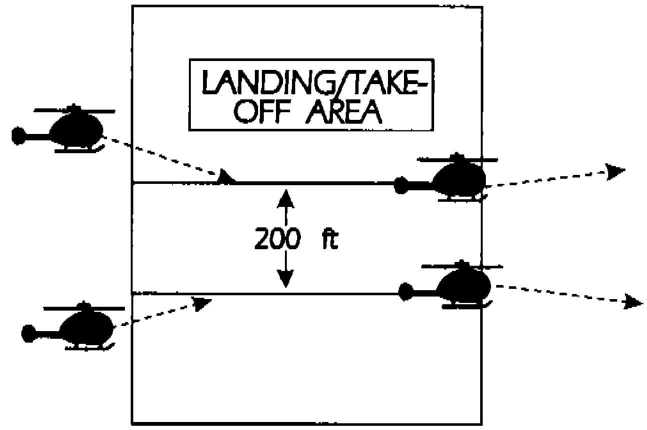


FIG 3-11-6

3-11-6. HELICOPTER LANDING CLEARANCE

a. Issue landing clearance for helicopters to movement areas other than active runways, or from diverse directions to points on active runways, with additional instructions, as necessary. Whenever possible, issue landing clearance in lieu of extended hover-taxi or air-taxi operations.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAKE APPROACH STRAIGHT-IN/CIRCLING LEFT/RIGHT TURN TO (location, runway, taxiway, helipad, Maltese cross) ARRIVAL/ARRIVAL ROUTE (number, name, or code).

HOLD SHORT OF (active runway, extended runway centerline, other).

REMAIN (direction/distance; e.g., 700 feet, 1 1/2 miles) FROM (runway, runway centerline, other helicopter/aircraft).

CAUTION (power lines, unlighted obstructions, wake turbulence, etc.).

CLEARED TO LAND.

CONTACT GROUND.

AIR TAXI TO RAMP.

b. If landing is requested to nonmovement areas and, in your judgment, the operation appears to be reasonable, use the following phraseology instead of the landing clearance in subpara a. above.

PHRASEOLOGY–
PROCEED AS REQUESTED, USE CAUTION (reason and additional instructions, as appropriate).

c. If landing is requested to an area not visible, an area not authorized for helicopter use, an unlighted nonmovement area at night, or an area off the airport, and traffic is not a factor, use the following phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY–
LANDING AT (requested location) WILL BE AT YOUR OWN RISK (reason and additional instructions, as necessary).

TRAFFIC (as applicable),

or

TRAFFIC NOT A FACTOR.

d. Unless requested by the pilot, do not issue downwind landings if the tailwind exceeds 5 knots.

NOTE–
A pilot request to land at a given point from a given direction constitutes such a request.

Section 12. SEA LANE OPERATIONS

3-12-1. APPLICATION

Where sea lanes are established and controlled, apply the provisions of this section.

3-12-2. DEPARTURE SEPARATION

Separate a departing aircraft from a preceding departing or arriving aircraft using the same sea lane by ensuring that it does not commence takeoff until:

a. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the end of the sea lane or turned to avert any conflict. If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks, the other aircraft need only be airborne if the following minimum distance exists between aircraft:

1. When only Category I aircraft are involved– *1,500 feet.*

2. When a Category I aircraft is preceded by a Category II aircraft– *3,000 feet.*

Sea Lane Departure Operations

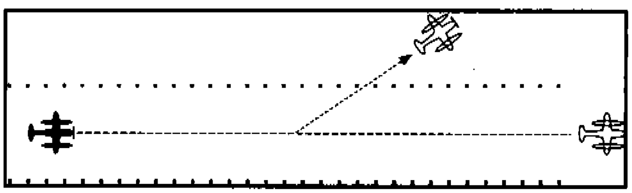


FIG 3-12-1

3. When either the succeeding or both are Category II aircraft– *3,000 feet.*

4. When either is a Category III aircraft– *6,000 feet.* (See FIG 3-12-1 and FIG 3-12-2.)

Sea Lane Departure Operations

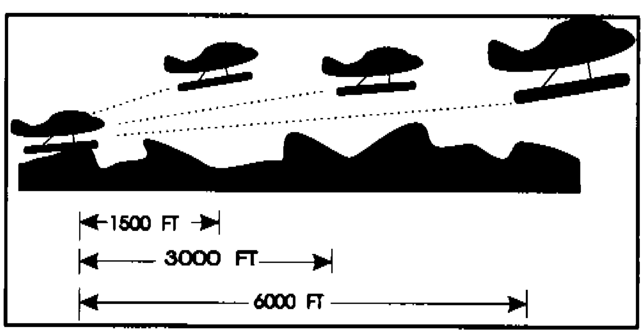


FIG 3-12-2

b. A preceding landing aircraft has taxied out of the sea lane.

NOTE–
Due to the absence of braking capability, caution should be exercised when instructing a float plane to hold a position as the aircraft will continue to move because of prop generated thrust. Clearance to taxi into position and hold should, therefore, be followed by takeoff or other clearance as soon as practicable.

3-12-3. ARRIVAL SEPARATION

Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same sea lane by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists:

a. The other aircraft has landed and taxied out of the sea lane. Between sunrise and sunset, if you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft has landed, it need not be clear of the sea lane if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

1. When a Category I aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II– *2,000 feet.* (See FIG 3-12-3.)

Sea Lane Arrival Operations

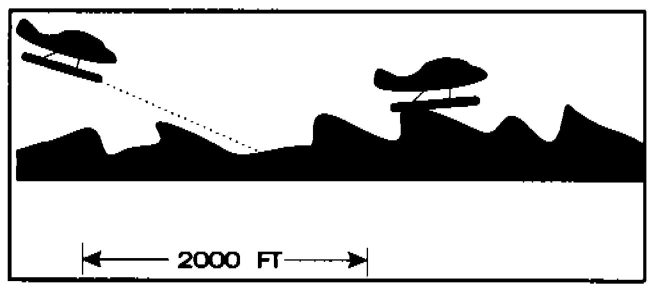


FIG 3-12-3

2. When a Category II aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II– *2,500 feet.* (See FIG 3-12-4.)

Sea Lane Arrival Operations
[View 2]

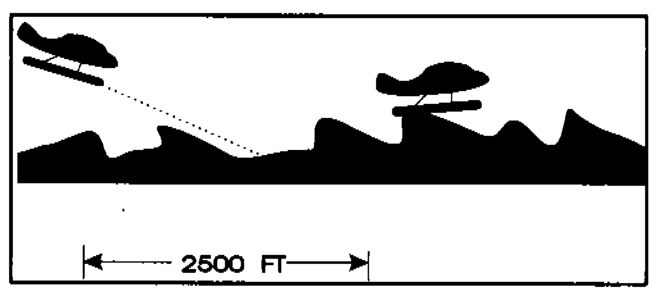


FIG 3-12-4

b. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the end of the sea lane or turned to avert any conflict. If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft is airborne, it need not have crossed the end of the sea lane if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

1. When only Category I aircraft are involved– *1,500 feet.*

2. When either is a Category II aircraft– *3,000 feet.*

Sea Lane Arrival Operations

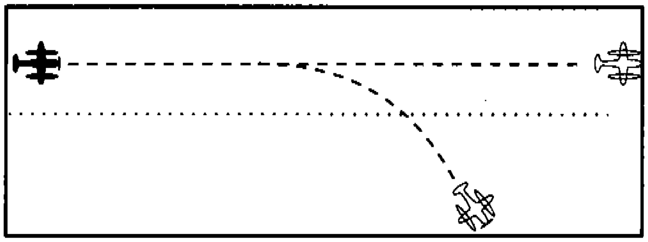


FIG 3-12-5

3. When either is a Category III aircraft– *6,000 feet.* (See FIG 3-12-5 and FIG 3-12-6.)

Sea Lane Arrival Operations

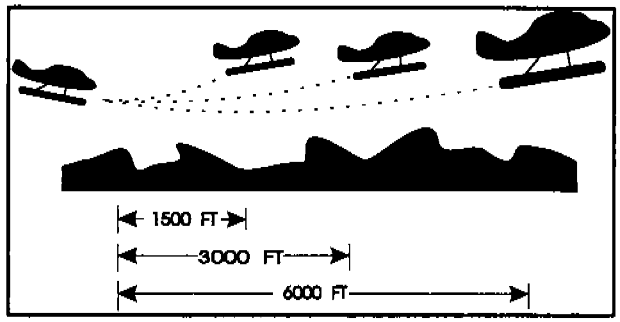


FIG 3-12-6

Chapter 4. IFR

Section 1. NAVAID USE LIMITATIONS

4-1-1. ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS

When specifying a route other than an established airway or route, do not exceed the limitations in the table on any portion of the route which lies within controlled airspace. (For altitude and distance limitations, see TBL 4-1-1, TBL 4-1-2, TBL 4-1-3, and TBL 4-1-4.) (For correct application of altitude and distance limitations see FIG 4-1-1 and FIG 4-1-2.)

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, FIX USE, Para 4-1-5.
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5-6-2.

VOR/VORTAC/TACAN NAVAID's
Normal Usable Altitudes and Radius Distances

Class	*Altitude*	*Distance (miles)*
T	12,000 and below	25
L	Below 18,000	40
H	Below 14,500	40
H	14,500 - 17,999	100
H	18,000 - FL 450	130
H	Above FL 450	100

TBL 4-1-1

L/MF Radio Beacon (RBN)
Usable Radius Distances for All Altitudes

Class	*Power (watts)*	*Distance (miles)*
CL	Under 25	15
MH	Under 50	25
H	50 - 1,999	50
HH	2,000 or more	75

TBL 4-1-2

ILS
Usable Height and Distance*

Height (feet) above transmitter	*Distance (miles from transmitter)*
4,500	10 (for glideslope)
4,500	18 (for localizer)
*Use the current flight check height/altitude limitations if different from the above minima.	

TBL 4-1-3

MLS
Usable Height and Distance*

Height (feet) above transmitter	*Distance (miles from transmitter)*
20,000	20 (for glideslope)
20,000	20 (for azimuth)
*Use the current flight check height/altitude limitations if different from the above minima.	

TBL 4-1-4

Application of Altitude and Distance Limitations [Application 1]

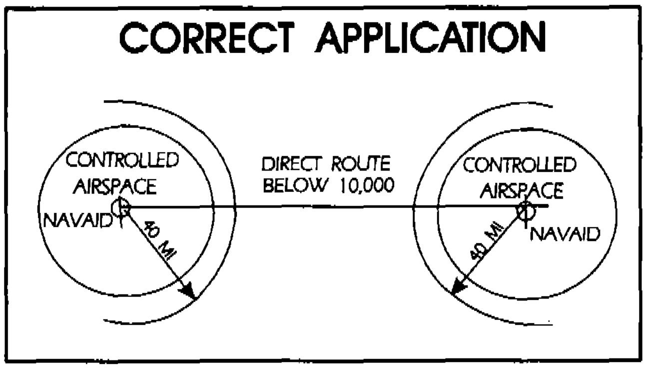


FIG 4-1-1

Application of Altitude and Distance Limitations [Application 2]

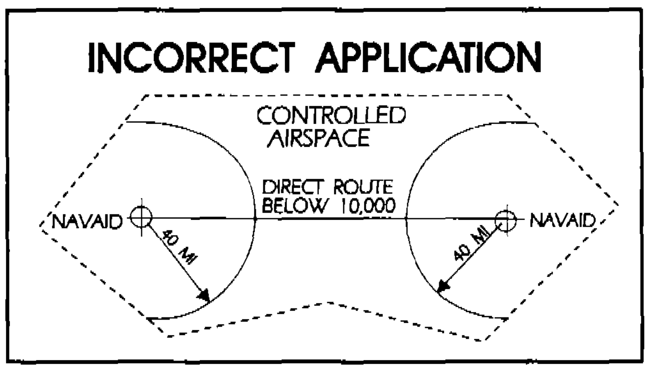


FIG 4-1-2

4-1-2. EXCEPTIONS

Altitude and distance limitations need not be applied when any of the following conditions are met:

a. Routing is initiated by ATC or requested by the pilot and the following is provided:

1. Radar monitoring.

2. As necessary, course guidance.

3. Aircraft is /E, /F, or /G equipped.

NOTE-
[1] Para 4-4-1, ROUTE USE, requires radar monitoring be provided at FL 450 and below to aircraft on random (impromptu) RNAV routes.
Para 5-5-1, APPLICATION, requires radar separation be provided for these routes at FL 450 and below.

[2] When a clearance is issued beyond the altitude and/or distance limitations of a NAVAID, in addition to being responsible for maintaining separation from other aircraft and airspace, the controller is responsible for providing aircraft with information and advice related to significant deviations from the expected flight path.

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-RADAR MONITORING.

b. Operational necessity requires and approval has been obtained from the Frequency Management and Flight Inspection Offices to exceed them.

c. Requested routing is via an MTR.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5-6-2.

4-1-3. CROSSING ALTITUDE

Use an altitude consistent with the limitations of the aid when clearing an aircraft to cross or hold at a fix.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5-6-2.

4-1-4. VFR-ON-TOP

Use a route not meeting service volume limitations only if an aircraft requests to operate "VFR-on-top" on this route.

NOTE-
Aircraft equipped with TACAN only are expected to:

a. Define route of flight between TACAN or VORTAC NAVAID's in the same manner as VOR-equipped aircraft.

b. Except in Class A airspace, submit requests for "VFR-on-top" flight where insufficient TACAN or VORTAC NAVAID's exist to define the route.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5-6-2.

4-1-5. FIX USE

Request aircraft position reports only over fixes shown on charts used for the altitude being flown, except as follows:

NOTE-
Waypoints filed in random RNAV routes automatically become compulsory reporting points for the flight unless otherwise advised by ATC.

a. Unless the pilot requests otherwise, use only those fixes shown on high altitude en route charts, high altitude instrument approach procedures charts, and SID charts when clearing military turbojet single-piloted aircraft.

b. Except for military single-piloted turbojet aircraft, unpublished fixes may be used if the name of the NAVAID and, if appropriate, the radial/course/azimuth and frequency/channel are given to the pilot. An unpublished fix is defined as one approved and planned for publication which is not yet depicted on the charts or one which is used in accord with the following:

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7130.3, HOLDING PATTERN CRITERIA.

1. Unpublished fixes are formed by the en route radial and either a DME distance from the same NAVAID or an intersecting radial from an off-route VOR/VORTAC/TACAN. DME shall be used in lieu of off-route radials, whenever possible.

2. Except where known signal coverage restrictions exist, an unpublished fix may be used for ATC purposes if its location does not exceed NAVAID altitude and distance limitation, and when off-route radials are used, the angle of divergence meets the criteria prescribed below.

NOTE-
Unpublished fixes should not negate the normal use of published intersections. Frequent routine use of an unpublished fix would justify establishing a fix.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS, Para 4-1-1.

3. Do not hold aircraft at unpublished fixes below the lowest assignable altitude dictated by terrain clearance for the appropriate holding pattern airspace area (template) regardless of the MEA for the route being flown.

4. When the unpublished fix is located on an off-route radial and the radial providing course guidance, it shall be used consistent with the following divergence angles.

(a) When holding operations are involved with respect to subparas (b) and (c) below, the angle of divergence shall be at least 45 degrees.

(b) When both NAVAID's involved are located within 30 NM of the unpublished fix, the minimum divergence angle is 30 degrees.

(c) When the unpublished fix is located over 30 NM from the NAVAID generating the off-course radial, the minimum divergence angle shall increase 1 degree per NM up to 45 NM; e.g., 45 NM would require 45 degrees.

(d) When the unpublished fix is located beyond 45 NM from the NAVAID generating the off-course radial, the minimum divergence angle shall increase $^1/_2$ degree per NM; e.g., 130 NM would require 88 degrees.

c. Fixes contained in the route description of MTR's are considered filed fixes.

d. TACAN-only aircraft (type suffix M, N, or P) possess TACAN with DME, but no VOR or LF navigation system capability. Assign fixes based on TACAN or VORTAC facilities only.

NOTE–
TACAN-only aircraft can never be held overhead the NAVAID, be it TACAN or VORTAC.

e. DME fixes shall not be established within the no-course signal zone of the NAVAID from which inbound holding course information would be derived.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, NAVAID FIXES, Para 2–5–3.
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5–6–2.

Section 2. CLEARANCES

4–2–1. CLEARANCE ITEMS

Issue the following clearance items, as appropriate, in the order listed below:

a. Aircraft identification.

b. Clearance limit.

c. Departure procedure or SID/FMSP.

d. Route of flight including PDR/PDAR/PAR when applied.

e. Altitude data in the order flown.

f. Mach number, if applicable.

g. *USAF:* When issuing a clearance to an airborne aircraft containing an altitude assignment, do not include more than one of the following in the same transmission:

1. Frequency change.

2. Transponder change.

3. Heading.

4. Altimeter setting.

5. Traffic information containing an altitude.

h. Holding instructions.

i. Any special information.

j. Frequency and beacon code information.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR–VFR AND VFR–IFR FLIGHTS, Para 4–2–8.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE INFORMATION, Para 4–5–7.

4–2–2. CLEARANCE PREFIX

a. Prefix a clearance, information, or a request for information which will be relayed to an aircraft through a non–ATC facility by stating "A–T–C clears," "A–T–C advises," or "A–T–C requests."

b. Flight service stations shall prefix a clearance with the appropriate phrase: "ATC clears," "ATC advises," etc..

4–2–3. DELIVERY INSTRUCTIONS

Issue specific clearance delivery instructions, if appropriate.

4–2–4. CLEARANCE RELAY

Relay clearances verbatim.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE, Para 10–4–4.

4–2–5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS

a. Amend route of flight in a previously issued clearance by one of the following:

1. State which portion of the route is being amended and then state the amendment.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHANGE (portion of route) TO READ (new portion of route).

2. State the amendment to the route and then state that the rest of the route is unchanged.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Amendment to route), REST OF ROUTE UNCHANGED.

3. Issue a clearance "direct" to a point on the previously issued route.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED DIRECT (fix).

NOTE–
Clearances authorizing "direct" to a point on a previously issued route do not require the phrase "rest of route unchanged." However, it must be understood where the previously cleared route is resumed. When necessary, "rest of route unchanged" may be used to clarify routing.

4. Issue the entire route by stating the amendment.

EXAMPLE–
(Cessna 21A has been cleared to the Airville Airport via V41 Delta VOR V174 Alfa VOR, direct Airville Airport, maintain 9000. After takeoff, the aircraft is rerouted via V41 Frank intersection, V71 Delta VOR, V174 Alfa VOR. The controller issues one of the following as an amended clearance):

1 *"Cessna Two One Alfa change Victor Forty–One Delta to read Victor Forty–One Frank, Victor Seventy–One Delta."*

2 *"Cessna Two One Alfa cleared via Victor Forty–One Frank, Victor Seventy–One Delta, rest of route unchanged."*

3 *"Cessna Two One Alfa cleared via Victor Forty–One Frank, Victor Seventy–One Delta, Victor One Seventy–Four Alfa V–O–R, direct Airville airport, maintain Niner Thousand."*

b. When route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended, restate all applicable altitude restrictions.

EXAMPLE–
(A departing aircraft is cleared to cross Ollis intersection at or above 3,000; Gordonsville VOR at or above 12,000; maintain FL 200. Shortly after departure the altitude to be maintained is changed to FL 240. Because altitude restrictions remain in effect, the controller issues an amended clearance as follows):

"Amend altitude. Cross Ollis intersection at or above Three Thousand; cross Gordonsville V–O–R at or above One Two Thousand; maintain Flight Level Two Four Zero."

(Shortly after departure, altitude restrictions are no longer applicable, the controller issues an amended clearance as follows):

"Climb and maintain Flight Level Two Four Zero."

NOTE–
Restating previously issued altitude to "maintain" is an amended clearance. If altitude to "maintain" is changed or restated, whether prior to departure or while airborne, and previously issued altitude restrictions are omitted, altitude restrictions are canceled, including SID/FMSP altitude restrictions if any.

c. Issue an amended clearance if a speed restriction is declined because it cannot be complied with concurrently with a previously issued altitude restriction.

EXAMPLE–
(An aircraft is cleared to cross Gordonsville VOR at 11,000. Shortly thereafter he is cleared to reduce his airspeed to 300 knots. The pilot informs the controller he is unable to comply with both clearances simultaneously. The controller issues an amended clearance as follows):

"Cross Gordonsville VOR at One One Thousand. Then, reduce speed to Three Zero Zero."

NOTE–
The phrase "do the best you can" or comparable phrases are not valid substitutes for an amended clearance with altitude or speed restrictions.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL REQUESTS, Para 2–1–18.
FAAO 7110.65, SECTION 6. VECTORING, METHODS, Para 5–6–2.
FAAO 7110.65, SECTION 7. SPEED ADJUSTMENT, METHODS, Para 5–7–2.

d. Air traffic control specialists should avoid route and/or altitude changes for aircraft participating in the National Route Program (NRP) and that are displaying "NRP" in the remarks section of their flight plan.

NOTE–
Air traffic control specialists retain the latitude necessary to tactically resolve conflicts. Every effort should be made to ensure the aircraft is returned to the original filed flight plan/altitude as soon as conditions warrant.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.
FAAO 7110.65, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION, Para 2–2–15.
FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES, Para 2–3–2.
FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 18, Section 17, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM.

4–2–6. THROUGH CLEARANCES

You may clear an aircraft through intermediate stops.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED THROUGH (airport) TO (fix).

4–2–7. ALTRV CLEARANCE

Use the phrase "via approved altitude reservation flight plan," if the aircraft will operate in an approved ALTRV.

PHRASEOLOGY–
VIA APPROVED ALTITUDE RESERVATION (mission name) FLIGHT PLAN.

NOTE–
An ALTRV normally includes the departure, climb, cruise, and arrival phases of flight up to and including holding pattern or point/time at which ATC provides separation between aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE, Para 4–3–3.

4–2–8. IFR–VFR AND VFR–IFR FLIGHTS

a. Clear an aircraft planning IFR operations for the initial part of flight and VFR for the latter part to the fix at which the IFR part ends.

b. Treat an aircraft planning VFR for the initial part of flight and IFR for the latter part as a VFR departure. Issue a clearance to this aircraft when it requests IFR clearance approaching the fix where it proposes to start IFR operations. The phraseology CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED may be used with abbreviated departure clearance procedures.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE, Para 4–3–3.

c. When an aircraft changes from VFR to IFR, the controller shall assign a beacon code to Mode-C equipped aircraft that will allow MSAW alarms.

d. When a VFR aircraft, operating below the minimum altitude for IFR operations, requests an IFR clearance and you are aware that the pilot is unable to climb in VFR conditions to the minimum IFR altitude:

1. Before issuing a clearance, ask if the pilot is able to maintain terrain and obstruction clearance during a climb to the minimum IFR altitude.

NOTE–
Pilots of pop-up aircraft are responsible for terrain and obstacle clearance until reaching minimum instrument altitude (MIA) or minimum en route altitude (MEA). Pilot compliance with an approved FAA procedure or an ATC instruction transfers that responsibility to the FAA; therefore, do not assign (or imply) specific course guidance that will (or could) be in effect below the MIA or MEA.

EXAMPLE–
"November Eight Seven Six, are you able to provide your own terrain and obstruction clearance between your present altitude and six thousand feet?"

2. If the pilot is able to maintain terrain and obstruction separation, issue the appropriate clearance as prescribed in para 4-2-1, CLEARANCE ITEMS, and para 4-5-6, MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES.

3. If unable to maintain terrain and obstruction separation, instruct the pilot to maintain VFR and to state intentions.

4. If appropriate, apply the provisions of para 10-2-7, VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY, or para10-2-9, RADAR ASSISTANCE TECHNIQUES, as necessary.

4-2-9. CLEARANCE ITEMS

The following guidelines shall be utilized to facilitate the processing of airfile aircraft:

a. Ensure the aircraft is within your area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated.

b. Obtain necessary information needed to provide IFR service.

c. Issue clearance to destination, short range clearance, or an instruction to the pilot to contact a FSS or AFSS if the flight plan cannot be processed.

NOTE–
These procedures do not imply that the processing of airfiles has priority over another ATC duty to be performed.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RECORDING INFORMATION, Para 2-2-1.

Section 3. DEPARTURE PROCEDURES

4-3-1. DEPARTURE TERMINOLOGY

Avoid using the term "takeoff" except to actually clear an aircraft for takeoff or to cancel a takeoff clearance. Use such terms as "depart," "departure," or "fly" in clearances when necessary.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, TAKEOFF CLEARANCE, Para 3-9-9.
FAAO 7110.65, CANCELLATION OF TAKEOFF CLEARANCE, Para 3-9-10.

4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES

Include the following items in IFR departure clearances:

NOTE-
When considered necessary, controllers or pilots may initiate read backs of a clearance. Some pilots may be required by company rule to do so.

a. Always include the airport of departure when issuing a departure clearance for relay to an aircraft by an FSS, dispatcher, etc.

b. Clearance Limit- Specify the destination airport when practicable, even though it is outside controlled airspace. Issue short range clearances as provided for in any procedures established for their use.

c. Departure Procedures-

1. Specify direction of takeoff/turn or initial heading/azimuth to be flown after takeoff as follows:

(a) Locations with Airport Traffic Control Service- Specify these items as necessary.

(b) Locations without Airport Traffic Control Service, but within a Class E surface area- specify these items if necessary. Obtain/solicit the pilot's concurrence concerning these items before issuing them in a clearance.

NOTE-
Direction of takeoff and turn after takeoff can be obtained/solicited directly from the pilot, or relayed by an FSS, dispatcher, etc., as obtained/solicited from the pilot.

(c) At all other airports- Do not specify direction of takeoff/turn after takeoff. If necessary to specify an initial heading/azimuth to be flown after takeoff, issue the initial heading/azimuth so as to apply only within controlled airspace.

2. When IFR departure procedures are published for a location and pilot compliance is necessary to insure separation, include the published departure procedure as part of the ATC clearance.

NOTE-
IFR takeoff minimums and departure procedures are prescribed for specific airports/runways and published in a tabular form supplement to the NOS instrument approach procedure chart and appropriate FAA Form 8260. These procedures are identified on instrument approach procedure charts with a symbol:

3. Compatibility with a procedure issued may be verified by asking the pilot if items obtained/solicited will allow him to comply with local traffic pattern, terrain, or obstruction avoidance.

PHRASEOLOGY-
FLY RUNWAY HEADING.

DEPART (direction or runway).

TURN LEFT/RIGHT.

WHEN ENTERING CONTROLLED AIRSPACE (instruction), FLY HEADING (degrees) UNTIL REACHING (altitude, point, or fix) BEFORE PROCEEDING ON COURSE.

FLY A (degree) BEARING/AZIMUTH FROM/TO (fix) UNTIL (time),

or

UNTIL REACHING (fix or altitude),

and if required,

BEFORE PROCEEDING ON COURSE.

EXAMPLE-
"Verify right turn after departure will allow compliance with local traffic pattern," or "Verify this clearance will allow compliance with terrain or obstruction avoidance."

NOTE-
If a published IFR departure procedure is not included in an ATC clearance, compliance with such a procedure is the pilot's prerogative.

4. SID's:

(a) Assign a SID or FMSP (including transition if necessary). Assign a PDR or the route filed by the pilot, only when a SID or FMSP is not established for the departure route to be flown, or the pilot has indicated that he does not wish to use a SID or FMSP.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(SID/FMSP name and number) DEPARTURE.

(SID/FMSP name and number) DEPARTURE, (transition name) TRANSITION.

EXAMPLE–
"Stroudsburg One Departure."
"Stroudsburg One Departure, Sparta Transition."
"Stroudsburg One RNAV Departure."

NOTE–
If a pilot does not wish to use a SID or FMSP issued in an ATC clearance, or any other SID or FMSP published for that location, he/she is expected to advise ATC.

(b) If it is necessary to assign a crossing altitude which differs from the SID or FMSP altitude, repeat the changed altitude to the pilot for emphasis.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(SID/FMSP name) DEPARTURE, EXCEPT (revised altitude information). I SAY AGAIN (revised altitude information).

EXAMPLE–
"Stroudsburg One Departure, except cross Quaker at five thousand. I say again, cross Quaker at five thousand."

"Astoria Two RNAV Departure, except cross Astor waypoint at six thousand. I say again, cross Astor waypoint at six thousand."

(c) Specify altitudes when they are not included in the SID or FMSP.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(SID/FMSP name) DEPARTURE. CROSS (fix) AT (altitude).

EXAMPLE–
"Stroudsburg One Departure. Cross Jersey intersection at four thousand. Cross Range intersection at six thousand."

"Engle Two RNAV departure. Cross Pilim waypoint at or above five thousand. Cross Engle waypoint at or above seven thousand. Cross Gorge waypoint at niner thousand."

d. Route of flight– Specify one or more of the following:

1. Airway, route, course, heading, azimuth, arc, or vector.

2. The routing a pilot can expect if any part of the route beyond a short range clearance limit differs from that filed.

PHRASEOLOGY–
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE VIA (airways, routes, or fixes.)

e. Altitude– Use one of the following in the order of preference listed:

NOTE–
Turbojet aircraft equipped with afterburner engines may occasionally be expected to use afterburning during their climb to the en route altitude. When so advised by the pilot, the controller may be able to plan his traffic to accommodate the high performance climb and allow the pilot to climb to his planned altitude without restriction.

1. Assign the altitude requested by the pilot.

2. Assign an altitude, as near as possible to the altitude requested by the pilot, and

(a) Inform the pilot when to expect clearance to the requested altitude unless instructions are contained in the specified SID or FMSP, or

(b) If the requested altitude is not expected to be available, inform the pilot what altitude can be expected and when/where to expect it.

NOTE–
1 CFR Part 91.185, says that in the event of a two-way radio communication failure, in VFR conditions or if VFR conditions are encountered after the failure, the pilot shall continue the flight under VFR and land as soon as practicable. That section also says that when the failure occurs in IFR conditions the pilot shall continue flight at the highest of the following altitudes or flight levels for the route segment being flown:
1. The altitude or flight level assigned in the last ATC clearance received.
2. The minimum altitude (converted, if appropriate, to minimum flight level as prescribed in CFR Part 91.121(c)) for IFR operations. (This altitude should be consistent with MEA's, MOCA's, etc.)
3. The altitude or flight level ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance.
2 If the expected altitude is the highest of the preceding choices, the pilot should begin to climb to that expected altitude at the time or fix specified in the clearance. The choice to climb to the expected altitude is not applicable if the pilot has proceeded beyond the specified fix or if the time designated in the clearance has expired.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (the altitude as near as possible to the pilot's requested altitude). EXPECT (the requested altitude or an altitude different from the requested altitude) AT (time or fix),

and if applicable,

(pilot's requested altitude) IS NOT AVAILABLE.

EXAMPLE–
[1] A pilot has requested flight level 350. Flight level 230 is immediately available and flight level 350 will be available at the Appleton zero five zero radial 35 mile fix. The clearance will read:
"Climb and maintain flight level two three zero. Expect flight level three five zero at Appleton zero five zero radial three five mile fix."

[2] A pilot has requested 9,000 feet. An altitude restriction is required because of facility procedures or requirements. Assign the altitude and advise the pilot at what fix/time the pilot may expect the requested altitude. The clearance could read:
"Climb and maintain five thousand. Expect niner thousand one zero minutes after departure."

[3] A pilot has requested 17,000 feet which is unavailable. You plan 15,000 feet to be the pilot's highest altitude prior to descent to the pilot's destination but only 13,000 feet is available until San Jose VOR. Advise the pilot of the expected altitude change and at what fix/time to expect clearance to 15,000 feet. The clearance will read:
"Climb and maintain one three thousand. Expect one five thousand at San Jose. One seven thousand is not available."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE, Para 4–3–3.
FAAO 7110.65, INITIAL HEADING, Para 5–8–2.

4–3–3. ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE

a. Issue an abbreviated departure clearance if its use reduces verbiage and the following conditions are met:

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS, Para 4–2–8.

1. The route of flight filed with ATC has not been changed by the pilot, company, operations officer, input operator, or in the stored flight plan program prior to departure.

NOTE–
A pilot will not accept an abbreviated clearance if the route of flight filed with ATC has been changed by him or the company or the operations officer before departure. He is expected to inform the control facility on initial radio contact if he cannot accept the clearance. It is the responsibility of the company or operations officer to inform the pilot when they make a change.

2. All ATC facilities concerned have sufficient route of flight information to exercise their control responsibilities.

NOTE–
The route of flight information to be provided may be covered in letters of agreement.

3. When the flight will depart IFR, destination airport information is relayed between the facilities concerned prior to departure.

EXAMPLE–
[1] A tower or flight service station relay of destination airport information to the center when requesting clearance:
"Request clearance for United Four Sixty-One to O'Hare."

[2] A center relay to the tower or flight service station when initiating a clearance:
"Clearance for United Four Sixty-One to O'Hare."

NOTE–
Pilots are expected to furnish the facility concerned with destination airport information on initial radio call-up. This will provide the information necessary for detecting any destination airport differences on facility relay.

4. The assigned altitude, according to the provisions in para 4–3–2, DEPARTURE CLEARANCES, subpara e., is stated in the clearance.

b. If it is necessary to modify a filed route of flight in order to achieve computer acceptance due, for example, to incorrect fix or airway identification, the contraction "FRC", meaning "Full Route Clearance Necessary," or "FRC/(fix)", will be added to the remarks. "FRC" or "FRC/(fix)" must always be the first item of intracenter remarks. When "FRC" or "FRC/(fix)" appears on a flight progress strip, the controller issuing the ATC clearance to the aircraft shall issue a full route clearance to the specified fix, or, if no fix is specified, for the entire route.

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared to Missoula InternationaL Airport, Chief Two Departure to Angley; direct Salina; then as filed; maintain one seven thousand."

NOTE–
Changes, such as those made to conform with traffic flows and preferred routings, are only permitted to be made by the pilot (or his operations office) or the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft.

c. Specify the destination airport in the clearance.

d. When no changes are required in the filed route, state the phrase: "Cleared to (destination) airport, (SID/FMSP and SID/FMSP transition, as appropriate); then, as filed." If a SID/FMSP is not assigned, follow with "As filed." Specify the assigned altitude; and, if required, add any additional instructions or information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT;

and as appropriate,

(SID/FMSP name and number) DEPARTURE,
AS FILED.

MAINTAIN (altitude); (additional instructions or information).

If a SID/FMSP is not assigned,

CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED.
MAINTAIN (altitude);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; David Two RNAV Departure, Kingham Transition; then, as filed. Maintain niner thousand. Expect flight level four one zero, one zero minutes after departure."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport as filed. Maintain niner thousand. Expect flight level four one zero, one zero minutes after departure."

NOTE–
1 SID's and FMSP's are excluded from "cleared as filed" procedures.

2 If a pilot does not wish to accept an ATC clearance to fly a SID/FMSP, he is expected to advise ATC or state "NO SID" or "NO FMSP" in his flight plan remarks.

e. When a filed route will require revisions, the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft shall either:

1. Issue a FRC/FRC until a fix; or

2. If it reduces verbiage, state the phrase: "Cleared to (destination) airport, (SID/FMSP and SID/FMSP transition, as appropriate), then as filed, except . . .." Specify the necessary revision, then the assigned altitude; and if required, add any additional instructions or information. If a SID/FMSP is not assigned, state: "Cleared to (destination) airport as filed, except . . .." Specify the necessary revision, the assigned altitude; and if required, add any additional instructions or information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT;

and as appropriate,

(SID/FMSP name and number) DEPARTURE,

(transition name) TRANSITION; THEN,

AS FILED, EXCEPT CHANGE ROUTE TO READ (amended route portion).

MAINTAIN (altitude);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

If a SID/FMSP is not assigned,

CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED,

EXCEPT CHANGE ROUTE TO READ (amended route portion).

MAINTAIN (altitude);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; South Boston One Departure; then, as filed, except change route to read, South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro. Maintain eight thousand, report leaving four thousand."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport as filed, except change route to read, South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro. Maintain eight thousand, report leaving four thousand."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport via Victor Ninety-one Albany, then as filed. Maintain six thousand."

f. In a nonradar environment specify one, two, or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.

EXAMPLE–
The filed route of flight is from Hutchins V10 Emporia, thence V10N and V77 to St. Joseph. The clearance will read:
"Cleared to Watson Airport as filed via Emporia, maintain Seven Thousand."

g. Do not apply these procedures when a pilot requests a detailed clearance or to military operations conducted within ALTRV, stereo routes, operations above FL 600, and other military operations requiring special handling.

NOTE–
Departure clearance procedures and phraseology for military operations within approved altitude reservations, military operations above FL 600, and other military operations requiring special handling are contained in separate procedures in this order or in a LOA, as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTRV CLEARANCE, Para 4–2–7.
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600, Para 9–3–11.

4–3–4. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES

Assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, or release times when necessary to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OVERDUE AIRCRAFT, Para 10–3–1.
FAAO 7110.65, TRAFFIC RESTRICTIONS, Para 10–4–1.
FAAO 7110.65, TRAFFIC RESUMPTION, Para 10–4–3.

a. Clearance Void Times.

1. When issuing clearance void times at airports not served by control towers, provide alternative instructions requiring the pilots to advise ATC of their intentions no later than 30 minutes after the clearance void time if not airborne.

2. The facility delivering a clearance void time to a pilot shall issue a time check.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARANCE VOID IF NOT OFF BY (clearance void time),

and if required,

IF NOT OFF BY (clearance void time), ADVISE (facility) NOT LATER THAN (time) OF INTENTIONS.

TIME (time in hours, minutes, and the nearest quarter minute).

b. Hold For Release (HFR).

1. "Hold for release" instructions shall be used when necessary to inform a pilot or a controller that a departure clearance is not valid until additional instructions are received.

REFERENCE–
P/CG TERM–HOLD FOR RELEASE.

2. When issuing hold for release instructions, include departure delay information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft identification) CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED, MAINTAIN (altitude),

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

HOLD FOR RELEASE, EXPECT (time in hours and/or minutes) DEPARTURE DELAY.

3. When conditions allow, release the aircraft as soon as possible.

PHRASEOLOGY–
To another controller,

(aircraft identification) RELEASED.

To a flight service specialist,

ADVISE (aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE.

To a pilot at an airport not served by a control tower,

(aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE.

c. Release Times.

1. Release times shall be issued to pilots when necessary to specify the earliest time an aircraft may depart.

NOTE–
A release time is a departure restriction issued to a pilot (either directly or through authorized relay) to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.

2. The facility issuing a release time to a pilot shall include a time check.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE AT (time in hours and/or minutes),

and if required,

IF NOT OFF BY (time), ADVISE (facility) NOT LATER THAN (time) OF INTENTIONS.

TIME (time in hours, minutes, and nearest quarter minute).

d. When controlled departure time (CDT) procedures are in effect, the departure terminal shall, to the extent possible, plan ground movement of aircraft destined to the affected airport(s) so that flights are sequenced to depart as near as possible to the assigned EDCT, but no earlier than 5 minutes prior to the EDCT or 15 minutes after the assigned EDCT. If the aircraft is unable to meet these parameters, contact the overlying TMU for a revised EDCT.

4-3-5. DELAY SEQUENCING

When aircraft elect to take delay on the ground before departure, issue departure clearances to them in the order in which the requests for clearance were originally made if practicable.

4-3-6. FORWARD DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION

Inform approach control facilities and/or towers of anticipated departure delays.

4-3-7. COORDINATION WITH RECEIVING FACILITY

a. Coordinate with the receiving facility before the departure of an aircraft if the departure point is less than 15 minutes flying time from the transferring facility's boundary unless an automatic transfer of data between automated systems will occur, in which case, the flying time requirement may be reduced to 5 minutes or replaced with a mileage from the boundary parameter when mutually agreeable to both facilities.

NOTE-
Agreements requiring additional time are encouraged between facilities that need earlier coordination. However, when agreements establish mandatory radar handoff procedures, coordination needs only be effected in a timely manner prior to transfer of control.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SECTION 4. TRANSFER OF RADAR IDENTIFICATION, APPLICATION, Para 5-4-1.

b. The actual departure time or a subsequent strip posting time shall be forwarded to the receiving facility unless assumed departure times are agreed upon and that time is within 3 minutes of the actual departure time.

4-3-8. VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE

When an aircraft which has filed an IFR flight plan requests a VFR departure through a terminal facility, FSS, or air/ground communications station:

a. After obtaining, if necessary, approval from the facility/sector responsible for issuing the IFR clearance, you may authorize an IFR flight planned aircraft to depart VFR. Inform the pilot of the proper frequency and, if appropriate, where or when to contact the facility responsible for issuing the clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY-
VFR DEPARTURE AUTHORIZED. CONTACT (facility) ON (frequency) AT (location or time if required) FOR CLEARANCE.

b. If the facility/sector responsible for issuing the clearance is unable to issue a clearance, inform the pilot, and suggest that the delay be taken on the ground. If the pilot insists upon taking off VFR and obtaining an IFR clearance in the air, inform the facility/sector holding the flight plan of the pilot's intentions and, if possible, the VFR departure time.

4-3-9. FORWARDING DEPARTURE TIMES

TERMINAL

Unless alternate procedures are prescribed in a letter of agreement or automatic departure messages are being transmitted between automated facilities, forward departure times to the facility from which you received the clearance and also to the terminal departure controller when that position is involved in the departure sequence.

NOTE-
1 *Letters of agreement prescribing assumed departure times or mandatory radar handoff procedures are alternatives for providing equivalent procedures.*

2 *The letters "DM" flashing in field 4 of the full data block signify unsuccessful transmission of an automatic departure message.*

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, AUTOMATIC ACQUISITION/TERMINATION AREAS, Para 12-2-6.

Section 4. ROUTE ASSIGNMENT

4-4-1. ROUTE USE

Clear aircraft via routes consistent with the altitude stratum in which the operation is to be conducted by one or more of the following :

NOTE-
Except for certain NAVAID's/routes used by scheduled air carriers or authorized for specific uses in the control of IFR aircraft, airways, routes, and NAVAID's established for use at specified altitudes are shown on U.S. government charts or DOD FLIP charts.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, NAVAID TERMS, Para 2-5-2.
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 4-1-2.
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES, Para 4-5-6.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5-6-1.

a. Designated airways and routes.

PHRASEOLOGY-
VIA:

VICTOR (color) (airway number)(the word Romeo when RNAV),

or

J (route number) (the word Romeo when RNAV),

or

SUBSTITUTE (airway or jet route) FROM (fix) to (fix),

or

IR (route number).

CROSS/JOIN VICTOR/(color) (airway number), (number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (fix).

b. Radials, courses, azimuths, or direct to or from NAVAID's.

PHRASEOLOGY-
DIRECT.

VIA;

(name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL/COURSE/AZIMUTH,

or

(fix) AND (fix),

or

RADIALS OF (airway or route) AND (airway or route).

c. DME arcs of VORTAC, MLS, or TACAN aids.

d. Radials, courses, azimuths, and headings of departure or arrival routes.

e. SID's/STAR's/FMSP's.

f. Vectors.

g. Fixes defined in terms of degree-distance from NAVAID's for special military operations.

h. Courses, azimuths, bearings, quadrants, or radials within a radius of a NAVAID.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED TO FLY (general direction from NAVAID) OF (NAVAID name and type) BETWEEN (specified) COURSES TO/BEARINGS FROM/RADIALS (NAVAID name when a NDB) WITHIN (number of miles) MILE RADIUS,

or

CLEARED TO FLY (specified) QUADRANT OF (NAVAID name and type) WITHIN (number of miles) MILE RADIUS.

or

CLEARED TO FLY (general direction from MLS) OF (name or MLS) BETWEEN (specified) AZIMUTHS WITHIN/BETWEEN-(number of miles) MILE RADIUS.

EXAMPLE-
1 *"Cleared to fly east of Allentown VORTAC between the zero four five and the one three five radials within four zero mile radius."*

2 *"Cleared to fly east of Crystal Lake radio beacon between the two two five and the three one five courses to Crystal Lake within three zero mile radius."*

3 *"Cleared to fly northeast quadrant of Philipsburg VORTAC within four zero mile radius."*
"Cleared to fly east of the Montgomery M-L-S runway two eight left between the two seven zero and the two four zero azimuth within a 5 mile radius."

i. Fixes/waypoints defined in terms of:

1. Published name

or

2. Degree-distance from NAVAID's

or

3. Latitude/longitude coordinates

or

4. Offset from published or established routes/airways at a specified distance and direction for random (impromptu) RNAV Routes.

PHRASEOLOGY-
DIRECT (fix/waypoint)

DIRECT TO THE (facility) (radial) (distance) FIX.

OFFSET(distance) RIGHT/LEFT OF (route).

EXAMPLE-
"Direct SUNOL."
"Direct to the Appleton three one zero radial two five mile fix."
"Offset eight miles right of Victor six."

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX, Para 2-3-7.
FAAO 7110.65, NAVAID FIXES, Para 2-5-3.
FAAO 7110.65, SECTION 5. RADAR SEPARATION, APPLICATION, Para 5-5-1.

4-4-2. ROUTE STRUCTURE TRANSITIONS

To effect transition within or between route structure, clear an aircraft by one or more of the following methods, based on VOR, VORTAC, TACAN, or MLS NAVAID's (unless use of other NAVAID's are essential to aircraft operation or ATC efficiency):

a. Vector aircraft to or from radials, courses, or azimuths of the airway or route assigned.

b. Assign a SID/STAR/FMSP.

c. Clear departing or arriving aircraft to climb or descend via radials, courses, or azimuths of the airway or jet route assigned.

d. Clear departing or arriving aircraft directly to or between the NAVAID's forming the airway or route assigned.

e. Clear aircraft to climb or descend via the airway or route on which flight will be conducted.

f. Clear aircraft to climb or descend on specified radials, courses, or azimuths of NAVAID's.

g. Provide radar monitor when transition to or from a designated or established RNAV route is made along random RNAV routes.

h. Clear RNAV aircraft transitioning to or between designated or established RNAV routes direct to a named waypoint on the new route.

4-4-3. DEGREE-DISTANCE ROUTE DEFINITION FOR MILITARY OPERATIONS

EN ROUTE

a. Do not accept a military flight plan whose route or route segments do not coincide with designated airways or jet routes or with a direct course between NAVAID's unless it is authorized in subpara b. and meets the following degree-distance route definition and procedural requirements:

1. The route or route segments shall be defined in the flight plan by degree-distance fixes composed of:

(a) A location identifier;

(b) Azimuth in degrees magnetic; and

(c) Distance in miles from the NAVAID used.

EXAMPLE-
"MKE 030025."

2. The NAVAID's selected to define the degree-distance fixes shall be those authorized for use at the altitude being flown and at a distance within the published service volume area.

3. The distance between the fixes used to define the route shall not exceed:

(a) Below FL 80- 80 miles;

(b) FL 180 and above- 260 miles; and

(c) For celestial navigation routes, all altitudes- 260 miles.

4. Degree-distance fixes used to define a route shall be considered compulsory reporting points except that an aircraft may be authorized by ATC to omit reports when traffic conditions permit.

5. Military aircraft using degree-distance route definition procedures shall conduct operations in accordance with the following:

(a) Unless prior coordination has been effected with the appropriate air traffic control facility, flight plan the departure and the arrival phases to conform with the routine flow of traffic when operating within 75 miles of the departure and the arrival airport. Use defined routes or airways or direct courses between NAVAID's or as otherwise required to conform to the normal flow of traffic.

(b) Flight plans must be filed at least 2 hours before the estimated time of departure.

b. The following special military operations are authorized to define routes, or portions of routes, by degree-distance fixes:

1. Airborne radar navigation, radar bomb scoring (RBS), and airborne missile programming conducted by the USAF, USN, and RAF.

2. Celestial navigation conducted by the USAF, USN, and RAF.

3. Target aircraft operating in conjunction with air defense interceptors, and air defense interceptors while en route to and from assigned airspace.

4. Missions conducted above FL 450.

5. USN fighter and attack aircraft operating in positive control airspace.

6. USN/USMC aircraft, TACAN equipped, operating within the Honolulu FIR/Hawaiian airways area.

7. USAF/USN/USMC aircraft flight planned to operate on MTR's.

8. USAF Air Mobility Command (AMC) aircraft operating on approved station-keeping equipment (SKE) routes in accordance with the conditions and limitations listed in FAA Exemption No. 4371 to CFR Part 91.177(a)(2) and CFR Part 91.179(b)(1).

4-4-4. ALTERNATIVE ROUTES

When any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status, clear aircraft other than /E, /F, or /G, via one of the following alternative routes:

a. A route depicted on current U.S. Government charts/publications. Use the word "substitute" immediately preceding the alternative route in issuing the clearance.

b. A route defined by specifying NAVAID radials, courses, or azimuths.

c. A route defined as direct to or between NAVAID's.

d. Vectors.

NOTE–
Inform area navigation aircraft that will proceed to the NAVAID location of the NAVAID outage.

4-4-5. CLASS G AIRSPACE

Include routes through Class G airspace only when requested by the pilot.

NOTE–
1 *Flight plans filed for random RNAV routes through Class G airspace are considered a request by the pilot.*

2 *Flight plans containing MTR segments in/through class G airspace are considered a request by the pilot.*

Section 5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT AND VERIFICATION

4-5-1. VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA

Separate instrument flight rules (IFR) aircraft using the following minima between altitudes:

a. Up to and including FL 290- 1,000 feet.

b. Above FL 290- 2,000 feet, except:

1. In oceanic airspace, above FL 450 between a supersonic and any other aircraft- 4,000 feet.

2. Above FL 600 between military aircraft- 5,000 feet.

3. In airspace designated for reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM) or RVSM transition- 1,000 feet between approved aircraft.

NOTE-
Oceanic separation procedures are supplemented in Chapter 8; Section 7, Section 8, Section 9, and Section 10.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VERTICAL APPLICATION, Para 5-5-4.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 6-6-1.
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600, Para 9-3-11.

4-5-2. FLIGHT DIRECTION

Clear aircraft at altitudes according to the TBL 4-5-1.

Altitude Assignment

Aircraft Operating	*On course degrees magnetic*	*Assign*	*Examples*
Below 3,000 feet above surface	Any course	Any altitude	
Below FL 290	0 through 179	Odd cardinal altitude or flight levels at intervals of 2,000 feet	3,000 5,000, FL 250, FL 270
	180 through 359	Even cardinal altitude or flight levels at intervals of 2,000 feet	4,000, 6000, FL 240, FL 260
At or above FL 290	0 through 179	Odd cardinal flight levels at intervals of 4,000 feet beginning with FL 290	FL 290, FL 330, FL 370
	180 through 359	Odd cardinal flight levels at intervals of 4,000 feet beginning with FL 310	FL 310, FL 350, FL 390
One way routes (except in composite systems)	Any course	Any cardinal altitude or flight level below FL 290 or any odd cardinal flight level at or above FL 290	FL 270, FL 280, FL 310, FL 330
Within an ALTRV	Any course	Any altitude or flight level	
In transition to/ from or within Oceanic airspace where composite separation is authorized	Any course	Any odd or even cardinal flight level including those above FL 290	FL 280, FL 290, FL 300, FL 310, FL 320, FL 330, FL 340
In aerial refueling tracks and anchors	Any course	Altitude blocks as requested. Any altitude or flight level	050B080, FL 1 80B220, FL 280B310
At or above FL 290 within RVSM or RVSM transition airspace	Any course	Any cardinal flight level	FL 290, FL 300, FL 310, FL 320

TBL 4-5-1

NOTE-
Oceanic separation procedures are supplemented in Chapter 8; Section 7, Section 8, Section 9, and Section 10.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 4-5-3.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 7-7-5.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION MINIMA, Para 9-4-2.

4-5-3. EXCEPTIONS

When traffic, meteorological conditions, or aircraft operational limitations prevent assignment of altitudes prescribed in para 4-5-2, FLIGHT DIRECTION, assign any cardinal altitude or flight level below FL 290 or any odd cardinal flight level at or above FL 290 without regard to direction of flight as follows:

NOTE-
See para 2-3-9, CONTROL SYMBOLOGY, for control abbreviations and symbols to be used in conjunction with this paragraph.

a. For traffic conditions, take this action only if one of the following conditions exists:

1. Aircraft remain within a facility's area and prior approval is obtained from other affected positions or sectors or the operations are covered in a Facility Directive.

2. Aircraft will proceed beyond the facility's area and specific operations and procedures permitting random altitude assignment are covered in a letter of agreement between the appropriate facilities.

NOTE-
Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a letter of agreement between the appropriate facilities.

b. Military aircraft are operating on random routes and prior approval is obtained from the facility concerned.

c. For meteorological conditions, take this action only if you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and, if necessary, from the adjacent facility concerned.

d. For aircraft operational limitations, take this action only if the pilot informs you the available appropriate altitude exceeds the operational limitations of his aircraft and only after you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and, if necessary, from the adjacent facility concerned.

e. For mission requirements, take this action only when the aircraft is operating on an MTR.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 7-7-5.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION MINIMA, Para 9-4-2.

4-5-4. LOWEST USABLE FLIGHT LEVEL

If a change in atmospheric pressure affects a usable flight level in your area of jurisdiction, use TBL 4-5-2 to determine the lowest usable flight level to clear aircraft at or above 18,000 feet MSL.

Lowest Usable FL

Altimeter Setting	*Lowest Usable FL*
29.92" or higher	180
29.91" to 28.92"	190
28.91" to 27.92"	200

TBL 4-5-2

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION MINIMA, Para 9-4-2.

4-5-5. ADJUSTED MINIMUM FLIGHT LEVEL

When the prescribed minimum altitude for IFR operations is at or above 18,000 feet MSL and the atmospheric pressure is less than 29.92", add the appropriate adjustment factor from TBL 4-5-3 to the flight level equivalent of the minimum altitude in feet to determine the adjusted minimum flight level.

Minimum FL Adjustment

Altimeter Setting	*Adjustment Factor*
29.92" or higher	None
29.91" to 29.42"	500 feet
29.41" to 28.92"	1,000 feet
28.91" to 28.42"	1,500 feet
28.41" to 27.92"	2,000 feet

TBL 4-5-3

4-5-6. MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES

Except as provided in subparas a. and b. below, assign altitudes at or above the MEA for the route segment being flown. When a lower MEA for subsequent segments of the route is applicable, issue the lower MEA only after the aircraft is over or past the Fix/NAVAID beyond which the lower MEA applies unless a crossing restriction at or above the higher MEA is issued.

a. An aircraft may be cleared below the MEA but not below the MOCA for the route segment being flown if the altitude assigned is at least 300 feet above the floor of controlled airspace and one of the following conditions are met:

NOTE-
Controllers must be aware that in the event of radio com-

munications failure, a pilot will climb to the MEA for the route segment being flown.

1. Nonradar procedures are used only within 22 miles of a VOR, VORTAC, or TACAN.

2. Radar procedures are used only when an operational advantage is realized and the following actions are taken:

(a) Radar navigational guidance is provided until the aircraft is within 22 miles of the NAVAID, and

(b) Lost communications instructions are issued.

b. An aircraft may be cleared to operate on jet routes below the MEA (but not below the prescribed minimum altitude for IFR operations) or above the maximum authorized altitude if, in either case, radar service is provided.

NOTE–
Minimum en route and maximum authorized altitudes for certain jet route segments have been established above the floor of the jet route structure due to limitations on navigational signal coverage.

c. Where a higher altitude is required because of an MEA, the aircraft shall be cleared to begin climb to the higher MEA as follows:

1. If no MCA is specified, prior to or immediately after passing the fix where the higher MEA is designated. (See FIG 4–5–1.)

No MCA Specified

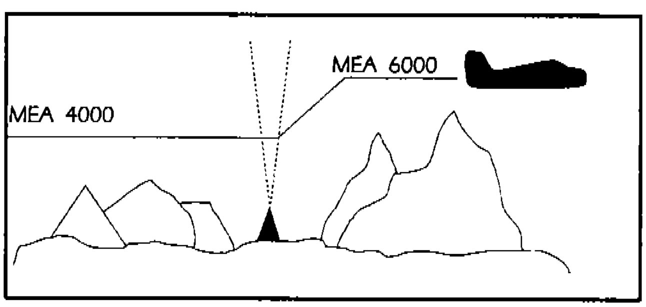


FIG 4–5–1

2. If a MCA is specified, prior to the fix so as to cross the fix at or above the MCA. (See FIG 4–5–2.)

MCA Specified

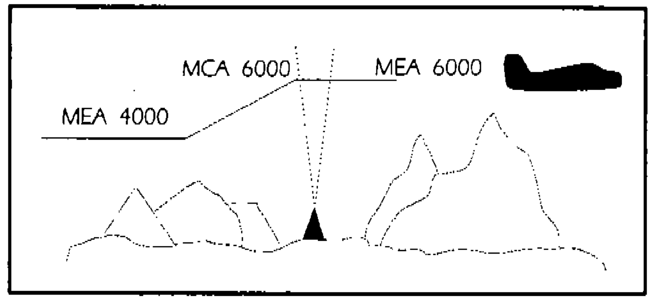


FIG 4–5–2

d. Where MEA's have not been established, clear an aircraft at or above the minimum altitude for IFR operations prescribed by CFR Part 91.177.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS, Para 4–2–8.
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE USE, Para 4–4–1.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5–6–1.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 7–7–5.

4–5–7. ALTITUDE INFORMATION

Issue altitude instructions as follows:

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CLEARANCE ITEMS, Para 4–2–1.

a. Altitude to maintain or cruise. When issuing cruise in conjunction with an airport clearance limit and an unpublished route will be used, issue an appropriate crossing altitude to ensure terrain clearance until the aircraft reaches a fix, point, or route where the altitude information is available to the pilot. When issuing a cruise clearance to an airport which does not have a published instrument approach, a cruise clearance without a crossing restriction may be issued.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAINTAIN/CRUISE (altitude). MAINTAIN (altitude) UNTIL (time),

or

PAST (fix),

or

(number of miles or minutes) MILES/MINUTES PAST (FIX).

CROSS (fix, point),

or

INTERCEPT (route) AT OR ABOVE (altitude), CRUISE (altitude).

NOTE–
[1] The crossing altitude must assure IFR obstruction clearance to the point where the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

[2] When an aircraft is issued a cruise clearance to an airport which does not have a published instrument approach procedure, it is not possible to satisfy the requirement for a crossing altitude that will ensure terrain clearance until the aircraft reaches a fix, point, or route where altitude information is available to the pilot. Under those conditions, a cruise clearance without a crossing restriction authorizes a pilot to determine the minimum IFR altitude as prescribed in CFR Part 91.177 and descend to it at pilot discretion if it is lower than the altitude specified in the cruise clearance.

b. Instructions to climb or descend including restrictions, as required. Specify a time restriction reference the UTC clock reading with a time check. If you are relaying through an authorized communications provider, such as ARINC, FSS, etc., advise the radio operator to issue the current time to the aircraft when the clearance is relayed.

EXAMPLE–
[1] "United Four Seventeen, climb to reach one three thousand at two two one five."
"Time two two one one and one–quarter."
The pilot is expected to be level at 13,000 feet at 2215 UTC.
[2] Through Relay–*"Speedbird Five, climb to reach flight level three–five zero at one–two–one–five, time" (Issue a time check).*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, WORD MEANINGS, Para 1–2–1
FAAO 7110.65, NUMBERS USAGE, Para 2–4–17.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

If required,

AFTER PASSING (fix),

or

AT (time) (time in hours, minutes, and nearest quarter minute).

CLIMB DESCEND TO REACH (altitude)
AT (time (issue time check) or fix),

or

AT (time). CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude) WHEN ESTABLISHED AT LEAST (number of miles or minutes) MILES/MINUTES PAST (fix) ON THE (NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.
CLIMB/DESCEND TO REACH (altitude) AT (time or fix),

or

A POINT (number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (name of DME NAVAID).

Through relay:

CLIMB TO REACH (altitude) AT (time) (issue a time check).

c. Specified altitude over a specified fix.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CROSS (fix) AT (altitude).
CROSS (fix) AT OR ABOVE/BELOW (altitude).

d. A specified altitude over a specified fix for that portion of a descent clearance where descent at pilot's discretion is permissible. At any other time it is practicable, authorize climb/descent at pilot's discretion.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB/DESCEND AT PILOT'S DISCRETION.

EXAMPLE–
"United Four Seventeen, descend and maintain six thousand."

NOTE–
The pilot is expected to commence descent upon receipt of the clearance and to descend at the suggested rates specified in the AIM, para 4–4–9, ADHERENCE TO CLEARANCE, until reaching the assigned altitude of 6,000 feet.

EXAMPLE–
"United Four Seventeen, descend at pilot's discretion, maintain six thousand."

NOTE–
The pilot is authorized to conduct descent within the context of the term "at pilot's discretion" as described in the AIM.

EXAMPLE–
"United Four Seventeen cross Lakeview V–O–R at or above flight level two zero zero, descend and maintain six thousand."

NOTE–
The pilot is authorized to conduct descent "at pilot's discretion" until reaching Lakeview VOR. The pilot must comply with the clearance provision to cross the Lakeview VOR at or above FL 200, and after passing Lakeview VOR, the pilot is expected to descend at the rates specified in the AIM until reaching the assigned altitude of 6,000 feet.

EXAMPLE–
"United Four Seventeen, cross Lakeview V–O–R at and maintain six thousand."

NOTE–
The pilot is authorized to conduct descent "at pilot's discretion," but must comply with the clearance provision to cross Lakeview VOR at 6,000 feet.

EXAMPLE–
"United Four Seventeen, descend now to flight level two seven zero, cross Lakeview V–O–R at or below one zero thousand, descend and maintain six thousand."

NOTE–
The pilot is expected to promptly execute and complete descent to FL 270 upon receipt of the clearance. After reaching FL 270, the pilot is authorized to descend "at pilot's discretion" until reaching Lakeview VOR. The pilot must comply with the clearance provision to cross Lakeview VOR at or below 10,000 feet. After Lakeview VOR, the pilot is expected to descend at the rates specified in the AIM until reaching 6,000 feet.

NOTE–
1 A descent clearance which specifies a crossing altitude authorizes descent at pilot's discretion for that portion of the flight to which the crossing altitude restriction applies.

2 Any other time that authorization to descend at pilot's discretion is intended, it must be specifically stated by the controller.

3 The pilot may need to know of any future restrictions that might affect the descent, including those that may be issued in another sector, in order to properly plan a descent at pilot's discretion.

4 Controllers need to be aware that the descent rates in the AIM are only suggested and aircraft will not always descend at those rates.

REFERENCE–
P/CG TERM–PILOT'S DISCRETION.

e. When a portion of a climb/descent may be authorized at the pilot's discretion, specify the altitude the aircraft must climb/descend to followed by the altitude to maintain at the pilot's discretion.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB/DESCEND NOW TO (altitude), THEN CLIMB/DESCEND AT PILOT'S DISCRETION MAINTAIN (altitude).

EXAMPLE–
"United Three Ten, descend now to flight level two eight zero, then descend at pilot's discretion maintain flight level two four zero.".

NOTE–
1 The pilot is expected to commence descent upon receipt of the clearance and to descend at the suggested rates specified in the AIM, para 4–4–9, ADHERENCE TO CLEARANCE, until reaching FL 280. At that point, the pilot is authorized to continue descent to FL 240 within the context of the term "at pilot's discretion" as described in the AIM.

2 Controllers need to be aware that the descent rates in the AIM are only suggested and aircraft will not always descend at those rates.

f. When the "pilot's discretion" portion of a climb/descent clearance is being canceled by assigning a new altitude, inform the pilot that the new altitude is an "amended altitude."

EXAMPLE–
"American Eighty Three, amend altitude, descend and maintain Flight Level two six zero."

NOTE–
American Eighty Three, at FL 280, has been cleared to descend at pilot's discretion to FL 240. Subsequently, the altitude assignment is changed to FL 260. Therefore, pilot's discretion is no longer authorized.

g. Altitude assignments involving more than one altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAINTAIN BLOCK (altitude) THROUGH (altitude).

h. Instructions to vertically navigate on a STAR/FMPS with published restrictions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DESCEND VIA (STAR/FMSP name and number).

EXAMPLE–
"Descend via the Mudde One Arrival"
"Cross JCT at flight level two four zero."
" Descend via the Coast Two Arrival."

NOTE–
*Clearance to "descend via" authorizes a pilot's discretion descent to comply with published altitude and/or speed crossing restrictions. **"Expect"** altitudes/speeds are not considered STAR/FMSP crossing restrictions until verbally issued by ATC. Their use by pilots is for planning purposes or lost communication procedures.*

1. If it is necessary to assign a crossing altitude which differs from the STAR/FMSP altitude, emphasize the change to the pilot.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DESCEND VIA THE (STAR/FMSP) ARRIVAL EXCEPT (revised altitude information).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65 CLEARANCE INFORMATION, Para 4–7–1.
AIM, STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL (STAR), FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM PROCEDURES (FMSP) FOR ARRIVALS, Para 5–4–1.

i. When a pilot is unable to accept a clearance, issue revised instructions to ensure positive control and standard separation.

NOTE–
1 CFR Part 91.123 states that a pilot is not allowed to deviate from an ATC clearance "that has been obtained...unless an amended clearance is obtained" (except when an emergency exists).

2 A pilot is therefore expected to advise the controller if a clearance cannot be accepted when the clearance is issued. "We will try" and other such acknowledgements do not constitute pilot acceptance of an ATC clearance.

3 Controllers are expected to issue ATC clearances which conform with normal operational capabilities for each aircraft and do not require "last minute" amendments to ensure standard separation.

4 "Expedite" is not to be used in lieu of appropriate restrictions to ensure separation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PROVIDING ASSISTANCE, Para 10–1–3.

4–5–8. ANTICIPATED ALTITUDE CHANGES

If practicable, inform an aircraft when to expect climb or descent clearance or to request altitude change from another facility.

PHRASEOLOGY–
EXPECT HIGHER/LOWER ALTITUDE IN (number of miles or minutes) MILES/MINUTES,

or

AT (fix). REQUEST ALTITUDE CHANGE FROM (name of facility).

If required,

AT (time, fix, or altitude).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA, Para 2–2–6.

4–5–9. ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION– NONRADAR

a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact and when position reports are received unless:

NOTE–
For the purpose of this paragraph, "initial contact" means a pilot's first radio contact with each sector/position.

1. The pilot states the assigned altitude, or

2. You assign a new altitude to a climbing or descending aircraft, or

3. *TERMINAL:* The aircraft was transferred to you from another sector/position within your facility (intrafacility).

PHRASEOLOGY–
(In level flight situations),

VERIFY AT (altitude).

(In climbing/descending situations),

VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE (altitude).

b. *USA:* Reconfirm all pilot altitude read backs.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(If altitude read back is correct),
AFFIRMATIVE (altitude).

(If altitude read back is not correct),
NEGATIVE. CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

NEGATIVE. MAINTAIN (altitude).

Section 6. HOLDING AIRCRAFT

4-6-1. CLEARANCE TO HOLDING FIX

Consider operational factors such as length of delay, holding airspace limitations, navigational aids, altitude, meteorological conditions when necessary to clear an aircraft to a fix other than the destination airport. Issue the following:

a. Clearance limit (if any part of the route beyond a clearance limit differs from the last routing cleared, issue the route the pilot can expect beyond the clearance limit).

PHRASEOLOGY-
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE VIA (routing).

EXAMPLE-
"Expect further clearance via direct Stillwater V-O-R, Victor Two Twenty-Six Snapy intersection, direct Newark."

b. Holding instructions.

1. Holding instructions may be eliminated when you inform the pilot that no delay is expected.

2. When the pattern is charted, you may omit all holding instructions except the charted holding direction and the statement "as published." Always issue complete holding instructions when the pilot requests them.

NOTE-
The most generally used holding patterns are depicted on U.S. Government or commercially produced low / high altitude en route, area, and STAR Charts.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED TO (fix), HOLD (direction), AS PUBLISHED,

or

CLEARED TO (fix), NO DELAY EXPECTED.

c. EFC. Do not specify this item if no delay is expected.

1. When additional holding is expected at any other fix in your facility's area, state the fix and your best estimate of the additional delay. When more than one fix is involved, state the total additional en route delay (omit specific fixes).

NOTE-
Additional delay information is not used to determine pilot action in the event of two-way communications failure. Pilots are expected to predicate their actions solely on the provisions of CFR Part 91.185.

PHRASEOLOGY-
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (time),

and if required,

ANTICIPATE ADDITIONAL (time in minutes / hours) MINUTE / HOUR DELAY AT (fix),

or

ANTICIPATE ADDITIONAL (time in minutes / hours) MINUTE / HOUR EN ROUTE DELAY.

EXAMPLE-
1 *"Expect further clearance one niner two zero, anticipate additional three zero minute delay at Sweet."*

2 *"Expect further clearance one five one zero, anticipate additional three zero minute en route delay."*

2. When additional holding is expected in an approach control area, state the total additional terminal delay.

PHRASEOLOGY-
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (time),

and if required,

ANTICIPATE ADDITIONAL (time in minutes / hours) MINUTE / HOUR TERMINAL DELAY.

3. *TERMINAL:* When terminal delays exist or are expected, inform the appropriate center or approach control facility so that the information can be forwarded to arrival aircraft.

4. When delay is expected, issue items in subparas a. and b. at least 5 minutes before the aircraft is estimated to reach the clearance limit. If the traffic situation requires holding an aircraft that is less than 5 minutes from the holding fix, issue these items immediately.

NOTE-
1 *The AIM indicates that pilots should start speed reduction when 3 minutes or less from the holding fix. The additional 2 minutes contained in the 5-minute requirement are necessary to compensate for different pilot / controller ETAS at the holding fix, minor differences in clock times, and provision for sufficient planning and reaction times.*

2 *When holding is necessary, the phrase "delay indefinite" should be used when an accurate estimate of the delay time and the reason for the delay cannot immediately be determined; i.e., disabled aircraft on the runway, terminal or center sector saturation, weather below landing minimums, etc. In any event, every attempt should be*

made to provide the pilot with the best possible estimate of his delay time and the reason for the delay. Controllers / supervisors should consult, as appropriate, with personnel (other sectors, weather forecasters, the airport management, other facilities, etc.) who can best provide this information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DELAY INDEFINITE, (reason if known), EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (time). (After determining the reason for the delay, advise the pilot as soon as possible.)

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared to Drewe, hold west, as published, expect further clearance via direct Sidney V-O-R one three one five, anticipate additional two zero minute delay at Woody."

"Cleared to Aston, hold west on Victor two twenty-five, seven mile leg, left turns, expect further clearance one niner two zero, anticipate additional one five minute terminal delay."

"Cleared to Wayne, no delay expected."

"Cleared to Wally, hold north, as published, delay indefinite, snow removal in progress, expect further clearance one one three zero."

4-6-2. CLEARANCE BEYOND FIX

a. If no delay is expected, issue a clearance beyond the clearance limit as soon as possible and, whenever possible, at least 5 minutes before the aircraft reaches the fix.

b. Include the following items when issuing clearance beyond a clearance limit:

1. Clearance limit or approach clearance.

2. Route of flight. Specify one of the following:

(a) Complete details of the route (airway, route, course, fix(es), azimuth course, heading, arc, or vector.)

(b) The phrase "via last routing cleared." Use this phrase only when the most recently issued routing to the new clearance limit is valid and verbiage will be reduced.

PHRASEOLOGY–
VIA LAST ROUTING CLEARED.

3. Assigned altitude if different from present altitude.

NOTE–
Except in the event of a two-way communications failure, when a clearance beyond a fix has not been received, pilots are expected to hold as depicted on U.S. Government or commercially produced (meeting FAA requirements) low/high altitude en route and area or STAR charts. If no holding pattern is charted and holding instructions have not been issued, pilots should ask ATC for holding instructions prior to reaching the fix. If a pilot is unable to obtain holding instructions prior to reaching the fix, the pilot is expected to hold in a standard pattern on the course on which the aircraft approached the fix and request further clearance as soon as possible.

4-6-3. DELAYS

a. Advise your supervisor or flow controller as soon as possible when you delay or expect to delay aircraft.

b. When arrival delays reach or are anticipated to reach 30 minutes, take the following action:

1. *EN ROUTE:* The center responsible for transferring control to an approach control facility or, for a non-approach control destination, the center in whose area the aircraft will land shall issue total delay information as soon as possible after the aircraft enters the center's area. Whenever possible, the delay information shall be issued by the first center controller to communicate with the aircraft.

2. *TERMINAL:* When tower en route control service is being provided, the approach control facility whose area contains the destination airport shall issue total delay information as soon as possible after the aircraft enters its approach control area. Whenever possible, the delay information shall be issued by the first terminal controller to communicate with the aircraft.

3. Unless a pilot requests delay information, the actions specified in 1 and 2 above may be omitted when total delay information is available to pilots via ATIS.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Airport) ARRIVAL DELAYS (time in minutes/hours).

4-6-4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS

When issuing holding instructions, specify:

a. Direction of holding from the fix.

b. Holding fix.

NOTE–
The holding fix may be omitted if included at the beginning of the transmission as the clearance limit.

c. Radial, course, bearing, azimuth, airway, or route on which the aircraft is to hold.

d. Leg length in miles if DME or RNAV is to be used. Specify leg length in minutes if the pilot requests it or you consider it necessary.

e. Direction of holding pattern turns only if left turns are to be made, the pilot requests it, or you consider it necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD (direction) OF (fix) ON (specified radial, course, bearing, airway, azimuth(s), or route.)

If leg length is specified,

(number of minutes/miles) MINUTE/MILE LEG.

If direction of turn is specified,

LEFT/RIGHT TURNS.

NOTE–
It is mandatory for the controller to issue left or right turns every time a holding pattern is issued for MLS.

f. Issue maximum holding airspeed advisories when an aircraft is:

1. Approved to exceed the maximum airspeed of a pattern, and is cleared into a holding pattern that will protect for the greater speed; or

2. Observed deviating from the holding pattern airspace area; or

3. Cleared into a 210 KIAS pattern whose icon has not been published.

EXAMPLE–
Due to turbulence, a turboprop requests to exceed the recommended maximum holding airspeed. ATCS may clear the aircraft into a pattern that protects for the airspeed request, and shall advise the pilot of the maximum holding airspeed for the holding pattern airspace area.

PHRASEOLOGY–
"MAXIMUM HOLDING AIRSPEED IS TWO ONE ZERO KNOTS."

4-6-5. VISUAL HOLDING POINTS

You may use as a holding fix a location which the pilot can determine by visual reference to the surface if he is familiar with it.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD AT (location) UNTIL (time or other condition.)

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT, Para 7-1-4.

4-6-6. HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION

Approve a pilot's request to deviate from the prescribed holding flight path if obstacles and traffic conditions permit.

4-6-7. UNMONITORED NAVAID'S

Separate an aircraft holding at an unmonitored NAVAID from any other aircraft occupying the course which the holding aircraft will follow if it does not receive signals from the NAVAID.

4-6-8. ILS PROTECTION/CRITICAL AREAS

When conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet and/or visibility of 2 miles, do not authorize aircraft to hold below 5,000 feet AGL inbound toward the airport on or within 1 statute mile of the localizer between the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM and the airport. *USAF:* The holding restriction applies only when an arriving aircraft is between the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM and the runway.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7130.3, HOLDING PATTERN CRITERIA, Para 54 and FIG 20.

Section 7. ARRIVAL PROCEDURES

4-7-1. CLEARANCE INFORMATION

Clear an arriving aircraft to a clearance limit by specifying the following:

a. Name of fix or airport.

b. Route of flight including a STAR/FMSP and STAR/FMSP Transition, if appropriate. Assign a STAR and STAR Transition to any civil aircraft in lieu of other routes; e.g., airways or Preferential Arrival Routes when the routings are the same. Assign a FMSP or FMSP Transition to any appropriately equipped aircraft. The clearance shall include the name, the current number, and the transition, if necessary, of the STAR or FMSP to be flown. Assign a STAR or FMSP to military aircraft only when a STAR or FMSP is filed or requested by the pilot.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(STAR/FMPS name and number) ARRIVAL.
(STAR/FMPS name and number) ARRIVAL,
(transition name) TRANSITION.

EXAMPLE–
"Rosewood One arrival."
"Rosewood One arrival, Delta transition."

NOTE–
If a civil pilot does not wish to use a STAR or FMSP issued in an ATC clearance or any other STAR or FMSP published for that location, the pilot is expected to advise ATC.

c. Altitude instructions, as follows:

1. Assigned altitude if needed
or

2. Instructions to vertically navigate on the STAR/FMSP or STAR/FMSP transition.

EXAMPLE–
"Bayview Three RNAV Arrival, Helen Transition, maintain Flight Level Three Three Zero."
"Descend via the Civit One Arrival."
"Cross JCT at Flight Level Two Four Zero."
"Descend via the Coast Two Arrival."
"CIVET One Arrival, Descend and Maintain Flight Level Two Four Zero."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE INFORMATION, Para 4-5-7.
AIM, STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL (STAR), FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM PROCEDURES (FMSP) FOR ARRIVALS, Para 5-4-1.

d. Issue holding instructions, EFC, and additional delay information as required.

e. Instructions regarding further communications as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER, Para 2-1-17.

4-7-2. ADVANCE DESCENT CLEARANCE

EN ROUTE

Take the following action when exercising control of aircraft landing at an airport located in an adjacent center's control area near the common boundary:

a. Coordinate with the receiving facility for a lower altitude and issue a clearance to the aircraft as appropriate.

b. Initiate this action at a distance sufficient from destination to allow for normal descent and speed reduction.

4-7-3. SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACHES (SFA)

TERMINAL

Where SFA procedures for military single-piloted turbojet aircraft on an IFR flight plan are contained in a letter of agreement, do not require a radio frequency change after the aircraft begins approach or after initial contact during an en route descent until a landing or low approach has been completed except under the following conditions:

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7610.4, SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH (SFA), Para 9-36.
P/CG TERM–SINGLE-PILOTED AIRCRAFT.

a. During daylight hours while the aircraft is in VFR conditions.

b. On pilot request.

c. When pilot cancels IFR flight plan.

d. In an emergency situation.

e. When aircraft is cleared for visual approach.

4-7-4. RADIO FREQUENCY AND RADAR BEACON CHANGES FOR MILITARY AIRCRAFT

When military single-piloted turbojet aircraft will conduct an approach wholly or partly in IFR conditions or at night, take the following action:

NOTE–
It is known that the mental distraction and the inadvertent movement of aircraft controls resulting from the pilot's turning, reaching, or leaning to change frequencies can induce spatial disorientation (vertigo).

a. Avoid radio frequency and radar beacon changes to the maximum extent that communications capabilities and traffic will permit. However, when changes are required:

1. Give instructions early enough to allow the change before the aircraft reaches the approach fix or handoff point.

2. Keep frequency/radar beacon changes to a minimum below 2,500 feet above the surface.

3. Avoid requiring frequency/radar beacon changes during the time the aircraft is making a turn.

b. When traffic volume requires, a frequency other than the one used by aircraft making approaches may be assigned for use in transferring control to the approach control facility.

TERMINAL

c. If practicable, use a frequency common to both the GCA unit and approach control to minimize frequency changes.

d. When a GCA unit is not able to communicate on a common frequency, a change to a GCA frequency may be authorized.

e. When a nonradar approach will be made, aircraft may be instructed to change to tower frequency when:

1. The reported ceiling is at or above 1,500 feet and visibility is 5 statute miles or more.

2. The aircraft reports able to proceed by visual reference to the surface.

3. The aircraft request and is cleared for a contact approach.

4. The aircraft is cleared for a visual approach.

f. Avoid making frequency/radar beacon changes after an aircraft begins a high altitude approach.

g. In the event of a missed approach, do not require a frequency/radar beacon change before the aircraft reaches the missed approach altitude, the MEA, or the MVA.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 5–2–6.

4–7–5. MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT

Provide military turbojet aircraft the same arrival procedures that are provided for nonmilitary turbojet aircraft except:

NOTE–
It is the responsibility of the pilot to request a high altitude approach if he does not want normal arrival handling.

a. An en route descent may be used in a nonradar environment; however, radar capability should exist which will permit the aircraft to be vectored to the final approach course of a published high altitude instrument approach procedure or PAR/ASR approach. Do not use this procedure if other than normal vectoring delays are anticipated.

b. Prior to issuance of a descent clearance below the highest initial approach fix altitude established for any high altitude instrument approach procedure for the destination airport inform the aircraft:

1. Type of approach to expect.

EXAMPLE–
"Expect V–O–R approach to runway three two."

2. Radar vectors will be provided to the final approach course.

EXAMPLE–
"Expect surveillance/precision approach to runway one seven; radar vectors to final approach course."

3. Current weather whenever the ceiling is below 1,000 feet (**USAF:** 1,500 feet) or the highest circling minimum whichever is greater, or when the visibility is less than 3 miles.

EXAMPLE–
"Expect ILS/MLS approach to runway eight; radar vectors to localizer/azimuth course. Weather (reported weather)."

c. If ATIS is provided and the pilot advises he has received the current ATIS broadcast before the descent clearance in subpara b. is issued, omit those items in subpara b. that are contained in the broadcast.

d. To avoid requiring an aircraft to fly at low altitudes for an excessive distance, descent clearance should be issued at a point determined by adding 10 to the first two digits of the flight level.

EXAMPLE–
For FL 370, 37 + 10 = 47 MILES.

NOTE–
Turbojet en route descents are based on a rate of descent of 4,000 to 6,000 feet per minute.

e. Do not terminate the en route descent of an aircraft without the consent of the pilot except as required by radar outage or an emergency situation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT FOR MILITARY HIGH ALTITUDE INSTRUMENT APPROACHES, Para 4–8–4.

4-7-6. ADVANCE APPROACH INFORMATION

When an aircraft intends to land at an airport where approach control services are provided and two or more instrument approach procedures are published, the facility controlling the aircraft immediately before entry into the approach control area shall inform the aircraft of the type of approach to expect or that it will be vectored to the airport. Omit this information if ATIS is provided for the airport or if the visibility is 3 miles or better and the ceiling is at or above the highest initial approach altitude established for any low altitude instrument approach procedure for the airport.

PHRASEOLOGY–
EXPECT (type) APPROACH.

EXPECT VISUAL APPROACH.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 4-7-11.

4-7-7. ARRIVAL INFORMATION

EN ROUTE

a. Forward the following information to nonapproach control towers soon enough to permit adjustment of the traffic flow or to FSS's soon enough to provide local airport advisory where applicable:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type of aircraft.

3. ETA.

4. Type of instrument approach procedure the aircraft will execute; or

5. For SVFR, the direction from which the aircraft will enter Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area and any altitude restrictions that were issued; or

6. For aircraft executing a contact approach the position of the aircraft.

NOTE–
Specific time requirements are usually stated in a letter of agreement.

b. Forward the following information to approach control facilities before transfer of control jurisdiction:

NOTE–
Transfer points are usually specified in a letter of agreement.

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type of aircraft and appropriate aircraft equipment suffix.

3. ETA or actual time, and proposed or actual altitude over clearance limit. The ETA need not be given if the arrival information is being forwarded during a radar handoff.

4. Clearance limit (when other than the destination airport) and EFC issued to the aircraft. Clearance limit may be omitted when provided for in a letter of agreement.

5. Time, fix, or altitude when control responsibility is transferred to the approach control facility. This information may be omitted when provided for in a letter of agreement.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification), (type of aircraft), ESTIMATED/OVER (clearance limit), (time), (altitude), EFC (time).

If required,

YOUR CONTROL,

or

YOUR CONTROL AT (time, fix or altitude).

4-7-8. WEATHER INFORMATION

EN ROUTE

When an available official weather report indicates weather conditions are below a 1,000-foot (*USAF:* 1,500-foot) ceiling or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is higher, or less than three-miles visibility for the airport concerned, transmit the weather report and changes classified as special weather observations to an arriving aircraft prior to or as part of the approach clearance when:

a. It is transmitted directly to the pilot via center controller-to-pilot communications.

b. It is relayed through a communications station other than an air carrier company radio or through a nonapproach control facility. You may do this by telling the station or nonapproach control facility to issue current weather.

4-7-9. BELOW MINIMA REPORT BY PILOT

If an arriving aircraft reports weather conditions are below his landing minima:

NOTE–
Determination that existing weather/visibility is adequate for approach/landing is the responsibility of the pilot/aircraft operator.

a. Issue appropriate instructions to the aircraft to hold or proceed to another airport.

b. Adjust, as necessary, the position in the landing sequence of any other aircraft desiring to make approaches and issue approach clearances accordingly.

4–7–10. TRANSFER OF JURISDICTION

Transfer radio communications and control responsibility early enough to allow the receiving facility to clear an aircraft beyond the clearance limit before the aircraft reaches it.

4–7–11. APPROACH INFORMATION

a. Both en route and terminal approach control sectors shall provide current approach information to aircraft destined to airports for which they provide approach control services. This information shall be provided on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter. Approach information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code or items 3–5 below may be omitted for pilots destined to uncontrolled airports when they advise receipt of the automated weather; otherwise, issue approach information by including the following:

1. Approach clearance or type approach to be expected if two or more approaches are published and the clearance limit does not indicate which will be used.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ADVANCE APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 4–7–6.

2. Runway if different from that to which the instrument approach is made.

3. Surface wind.

4. Ceiling and visibility if the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is below 1,000 feet or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or the visibility is less than 3 miles.

5. Altimeter setting for the airport of intended landing.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CHAPTER 2, SECTION 7, ALTIMETER SETTINGS.

b. Upon pilot request, controllers shall inform pilots of the frequency where automated weather data may be obtained and, if appropriate, that airport weather is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Airport) AWOS/ASOS WEATHER AVAILABLE ON (frequency).

1. ASOS/AWOS shall be set to provide one minute weather at uncontrolled airports that are without ground–to–air weather broadcast capability by a CWO, NWS or FSS observer.

2. Controllers will consider the long–line disseminated weather from an automated weather system at an uncontrolled airport as trend information only and shall rely on the pilot for the current weather information for that airport.

3. Controllers shall issue the last long–line disseminated weather to the pilot if the pilot is unable to receive the ASOS/AWOS broadcast.

NOTE–
Aircraft destined to uncontrolled airports, which have automated weather data with broadcast capability, should monitor the ASOS/AWOS frequency to ascertain the current weather at the airport. The pilot should advise the controller when he/she has received the broadcast weather and state his/her intentions.

c. Issue any known changes classified as special weather observations as soon as possible. Special weather observations need not be issued after they are included in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

d. Advise pilots when the ILS/MLS on the runway in use is not operational if that ILS/MLS is on the same frequency as an operational ILS/MLS serving another runway.

EXAMPLE–
"Expect visual approach runway two five right, runway two five right I–L–S not operational."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL, Para 2–7–2.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 5–10–2.
CFR PART 91.129 OPERATIONS IN CLASS D AIRSPACE, SUBPARA (d)(2).

4–7–12. ARRIVAL INFORMATION BY APPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES

TERMINAL

a. Forward the following information to nonapproach control towers soon enough to permit adjustment of the traffic flow or to FSS's soon enough to provide local airport advisory where applicable:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type of aircraft.

3. ETA.

4. Type of instrument approach procedure the aircraft will execute; or

5. For SVFR, the direction from which the aircraft will enter Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area and any altitude restrictions that were issued; or

6. For aircraft executing a contact approach the position of the aircraft.

NOTE–
Specific time requirements are usually stated in a letter of agreement.

b. Forward the following information to the tower when the tower and TRACON are part of the same facility:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type aircraft if required for separation purposes.

3. Type of instrument approach procedure and/or runway if differing from that in use.

NOTE–
The local controller has the responsibility to determine whether or not conditions are adequate for the use of ARTS data on the BRITE/DBRITE where a facility directive authorizes its use for the transfer of arrival data.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, USE OF ARTS MODIFY AND QUICK LOOK FUNCTIONS, Para 12–2–4.

c. Where the collocated or satellite tower has ARTS data displayed on its BRITE/DBRITE, the ARTS modify or quick look functions may be used to forward arrival data provided that a facility directive at the collocated tower or a letter of agreement with the satellite tower exists which outlines procedures for using ARTS for transferring this data.

d. Forward the following information to centers:

1. Where two or more instrument approach procedures are published for the airport, the particular procedure which an aircraft can expect or that it will be vectored toward the airport for a visual approach.

2. Highest altitude being used by the approach control facility at the holding fix.

3. Average time interval between successive approaches.

4. Arrival time of aircraft over the holding fix or, if control has been transferred to you before an aircraft has reached the fix, a statement or other indication acknowledging receipt of control responsibility.

5. Revised EFC if different by 10 minutes or more from that issued by the center.

6. Missed approaches if they affect center operations.

7. Information relating to an unreported or overdue aircraft.

4–7–13. AIRPORT CONDITIONS

a. *EN ROUTE:* Before issuing an approach clearance or en route descent, and subsequently as changes occur, inform an aircraft of any abnormal operation of approach and landing aids and of destination airport conditions that you know of which might restrict an approach or landing.

b. *TERMINAL:* On first contact or as soon as possible thereafter, and subsequently as changes occur, inform an aircraft of any abnormal operation of approach and landing aids and of destination airport conditions that you know of which might restrict an approach or landing. This information may be omitted if it is contained in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CHAPTER 3. AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL – TERMINAL, SECTION 3., AIRPORT CONDITIONS.

c. *TERMINAL:* Where RCR's are provided, transmit this information to USAF and ANG aircraft in accordance with one of the following. Issue the RCR to other aircraft upon pilot request.

1. Before or when an approach clearance is issued.

2. Before an en route descent clearance is issued.

3. Prior to departure.

4. As soon as possible after receipt of any subsequent changes in previously issued RCR information.

NOTE–
1 USAF has established RCR procedures for determining the average deceleration readings of runways under conditions of water, slush, ice, or snow. The use of RCR code is dependent upon the pilot having a "stopping capability chart" specifically applicable to his aircraft.

2 USAF offices furnish RCR information at airports serving USAF and ANG aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, LANDING AREA CONDITION, Para 3–3–1.

4–7–14. SWITCHING ILS/MLS RUNWAYS

TERMINAL

When a change is made from one ILS to another or from one MLS to another at airports equipped with multiple systems which are not used simultaneously, coordinate with the facilities which use the fixes formed by reference to these NAVAID's.

Section 8. APPROACH CLEARANCE PROCEDURES

4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

a. Clear aircraft for "standard" or "special" instrument approach procedures only. To require an aircraft to execute a particular instrument approach procedure, specify in the approach clearance the name of the approach as published on the approach chart. Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown, amend the approach clearance to specify execution of the specific approach to be flown. If only one instrument approach of a particular type is published, the approach needs not be identified by the runway reference. An aircraft conducting an ILS/MLS approach when the glideslope/glidepath is reported out of service shall be advised at the time an approach clearance is issued. Standard Instrument Approach Procedures shall commence at an Initial Approach Fix or an Intermediate Approach Fix if there is not an Initial Approach Fix. Where adequate radar coverage exists, radar facilities may vector aircraft to the final approach course in accordance with para 5-9-1, VECTORS TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED (type) APPROACH.

(For a straight-in-approach-IFR),

CLEARED STRAIGHT-IN (type) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute his choice of instrument approach),

CLEARED APPROACH.

(Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown),

CLEARED (specific procedure to be flown) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute an ILS/MLS approach when the glideslope/glidepath is out of service),

CLEARED (type) APPROACH, GLIDESLOPE/GLIDEPATH UNUSABLE.

EXAMPLE-
"Cleared Approach."
"Cleared V-O-R Approach."
"Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Six Approach."
"Cleared F-M-S Approach."
"Cleared F-M-S Runway Three Six Approach."
"Cleared I-L-S Approach."
"Cleared Localizer Back Course Runway One Three Approach."
"Cleared R-NAV Runway Two Two Approach."
"Cleared GPS Runway Two Approach."
"Cleared BRANCH ONE R-NAV Arrival and R-NAV Runway One Three Approach."
"Cleared I-L-S Runway Three Six Approach, glideslope unusable."
"Cleared M-L-S Approach."
"Cleared M-L-S Runway Three Six Approach."
"Cleared M-L-S Runway Three Six Approach, glidepath unusable."

NOTE-
1 Clearances authorizing instrument approaches are issued on the basis that, if visual contact with the ground is made before the approach is completed, the entire approach procedure will be followed unless the pilot receives approval for a contact approach, is cleared for a visual approach, or cancels their IFR flight plan.

2 Approach clearances are issued based on known traffic. The receipt of an approach clearance does not relieve the pilot of his responsibility to comply with applicable Parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations and the notations on instrument approach charts which levy on the pilot the responsibility to comply with or act on an instruction; e.g., "Straight-in minima not authorized at night," "Procedure not authorized when glideslope/glidepath not used," "Use of procedure limited to aircraft authorized to use airport," or "Procedure not authorized at night."

3 The name of the approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, other than the localizer on an ILS or the azimuth on an MLS is inoperative. Where more than one procedure to the same runway is published on a single chart, each must adhere to all final approach guidance contained on that chart, even though each procedure will be treated as a separate entity when authorized by ATC. For example, Instrument Approach Procedures published on a chart as either HI-VOR/DME or TACAN 1 would be stated as either "HI V-O-R/D-M-E 1 Runway Six Left Approach" or "HI TACAN 1 Runway Six Left Approach." The use of numerical identifiers in the approach name, such as "HI TACAN 1 Rwy 6L or HI TACAN 2 Rwy 6L," denotes multiple straight-in approaches to the same runway that use the same approach aid. Alphabetical suffixes denote a procedure that does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization."

4 CFR Part 91.175 (j) requires a pilot to receive a clearance for a procedure turn when vectored to a final approach fix or position, conducting a timed approach, or *when the procedure specifies "NO PT."*

5 *An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and prior to reaching that fix is issued a clearance for an approach, but not issued a revised routing; i.e., "proceed direct to. . . ." may be expected to proceed via the last assigned route, a feeder route (if one is published on the approach chart), and then to commence the approach as published. If, by following the route of flight to the holding fix, the aircraft would overfly an IAF or the fix associated with the beginning of a feeder route to be used, the aircraft is expected to commence the approach using the published feeder route to the IAF or from the IAF as appropriate; i.e., the aircraft would not be expected to overfly and return to the IAF or feeder route.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 8260.3, UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS).

b. For aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue the approach clearance only after the aircraft is: (See FIG 4–8–1.)

Approach Clearance Example

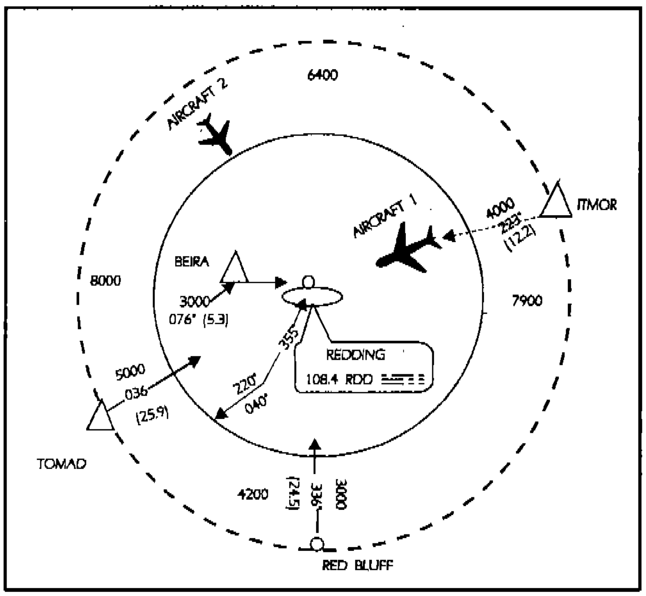


FIG 4–8–1

1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1: The aircraft is established on a segment of a published route at 5,000 feet. "Cleared V–O–R Runway Three Four Approach."

2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 2: The aircraft is inbound to the VOR on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (CFR Part 91.177) along this flight path to the VOR is 5,000 feet. "Cross the Redding V–O–R at or above five thousand, cleared V–O–R Runway Three Four Approach."

NOTE–
1 *The altitude assigned must assure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.*

2 *If the altitude assignment is VFR-on-Top, it is conceivable that the pilot may elect to remain high until arrival over the final approach fix which may require the pilot to circle to descend so as to cross the final approach fix at an altitude that would permit landing.*

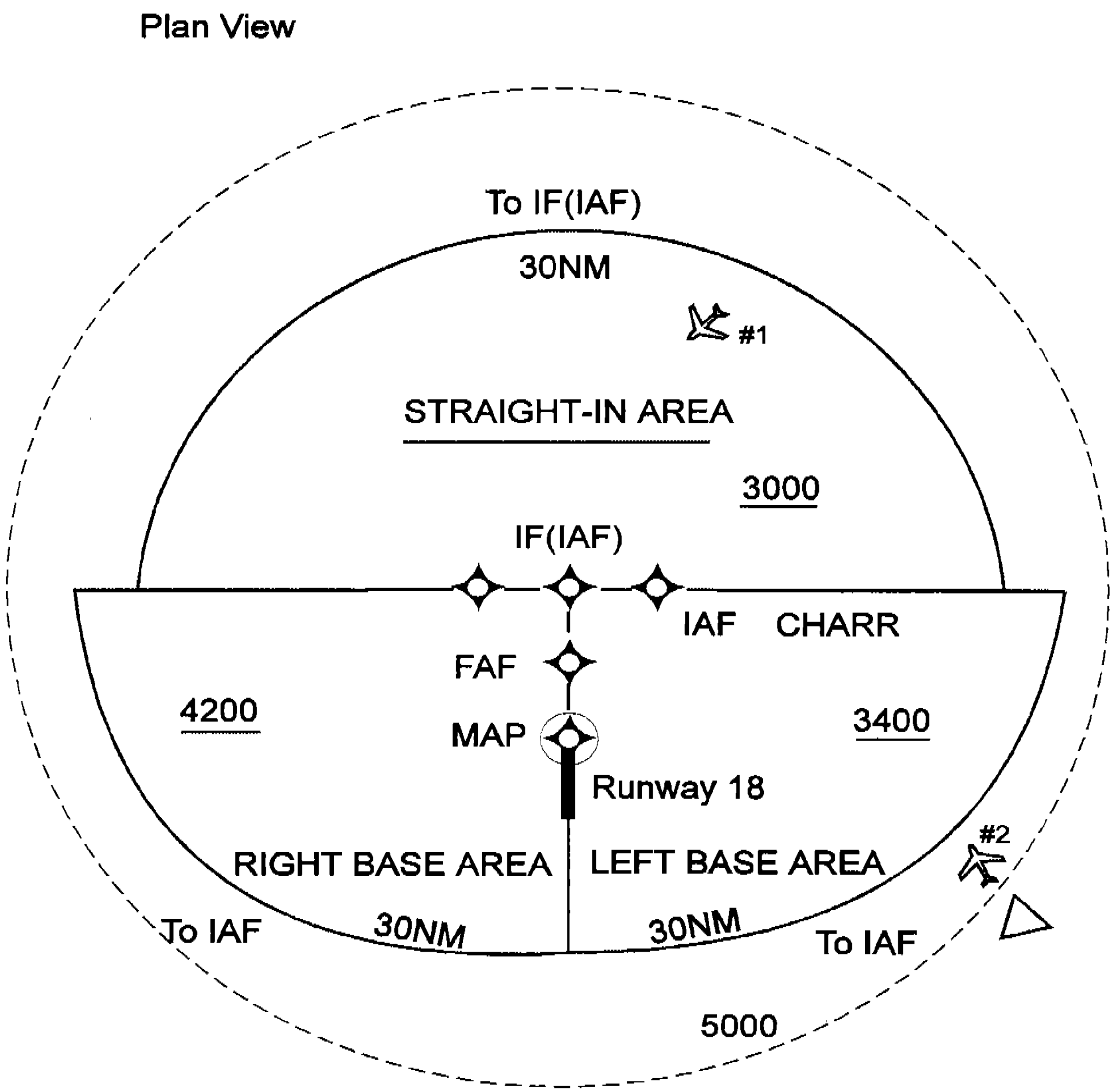
c. Except when applying radar procedures, timed or visual approaches, clear an aircraft for an approach to an airport when the preceding aircraft has landed or canceled IFR flight plan.

d. Where instrument approaches require radar monitoring and radar services are not available, do not use the phraseology "cleared approach," which allows the pilot his choice of instrument approaches.

e. Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches use the procedures under subpara b. above. (See FIG 4–8–2.)

EXAMPLE–
1 *Aircraft 1: The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared R–NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

2 *Aircraft 2: The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR (right corner) IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (CFR Part 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared to CHARR, Maintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA, Cleared R–NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*



BASIC "T" & TAA DESIGN

FIG 4-8-2

4-8-2. CLEARANCE LIMIT

Issue approach or other clearances, as required, specifying the destination airport as the clearance limit if airport traffic control service is not provided even though this is a repetition of the initial clearance.

4-8-3. RELAYED APPROACH CLEARANCE

TERMINAL

Include the weather report, when it is required and available, when an approach clearance is relayed through a communication station other than an air carrier company radio. You may do this by telling the station to issue current weather.

4-8-4. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT FOR MILITARY HIGH ALTITUDE INSTRUMENT APPROACHES

Altitudes above those shown on the high altitude instrument approach procedures chart may be specified when required for separation.

NOTE-
To preclude the possibility of aircraft exceeding rate-of-descent or airspeed limitations, the maximum altitudes which may be assigned for any portion of the high altitude instrument approach procedure will be determined through coordination between the ATC facility concerned and the military authority which originated the high altitude instrument approach procedure.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT, Para 4-7-5.

4-8-5. SPECIFYING ALTITUDE

Specify in the approach clearance the altitude shown in the approach procedures when adherence to that altitude is required for separation. When vertical separation will be provided from other aircraft by pilot adherence to the prescribed maximum, minimum, or mandatory altitudes, the controller may omit specifying the altitude in the approach clearance.

NOTE-
Use NOS or NIMA instrument approach procedures charts appropriate for the aircraft executing the approach.

4-8-6. CIRCLING APPROACH

a. Circling approach instructions may only be given for aircraft landing at airports with operational control towers.

b. Include in the approach clearance instructions to circle to the runway in use if landing will be made on a runway other than that aligned with the direction of instrument approach. When the direction of the circling maneuver in relation to the airport/runway is required, state the direction (eight cardinal compass points) and specify a left or right base/downwind leg as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CIRCLE TO RUNWAY (number),

or

CIRCLE (direction using eight cardinal compass points) OF THE AIRPORT/RUNWAY FOR A LEFT/RIGHT BASE/DOWNWIND TO RUNWAY (number).

NOTE-
Where standard instrument approach procedures (SIAP) authorize circling approaches, they provide a basic minimum of 300 feet of obstacle clearance at the MDA within the circling area considered. The dimensions of these areas, expressed in distances from the runways, vary for the different approach categories of aircraft. In some cases a SIAP may otherwise restrict circling approach maneuvers.

c. Do not issue clearances, such as "extend downwind leg," which might cause an aircraft to exceed the circling approach area distance from the runways within which required circling approach obstacle clearance is assured.

4-8-7. SIDE-STEP MANEUVER

TERMINAL

Side-Step Maneuver- When authorized by an instrument approach procedure, you may clear an aircraft for an approach to one runway and inform the aircraft that landing will be made on a parallel runway.

EXAMPLE-
"Cleared I-L-S Runway seven left approach. Side-step to runway seven right."

NOTE-
Side-step maneuvers require higher weather minima/MDA. These higher minima/MDA are published on the instrument approach charts.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION, Para 3-3-2.
P/CG TERM-SIDESTEP MANEUVER.

4-8-8. COMMUNICATIONS RELEASE

If an IFR aircraft intends to land at an airport not served by a tower or FSS, approve a change to the advisory service frequency when you no longer require direct communications.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED.

NOTE–
An expeditious frequency change permits the aircraft to receive timely local airport traffic information in accordance with AC 90–42, TRAFFIC ADVISORY PRACTICES AT AIRPORTS WITHOUT OPERATING CONTROL TOWERS.

4–8–9. MISSED APPROACH

Except in the case of a VFR aircraft practicing an instrument approach, an approach clearance automatically authorizes the aircraft to execute the missed approach procedure depicted for the instrument approach being flown. An alternate missed approach procedure as published on the appropriate FAA Form 8260 may be assigned when necessary. Once an aircraft commences a missed approach, it may be radar vectored.

NOTE–
1 *Alternate missed approach procedures are published on the appropriate FAA Form 8260 only and require a detailed clearance when they are issued to the pilot.*

2 *In the event of a missed approach involving a turn, unless otherwise cleared, the pilot will proceed to the missed approach point before starting that turn.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PRACTICE APPROACHES, Para 4–8–11.
FAAO 7110.65, VECTORS BELOW MINIMUM ALTITUDE, Para 5–6–3.
FAAO 7110.65, SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES, Para 5–8–3.
FAAO 8260.19, FLIGHT PROCEDURES AND AIRSPACE, Paras 404 and 815.
FAAO 8260.3, UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS), Paras 275, 278, 943, 957, and 997.

4–8–10. APPROACH INFORMATION

Specify the following in the approach clearance when the pilot says he is unfamiliar with the procedure:

a. Initial approach altitude.

b. Direction and distance from the holding fix within which procedure turn is to be completed.

c. Altitude at which the procedure turn is to be made.

d. Final approach course and altitude.

e. Missed approach procedures if considered necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
INITIAL APPROACH AT (altitude), PROCEDURE TURN AT (altitude), (number) MINUTES/MILES (direction), FINAL APPROACH ON (name of NAVAID) (specified) COURSE/RADIAL/AZIMUTH AT (altitude).

4–8–11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

Except for military aircraft operating at military airfields, ensure that neither VFR nor IFR practice approaches disrupt the flow of other arriving and departing IFR or VFR aircraft. Authorize, withdraw authorization, or refuse to authorize practice approaches as traffic conditions require. Normally, approaches in progress should not be terminated.

NOTE–
The priority afforded other aircraft over practice instrument approaches is not intended to be so rigidly applied that it causes grossly inefficient application of services.

a. Separation.

1. IFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches shall be afforded standard separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 minima until:

(a) The aircraft lands, and the flight is terminated, or

(b) The pilot cancels the flight plan.

2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, standard IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 shall be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for heavy aircraft/B757, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, PRACTICE INSTRUMENT APPROACHES, Para 7–4–4.
FAAO 7210.3, PRACTICE INSTRUMENT APPROACHES, Para 11–4–5.

3. Where separation services are not provided to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, the controller shall;

(a) Instruct the pilot to maintain VFR.

(b) Advise the pilot that separation services are not provided.

PHRASEOLOGY–
"(Aircraft identification) MAINTAIN VFR, PRACTICE APPROACH APPROVED, NO SEPARATION SERVICES PROVIDED."

(c) Provide traffic information or advise the pilot to contact the appropriate facility.

4. If an altitude is assigned, including at or above/below altitudes, the altitude specified must meet MVA, minimum safe altitude, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 7-7-5.

5. All VFR aircraft shall be instructed to maintain VFR on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter.

NOTE-
This advisory is intended to remind the pilot that even though ATC is providing IFR-type instructions, the pilot is responsible for compliance with the applicable parts of the CFR governing VFR flight.

b. Missed Approaches.

1. Unless alternate instructions have been issued, IFR aircraft are automatically authorized to execute the missed approach depicted for the instrument approach being flown.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, MISSED APPROACH, Para 4-8-9.

2. VFR aircraft are not automatically authorized to execute the missed approach procedure. This authorization must be specifically requested by the pilot and approved by the controller. When a missed approach has been approved, separation shall be provided throughout the missed approach.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.

4-8-12. LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH-AND-GO

Consider an aircraft cleared for a touch-and-go, low approach, or practice approach as an arriving aircraft until that aircraft touches down or crosses the landing threshold; thereafter, consider the aircraft as a departing aircraft. Before the aircraft begins its final descent, issue the appropriate departure instructions the pilot is to follow upon completion of the approach (in accordance with para 4-3-2, DEPARTURE CLEARANCES). Climb-out instructions must include a specific heading or a route of flight and altitude, except when the aircraft will maintain VFR and contact the tower.

EXAMPLE-
"After completing low approach, climb and maintain six thousand. Turn right, heading three six zero."

"Maintain VFR, contact tower."

(Issue other instructions as appropriate.)

NOTE-
Climb-out instructions may be omitted after the first approach if instructions remain the same.

Chapter 5. RADAR

Section 1. GENERAL

5-1-1. PRESENTATION AND EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE

Provide radar service only if you are personally satisfied that the radar presentation and equipment performance is adequate for the service being provided.

NOTE-
The provision of radar service is not limited to the distance and altitude parameters obtained during the commissioning flight check.

5-1-2. ALIGNMENT CHECK

During relief briefing, or as soon as possible after assuming responsibility for a control position, check the operating equipment for alignment accuracy and display acceptability. Recheck periodically throughout the watch.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 3, Chapter 9, Chapter 10, Chapter 12, and Chapter 13.
COMPARABLE MILITARY DIRECTIVES.

TERMINAL

a. Check the alignment of the radar video display by assuring that the video map or overlay is properly aligned with a permanent target of known range and azimuth on the radar display. Where possible, check one permanent target per quadrant.

b. Map alignment shall be verified for digitized radar systems by using the moving target indicator (MTI) reflectors, fixed location beacon transponders (Parrots), beacon real-time quality control (RTQC) symbols or Calibration Performance Monitor Equipment (CPME) beacon targets.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, TOLERANCE FOR RADAR FIX ACCURACY, Para 3-8-1.

EN ROUTE

c. When operating in the broadband mode, apply the procedures in subpara a.

d. When operating in the narrowband mode (Stage A) with broadband as a backup display source, assure the alignment of the broadband radar according to the procedures in subpara a.

NOTE-
During stage A operation, alignment checking is accomplished by the operational program as part of the certification procedures for system startup and then on a real-time basis during operational hours.

e. When operating in the EDARC/DARC/HOST or EDARC/DARC mode, ensure the PVD center and altitude limits for the system are appropriate for the operating position.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS, Para 5-14-5.

5-1-3. RADAR USE

Use radar information derived from primary and Mode 3/A secondary radar systems.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON RANGE ACCURACY, Para 5-1-4.
FAAO 7110.65, INOPERATIVE OR MALFUNCTIONING INTERROGATOR, Para 5-2-16.

a. Secondary radar may be used as the sole display source as follows:

1. In Class A airspace.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, FAILED TRANSPONDER IN CLASS A AIRSPACE, Para 5-2-17.
CFR PART 91.135, OPERATIONS IN CLASS A AIRSPACE.

2. Outside Class A airspace, or where mix of Class A airspace/non-Class A airspace exists, only when:

(a) Additional coverage is provided by secondary radar beyond that of the primary radar.

(b) The primary radar is temporarily unusable or out of service. Advise pilots when these conditions exist.

PHRASEOLOGY-
PRIMARY RADAR OUT OF SERVICE. RADAR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES AVAILABLE ON TRANSPONDER AIRCRAFT ONLY.

NOTE-
1. Advisory may be omitted when provided on ATIS and pilot indicates having ATIS information.

2. Advisory may be omitted in the en route environment when there is overlapping primary radar coverage from multiple radar sites.

(c) *EN ROUTE:* A secondary radar system is the only source of radar data for the area of service. When the system is used for separation, beacon range accuracy is assured, as provided in para 5-1-4, BEACON RANGE ACCURACY.

NOTE-
This provision is to authorize secondary radar only operations where there is no primary radar available and the condition is not temporary.

b. *TERMINAL:* Do not use only secondary radar to conduct surveillance (ASR) final approaches unless an emergency exists and the pilot concurs.

5-1-4. BEACON RANGE ACCURACY

a. You may use beacon targets for separation purposes if beacon range accuracy is verified by one of the following methods:

NOTE-
1 *The check for verification of beacon range accuracy accomplished by correlation of beacon and primary radar targets of the same aircraft is not a check of display accuracy. Therefore, it is not necessary that it be done using the same display with which separation is being provided, nor the same targets being separated.*

2 *Narrowband: beacon range accuracy for automated narrowband display equipment is verified by AF personnel. Consequently, further verification by the controller is unnecessary.*

1. Correlate beacon and primary targets of the same aircraft (not necessarily the one being provided separation) to assure that they coincide.

2. When beacon and primary targets of the same aircraft do not coincide, correlate them to assure that any beacon displacement agrees with the specified distance and direction for that particular radar system.

3. Refer to beacon range monitoring equipment where so installed.

b. If beacon range accuracy cannot be verified, you may use beacon targets only for traffic information.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR USE, Para 5-1-3.

5-1-5. ECM/ECCM ACTIVITY

a. Refer all ECM/ECCM activity requests to the appropriate center supervisor.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7610.4, CHAPTER 2, SECTION 7, ECM MISSIONS/EXERCISES.

NOTE-
ECM activity can subsequently result in a request to apply ECCM videos to the radar system which may necessitate the decertification of the narrowband search radar. The Systems Engineer should be consulted concerning the effect of ECM/ECCM on the operational use of the radar (narrowband/broadband) prior to approving/disapproving requests to conduct ECM/ECCM activity.

b. When ECM activity interferes with the operational use of radar:

1. *EN ROUTE:* Request the responsible military unit or aircraft, if initial request was received directly from pilot, to suspend the activity.

2. *TERMINAL:* Request suspension of the activity through the ARTCC. If immediate cessation of the activity is required, broadcast the request directly to the ECM aircraft on the emergency frequency. Notify the ARTCC of direct broadcast as soon as possible.

c. When previously suspended activity will no longer interfere:

3. *EN ROUTE:* Inform the NORAD unit or aircraft that it may be resumed.

4. *TERMINAL:* Inform the ARTCC or aircraft that it may be resumed. Obtain approval from the ARTCC prior to broadcasting a resume clearance directly to the aircraft.

d. In each stop request, include your facility name, type of ECM activity (chaff dispensing- "stream"/ "burst" or electronic jamming- "buzzer"), radar band affected and, when feasible, expected duration of suspension.

PHRASEOLOGY-
BIG PHOTO (identification, if known) (name) CENTER/ TOWER/APPROACH CONTROL.

To stop ECM activity:

STOP STREAM/BURST IN AREA (area name) (degree and distance from facility),

or

STOP BUZZER ON (frequency band or channel).

To resume ECM activity

RESUME STREAM/BURST,

or

RESUME BUZZER ON (frequency band or channel).

5-1-6. SERVICE LIMITATIONS

a. When radar mapping is not available, limit radar services to:

1. Separating identified aircraft targets.

2. Vectoring aircraft to intercept a PAR final approach course.

3. Providing radar service in areas that ensure no confliction with traffic on airways, other ATC areas of jurisdiction, restricted or prohibited areas, terrain, etc..

b. *EN ROUTE:* Stage A and DARC- When the position symbol associated with the full data block falls more than one history behind the actual aircraft target or there is no target symbol displayed, the Mode C information in the full data block shall not be used for the purpose of determining separation.

c. Report radar malfunctions immediately for corrective action and for dispatch of a Notice to Airmen. Advise adjacent ATC facilities when appropriate.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION, Para 2-1-9.
FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 3, Chapter 8, Chapter 11 Section 5, and Chapter 12 Section 2.

5-1-7. ELECTRONIC CURSOR

TERMINAL

a. An electronic cursor may be used to aid in identifying and vectoring an aircraft and to give finer delineation to a video map. Do not use it as a substitute for a video map or map overlay; e.g., to form intersections, airway boundaries, final approach courses, etc.

b. Fixed electronic cursors may be used to form the final approach course for surveillance approaches conducted by military operated mobile radar facilities.

5-1-8. MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES

a. Except while they are established in a holding pattern, apply merging target procedures to all radar identified:

1. Aircraft at 10,000 feet and above.

2. Turbojet aircraft regardless of altitude.

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM- TURBOJET AIRCRAFT.

3. Presidential aircraft regardless of altitude.

b. Issue traffic information to those aircraft listed in subpara a. whose targets appear likely to merge unless the aircraft are separated by more than the appropriate vertical separation minima.

EXAMPLE-
"Traffic twelve o'clock, seven miles, eastbound, MD-80, at one seven thousand."

"United sixteen and American twenty-five, traffic twelve o'clock, one zero miles, opposite direction, eastbound seven twenty seven at flight level three three zero, westbound MD-Eighty at flight level three one zero."

c. If the pilot requests, vector his aircraft to avoid merging with the target of previously issued traffic.

NOTE-
Aircraft closure rates are so rapid that when applying merging target procedures, controller issuance of traffic must be commenced in ample time for the pilot to decide if a vector is necessary.

d. If unable to provide vector service, inform the pilot.

5-1-9. HOLDING PATTERN SURVEILLANCE

Provide radar surveillance of outer fix holding pattern airspace areas, or any portions thereof, shown on your radar scope (displayed on the video map or scribed on the map overlay) whenever aircraft are holding there. Attempt to detect any aircraft that stray outside the area. If you detect an aircraft straying outside the area, assist it to return to the assigned airspace.

5-1-10. DEVIATION ADVISORIES

Inform an aircraft when it is observed in a position and on a track which will obviously cause the aircraft to deviate from its protected airspace area. If necessary, assist the aircraft to return to the assigned protected airspace.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS, Para 4-2-5.
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 7-9-3.

5-1-11. RADAR FIX POSTING

EN ROUTE

A controller is required to manually record at least once the observed or reported time over a fix for each controlled aircraft in their sector of responsibility only when the flight progress recording components of the HOST/DARC or the EARTS systems are not operational.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP USAGE, Para 7-1-6.
FAAO 7210.3, FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIP USAGE, Para 11-1-8.

5-1-12. POSITION REPORTING

If necessary, you may request an aircraft to provide an estimate or report over a specific fix. After an aircraft receives the statement "radar contact" from ATC, it discontinues reporting over compulsory reporting points. It resumes normal position reporting when ATC informs it "radar contact lost" or "radar service terminated."

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-RADAR CONTACT.

a. When required, inform an aircraft of its position with respect to a fix or airway.

PHRASEOLOGY-
OVER/PASSING (fix).

(Number of miles) MILES FROM (fix).

(Number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (fix, airway, or location).

CROSSING/JOINING/DEPARTING (airway or route).

INTERCEPTING/CROSSING (name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.

5-1-13. RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION

a. Inform aircraft when radar service is terminated.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED (nonradar routing if required).

b. Radar service is automatically terminated and the aircraft needs not be advised of termination when:

NOTE-
1 *Termination of radar monitoring when conducting simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches is prescribed in para 5-9-7, SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES-DUAL & TRIPLE.*
2 *Termination of radar monitoring where PAR equipment is used to monitor approaches is prescribed in para 5-13-3, MONITOR INFORMATION.*

1. An aircraft cancels its IFR flight plan, except within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, TRSA, or where basic radar service is provided.

2. An aircraft conducting an instrument, visual, or contact approach has landed or has been instructed to change to advisory frequency.

3. At tower-controlled airports where radar coverage does not exist to within $^1/_2$ mile of the end of the runway, arriving aircraft shall be informed when radar service is terminated.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, RADAR TOLERANCES, Para 11-5-6.

4. *TERMINAL:* An arriving VFR aircraft receiving radar service to a tower-controlled airport within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, TRSA, or where basic radar service is provided has landed, or to all other airports, is instructed to change to tower or advisory frequency.

5. *TERMINAL:* An aircraft completes a radar approach.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SERVICE PROVIDED WHEN TOWER IS INOPERATIVE, Para 7-6-12.

Section 2. BEACON SYSTEMS

5–2–1. ASSIGNMENT CRITERIA

a. General

1. Mode 3/A is designated as the common military/civil mode for air traffic control use.

2. Make radar beacon code assignments to only Mode 3/A transponder-equipped aircraft.

b. Unless otherwise specified in a directive or a letter of agreement, make code assignments to departing, en route, and arrival aircraft in accordance with the procedures specified in this section for the radar beacon code environment in which you are providing ATC service. Give first preference to the use of discrete beacon codes.

PHRASEOLOGY–
SQUAWK THREE/ALFA (code),

or

SQUAWK (code).

NOTE–
A code environment is determined by an operating position's/sector's equipment capability to decode radar beacon targets using either the first and second or all four digits of a beacon code.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–2. DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT

a. Issue discrete beacon codes assigned by the computer. Computer-assigned codes may be modified as required.

1. *TERMINAL:* Aircraft that will remain within the terminal facility's delegated airspace shall be assigned a code from the code subset allocated to the terminal facility.

2. *TERMINAL:* Unless otherwise specified in a facility directive or a letter of agreement, aircraft that will enter an adjacent ARTS facility's delegated airspace shall be assigned a beacon code assigned by the ARTCC computer.

NOTE–
1 *This will provide the adjacent facility advance information on the aircraft and will cause auto-acquisition of the aircraft prior to handoff.*

2 *When an IFR aircraft, or a VFR aircraft that has been assigned a beacon code by the host computer and whose flight plan will terminate in another facility's area, cancels ATC service or does not activate the flight plan, send a remove strips (RS) message on that aircraft via host keyboard, the FDIO keyboard, or call via service F.*

b. Make handoffs to other positions/sectors on the computer-assigned code.

c. Coastal facilities accepting "over" traffic that will subsequently be handed-off to an oceanic ARTCC shall reassign a new discrete beacon code to an aircraft when it first enters the receiving facility's airspace. The code reassignment shall be accomplished by inputting an appropriate message into the computer and issued to the pilot while operating in the first sector/position in the receiving facility's airspace.

NOTE–
Per an agreement between FAA and the Department of Defense, 17 Code subsets in the NBCAP have been reserved for exclusive military use outside NBCAP airspace. To maximize the use of these subsets, they have been allocated to ARTCC's underlying NBCAP airspace that do not abut an oceanic ARTCC's area. To preclude a potential situation where two aircraft might be in the same airspace at the same time on the same discrete code, it is necessary to reassign an aircraft another code as specified in subpara c.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MIXED ENVIRONMENT, Para 5–2–4.
FAAO 7110.65, VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 5–2–10.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–3. NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT

a. Assign appropriate nondiscrete beacon codes from the function codes specified in para 5–2–6, FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS.

b. Unless otherwise coordinated at the time of handoff, make handoffs to other positions/sectors on an appropriate nondiscrete function code.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MIXED ENVIRONMENT, Para 5–2–4.
FAAO 7110.65, VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 5–2–10.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–4. MIXED ENVIRONMENT

a. When discrete beacon code capability does not exist in your area of responsibility, comply with the procedures specified in para 5–2–3, NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT.

NOTE–
In a mixed code environment, a situation may exist where a discrete-equipped position/sector exchanges control of aircraft with nondiscrete-equipped facilities or vice versa.

b. When discrete beacon code capability exists in your area of responsibility:

1. Comply with the procedures specified in para 5–2–2, DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT, and

2. Unless otherwise coordinated at the time of handoff, assign aircraft that will enter the area of responsibility of a nondiscrete-equipped position/sector an appropriate nondiscrete function code from the codes specified in para 5–2–6, FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS, prior to initiating a handoff.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS, Para 4–2–8.
FAAO 7110.65, VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 5–2–10.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–5. RADAR BEACON CODE CHANGES

Unless otherwise specified in a directive or a letter of agreement or coordinated at the time of handoff, do not request an aircraft to change from the code it was squawking in the transferring facility's area until the aircraft is within your area of responsibility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS, Para 4–2–8.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–6. FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS

Unless otherwise specified by a directive or a letter of agreement, make nondiscrete code assignments from the following categories:

a. Assign codes to departing IFR aircraft as follows:

1. Code 2000 to an aircraft which will climb to FL 240 or above or to an aircraft which will climb to FL 180 or above where the base of Class A airspace and the base of the operating sector are at FL 180, and for inter-facility handoff the receiving sector is also stratified at FL 180. The en route code shall not be assigned until the aircraft is established in the high altitude sector.

2. Code 1100 to an aircraft which will remain below FL 240 or below FL 180 as above.

3. For handoffs from terminal facilities when so specified in a letter of agreement as follows:

(a) Within NBCAP airspace– **Code 0100 to Code 0400** inclusive or any other code authorized by the regional air traffic division.

(b) Outside NBCAP airspace– **Code 1000** or one of the codes from **0100 to 0700** inclusive or any other code authorized by the regional air traffic division.

b. Assign codes to en route IFR aircraft as follows:

NOTE–
1 *FL 180 may be used in lieu of FL 240 where the base of Class A airspace and the base of the operating sector are at FL 180, and for inter-facility handoff the receiving sector is also stratified at FL 180.*
2 *The provisions of subparas b.2.(b) and (c) may be modified by facility directive or letter of agreement when operational complexities or simplified sectorization indicate. Letters of agreement are mandatory when the operating sectors of two facilities are not stratified at identical levels. The general concept of utilizing codes 2100 through 2500 within Class A airspace should be adhered to.*

1. Aircraft operating below FL 240 or when control is transferred to a controller whose area includes the stratum involved.

(a) **Code 1000** may be assigned to aircraft changing altitudes.

(b) **Code 1100** to an aircraft operating at an assigned altitude below FL 240. Should an additional code be operationally desirable, **code 1300** shall be assigned.

2. Aircraft operating at or above FL 240 or when control is transferred to a controller whose area includes the stratum involved.

(a) **Code 2300** may be assigned to aircraft changing altitudes.

(b) **Code 2100** to an aircraft operating at an assigned altitude from FL 240 to FL 330 inclusive. Should an additional code be operationally desirable, **code 2200** shall be assigned.

(c) **Code 2400** to an aircraft operating at an assigned altitude from FL 350 to FL 600 inclusive. Should an additional code be operationally desirable, **code 2500** shall be assigned.

3. Code 4000 when aircraft are operating on a flight plan specifying frequent or rapid changes in assigned altitude in more than one stratum or other conditions of flight not compatible with a stratified code assignment.

NOTE–
1 *Categories of flight that can be assigned code 4000 include certain flight test aircraft, MTR missions, aerial refueling operation requiring descent involving more than one stratum, ALTRV's where continuous monitoring of ATC communications facilities is not required and frequent altitude changes are approved, and other aircraft operating on flight plans requiring special handling by ATC.*

NOTE–
[2] Military aircraft operating VFR or IFR in restricted/warning areas or VFR on VR routes will adjust their transponders to reply on code 4000 unless another code has been assigned by ATC or coordinated, if possible, with ATC.

c. Assign the following codes to arriving IFR aircraft, except military turbojet aircraft as specified in para 4–7–4, RADIO FREQUENCY AND RADAR BEACON CHANGES FOR MILITARY AIRCRAFT:

NOTE–
FL 180 may be used in lieu of FL 240 where the base of Class A airspace and the base of the operating sector are at FL 180, and for inter-facility handoff the receiving sector is also stratified at FL 180.

1. Code 2300 may be assigned for descents while above FL 240.

2. Code 1500 may be assigned for descents into and while within the strata below FL 240, or with prior coordination the specific code utilized by the destination controller, or the code currently assigned when descent clearance is issued.

3. The applicable en route code for the holding altitude if holding is necessary before entering the terminal area and the appropriate code in subparas 1. or 2.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, IFR-VFR AND VFR-IFR FLIGHTS, Para 4–2–8.
FAAO 7110.65, NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT, Para 5–2–3.
FAAO 7110.65, MIXED ENVIRONMENT, Para 5–2–4.
FAAO 7110.65, VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 5–2–10.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–7. REVERTING TO BROADBAND

When the narrowband system is no longer available/usable for ATC purposes, aircraft operating on computer-assigned codes shall be instructed to squawk the function code appropriate for your area of responsibility.

NOTE–
During the transition to the broadband mode, targets can be maintained by selecting on the broadband decoder equipment the codes in use by aircraft in your area or activating the "all" beacon feature.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ALL AIRCRAFT SQUAWK (appropriate code).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–8. EMERGENCY CODE ASSIGNMENT

Assign codes to emergency aircraft as follows:

a. Code 7700 when the pilot declares an emergency and the aircraft is not radar identified.

PHRASEOLOGY–
SQUAWK MAYDAY ON 7700.

b. After radio and radar contact have been established, you may request other than single-piloted helicopters and single-piloted turbojet aircraft to change from **code 7700** to another code appropriate for your radar beacon code environment.

NOTE–
[1] The code change, based on pilot concurrence, the nature of the emergency, and current flight conditions will signify to other radar facilities that the aircraft in distress is identified and under ATC control.

[2] Pilots of single-piloted helicopters and single-piloted turbojet aircraft may be unable to reposition transponder controls during the emergency.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RADAR CONTACT (position). IF FEASIBLE, SQUAWK (code).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

c. The following shall be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **code 7700:**

1. *TERMINAL:* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE:* An appropriate keyboard entry shall be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

5–2–9. RADIO FAILURE

When you observe a **code 7600** display, apply the procedures in para10–4–4, COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE.

NOTE–
*Should a transponder-equipped aircraft experience a loss of two-way radio communications capability, the pilot can be expected to adjust his transponder to **code 7600.***

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–10. VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS

a. For VFR aircraft receiving radar advisories, assign an appropriate function code or computer-assigned code for the code environment in which you are providing service.

NOTE–
[1] Para 5–2–2, DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT,

para 5–2–3, NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT, and para 5–2–4, MIXED ENVIRONMENT, specify code assignment procedures to follow for the three code environments.
2 Para 5–2–6, FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS, specifies the function code allocation from which an appropriate code for the aircraft indicated in sub–para a. should be selected. In the terminal environment, additional function codes may be authorized by the regional air traffic division.

1. If the aircraft is outside of your area of responsibility and an operational benefit will be gained by retaining the aircraft on your frequency for the purpose of providing services, ensure that coordination has been effected:

(a) As soon as possible after positive identification, and

(b) Prior to issuing a control instruction or providing a service other than a safety alert/traffic advisory.

NOTE–
Safety alerts/traffic advisories may be issued to an aircraft prior to coordination if an imminent situation may be averted by such action. Coordination should be effected as soon as possible thereafter.

b. Instruct IFR aircraft which cancel an IFR flight plan and are not requesting radar advisory service and VFR aircraft for which radar advisory service is being terminated to squawk the VFR code.

PHRASEOLOGY–
SQUAWK VFR.

or

SQUAWK 1200.

NOTE–
1 Aircraft not in contact with an ATC facility may squawk 1255 in lieu of 1200 while en route to/from or within the designated fire fighting area(s).

2 VFR aircraft which fly authorized SAR missions for the USAF or USCG may be advised to squawk 1277 in lieu of 1200 while en route to/from or within the designated search area.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.66, NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN.

c. When an aircraft changes from VFR to IFR, the controller shall assign a beacon code to Mode C equipped aircraft that will allow MSAW alarms.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–11. BEACON CODE FOR PRESSURE SUIT FLIGHTS AND FLIGHTS ABOVE FL 600

a. Mode 3/A, **code 4400**, and discrete codes **4401 through 4477** are reserved for use by R–71, F–12, U–2, B–57, pressure suit flights, and aircraft operations above FL 600.

NOTE–
The specific allocation of the special use codes in subset 4400 is in FAAO 7110.66.

b. Ensure that aircraft remain on **code 4400** or one of the special use discrete codes in the **4400** subset if filed as part of the flight plan. Except when unforeseen events, such as weather deviations, equipment failure, etc., cause more than one aircraft with same Mode 3/A discrete beacon codes to be in the same or adjacent ARTCC's airspace at the same time, a controller may request the pilot to make a code change, squawk standby, or to stop squawk as appropriate.

NOTE–
*Due to the inaccessibility of certain equipment to the flight crews, **code 4400** or a discrete code from the **4400** subset is preset on the ground and will be used throughout the flight profile including operations below FL 600. Controllers should be cognizant that not all aircraft may be able to accept the transponder changes identified in the exception. Emergency **code 7700**, however, can be activated.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5–2–12. AIR DEFENSE EXERCISE BEACON CODE ASSIGNMENT

EN ROUTE

Ensure exercise FAKER aircraft remain on the exercise flight plan filed discrete beacon code.

NOTE–
1 NORAD will ensure exercise FAKER aircraft flight plans are filed containing discrete beacon codes from the Department of Defense code allocation specified in FAAO 7610.4, Appendix 5.

2 NORAD will ensure that those FAKER aircraft assigned the same discrete beacon code are not flight planned in the same or any adjacent ARTCC's airspace at the same time. (Simultaneous assignment of codes will only occur when operational requirements necessitate.)

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5–3–3.

5-2-13. STANDBY OR LOW SENSITIVITY OPERATION

You may instruct an aircraft operating on an assigned code to change transponder to "standby" or "low sensitivity" position:

NOTE-
National standards no longer require improved transponder to be equipped with the low sensitivity feature. Therefore, aircraft with late model transponders will be unable to respond to a request to "squawk low."

a. When approximately 15 miles from its destination and you no longer desire operation of the transponder.

b. When necessary to reduce clutter in a multi-target area, or to reduce "ring-around" or other phenomena, provided you instruct the aircraft to return to "normal sensitivity" position as soon as possible thereafter.

PHRASEOLOGY-
SQUAWK STANDBY,

or

SQUAWK LOW/NORMAL.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-14. CODE MONITOR

Continuously monitor the Mode 3/A radar beacon codes assigned for use by aircraft operating within your area of responsibility when nonautomated beacon decoding equipment (e.g., 10-channel decoder) is used to display the target symbol.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 5-2-6.

NOTE-
In addition to alphanumeric and control symbology processing enhancements, the ARTS, EARTS, and the TPX-42 systems are equipped with automatic beacon decoders. Therefore, in facilities where the automatic beacon decoders are providing the control slash video, there is no requirement to have the nonautomated decoding equipment operating simultaneously.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, MONITORING OF MODE 3/A RADAR BEACON CODES, Para 3-7-4.

a. This includes the appropriate IFR code actually assigned and, additionally, **code 1200, code 1255,** and **code 1277** unless your area of responsibility includes only Class A airspace. During periods when ring-around or excessive VFR target presentations derogate the separation of IFR traffic, the monitoring of VFR **code 1200, code 1255, and code 1277** may be temporarily discontinued.

b. Positions of operation which contain a restricted or warning area or VR route within or immediately adjacent to their area of jurisdiction shall monitor **code 4000** and any other code used in lieu of **4000** within the warning/restricted area or VR route. If by local coordination with the restricted/warning area or VR route user a code other than 4000 is to be exclusively used, then this code shall be monitored.

c. If a normally assigned beacon code disappears, check for a response on the following codes in the order listed and take appropriate action:

NOTE-
*When **codes 7500** and/or **7600** have been preselected, it will be necessary for the ID-SEL-OFF switches for these codes to be left in the off position so that beacon target for an aircraft changing to one of these codes will disappear, thereby alerting the controller to make the check. This check will not be required if automatic alerting capability exists.*

1. **Code 7500** (hijack code).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, HIJACKED AIRCRAFT, Para 10-2-6.

2. **Code 7600** (loss of radio communications code).

5-2-15. FAILURE TO DISPLAY ASSIGNED BEACON CODE OR INOPERATIVE/ MALFUNCTIONING TRANSPONDER

a. Inform an aircraft with an operable transponder that the assigned beacon code is not being displayed.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Identification) RESET TRANSPONDER, SQUAWK (appropriate code).

b. Inform an aircraft when its transponder appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Identification) YOUR TRANSPONDER APPEARS INOPERATIVE/MALFUNCTIONING, RESET, SQUAWK (appropriate code).

c. Ensure that the subsequent control position in the facility or the next facility, as applicable, is notified when an aircraft transponder is malfunctioning/inoperative.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-16. INOPERATIVE OR MALFUNCTIONING INTERROGATOR

Inform aircraft concerned when the ground interrogator appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Name of facility or control function) BEACON INTERROGATOR INOPERATIVE/MALFUNCTIONING.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR USE, Para 5-1-3.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-17. FAILED TRANSPONDER IN CLASS A AIRSPACE

Disapprove a request or withdraw previously issued approval to operate in Class A airspace with a failed transponder solely on the basis of traffic conditions or other operational factors.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR USE, Para 5-1-3.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-18. VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT

Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts. For TPX-42 and equivalent systems ensure that altitude readout is valid immediately after identification. (TCDD-/BANS- equipped tower cabs are not required to validate Mode C readouts after receiving interfacility handoffs from TRACON's according to the procedures in para 5-4-3, METHODS, subpara a.4.)

a. Consider an altitude readout valid when:

1. It varies less than 300 feet from the pilot reported altitude, or

PHRASEOLOGY-
SAY ALTITUDE.

2. You receive a continuous readout from an aircraft on the airport and the readout varies by less than 300 feet from the field elevation, or

NOTE-
A continuous readout exists only when the altitude filter limits are set to include the field elevation.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE FILTERS, Para 5-2-24.
FAAO 7110.65, SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS, Para 5-14-5.
FAAO 7210.3, DISPLAY DATA, Para 12-2-3.

3. You have correlated the altitude information in your data block with the validated information in a data block generated in another facility (by verbally coordinating with the other controller) and your readout is exactly the same as the readout in the other data block.

b. When unable to validate the readout, do not use the Mode C altitude information for separation.

c. Whenever you observe an invalid Mode C readout below FL 180:

1. Issue the correct altimeter setting and confirm the pilot has accurately reported the altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Location) ALTIMETER (appropriate altimeter), VERIFY ALTITUDE.

2. If the altitude readout continues to be invalid:

(a) Instruct the pilot to turn off the altitude-reporting part of his/her transponder and include the reason; and,

(b) Notify the operational supervisor-in-charge of the aircraft call sign.

PHRASEOLOGY-
STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK. ALTITUDE DIFFERS BY (number of feet) FEET.

d. Whenever you observe an invalid Mode C readout at or above FL 180, unless the aircraft is descending below Class A airspace:

1. Confirm that the pilot is using 29.92 Hg of mercury as the altimeter setting and has accurately reported the altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CONFIRM USING TWO NINER NINER TWO AS YOUR ALTIMETER SETTING, VERIFY ALTITUDE.

2. If the Mode C readout continues to be invalid:

(a) Instruct the pilot to turn off the altitude-reporting part of his/her transponder and include the reason; and,

(b) Notify the operational supervisor-in-charge of the aircraft call sign.

PHRASEOLOGY-
STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK. ALTITUDE DIFFERS BY (number of feet) FEET.

e. Whenever possible, inhibit altitude readouts on all consoles when a malfunction of the ground equipment causes repeated invalid readouts.

5-2-19. ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION- MODE C

Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless:

NOTE-
For the purpose of this paragraph, "initial contact" means a pilot's first radio contact with each sector/position.

a. The pilot states the assigned altitude, or

b. You assign a new altitude to a climbing or a descending aircraft, or

c. The Mode C readout is valid and indicates that the aircraft is established at the assigned altitude, or

d. *TERMINAL:* The aircraft was transferred to you from another sector/position within your facility (intrafacility).

PHRASEOLOGY-
(In level flight situations), VERIFY AT (altitude).

(In climbing/descending situations), VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE (altitude).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-20. ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION- NON-MODE C

a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless:

NOTE-
For the purpose of this paragraph, "initial contact" means a pilot's first radio contact with each sector/position.

1. The pilot states the assigned altitude, or

2. You assign a new altitude to a climbing or a descending aircraft, or

3. *TERMINAL:* The aircraft was transferred to you from another sector/position within your facility (intrafacility).

PHRASEOLOGY-
(In level flight situations), VERIFY AT (altitude).

(In climbing/descending situations), VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE (altitude).

b. USA*:* Reconfirm all pilot altitude read backs.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(If the altitude read back is correct),

AFFIRMATIVE (altitude).

(If the altitude read back is not correct),

NEGATIVE. CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

NEGATIVE. MAINTAIN (altitude).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-21. AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING

Inform an aircraft when you want it to turn on/off the automatic altitude reporting feature of its transponder.

PHRASEOLOGY-
SQUAWK ALTITUDE,

or

STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK.

NOTE-
Controllers should be aware that not all aircraft have a capability to disengage the altitude squawk independently from the beacon code squawk. On some aircraft both functions are controlled by the same switch.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT, Para 5-2-18.
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.
P/CG TERM-AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORT.

5-2-22. IN-FLIGHT DEVIATIONS FROM TRANSPONDER/MODE C REQUIREMENTS BETWEEN 10,000 FEET AND 18,000 FEET

Apply the following procedures to requests to deviate from the Mode C transponder requirement by aircraft operating in the airspace of the 48 contiguous states and the District of Columbia at and above 10,000 feet MSL and below 18,000 feet MSL, excluding the airspace at and below 2,500 feet AGL.

NOTE-
1 CFR Part 91.215(b) provides, in part, that all U.S. registered civil aircraft must be equipped with an operable, coded radar beacon transponder when operating in the altitude stratum listed above. Such transponders shall have a MODE 3/A 4096 code capability, replying to MODE 3/A interrogation with the code specified by ATC, or a MODE S capability, replying to MODE 3/A interrogations with the code specified by ATC. The aircraft must also be equipped with automatic pressure altitude reporting equipment having a MODE C capability

that automatically replies to MODE C interrogations by transmitting pressure altitude information in 100-foot increments.

2 *The exception to CFR 91.215 (b) is CFR 91.215 (b) (5) which states: except balloons, gliders, and aircraft without engine-driven electrical systems.*

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, TEMPORARY FLIGHT RESTRICTIONS, CHAPTER 19, SECTION 4.

a. Except in an emergency, do not approve inflight requests for authorization to deviate from CFR Part 91.215(b)(5)(i) requirements originated by aircraft without transponder equipment installed.

b. Approve or disapprove other in-flight deviation requests, or withdraw approval previously issued to such flights, solely on the basis of traffic conditions and other operational factors.

c. Adhere to the following sequence of action when an in-flight VFR deviation request is received from an aircraft with an inoperative transponder or Mode C, or is not Mode C equipped:

1. Suggest that the aircraft conduct its flight in airspace unaffected by the CFR's.

2. Suggest that the aircraft file an IFR flight plan.

3. Suggest that the aircraft provide a VFR route of flight and maintain radio contact with ATC.

d. Do not approve an in-flight deviation unless the aircraft has filed an IFR flight plan or a VFR route of flight is provided and radio contact with ATC is maintained.

e. You may approve an in-flight deviation request which includes airspace outside your jurisdiction without the prior approval of the adjacent ATC sector/facility providing a transponder/Mode C status report is forwarded prior to control transfer.

f. Approve or disapprove in-flight deviation requests within a reasonable period of time or advise when approval/disapproval can be expected.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-23. BEACON TERMINATION

Inform an aircraft when you want it to turn off its transponder.

PHRASEOLOGY-

STOP SQUAWK.

(For a military aircraft when you do not know if the military service requires that it continue operating on another mode),

STOP SQUAWK (mode in use).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS, Para 5-3-3.

5-2-24. ALTITUDE FILTERS

TERMINAL

Set altitude filters to display Mode C altitude readouts to encompass all altitudes within the controller's jurisdiction. Set the upper limits no lower than 1,000 feet above the highest altitude for which the controller is responsible. In those stratified positions, set the lower limit to 1,000 feet or more below the lowest altitude for which the controller is responsible. When the position's area of responsibility includes down to an airport field elevation, the facility will normally set the lower altitude filter limit to encompass the field elevation so that provisions of para 2-1-6, SAFETY ALERT, and para 5-2-18, VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT, subpara a.2. may be applied. Air traffic managers may authorize temporary suspension of this requirement when target clutter is excessive.

Section 3. RADAR IDENTIFICATION

5-3-1. APPLICATION

Before you provide radar service, establish and maintain radar identification of the aircraft involved, except as provided in para 5-5-1, APPLICATION, subparas b.2. and b.3.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS, Para 3-1-9.

5-3-2. PRIMARY RADAR IDENTIFICATION METHODS

Identify a primary or radar beacon target by using one of the following methods:

a. Observing a departing aircraft target within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end at airports with an operating control tower, provided one of the following methods of coordination is accomplished.

1. A verbal rolling/boundary notification is issued for each departure, or

2. A nonverbal rolling/boundary notification is used for each departure aircraft.

NOTE-
Nonverbal notification can be accomplished via the use of a manual or electronic "drop tube" or automation.

b. Observing a target whose position with respect to a fix (displayed on the video map, scribed on the map overlay, or displayed as a permanent echo) or a visual reporting point (whose range and azimuth from the radar antenna has been accurately determined and made available to the controller) corresponds with a direct position report received from an aircraft, and the observed track is consistent with the reported heading or route of flight. If a TACAN/VORTAC is located within 6,000 feet of the radar antenna, the TACAN/VORTAC may be used as a reference fix for radar identification without being displayed on the video map or map overlay.

NOTE-
1 *Establishment of radar identification through use of DME position information can be complicated by the fact that some military TACAN's are not collocated with frequency-paired VOR's and might be separated from them by as much as 31 miles.*

2 *Visual reporting points used for RADAR identification are limited to those most used by pilots and whose range and azimuth have been determined by supervisory personnel.*

c. Observing a target make an identifying turn or turns of 30 degrees or more, provided the following conditions are met:

NOTE-
Use of identifying turns or headings which would cause the aircraft to follow normal IFR routes or known VFR flight paths might result in misidentification. When these circumstances cannot be avoided, additional methods of identification may be necessary.

1. Except in the case of a lost aircraft, a pilot position report is received which assures you that the aircraft is within radar coverage and within the area being displayed.

2. Only one aircraft is observed making these turns.

3. For aircraft operating in accordance with an IFR clearance, you either issue a heading away from an area which will require an increased minimum IFR altitude or have the aircraft climb to the highest minimum altitude in your area of jurisdiction before you issue a heading.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS, Para 3-1-9.
FAAO 7110.65, SURVEILLANCE UNUSABLE, Para 5-12-10.

5-3-3. BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS

When using only Mode 3/A radar beacon to identify a target, use one of the following methods:

a. Request the aircraft to activate the "IDENT" feature of the transponder and then observe the identification display.

NOTE-
1 *At facilities where the single-slash "IDENT" modification is installed or other decoder modifications have been made which increase the number of "blooming" target displays, it will be necessary to exercise additional care to preclude the possibility of misidentification.*

2 ***TERMINAL:*** *When automated displays are operated in the analog mode, the "IDENT" return is displayed as a double slash and the emergency return as a single bloomer whenever the beacon control head is in the "fail" position.*

PHRASEOLOGY-
IDENT.
SQUAWK (code) AND IDENT.

b. Request the aircraft to change to a specific discrete or nondiscrete code, as appropriate, and then observe the target or code display change. If a code change is required in accordance with Section 2 of this Chapter, use the codes specified therein.

c. Request the aircraft to change transponder to "standby." After you observe the target disappear for sufficient scans to assure that loss of target resulted from placing the transponder in "standby" position, request the aircraft to return transponder to normal operation and then observe the reappearance of the target.

PHRASEOLOGY-
SQUAWK STANDBY,

then

SQUAWK NORMAL.

d. *EN ROUTE:* During narrowband operations, an aircraft may be considered identified when the full data block is automatically associated with the beacon target symbol of an aircraft that is squawking a discrete code assigned by the computer.

PHRASEOLOGY-
SQUAWK (4 digit discrete code), AND IF YOUR ALTITUDE REPORTING EQUIPMENT IS TURNED OFF, SQUAWK ALTITUDE.

NOTE-
The AIM informs pilots to adjust Mode C transponders with altitude reporting capability activated unless deactivation is requested by ATC. Squawk altitude is included to provide applicable phraseology.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS, Para 3-1-9.
FAAO 7110.65, POSITION INFORMATION, Para 5-3-6.

5-3-4. ARTS/PIDP IDENTIFICATION METHODS

TERMINAL

a. Consider an auto-acquired aircraft as identified when the data block is displayed and is visible to you, and one of the following conditions exist:

1. The radar or beacon identification procedures have been used to confirm the identity of the tagged target.

2. The aircraft is being handed off through use of NAS Stage A/ARTS, NAS Stage A/EARTS, NAS Stage A/PIDP, ARTS/ARTS, EARTS/ARTS, or EARTS/PIDP automated handoff and one of the following does not appear in the data block: "CST", "NAT", "NT", "AMB", "OLD", "NB", "TU", "AM" or "OL".

b. Use the ARTS/PIDP data block to maintain target identity unless it is in a coast status or displaced from the appropriate target.

c. A displaced data block shall be updated at all times.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS, Para 3-1-9.

5-3-5. QUESTIONABLE IDENTIFICATION

a. Use more than one method of identification when proximity of targets, duplication of observed action, or any other circumstances cause doubt as to target identification.

b. If identification is questionable for any reason, take immediate action to reidentify the aircraft or terminate radar service.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5-4-3.

5-3-6. POSITION INFORMATION

Inform an aircraft of its position whenever radar identification is established by means of identifying turns or by any of the beacon identification methods outlined in para 5-3-3, BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS. Position information need not be given when identification is established by position correlation or when a departing aircraft is identified within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.

5-3-7. IDENTIFICATION STATUS

a. Inform an aircraft of radar contact when:

1. Initial radar identification in the ATC system is established.

2. Subsequent to loss of radar contact or terminating radar service, radar identification is reestablished.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RADAR CONTACT (position if required).

b. Inform an aircraft when radar contact is lost.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RADAR CONTACT LOST (alternative instructions when required).

5-3-8. TARGET MARKERS

EN ROUTE

a. Use radar target markers (shrimp boats) on horizontal scopes to provide continuous target identity. Post flight identification and altitude when constant, on markers. Post miscellaneous items (abbreviated route, vector headings, arrows to indicate climb and descent, etc.) at your discretion. To prevent misinterpretation, use standard hand printed characters.

b. Automated Systems– Use data blocks that are associated with the appropriate target symbol to provide continuous identity. Display flight identification, interim altitude or assigned altitude if interim altitude is not being used, and reported altitude as minimum display. Interim/assigned altitude, reported altitude, or flight identification, or all may be temporarily inhibited in NAS En route Stage A to eliminate an existing data block overlap condition.

Section 4. TRANSFER OF RADAR IDENTIFICATION

5-4-1. APPLICATION

To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another. This section describes the terms, methods, and responsibilities associated with this task. Interfacility and intrafacility transfers of radar identification shall be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible. Where such constraints exist, they shall be:

a. Covered in letters of agreement which clearly state that control will not be based upon a radar handoff, or

b. Coordinated by the transferring and receiving controllers for a specified period of time.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, COORDINATION WITH RECEIVING FACILITY, Para 4-3-7.

5-4-2. TERMS

a. *Handoff–* An action taken to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another controller if the aircraft will enter the receiving controller's airspace and radio communications with the aircraft will be transferred.

b. *Radar Contact–* The term used to inform the controller initiating a handoff that the aircraft is identified and approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controller's airspace.

c. *Point Out–* A physical or automated action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller if the aircraft will or may enter the airspace or protected airspace of another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.

d. *Point Out Approved–* The term used to inform the controller initiating a point out that the aircraft is identified and that approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controller's airspace, as coordinated, without a communications transfer or the appropriate automated system response.

e. *Traffic–* A term used to transfer radar identification of an aircraft to another controller for the purpose of coordinating separation action. Traffic is normally issued (a) in response to a handoff or point out, (b) in anticipation of a handoff or point out, or (c) in conjunction with a request for control of an aircraft.

f. *Traffic Observed–* The term used to inform the controller issuing the traffic restrictions that the traffic is identified and that the restrictions issued are understood and will be complied with.

5-4-3. METHODS

a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods:

1. Physically point to the target on the receiving controller's display.

2. Use landline voice communications.

3. Use automation capabilities.

4. *TERMINAL:* Use the "Modify" or "Quick Look" functions for data transfer between the TRACON and tower cab only if specific procedures are established in a facility directive. The local controller has the responsibility to determine whether or not conditions are adequate for the use of ARTS data on the BRITE/DBRITE.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, USE OF ARTS MODIFY AND QUICK LOOK FUNCTIONS, Para 12-2-4.

5. *EN ROUTE:* EDARC/HOST or DARC/HOST have interfacility handoff capabilities that can be manually initiated and accepted through the Quick Action Keys (QAK), or used in automatic handoff mode as in HOST Stage A. DARC or EDARC do not have the capabilities for interfacility handoffs. Therefore, handoffs between facilities must be made via landline voice communications when operating in DARC or EDARC.

b. When making a handoff, point-out, or issuing traffic restrictions, relay information to the receiving controller in the following order:

1. The position of the target relative to a fix, map symbol, or radar target known and displayed by both the receiving and transferring controller. Mileage from the reference point may be omitted when relaying the position of a target if a full data block associated with the target has been forced on the receiving controller's radar display.

EXAMPLE–
"Point out, Southwest of Richmond VOR..."

2. The aircraft identification, as follows:

(a) The aircraft call sign, or

(b) The discrete beacon code of the aircraft during interfacility point-outs only, if both the receiving and the transferring controllers agree.

NOTE–
Acceptance of a point-out using the discrete beacon code as the aircraft's identification constitutes agreement.

3. The assigned altitude, appropriate restrictions, and information that the aircraft is climbing or descending, if applicable, except when inter/intrafacility directives ensure that the altitude information will be known by the receiving controller.

NOTE–
1 When physically pointing to the target, you do not have to state the aircraft position.

2 Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HANDOFF/POINT-OUT/TRAFFIC (aircraft position) (aircraft ID)

or

(discrete beacon code point-out only) (altitude, restrictions, and other appropriate information, if applicable).

c. When receiving a handoff, point-out, or traffic restrictions, respond to the transferring controller as follows:

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft ID) (restrictions, if applicable) RADAR CONTACT,

or

(aircraft id or discrete beacon code) (restrictions, if applicable) POINT-OUT APPROVED,

or

TRAFFIC OBSERVED,

OR

UNABLE (appropriate information, as required).

d. If any doubt as to target identification exists after attempting confirmation in accordance with this section, apply the provisions of para 5-3-5, QUESTIONABLE IDENTIFICATION.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT, Para 5-2-18.

5-4-4. TRAFFIC

a. When using the term "traffic" for coordinating separation, the controller issuing traffic shall issue appropriate restrictions.

b. The controller accepting the restrictions shall be responsible to ensure that approved separation is maintained between the involved aircraft.

5-4-5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

The transferring controller shall:

a. Complete a radar handoff prior to an aircraft's entering the airspace delegated to the receiving controller.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE, Para 2-1-14.
FAAO 7110.65, CONTROL TRANSFER, Para 2-1-15.
FAAO 7110.65, RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, Para 5-4-6.

b. Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance, unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

c. Ensure that, prior to transferring communications:

1. Potential violations of adjacent airspace and potential conflicts between aircraft in their own area of jurisdiction are resolved.

2. Necessary coordination has been accomplished with all controllers through whose area of jurisdiction the aircraft will pass prior to entering the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction, except when such coordination is the receiving controller's responsibility as stated in para 5-4-6, RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, and unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

3. Restrictions issued to ensure separation are passed to the receiving controller.

d. After transferring communications, continue to comply with the requirements of subparas c.1. and c.2.

e. Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.

f. Comply with the provisions of para 2-1-17, RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER, subparas a. and b. to the extent possible, transfer communications when the transfer of radar identification has been accepted.

NOTE-
Before the ARTS "modify/quick look" function is used to transfer radar identification, a facility directive which specifies communication transfer points is required.

g. Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or flight progress strip unless covered in a LOA or facility directive. Pertinent information includes:

1. Assigned heading.

2. Air speed restrictions.

3. Altitude information issued.

4. Observed track or deviation from the last route clearance.

5. The beacon code if different from that normally used or previously coordinated.

6. Any other pertinent information.

h. Ensure that the data block is associated with the appropriate target.

i. Initiate verbal coordination to verify the position of primary or nondiscrete targets when using the automated handoff functions except for intrafacility handoffs using single-sensor systems or multisensor systems operating in a mosaic RDP mode.

j. Initiate verbal coordination before transferring control of a track when "CST", "FAIL", "NONE", "NB", "NX", "IF" or "NT" is displayed in the data block.

k. Advise the receiving controller that radar monitoring is required when the aircraft is on a direct route initiated by ATC that exceeds usable NAVAID distances.

l. Issue restrictions to the receiving controller which are necessary to maintain separation from other aircraft within your area of jurisdiction before releasing control of the aircraft.

m. Consider the target being transferred as identified on the receiving controller's display when the receiving controller acknowledges receipt verbally or has accepted an automated handoff.

n. Accomplish the necessary coordination with any intervening controllers whose area of jurisdiction is affected by the receiving controller's delay in the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of your area of jurisdiction when the receiving controller advises you of that delay before accepting the transfer of radar identification unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

5-4-6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

The receiving controller shall:

a. Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an appropriate association between an automated data block and the target being transferred before accepting a handoff.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE, Para 2-1-14.
FAAO 7110.65, CONTROL TRANSFER, Para 2-1-15.
FAAO 7110.65, TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, Para 5-4-5.

b. Issue restrictions that are needed for the aircraft to enter your sector safely before accepting the handoff.

c. Comply with restrictions issued by the initiating controller unless otherwise coordinated.

d. Before you issue control instructions directly to an aircraft that is within another controller's area of jurisdiction that will change that aircraft's heading, route, speed, altitude, or beacon code, ensure that coordination has been accomplished with each of the controllers listed below whose area of jurisdiction is affected by those instructions unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive:

NOTE-
Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

1. The controller within whose area of jurisdiction the control instructions will be issued.

2. Any intervening controller(s) through whose area of jurisdiction the aircraft will pass.

e. After accepting a handoff from another controller, confirm the identity of primary target by advising the aircraft of its position, and of a beacon target by observing a code change, an "ident" reply, or a "standby" squawk unless one of these was used during handoff. These provisions do not apply at those towers and GCA's which have been delegated the responsibility for providing radar separation within designated areas by the parent approach control facility and the aircraft identification is assured by sequencing or positioning prior to the handoff.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5–9–5.

f. When using appropriate equipment, consider a discrete beacon target's identity to be confirmed when:

1. The data block associated with the target being handed off indicates the computer assigned discrete beacon code is being received, or

2. You observe the deletion of a discrete code that was displayed in the data block, or

NOTE–
When the aircraft generated discrete beacon code does not match the computer assigned beacon code, the code generated will be displayed in the data block. When the aircraft changes to the assigned discrete code, the code disappears from the data block. In this instance, the observance of code removal from the data block satisfies confirmation requirements.

3. You observe the numeric display of a discrete code that an aircraft has been instructed to squawk or reports squawking.

g. Initiate verbal coordination prior to accepting control of a track when "CST", "NAT", "NT", "NONE", "NB", "NX", "OLD", "OL", "AMB", "AM" or "TU" is displayed in the data block.

1. When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "AMB" or "AM" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your ARTS/PIDP system.

2. When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "NAT," "NT," or "TU" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility if a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and the actual target position.

h. Advise the transferring controller, prior to accepting the transfer of radar identification, that you will delay the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, unless otherwise specified in a LOA or a facility directive.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

i. If you decide, *after* accepting the transfer of radar identification, to delay the aircraft's climb or descent through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, advise the transferring controller of that decision as soon as possible. *You* now have the responsibility to ensure that the necessary coordination is accomplished with any intervening controller(s) whose area of jurisdiction is affected by that delay, unless otherwise specified in a LOA or a facility directive.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

5–4–7. POINT OUT

a. The transferring controller shall:

1. Obtain verbal approval before permitting an aircraft to enter the receiving controller's delegated airspace. *TERMINAL:* Automated approval may be utilized in lieu of verbal, provided the appropriate ARTS software is operational (automated point out function), and the procedures are specified in a facility directive/ LOA.

2. Obtain the receiving controller's approval before making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information after the point out has been approved.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

3. Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.

4. Be responsible for subsequent radar handoffs and communications transfer, including flight data revisions and coordination, unless otherwise agreed to by the receiving controller or as specified in a LOA.

b. The receiving controller shall:

1. Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an association between a computer data block and the target being transferred prior to approving a point out.

2. Be responsible for separation between point out aircraft and other aircraft for which he/she has separation responsibility.

3. Issue restrictions necessary to provide separation from other aircraft within his/her area of jurisdiction.

5-4-8. AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER (AIT)

Transfer radar identification and/or altitude control without verbal coordination under the following conditions:

a. During radar handoff, and;

b. Via information displayed in full data blocks, and;

c. Within the same facility, except as provided in para 5-4-9, INTERFACILITY AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER, and;

d. When following procedures specified in your facility AIT directive.

5-4-9. INTERFACILITY AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER

EN ROUTE

Transfer radar identification without verbal coordination under the following conditions:

a. During radar handoff, and;

b. Via information displayed in full data blocks, and;

c. On aircraft at assigned altitude in level flight, and;

d. Only the first sector within the receiving facility shall utilize the procedure, and;

e. When following procedures specified in your facility AIT directive and LOA.

Section 5. RADAR SEPARATION

5-5-1. APPLICATION

a. Radar separation shall be applied to all RNAV aircraft operating on a random (impromptu) route at or below FL 450.

b. Radar separation may be applied between:

1. Radar identified aircraft.

2. An aircraft taking off and another radar identified aircraft when the aircraft taking off will be radar-identified within 1 mile of the runway end.

3. A radar-identified aircraft and one not radar-identified when either is cleared to climb/descend through the altitude of the other provided:

(a) The performance of the radar system is adequate and, as a minimum, primary radar targets or ASR-9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol targets are being displayed on the display being used within the airspace within which radar separation is being applied, and

(b) Flight data on the aircraft not radar-identified indicate it is a type which can be expected to give adequate primary/ASR-9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol return in the area where separation is applied, and

(c) The airspace within which radar separation is applied is not less than the following number of miles from the edge of the radar display:

(1) When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *6 miles;*

(2) When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *10 miles*;

(3) Narrowband radar operations– *10 miles* and

(d) Radar separation is maintained between the radar-identified aircraft and all observed primary, ASR-9/ Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol, and secondary radar targets until nonradar separation is established from the aircraft not radar identified, and

(e) When the aircraft involved are on the same relative heading, the radar-identified aircraft is vectored a sufficient distance from the route of the aircraft not radar identified to assure the targets are not superimposed prior to issuing the clearance to climb/descend.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 4-1-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE USE, Para 4-4-1.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5-3-1.
FAAO 7110.65, ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS, Para 5-5-7.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5-9-5.

5-5-2. TARGET SEPARATION

Apply radar separation:

a. Between the centers of primary radar targets; however, do not allow a primary target to touch another primary target or a beacon control slash.

b. Between the ends of beacon control slashes.

NOTE–
At TPX-42 sites, the bracket video feature must be activated to display the beacon control slash.

c. Between the end of a beacon control slash and the center of a primary target.

d. All-digital displays: Between the centers of digitized targets. Do not allow targets to touch.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES-DUAL & TRIPLE, Para 5-9-7.

5-5-3. MINIMA

Separate aircraft by the following minima:

NOTE–
Wake turbulence procedures specify increased separation minima required for certain classes of aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

a. Broadband Radar System or ASR-9/Full Digital Terminal Radar System:

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles.*

EN ROUTE

b. Stage A/DARC and EARTS Mosaic Mode:

NOTE–
Mosaic Mode combines radar input from 3 to 15 sites into a single picture utilizing a mosaic grid composed of radar sort boxes.

1. Below FL 600– *5 miles.*

2. At or above FL 600– *10 miles.*

3. Within 40 miles of the antenna and below FL 180– Facility directives may specify 3 miles.

NOTE–
Where a significant operational advantage is obtained by modifying a radar site adaptation to single site coverage, facility directives are required to define the areas where 3–mile separation applies.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, SINGLE SITE COVERAGE STAGE A OPERATIONS, Para 9–2–1.

4. When transitioning from terminal to en route control, 3 miles increasing to 5 miles or greater, provided:

(a) The aircraft are on diverging routes/courses, and/or,

(b) The leading aircraft is and will remain faster than the following aircraft, and,

(c) Separation constantly increasing and the first center controller will establish 5 NM or other appropriate form of separation prior to the aircraft departing the first center sector, and,

(d) The procedure is covered by a letter of agreement between the facilities involved and limited to specified routes and/or sectors/positions.

c. EARTS Sensor Mode:

NOTE–
1 Sensor mode displays information from the radar input of a single site.
2 Procedures to convert EARTS Mosaic Mode to EARTS Sensor Mode at each PVD will be established by facility directive.

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles.*

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

d. Separate aircraft operating directly behind, or directly behind and less than 1,000 feet below, or following an aircraft conducting an instrument approach by:

NOTE–
Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

1. Heavy behind heavy– *4 miles.*

2. Large/heavy behind B757– *4 miles.*

3. Small behind B757– *5 miles.*

4. Small/large behind heavy – *5 miles.*

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

e. *TERMINAL:* In addition to subpara d., separate an aircraft landing behind another aircraft on the same runway, or one making a touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach by ensuring the following minima will exist at the time the preceding aircraft is over the landing threshold:

NOTE–
Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

1. Small behind large– *4 miles.*

2. Small behind B757– *5 miles.*

3. Small behind heavy– *6 miles.*

f. TERMINAL: 2.5 nautical miles (NM) separation is authorized between aircraft established on the final approach course within 10 NM of the landing runway when:

1. The leading aircraft's weight class is the same or less than the trailing aircraft;

2. Heavy aircraft and the Boeing 757 are permitted to participate in the separation reduction as the trailing aircraft only;

3. An average runway occupancy time of 50 seconds or less is documented;

4. DBRITE/BRITE/TCDD displays are operational and used for quick glance references;

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS, Para 3–1–9.

5. Turnoff points are visible from the control tower.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE, Para 2–1–19.
FAAO 7110.65, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION, Para 3–9–6.
FAAO 7110.65, PASSING OR DIVERGING, Para 5–5–6.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS, Para 5–5–8.
FAAO 7110.65, SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES, Para 5–8–3.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5–9–5.
FAAO 7110.65, SEQUENCING, Para 7–6–7.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7–7–3.
FAAO 7110.65 SEPARATION, Para 7–8–3.
FAAO 7210.3, REDUCED SEPARATION ON FINAL, Para 11–4–7.

5–5–4. VERTICAL APPLICATION

Aircraft not laterally separated, may be vertically separated by one of the following methods:

a. Assign altitudes to aircraft, provided valid Mode C altitude information is monitored and the applicable separation minima is maintained at all times.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA, Para 4–5–1.
FAAO 7110.65, VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUTS, Para 5–2–18.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7–7–3.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7–8–3.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7–9–4.

b. Assign an altitude to an aircraft after the aircraft previously at that altitude has been issued a climb/descent clearance and is observed (valid Mode C), or reports leaving the altitude.

NOTE–
1 *Consider known aircraft performance characteristics, pilot furnished and/or Mode C detected information which indicate that climb/descent will not be consistent with the rates recommended in the AIM.*

2 *It is possible that the separation minima described in para 4–5–1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA, para 7–7–3, SEPARATION, para 7–8–3, SEPARATION, or para 7–9–4, SEPARATION, might not always be maintained using subpara b. However, correct application of this procedure will ensure that aircraft are safely separated because the first aircraft must have already vacated the altitude prior to the assignment of that altitude to the second aircraft.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PROCEDURAL PREFERENCE, Para 2–1–3.
FAAO 7110.65, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA, Para 4–5–1.
FAAO 7110.65, VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUTS, Para 5–2–18.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 6–6–1.

5–5–5. EXCEPTIONS

a. Do not use Mode C to effect vertical separation with an aircraft on a cruise clearance, contact approach, or as specified in para 5–15–4, SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS, subpara e.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 6–6–2.
FAAO 7110.65, CONTACT APPROACH, Para 7–4–6.
P/CG TERM–CRUISE.

b. Assign an altitude to an aircraft only after the aircraft previously at that altitude is observed at or passing through another altitude separated from the first by the appropriate minima when:

1. Severe turbulence is reported.

2. Aircraft are conducting military aerial refueling.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING, Para 9–3–10.

3. The aircraft previously at that altitude has been issued a climb/descent at pilot's discretion.

5–5–6. PASSING OR DIVERGING

a. *TERMINAL:* Vertical separation between aircraft may be discontinued when the following conditions are met:

1. Aircraft are on opposite/reciprocal courses and you have observed that they have passed each other or; aircraft are on same or crossing courses and one aircraft has crossed the projected course of the other and the angular difference between their courses is at least 15 degrees.

2. The tracks are monitored to ensure that the primary targets, beacon control slashes, or full digital terminal system primary and/ or beacon target symbols will not touch.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, COURSE DEFINITIONS, Para 1–2–2.

b. *EN ROUTE:* Vertical separation between aircraft may be discontinued when they are on opposite courses as defined in para 1–2–2, COURSE DEFINITIONS; and:

1. You are in communications with both aircraft involved; and

2. You tell the pilot of one aircraft about the other aircraft, including position, direction, type; and

3. One pilot reports having seen the other aircraft and that the aircraft have passed each other; and

4. You have observed that the radar targets have passed each other; and

5. You have advised the pilots if either aircraft is classified as a heavy jet/B757 aircraft.

6. Although vertical separation may be discontinued, the requirements of para 5–5–3, MINIMA, subparas d. and e. must be applied when operating behind a heavy jet/B757.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, twelve o'clock, Boeing Seven Twenty Seven, opposite direction. Do you have it in sight?"

(If the answer is in the affirmative):

"Report passing the traffic."

(When pilot reports passing the traffic and the radar targets confirm that the traffic has passed, issue appropriate control instructions.)

5-5-7. ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS

Because of the distance allowed between formation aircraft and lead aircraft, additional separation is necessary to ensure the periphery of the formation is adequately separated from other aircraft, adjacent airspace, or obstructions. Provide supplemental separation for formation flights as follows:

a. Separate a standard formation flight by adding 1 mile to the appropriate radar separation minima.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, FORMATION FLIGHTS, Para 2-1-13.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5-5-1.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-7-3.
P/CG TERM-FORMATION FLIGHT.

b. Separate two standard formation flights from each other by adding 2 miles to the appropriate separation minima.

c. Separate a nonstandard formation flight by applying the appropriate separation minima to the perimeter of the airspace encompassing the nonstandard formation or from the outermost aircraft of the nonstandard formation whichever applies.

d. If necessary for separation between a nonstandard formation and other aircraft, assign an appropriate beacon code to each aircraft in the formation or to the first and last aircraft in-trail.

NOTE-
The additional separation provided in para 5-5-7, ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS, is not normally added to wake turbulence separation when a formation is following a heavier aircraft since none of the formation aircraft are likely to be closer to the heavier aircraft than the lead aircraft (to which the prescribed wake turbulence separation has been applied).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING, Para 9-3-10.

5-5-8. SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS

a. Except in En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, separate aircraft from prominent obstructions depicted on the radar scope (displayed on the video/geo map, scribed on the map overlay, or displayed as a permanent echo) by the following minima:

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna- *3 miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna- *5 miles.*

b. Except in En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, vertical separation of aircraft above a prominent obstruction displayed as a permanent echo may be discontinued after the aircraft has passed it.

c. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, apply the radar separation minima specified in para 5-5-3, MINIMA, subpara b.1.

NOTE-
The determination of what constitutes a prominent obstruction is made locally after coordination with appropriate flight standards representatives. Prominent obstructions shall be displayed as permanent echoes on the radar display using parrots, MTI reflectors, or RTQC symbols. Digital map mark (DMM) may be used to mark obstructions. DMM's are not to be used alone for map alignment but in conjunction with one or more of the permanent echo marking devices. When RTQC alone is used for obstruction marking, it shall be certified by airway facilities per the appropriate certification manual.

5-5-9. ADJACENT AIRSPACE

a. If coordination between the controllers concerned has not been effected, separate radar-controlled aircraft from the boundary of adjacent airspace in which radar separation is also being used by the following minima:

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE, Para 2-1-14.

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna- *1 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna- *2 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles.*

3. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

(a) Below Flight Level 600- *2 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles.*

(b) Flight Level 600 and above- *5 miles.*

b. Separate radar-controlled aircraft from the boundary of airspace in which nonradar separation is being used by the following minima:

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna- *3 miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna- *5 miles.*

3. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

(a) Below Flight Level 600- *5 miles.*

(b) Flight Level 600 and above- *10 miles.*

c. The provisions of subparas a. and b. do not apply to VFR aircraft being provided Class B, Class C or TRSA services. Ensure that the targets of these aircraft do not touch the boundary of adjacent airspace.

d. VFR aircraft approaching Class B, Class C, Class D or TRSA airspace which is under the control jurisdiction of another air traffic control facility should either be provided with a radar handoff or be advised that radar service is terminated, given their position in relation to the Class B, Class C, Class D or TRSA airspace, and the ATC frequency, if known, for the airspace to be entered. These actions should be accomplished in sufficient time for the pilot to obtain the required ATC approval prior to entering the airspace involved, or to avoid the airspace.

5-5-10. EDGE OF SCOPE

Separate a radar-controlled aircraft climbing or descending through the altitude of an aircraft that has been tracked to the edge of the scope/display by the following minima until nonradar separation has been established:

a. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles* from edge of scope.

b. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles* from edge of scope.

c. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

1. Below Flight Level 600– *5 miles.*

2. Flight Level 600 and above– *10 miles.*

5-5-11. BEACON TARGET DISPLACEMENT

When using a radar target display with a previously specified beacon target displacement to separate a beacon target from a primary target, adjacent airspace, obstructions, or terrain, add a 1 mile correction factor to the applicable minima. The maximum allowable beacon target displacement which may be specified by the facility Air Traffic Manager is $^1/_2$ mile.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, MONITORING OF MODE 3/A RADAR BEACON CODES, Para 3-7-4.

5-5-12. GPA 102/103 CORRECTION FACTOR

When using a radar display whose primary radar video is processed by the GPA 102/103 modification to a joint-use radar system, apply the following correction factors to the applicable minima:

a. If less than 40 miles from the antenna– add *1 mile.*

b. If 40 miles or more but not over 200 miles from the antenna– add *3 miles.*

Section 6. VECTORING

5-6-1. APPLICATION

Vector aircraft:

a. In controlled airspace for separation, safety, noise abatement, operational advantage, or when a pilot requests. Allow aircraft operating on an RNAV route to remain on their own navigation to the extent possible.

b. In Class G airspace only upon pilot request and as an additional service.

c. At or above the MVA or the minimum IFR altitude except as authorized for radar approaches, special VFR, VFR operations, or by para 5-6-3, VECTORS BELOW MINIMUM ALTITUDE.

NOTE-
VFR aircraft not at an altitude assigned by ATC may be vectored at any altitude. It is the responsibility of the pilot to comply with the applicable parts of CFR Title 14.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES, Para 4-5-6.
FAAO 7110.65, PRIORITY, Para 7-5-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT, Para 7-5-4.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS,, Para 7-7-5.
CFR PART 91.119. MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDES: GENERAL.

d. In airspace for which you have control jurisdiction, unless otherwise coordinated.

e. So as to permit it to resume its own navigation within radar coverage.

f. Operating special VFR only within Class B, C, D, or E surface areas.

g. Operating VFR at those locations where a special program is established, or when a pilot requests, or you suggest and the pilot concurs.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE USE, Para 4-4-1.
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-5-3.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7-6-1.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION MINIMA, Para 9-5-4.
FAAO 7210.3, CHAPTER 12, SECTION 1, TERMINAL VFR RADAR SERVICES.

5-6-2. METHODS

a. Vector aircraft by specifying:

1. Direction of turn, if appropriate, and magnetic heading to be flown, or

PHRASEOLOGY-
TURN LEFT / RIGHT HEADING (degrees).

FLY HEADING (degrees).

FLY PRESENT HEADING.

DEPART (fix) HEADING (degrees).

2. The number of degrees, in group form, to turn and the direction of turn, or

PHRASEOLOGY-
TURN (number of degrees) DEGREES LEFT / RIGHT.

3. For NO-GYRO procedures, the type of vector, direction of turn, and when to stop turn.

PHRASEOLOGY-
THIS WILL BE A NO-GYRO VECTOR,

TURN LEFT / RIGHT.

STOP TURN.

b. When initiating a vector, advise the pilot of the purpose.

PHRASEOLOGY-
VECTOR TO (fix or airway).

VECTOR TO INTERCEPT (name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.

VECTOR FOR SPACING.

VECTOR TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE,

or if the pilot does not have knowledge of the type of approach,

VECTOR TO (approach name) FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

NOTE-
Determine optimum routing based on factors such as wind, weather, traffic, pilot requests, noise abatement, adjacent sector requirement, and letters of agreement.

c. Issue with the vector an altitude to maintain and all appropriate altitude restrictions when:

1. The vector will take the aircraft off an assigned procedure which contains altitude instructions, i.e., instrument approach, nonradar SID, FMSP, etc.

2. The previously issued clearance included crossing restrictions.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS, Para 4-2-5.

d. If appropriate, advise the pilot what to expect when the vector is completed.

PHRASEOLOGY-
EXPECT TO RESUME (Route, SID, STAR, FMSP, etc.).

NOTE–
You must ensure that the pilot is made aware if he is expected to resume a previously issued route / procedure.

e. Provide radar navigational guidance until the aircraft is:

1. Established within the airspace to be protected for the nonradar route to be flown, or

2. On a heading that will, within a reasonable distance, intercept the nonradar route to be flown, and

3. Informed of its position unless the aircraft is RNAV, FMS, or DME equipped and being vectored toward a VORTAC/TACAN or waypoint and within the service volume of the NAVAID.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Position with respect to course / fix along route), RESUME OWN NAVIGATION,

or

FLY HEADING (degrees). WHEN ABLE, PROCEED DIRECT (name of fix),

or

RESUME (name / number FMSP / SID / transition / STAR / procedure).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, Chapter 4., Section 1. NAVAID USE LIMITATIONS.

f. Aircraft instructed to resume a procedure which contains restrictions (SID / STAR / FMSP, etc.) shall be issued / reissued all applicable restrictions or shall be advised to comply with those restrictions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RESUME (name / number FMSP / SID / transition / STAR), COMPLY WITH RESTRICTIONS.

g. Aircraft vectored off an RNAV route shall be recleared to the next waypoint or as requested by the pilot.

h. During stage A operation, update the route of flight in the computer unless an operational advantage is gained and coordination is accomplished.

i. Inform the pilot when a vector will take the aircraft across a previously assigned nonradar route.

PHRASEOLOGY–
EXPECT VECTOR ACROSS (NAVAID radial)(airway / route / course) FOR (purpose).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7–6–1.

5–6–3. VECTORS BELOW MINIMUM ALTITUDE

Except in en route automated environments in areas where more than 3 miles separation minima is required, you may vector a departing IFR aircraft, or one executing a missed approach, within 40 miles of the antenna and before it reaches the minimum altitude for IFR operations if separation from prominent obstructions shown on the radar scope is applied in accordance with the following:

a. If the flight path is 3 miles or more from the obstruction and the aircraft is climbing to an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the obstruction, vector the aircraft to maintain at least 3 miles separation from the obstruction until the aircraft reports leaving an altitude above the obstruction.

b. If the flight path is less than 3 miles from the obstruction, and the aircraft is climbing to an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the obstruction, vector the aircraft to increase lateral separation from the obstruction until the 3 mile minimum is achieved or until the aircraft reports leaving an altitude above the obstruction.

c. At those locations where diverse vector areas (DVA) have been established, terminal radar facilities may vector aircraft below the MVA / MIA within those areas and along those routes described in facility directives.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, ESTABLISHING DIVERSE VECTOR AREA/S (DVA), Para 3–9–5.

Section 7. SPEED ADJUSTMENT

5-7-1. APPLICATION

Keep speed adjustments to the minimum necessary to achieve or maintain required or desired spacing. Avoid adjustments requiring alternate decreases and increases. Permit pilots to resume normal speed when previously specified adjustments are no longer needed.

NOTE-
It is the pilot's responsibility and prerogative to refuse speed adjustment that he considers excessive or contrary to the aircraft's operating specifications.

a. Consider the following when applying speed control:

1. Determine the interval required and the point at which the interval is to be accomplished.

2. Implement speed adjustment based on the following principles.

(a) Priority of speed adjustment instructions is determined by the relative speed and position of the aircraft involved and the spacing requirement.

(b) Speed adjustments are not achieved instantaneously. Aircraft configuration, altitudes, and speed determine the time and distance required to accomplish the adjustment.

3. Use the following techniques in speed control situations:

(a) Compensate for compression when assigning air speed adjustment in an in-trail situation by using one of the following techniques:

(1) Reduce the trailing aircraft first.

(2) Increase the leading aircraft first.

(b) Assign a specific airspeed if required to maintain spacing.

(c) Allow increased time and distance to achieve speed adjustments in the following situations:

(1) Higher altitudes.

(2) Greater speed.

(3) Clean configurations.

(d) Ensure that aircraft are allowed to operate in a clean configuration as long as circumstances permit.

(e) Keep the number of speed adjustments per aircraft to the minimum required to achieve and maintain spacing.

b. Do not assign speed adjustment to aircraft:

1. At or above FL 390 without pilot consent.

2. Executing a published high altitude instrument approach procedure.

3. In a holding pattern.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS, Para 4-6-4.

4. Inside the final approach fix on final or a point 5 miles from the runway, whichever is closer to the runway.

c. At the time approach clearance is issued, previously issued speed adjustments shall be restated if required.

d. Approach clearances cancel any previously assigned speed adjustment. Pilots are expected to make their own speed adjustments to complete the approach unless the adjustments are restated.

e. Express speed adjustments in terms of knots based on indicated airspeed (IAS) in 10-knot increments. At or above FL 240, speeds may be expressed in terms of Mach numbers in 0.01 increments for turbojet aircraft with Mach meters (i.e., Mach 0.69, 0.70, 0.71, etc.).

NOTE-
1 *Pilots complying with speed adjustment instructions should maintain a speed within plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed.*

2 *When assigning speeds to achieve spacing between aircraft at different altitudes, consider that ground speed may vary with altitude. Further speed adjustment may be necessary to attain the desired spacing.*

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5-7-2.

5-7-2. METHODS

a. Instruct aircraft to:

1. Maintain present/specific speed.

2. Maintain specified speed or greater/less.

3. Maintain the highest/lowest practical speed.

4. Increase or reduce to a specified speed or by a specified number of knots.

PHRASEOLOGY-
SAY AIRSPEED.

SAY MACH NUMBER.

MAINTAIN PRESENT SPEED.

MAINTAIN (specific speed) KNOTS.

MAINTAIN (specific speed) KNOTS OR GREATER.

DO NOT EXCEED (speed) KNOTS.

MAINTAIN MAXIMUM FORWARD SPEED.

MAINTAIN SLOWEST PRACTICAL SPEED.

INCREASE/REDUCE SPEED:

TO (specified speed in knots),

or

TO MACH (Mach number),

or

(number of knots) KNOTS.

EXAMPLE-
"Increase speed to Mach point seven two."
"Reduce speed to two five zero."
"Reduce speed twenty knots."
"Maintain two eight zero knots."
"Maintain maximum forward speed."

NOTE-
1 A pilot operating at or above 10,000 feet MSL on an assigned speed adjustment greater than 250 knots is expected to comply with CFR Part 91.117(a) when cleared below 10,000 feet MSL, within domestic airspace, without notifying ATC. Pilots are expected to comply with the other provisions of CFR Part 91.117 without notification.

2 Speed restrictions of 250 knots do not apply to aircraft operating beyond 12 NM from the coastline within the U.S. Flight Information Region, in offshore Class E airspace below 10,000 feet MSL. However, in airspace underlying a Class B airspace area designated for an airport, or in a VFR corridor designated through such as a Class B airspace area, pilots are expected to comply with the 200 knot speed limit specified in CFR 91.117 (c) (See CFR Sections 91.117 (c) and 91.703.)

3 The phrases "maintain maximum forward speed" and "maintain slowest practical speed" are primarily intended for use when sequencing a group of aircraft. As the sequencing plan develops, it may be necessary to determine the specific speed and/or make specific speed assignments.

b. To obtain pilot concurrence for a speed adjustment at or above FL 390, as required by para 5-7-1, APPLICATION, use the following phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Speed adjustment), IF UNABLE ADVISE.

EXAMPLE-
"Reduce speed to one niner zero, if unable advise."

c. Simultaneous speed reduction and descent can be extremely difficult, particularly for turbojet aircraft. Specifying which action is to be accomplished first removes any doubt the pilot may have as to controller intent or priority. Specify which action is expected first when combining speed reduction with a descent clearance.

1. Speed reductions prior to descent.

PHRASEOLOGY-
REDUCE SPEED:

TO (specified speed),

or

(number of knots) KNOTS.

THEN, DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

2. Speed reduction following descent.

PHRASEOLOGY-
DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

THEN, REDUCE SPEED:

TO (specified speed in knots),

or

TO MACH (Mach number),

or

(number of knots) KNOTS.

NOTE-
When specifying descent prior to speed reduction, consider the maximum speed requirements specified in CFR Part 91.117. It may be necessary for the pilot to level off temporarily and reduce speed prior to descending below 10,000 feet MSL.

d. Specify combined speed/altitude fix crossing restrictions.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CROSS (fix) AT AND MAINTAIN (altitude) AT (specified speed) KNOTS.

EXAMPLE–
"Cross Robinsville at and maintain six thousand at two three zero knots."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, NUMBERS USAGE, Para 2–4–17.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE INFORMATION, Para 4–5–7.

5–7–3. MINIMA

Unless a pilot concurs in the use of a lower speed, use the following minima:

a. To aircraft operating between FL 280 and 10,000 feet, a speed not less than 250 knots or the equivalent Mach number.

NOTE–
On a standard day the Mach numbers equivalent to 250 knots CAS (subject to minor variations) are:
FL 240–0.6
FL 250–0.61
FL 260–0.62
FL 270–0.64
FL 280–0.65
FL 290–0.66.

b. To arrival aircraft operating below 10,000 feet:

1. Turbojet aircraft– A speed not less than 210 knots; except when the aircraft is within 20 flying miles of the runway threshold of the airport of intended landing, a speed not less than 170 knots.

2. Reciprocating engine and turboprop aircraft– A speed not less than 200 knots; except when the aircraft is within 20 flying miles of the runway threshold of the airport of intended landing, a speed not less than 150 knots.

c. Departures:

1. Turbojet aircraft– A speed not less than 230 knots.

2. Reciprocating engine and turboprop aircraft– A speed not less than 150 knots.

d. Helicopters– A speed not less than 60 knots.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 5–7–2.

5–7–4. TERMINATION

Advise aircraft when speed adjustment is no longer needed.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RESUME NORMAL SPEED.

Section 8. RADAR DEPARTURES

5-8-1. PROCEDURES

Use standard departure routes and channelized altitudes whenever practical to reduce coordination. Do not, however, assign these routes solely to provide for possible radar or communication failure.

5-8-2. INITIAL HEADING

Before departure, assign the initial heading to be flown if a departing aircraft is to be vectored immediately after takeoff.

PHRASEOLOGY-
FLY RUNWAY HEADING.
TURN LEFT/RIGHT, HEADING (degrees).

NOTE-
TERMINAL: A purpose for the heading is not necessary, since pilots operating in a radar environment associate assigned headings with vectors to their planned route of flight.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE CLEARANCES, Para 4-3-2.
FAAO 7110.65, VECTORS BELOW MINIMUM ALTITUDE, Para 5-6-3.

5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES

TERMINAL

Separate aircraft departing from the same airport/heliport or adjacent airports/heliports in accordance with the following minima provided radar identification with the aircraft will be established within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end/helipad and courses will diverge by 15 degrees or more.

NOTE-
1 FAAO 8260.19, Flight Procedures and Airspace, establishes guidelines for IFR departure turning procedures which assumes a climb to 400 feet above the airport elevation before a turn is commenced. FAAO 8260.3, TERPS, the ILS missed approach criteria, requires a straight climb of 400 feet be specified where turns greater than 15 degrees are required.

2 Consider known aircraft performance characteristics when applying initial separation to successive departing aircraft.

3 When one or both of the departure surfaces is a helipad, use the takeoff course of the helicopter as a reference, comparable to the centerline of a runway and the helipad center as the threshold.

a. Between aircraft departing the same runway/helipad or parallel runways/helicopter takeoff courses separated by less than 2,500 feet- *1 mile* if courses diverge immediately after departure.
(See FIG 5-8-1, FIG 5-8-2, and FIG 5-8-3.)

Successive Departures

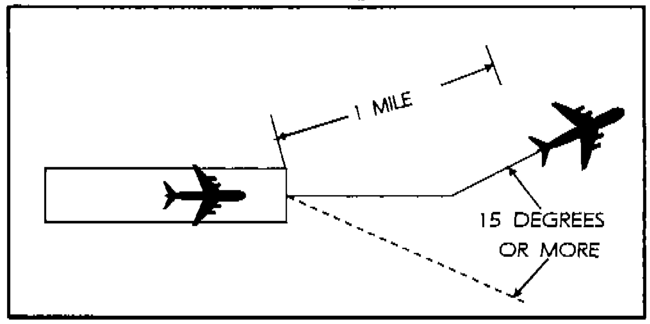


FIG 5-8-1

Simultaneous Departures

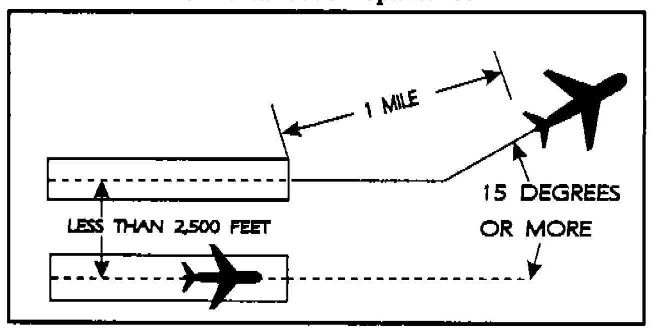


FIG 5-8-2

Simultaneous Departures

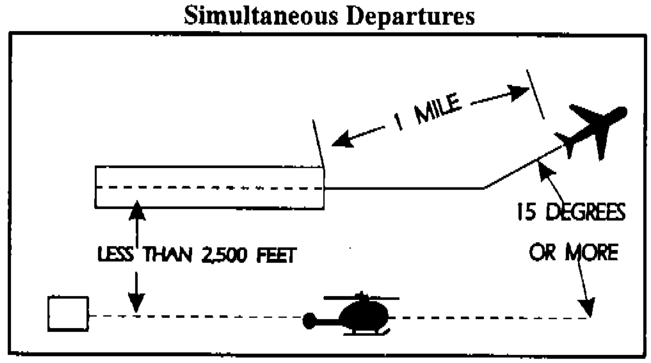


FIG 5-8-3

NOTE-
This procedure does not apply when a small aircraft is taking off from an intersection on the same runway behind a large aircraft or when an aircraft is departing behind a heavy jet/B757.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES, Para 3-9-7.
FAAO 7110.65, INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION, Para 3-9-8.
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMA, Para 5-5-3.

b. Between aircraft departing from diverging runways:

1. Nonintersecting runways: authorize simultaneous takeoffs if runways diverge by 15 degrees or more. (See FIG 5-8-4.)

Nonintersecting Runway Departures

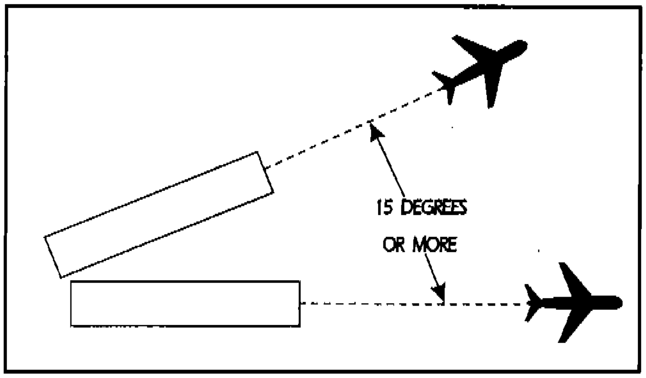


FIG 5-8-4

2. Intersecting runways and/or helicopter takeoff courses which diverge by 15 degrees or more: authorize takeoff of a succeeding aircraft when the preceding aircraft has passed the point of runway and/or takeoff course intersection. When applicable, apply the procedure in para 3-9-5, ANTICIPATING SEPARATION. (See FIG 5-8-5 and FIG 5-8-6.)

Intersecting Runway Departures

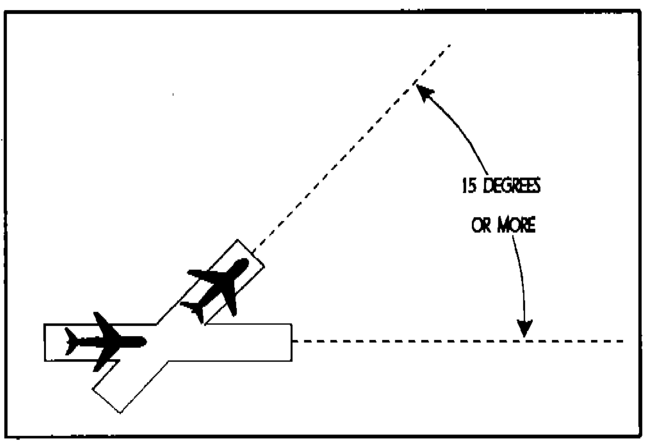


FIG 5-8-5

NOTE-
This procedure does not apply when aircraft are departing behind a heavy jet/B757.

c. Between aircraft departing in the same direction from parallel runways/helicopter takeoff courses: authorize simultaneous takeoffs if the centerlines/takeoff courses are separated by at least 2,500 feet and courses diverge by 15 degrees or more immediately after departure. (See FIG 5-8-7 and FIG 5-8-8.)

Intersecting Helicopter Course Departures

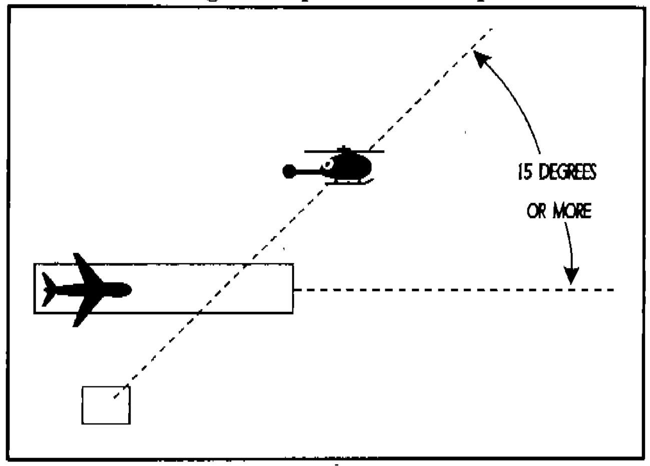


FIG 5-8-6

Parallel Runway Departures

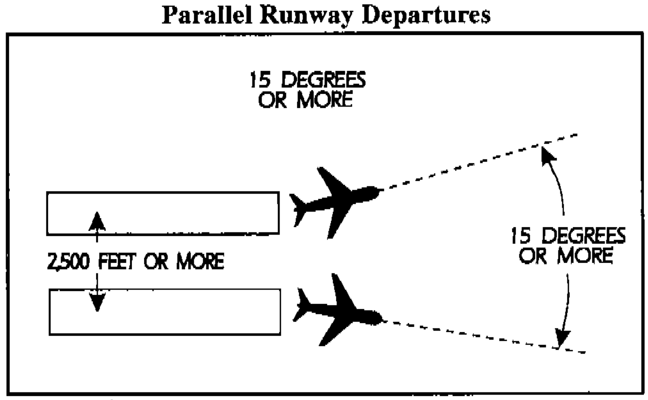


FIG 5-8-7

Parallel Helicopter Course Departures

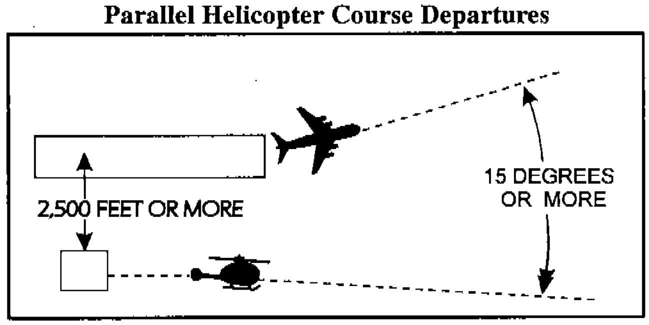


FIG 5-8-8

5-8-4. DEPARTURE AND ARRIVAL

TERMINAL: Except as provided in para 5–8–5, DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS, separate a departing aircraft from an arriving aircraft on final approach by a minimum of *2 miles* if separation will increase to a minimum of 3 miles (5 miles when 40 miles or more from the antenna) within 1 minute after takeoff.

NOTE–

1 This procedure permits a departing aircraft to be released so long as an arriving aircraft is no closer than 2 miles from the runway at the time. This separation is determined at the time the departing aircraft commences takeoff roll.

2 Consider the effect surface conditions, such as ice, snow, and other precipitation, may have on known aircraft performance characteristics, and the influence these conditions may have on the pilot's ability to commence takeoff roll in a timely manner.

5-8-5. DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS

TERMINAL: Authorize simultaneous operations between an aircraft departing on a runway and an aircraft on final approach to another parallel or nonintersecting diverging runway if the departure course diverges immediately by at least 30 degrees from the missed approach course until separation is applied and provided one of the following conditions are met:

NOTE–
When one or both of the takeoff/landing surfaces is a helipad, consider the helicopter takeoff course as the runway centerline and the helipad center as the threshold.

a. When parallel runway thresholds are even, the runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet apart. (See FIG 5–8–9 and FIG 5–8–10.)

Parallel Thresholds are Even

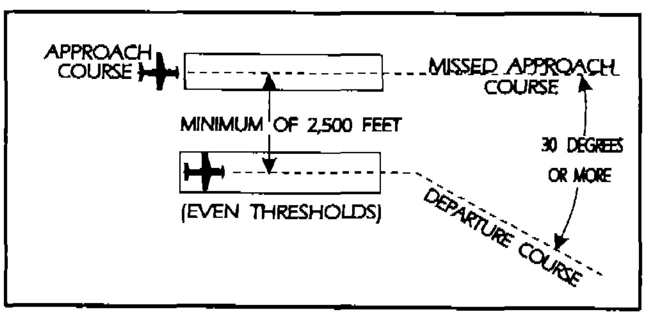


FIG 5–8–9

Parallel Thresholds are Even

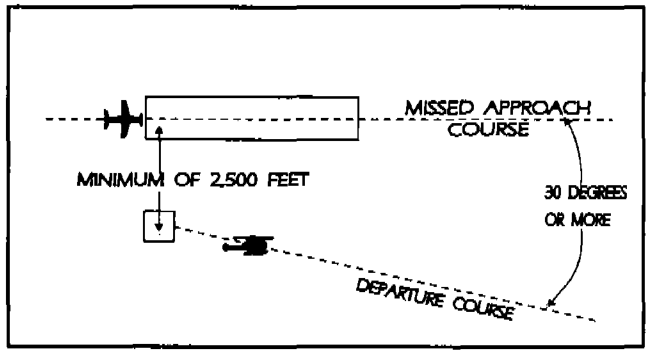


FIG 5–8–10

b. When parallel runway thresholds are staggered and:

1. The arriving aircraft is approaching the nearer runway: the centerlines are at least 1,000 feet apart and the landing thresholds are staggered at least 500 feet for each 100 feet less than 2,500 the centerlines are separated. (See FIG 5–8–11 and FIG 5–8–12.)

Parallel Thresholds are Staggered

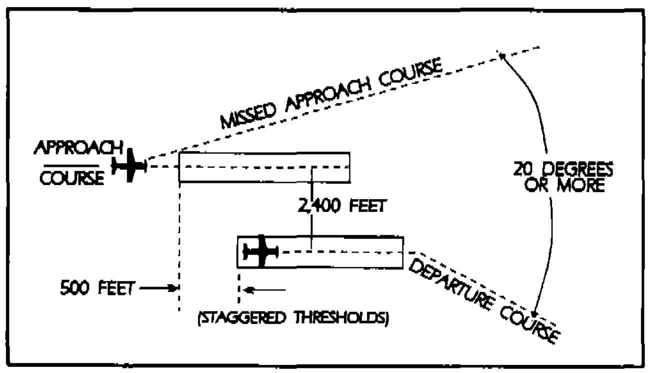


FIG 5–8–11

Parallel Thresholds are Staggered

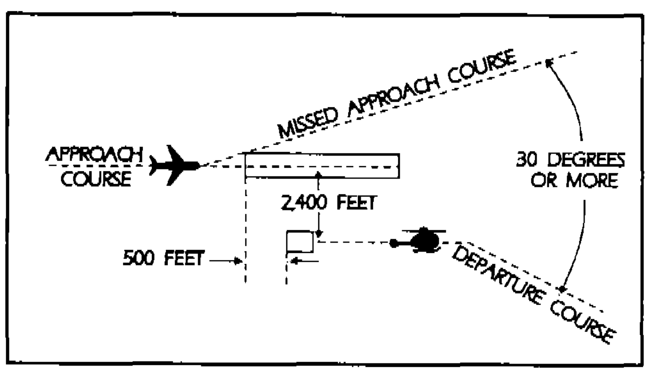


FIG 5–8–12

NOTE–
In the event of a missed approach by a heavy jet/B757, apply the procedures in para 3–9–6, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION, or para 3–9–8, INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION, ensure that the heavy jet does not overtake or cross in front of an aircraft departing from the adjacent parallel runway.

2. The arriving aircraft is approaching the farther runway: the runway centerlines separation exceeds 2,500 feet by at least 100 feet for each 500 feet the landing thresholds are staggered. (See FIG 5–8–13.)

Parallel Thresholds are Staggered

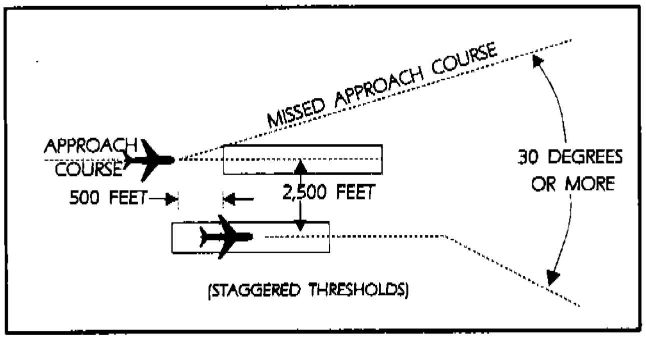


FIG 5–8–13

c. When nonintersecting runways diverge by 15 degrees or more and runway edges do not touch. (See FIG 5–8–14.)

Diverging Nonintersecting Runways

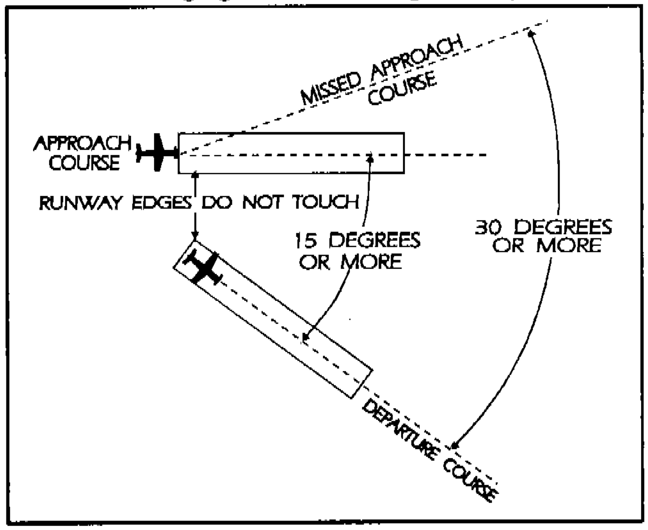


FIG 5–8–14

d. When the aircraft on takeoff is a helicopter, hold the helicopter until visual separation is possible or apply the separation criteria in subparas a., b., or c.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE AND ARRIVAL, Para 5–8–4.

Section 9. RADAR ARRIVALS

5-9-1. VECTORS TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE

Except as provided in para 7-4-2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, vector arriving aircraft to intercept the final approach course:

a. At least 2 miles outside the approach gate unless one of the following exists:

1. When the reported ceiling is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA and the visibility is at least 3 miles (report may be a PIREP if no weather is reported for the airport), aircraft may be vectored to intercept the final approach course closer than 2 miles outside the approach gate but no closer than the approach gate.

2. If specifically requested by the pilot, aircraft may be vectored to intercept the final approach course inside the approach gate but no closer than the final approach fix.

b. For a precision approach, at an altitude not above the glideslope/glidepath or below the minimum glideslope intercept altitude specified on the approach procedure chart.

c. For a nonprecision approach, at an altitude which will allow descent in accordance with the published procedure.

NOTE-
A pilot request for an "evaluation approach," or a "coupled approach," or use of a similar term, indicates the pilot desires the application of subparas a. and b.

d. *EN ROUTE*: The following provisions are required before an aircraft may be vectored to the final approach course:

1. The approach gate and a line (solid or broken), depicting the final approach course starting at or passing through the approach gate and extending away from the airport, be displayed on the radar scope; for a precision approach, the line length shall extend at least the maximum range of the localizer; for a nonprecision approach, the line length shall extend at least 10NM outside the approach gate, and:

2. The maximum range selected on the radar display is 150 NM, or;

3. An adjacent radar display is set at 125 NM or less, configured for the approach in use, and is utilized for the vector to the final approach course.

4. If unable to comply with 1., 2., or 3. above, issue the clearance in accordance with para 4-8-1, APPROACH CLEARANCE, of this order.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH CLEARANCE, Para 4-8-1.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.

5-9-2. FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION

a. Assign headings that will permit final approach course interception on a track that does not exceed the interception angles specified in the TBL 5-9-1.

Approach Course Interception Angle

Distance from interception point to approach gate	*Maximum interception angle*
Less than 2 miles or triple simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches in use	20 degrees
2 miles or more	30 degrees (45 degrees for helicopters)

TBL 5-9-1

b. If deviations from the final approach course are observed after initial course interception, apply the following:

1. Outside the approach gate: apply procedures in accordance with subpara a., if necessary, vector the aircraft for another approach.

2. Inside the approach gate: inform the pilot of the aircraft's position and ask intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Ident) (distance) MILE(S) FROM THE AIRPORT, (distance) MILE(S) RIGHT/LEFT OF COURSE, SAY INTENTIONS.

NOTE-
The intent is to provide for a track course intercept angle judged by the controller to be no greater than specified by this procedure.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, CHAPTER 5, SECTION 9. RADAR ARRIVALS and SECTION 10. RADAR APPROACHES-TERMINAL.

c. EN ROUTE: When using a radar scope range above 125 NM, the controller shall solicit and receive a pilot report that the aircraft is established on the final approach course. If the pilot has not reported established by the final approach gate, inform the pilot of his observed position and ask intentions.

NOTE-
It may be difficult to accurately determine small distances when using very large range settings.

5-9-3. VECTORS ACROSS FINAL APPROACH COURSE

Inform the aircraft whenever a vector will take it across the final approach course and state the reason for such action.

NOTE–
In the event you are unable to so inform the aircraft, the pilot is not expected to turn inbound on the final approach course unless approach clearance has been issued.

PHRASEOLOGY–
EXPECT VECTORS ACROSS FINAL FOR (purpose).

EXAMPLE–
"EXPECT VECTORS ACROSS FINAL FOR SPACING."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.

5-9-4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS

Issue all of the following to an aircraft before it reaches the approach gate:

a. Position relative to a fix on the final approach course. If none is portrayed on the radar display or if none is prescribed in the procedure, issue position information relative to the navigation aid which provides final approach guidance or relative to the airport.

b. Vector to intercept the final approach course if required.

c. Approach clearance except when conducting a radar approach. Issue approach clearance only after the aircraft is:

1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or
(See FIG 5-9-1 Example 1.)

2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.
(See FIG 5-9-2 thru FIG 5-9-4.)

Arrival Instructions

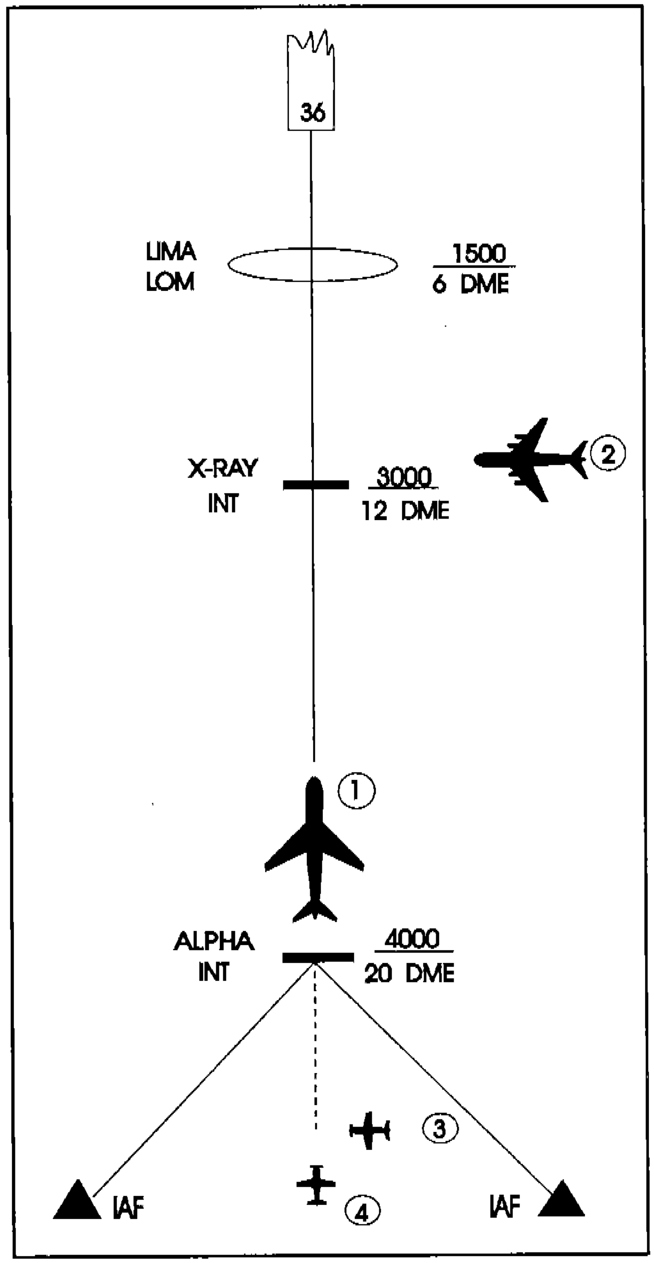


FIG 5-9-1

EXAMPLE–
1 Aircraft 1 was vectored to the final approach course but clearance was withheld. It is now at 4,000 feet and established on a segment of the instrument approach procedure. "Seven miles from X-RAY. Cleared I-L-S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5-9-1.)

2 Aircraft 2 is being vectored to a published segment of the final approach course, 4 miles from LIMA at 2,000 feet. The MVA for this area is 2,000 feet. "Four miles from LIMA. Turn right heading three four zero. Maintain two thousand until established on the localizer. Cleared I-L-S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5-9-1.)

[3] *Aircraft 3 is being vectored to intercept the final approach course beyond the approach segments, 5 miles from Alpha at 5,000 feet. the MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Five miles from Alpha. Turn right heading three three zero. Cross Alpha at or above four thousand. Cleared I-L-S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5-9-1.)*

[4] *Aircraft 4 is established on the final approach course beyond the approach segments, 8 miles from Alpha at 6,000 feet. the MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Eight miles from Alpha. Cross Alpha at or above four thousand. Cleared I-L-S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5-9-1.)*

Arrival Instructions

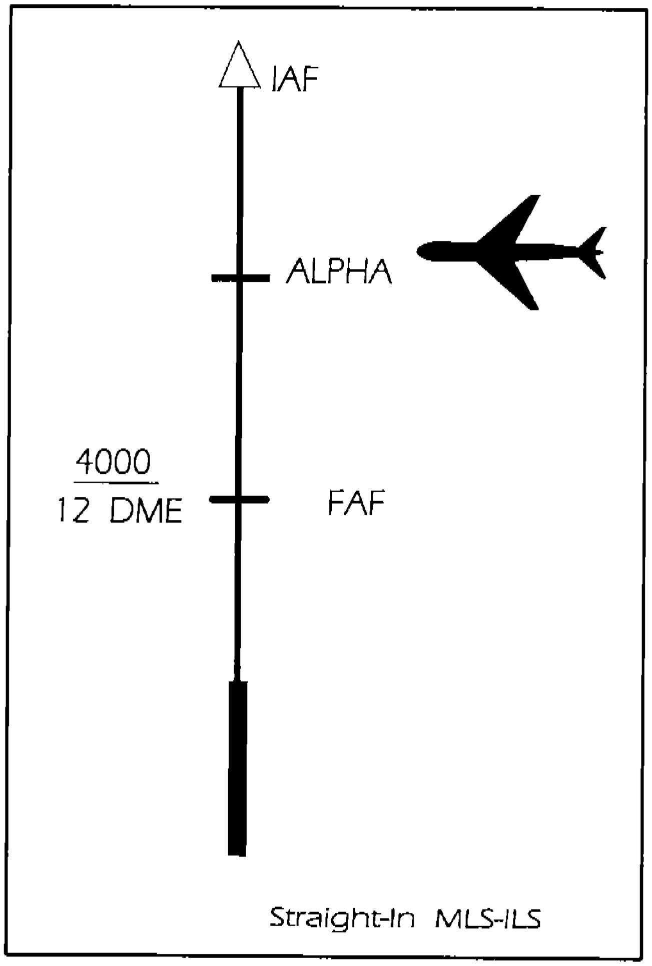


FIG 5-9-2

EXAMPLE-
The aircraft is being vectored to a published segment of the MLS final approach course, 3 miles from Alpha at 4,000 feet. The MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Three miles from Alpha. Turn left heading two one zero. Maintain four thousand until established on the azimuth course. Cleared M-L-S runway one eight approach." (See FIG 5-9-2.)

Arrival Instructions

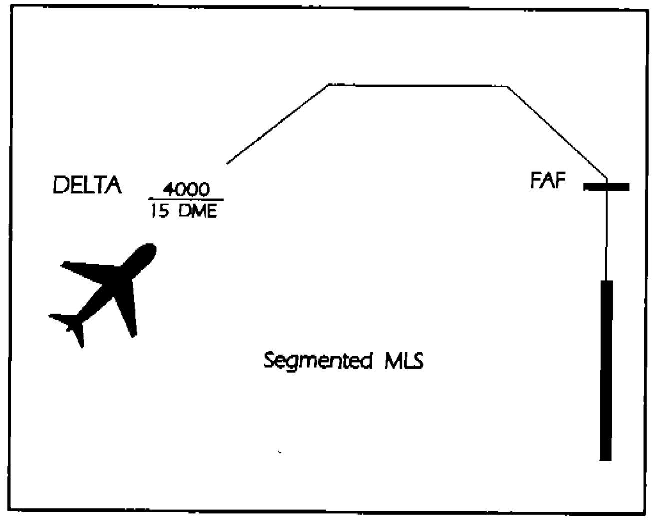


FIG 5-9-3

EXAMPLE-
The aircraft is en route to Delta waypoint at 6,000 feet. The MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Cross Delta at or above four thousand. Cleared M-L-S runway one eight approach." (See FIG 5-9-3.)

Arrival Instructions

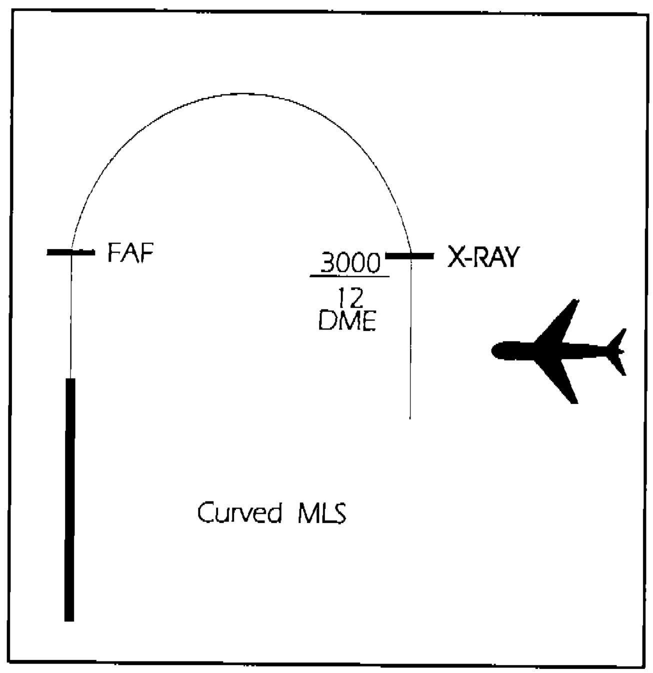


FIG 5-9-4

EXAMPLE-
The aircraft is being vectored to an MLS curved approach, 3 miles from X-ray at 3,000 feet. "Three miles from X-ray. Turn right heading three three zero. Maintain three thousand until established on the azimuth course. Cleared M-L-S runway one eight approach." (See FIG 5-9-4.)

NOTE–
[1] The altitude assigned must assure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

[2] If the altitude assignment is VFR-On-Top, it is conceivable that the pilot may elect to remain high until arrival over the final approach fix which may require the pilot to circle to descend so as to cross the final approach fix at an altitude that would permit landing.

d. Instructions to do one of the following:

NOTE–
The principal purpose of this paragraph is to ensure that frequency changes are made prior to passing the final approach fix. However, at times it will be desirable to retain an aircraft on the approach control frequency to provide a single-frequency approach or other radar services. When this occurs, it will be necessary to relay tower clearances or instructions to preclude changing frequencies prior to landing or approach termination.

1. Monitor local control frequency, reporting to the tower when over the approach fix.

2. Contact the tower on local control frequency.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, COMMUNICATIONS RELEASE, Para 4–8–8.

3. Contact the final controller on the appropriate frequency if radar service will be provided on final on a different frequency.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL CONTROLLER CHANGEOVER, Para 5–10–8.

4. When radar is used to establish the final approach fix, inform the pilot that after being advised that he is over the fix he is to contact the tower on local control frequency.

EXAMPLE–
"Three miles from final approach fix. Turn left heading zero one zero. Maintain two thousand until established on the localizer. Cleared I–L–S runway three six approach. I will advise when over the fix."

"Over final approach fix. Contact tower one one eight point one."

NOTE–
ARSR may be used for establishment of initial approach and intermediate approach fixes only. ASR must be used to establish the final approach fix.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERSECTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES–DUAL & TRIPLE, Para 5–9–7.

e. Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, inform the aircraft of its position relative to the appropriate IAF and issue the approach clearance. (See FIG 5–9–5.)

EXAMPLE–
[1] Aircraft 1: The aircraft is in the straight in area of the TAA. "Seven miles from CENTR, Cleared R–NAV Runway One Eight Approach."

[2] Aircraft 2: The aircraft is in the left base area of the TAA. "Fifteen miles from LEFTT, Cleared GPS Runway One Eight Approach."

[3] Aircraft 3: The aircraft is in the right base area of the TAA. "Four miles from WRITE, Cleared FMS Runway One Eight Approach."

5–9–5. APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY

a. The radar controller performing the approach control function is responsible for separation of radar arrivals unless visual separation is provided by the tower, or a letter of agreement/facility directive authorizes otherwise. Radar final controllers ensure that established separation is maintained between aircraft under their control and other aircraft established on the same final approach course.

NOTE–
The radar controller may be a controller in an ARTCC, a terminal facility, or a tower controller when authorized to perform the approach control function in a terminal area.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE, Para 2–1–19.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION (RADAR SEPARATION), Para 5–5–1.
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMA, Para 5–5–3.
FAAO 7210.3, AUTHORIZATION FOR SEPARATION SERVICES BY TOWERS, Para 2–1–14.

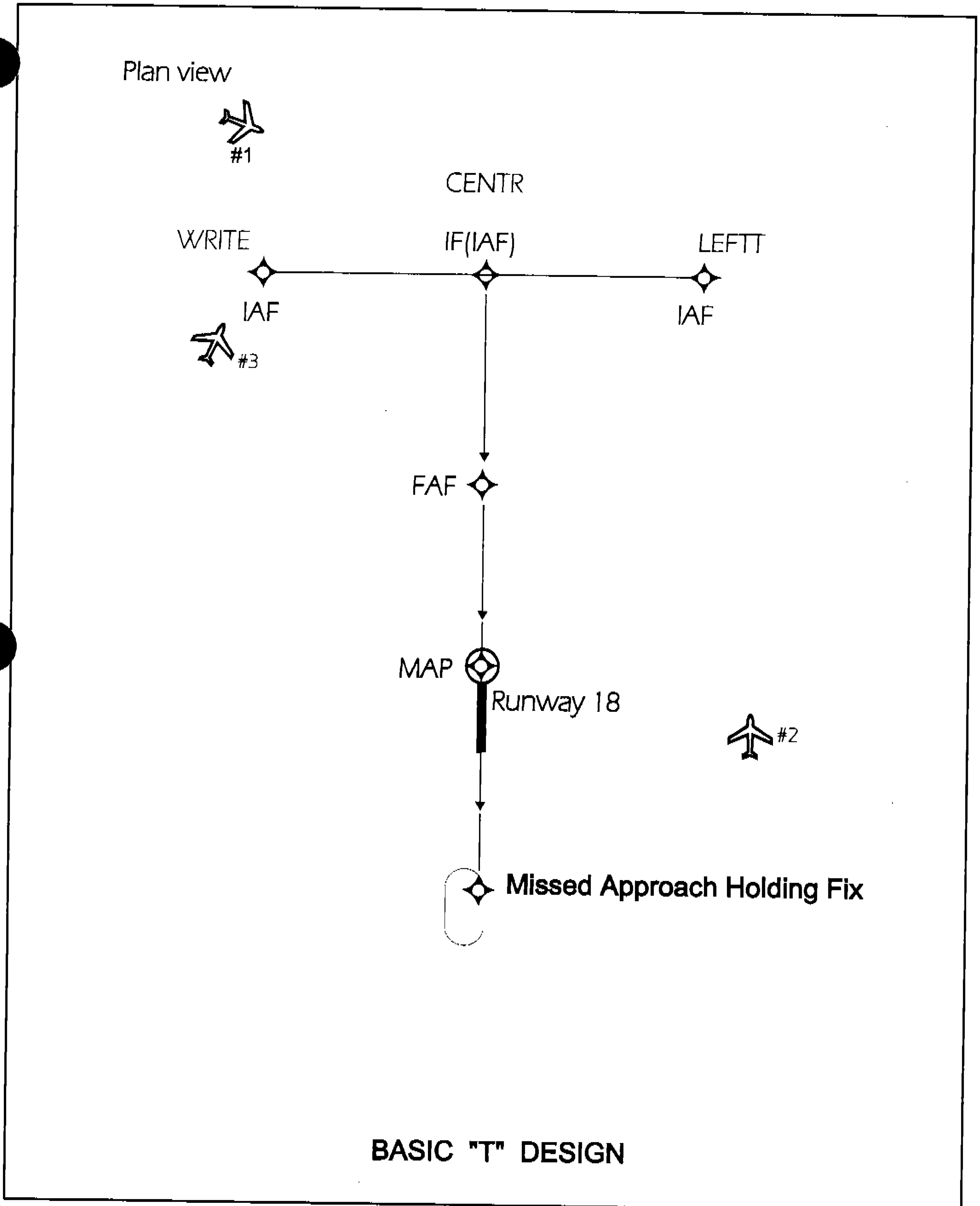

Plan view
#1
CENTR
WRITE
IF(IAF)
LEFTT
IAF
IAF
#3
FAF
MAP
Runway 18
#2
Missed Approach Holding Fix
BASIC "T" DESIGN

FIG 5-9-5

b. When timed approaches are being conducted, the radar controller shall maintain the radar separation specified in para 6-7-5, INTERVAL MINIMA, until the aircraft is observed to have passed the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approaches) or the OM or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker (precision approaches) and is within 5 miles of the runway on the final approach course or until visual separation can be provided by the tower.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF, Para 5-4-6.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERSECTION, Para 5-9-2.
FAAO 7110.65, PARALLEL DEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES, Para 5-9-6.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEQUENCE, Para 6-7-2.

5-9-6. PARALLEL DEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES

TERMINAL

a. Apply the following minimum separation when conducting parallel dependent ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches:

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn on.

2. Provide a minimum of 1.5 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent localizer/azimuth courses when runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet but no more than 4,300 feet apart.

Parallel Dependent ILS/MLS Approaches

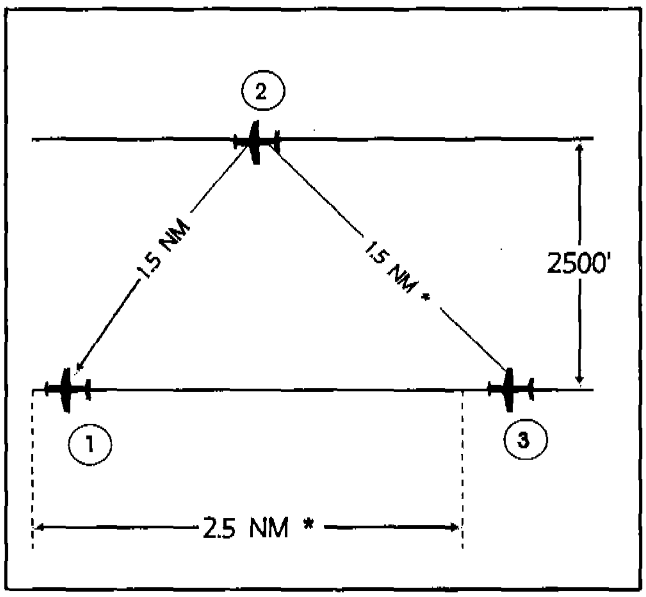


FIG 5-9-6

EXAMPLE–
In FIG 5-9-6, aircraft 2 is 1.5 miles from aircraft 1, and aircraft 3 is 1.5 miles or more from aircraft 2. The resultant separation between aircraft 1 and 3 is at least 2.5 miles.

3. Provide a minimum of 2 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent localizer/azimuth courses where runway centerlines are more than 4,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart.

Parallel Dependent ILS/MLS Approaches

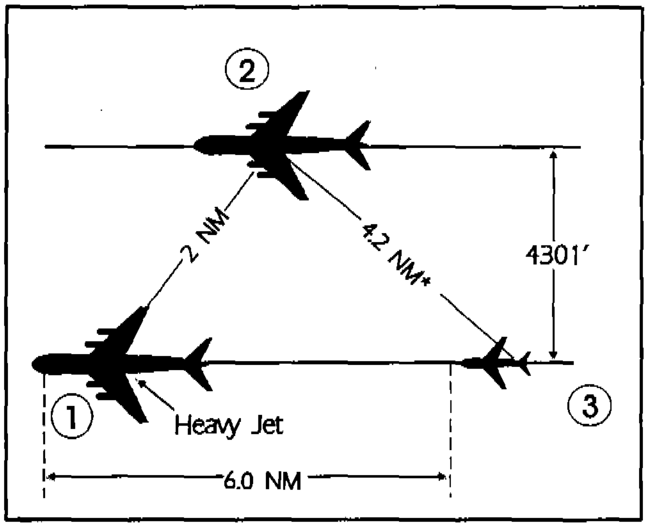


FIG 5-9-7

EXAMPLE–
*In FIG 5-9-7, aircraft 2 is 2 miles from heavy aircraft 1. Aircraft 3 is a small aircraft and is 6 miles from aircraft 1. *The resultant separation between aircraft 2 and 3 is 4.2 miles.*

4. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR SEPARATION, MINIMA, Para 5-5-3.

b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum radar separation on adjacent localizer/azimuth courses allowed in subpara a.:

1. Apply this separation standard only after aircraft are established on the parallel final approach course.

2. Straight-in landings will be made.

3. Missed approach procedures do not conflict.

4. Aircraft are informed that approaches to both runways are in use. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

5. Approach control shall have the interphone capability of communicating directly with the local controller at locations where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

NOTE–
The interphone capability is an integral part of this procedure when approach control has the sole separation responsibility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5–9–5.
FAAO 7210.3, AUTHORIZATION FOR SEPARATION SERVICES BY TOWERS, Para 2–1–14.

c. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight, such as surface wind direction and velocity, wind shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.

5–9–7. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES– DUAL & TRIPLE

TERMINAL

a. Apply the following minimum separation when conducting simultaneous independent ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches:

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel final approach.

NOTE–
1 During triple parallel approaches, no two aircraft will be assigned the same altitude during turn-on. All three aircraft will be assigned altitudes which differ by a minimum of 1,000 feet. Example: 3,000, 4,000, 5,000; 7,000, 8,000, 9,000.

2 Communications transfer to the tower controller's frequency shall be completed prior to losing vertical separation between aircraft.

2. Dual parallel runway centerlines are at least 4,300 feet apart.

3. Triple parallel runway centerlines are at least 5,000 feet apart and the airport field elevation is less than 1,000 feet MSL.

4. A high-resolution color monitor with alert algorithms, such as the final monitor aid or that required in the precision runway monitor program shall be used to monitor approaches where:

(a) Triple parallel runway centerlines are at least 4,300 but less than 5,000 feet apart and the airport field elevation is less than 1,000 feet MSL.

(b) Triple parallel approaches to airports where the airport field elevation is 1,000 feet MSL or more require the high resolution color monitor with alert algorithms and an approved FAA aeronautical study.

5. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMA, Para 5–5–3.

b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on adjacent dual or triple ILS/MLS courses allowed in subpara a.:

1. Straight-in landings will be made.

2. ILS, MLS, radar, and appropriate frequencies are operating normally.

3. Inform aircraft that simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

4. Clear the aircraft to descend to the appropriate glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Provide at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.

NOTE–
Not applicable to curved and segmented MLS approaches.

5. An NTZ at least 2,000 feet wide is established an equal distance between extended runway final approach courses and shall be depicted on the monitor display. The primary responsibility for navigation on the final approach course rests with the pilot. Control instructions and information are issued only to ensure separation between aircraft and to prevent aircraft from penetrating the NTZ.

6. Monitor all approaches regardless of weather. Monitor local control frequency to receive any aircraft transmission. Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure aircraft do not enter the NTZ.

NOTE–
1 Separate monitor controllers, each with transmit/receive and override capability on the local control frequency, shall ensure aircraft do not penetrate the depicted NTZ. Facility directives shall define responsibility for providing the minimum applicable longitudinal separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

2 The aircraft is considered the center of the primary radar return for that aircraft, or, if an FMA or other color final monitor aid is used, the center of the digitized target of that aircraft, for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ. The provisions of para 5–5–2, TARGET SEPARATION, apply also.

c. The following procedures shall be used by the final monitor controllers:

1. Instruct the aircraft to return to the correct final approach course when aircraft are observed to overshoot the turn-on or to continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE,

or

TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE.

2. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in the controller's judgement will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (right/left) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

3. Terminate radar monitoring when one of the following occurs:

(a) Visual separation is applied.

(b) The aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight.

(c) The aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold, if procedurally required and contained in facility directives.

4. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.

5. Do not apply the provisions of para 5–13–1, MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT, for simultaneous ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches.

d. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when simultaneous ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include but are not limited to wind direction/velocity, wind-shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION, Para 5–1–13.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.

5–9–8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT DUAL ILS/MLS APPROACHES– HIGH UPDATE RADAR

TERMINAL

a. Authorize simultaneous independent ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches to parallel dual runways with centerlines separated by at least 3,000 feet with one localizer offset by 2.5 degrees using a precision runway monitor system with a 1.0 second radar update system and when centerlines are separated by 3,400 to 4,300 feet when precision runway monitors are utilized with a radar update rate of 2.4 seconds or less, and:

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel final approach.

NOTE–
Communications transfer to the tower controller's frequency shall be completed prior to losing vertical separation between aircraft.

2. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMA, Para 5–5–3.

b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on dual ILS/MLS courses allowed in subpara a.

1. Straight-in landings will be made.

2. ILS, MLS, radar, and appropriate frequencies are operating normally.

3. Inform aircraft that closely spaced simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

4. Clear the aircraft to descend to the appropriate glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Provide at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.

NOTE–
Not applicable to curved and segmented MLS approaches.

5. An NTZ at least 2,000 feet wide is established an equal distance between extended runway final approach courses and shall be depicted on the monitor display. The primary responsibility for navigation on the final approach course rests with the pilot. Control instructions and information are issued only to ensure separation between aircraft and to prevent aircraft from penetrating the NTZ.

6. Monitor all approaches regardless of weather. Monitor local control frequency to receive any aircraft transmission. Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure aircraft do not enter the NTZ.

7. Separate monitor controllers, each with transmit/receive and override capability on the local control frequency, shall ensure aircraft do not penetrate the depicted NTZ. Facility directives shall define the responsibility for providing the minimum applicable longitudinal separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

NOTE–
The aircraft is considered the center of the digitized target for that aircraft for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ.

c. The following procedures shall be used by the final monitor controllers:

1. Instruct the aircraft to return immediately to the correct final approach course when aircraft are observed to overshoot the turn-on or continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE.

or

TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE.

2. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in the controller's judgement will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (DEGREES), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

3. Terminate radar monitoring when one of the following occurs:

(a) Visual separation is applied.

(b) The aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight.

(c) The aircraft has landed or, in the event of a missed approach, is one-half mile beyond the departure end of the runway.

4. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.

5. Do not apply the provisions of para 5–13–1, MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT, for simultaneous ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches.

d. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when simultaneous ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include but are not limited to wind direction/velocity, wind-shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of the approach in use.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION, Para 5–1–13.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.

Section 10. RADAR APPROACHES- TERMINAL

5-10-1. APPLICATION

a. Provide radar approaches in accordance with standard or special instrument approach procedures.

b. A radar approach may be given to any aircraft upon request and may be offered to aircraft in distress regardless of weather conditions or to expedite traffic.

NOTE-
Acceptance of a radar approach by a pilot does not waive the prescribed weather minima for the airport or for the particular aircraft operator concerned. The pilot is responsible for determining if the approach and landing are authorized under the existing weather minima.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5-12-9.

5-10-2. APPROACH INFORMATION

a. Issue the following information to an aircraft that will conduct a radar approach. Current approach information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS broadcast code. All items listed below, except for subpara3. may be omitted after the first approach if repeated approaches are made and no change has occurred. Transmissions with aircraft in this phase of the approach should occur approximately every minute.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 4-7-11.

1. Altimeter setting.

2. If available, ceiling and visibility if the ceiling at the airport of intended landing is reported below 1,000 feet or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or if the visibility is less than 3 miles. Advise pilots when weather information is available via the Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)/Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS) and issue the appropriate frequency.

NOTE-
Automated weather observing systems may be set to provide one minute updates. This one minute data may be useful to the pilot for possible weather trends. Controllers provide service based solely on official weather, i.e. hourly and special observations.

3. Issue any known changes classified as special weather observations as soon as possible. Special weather observations need not be issued after they are included in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS broadcast code.

4. Pertinent information on known airport conditions if they are considered necessary to the safe operation of the aircraft concerned.

5. Lost communication procedures as specified in para 5-10-4, LOST COMMUNICATIONS.

b. Before starting final approach:

NOTE-
1 ASR approach procedures may be prescribed for specific runways, for an airport/heliport, and for helicopters only to a "point-in-space," i.e., a MAP from which a helicopter must be able to proceed to the landing area by visual reference to a prescribed surface route.

2 Occasionally, helicopter PAR approaches are available to runways where conventional PAR approaches have been established. In those instances where the two PAR approaches serve the same runway, the helicopter approach will have a steeper glide slope and a lower decision height. By the controller's designating the approach to be flown, the helicopter pilot understands which of the two approaches he has been vectored for and which set of minima apply.

1. Inform the aircraft of the type of approach, runway, airport, heliport, or other point, as appropriate, to which the approach will be made. Specify the airport name when the approach is to a secondary airport.

PHRASEOLOGY-
THIS WILL BE A P-A-R/SURVEILLANCE APPROACH TO:
RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT, RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT/HELIPORT.
THIS WILL BE A COPTER P-A-R APPROACH TO:
RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT, RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT/HELIPORT.

2. For surveillance approaches, specify the location of the MAP in relation to the runway/airport/heliport.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MISSED APPROACH POINT IS (distance) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/HELIPORT,

or for a point-in-space approach,

A MISSED APPROACH POINT (distance) MILE(S) (direction from landing area) OF (airport name) AIRPORT/HELIPORT.

EXAMPLE–
Helicopter point-in-space approach:

"Army copter Zulu Two, this will be a surveillance approach to a missed approach point, three point five miles south of Creedon heliport."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

c. Inform an aircraft making an approach to an airport not served by a tower that no traffic or landing runway information is available for that airport.

PHRASEOLOGY–
NO TRAFFIC OR LANDING RUNWAY INFORMATION AVAILABLE FOR THE AIRPORT.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL, Para 2–7–2.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.

5–10–3. NO-GYRO APPROACH

When an aircraft will make a no-gyro surveillance or a PAR approach:

a. Before issuing a vector, inform the aircraft of the type of approach.

PHRASEOLOGY–
THIS WILL BE A NO-GYRO SURVEILLANCE/P–A–R APPROACH.

b. Instruct the aircraft when to start and stop turn.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TURN LEFT/RIGHT.
STOP TURN.

c. After turn on to final approach has been made and prior to the aircraft reaching the approach gate, instruct the aircraft to make half-standard rate turns.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAKE HALF-STANDARD RATE TURNS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5–10–4. LOST COMMUNICATIONS

When weather reports indicate that an aircraft will likely encounter IFR weather conditions during the approach, take the following action as soon as possible after establishing radar identification and radio communications (may be omitted after the first approach when successive approaches are made and the instructions remain the same):

NOTE–
Air traffic control facilities at U.S. Army and U.S. Air Force installations are not required to transmit lost communications instructions to military aircraft. All military facilities will issue specific lost communications instructions to civil aircraft when required.

a. If lost communications instructions will require the aircraft to fly on an unpublished route, issue an appropriate altitude to the pilot. If the lost communications instructions are the same for both pattern and final, the pattern/vector controller shall issue both. Advise the pilot that if radio communications are lost for a specified time interval (not more than 1 minute) on vector to final approach, 15 seconds on a surveillance final approach, or 5 seconds on a PAR final approach to:

1. Attempt contact on a secondary or a tower frequency.

2. Proceed in accordance with visual flight rules if possible.

3. Proceed with an approved nonradar approach, or execute the specific lost communications procedure for the radar approach being used.

NOTE–
The approved procedures are those published on the FAA Forms 8260 or applicable military document.

PHRASEOLOGY–
IF NO TRANSMISSIONS ARE RECEIVED FOR (time interval) IN THE PATTERN OR FIVE/FIFTEEN SECONDS ON FINAL APPROACH, ATTEMPT CONTACT ON (frequency), AND

if the possibility exists,

PROCEED VFR. IF UNABLE:

if approved,

PROCEED WITH (nonradar approach), MAINTAIN (alti-

tude) UNTIL ESTABLISHED ON/OVER/FIX/NAVAID/APPROACH PROCEDURE,

or

(alternative instructions).

PHRASEOLOGY–
USN: *For ACLS operations using Mode I, IA, and II,*

IF NO TRANSMISSIONS ARE RECEIVED FOR FIVE SECONDS AFTER LOSS OF DATA LINK, ATTEMPT CONTACT ON (frequency), AND

if the possibility exists,

PROCEED VFR. IF UNABLE:

if approved,

PROCEED WITH (nonradar approach), MAINTAIN (altitude) UNTIL ESTABLISHED ON/OVER FIX/NAVAID/APPROACH PROCEDURE,

or

(alternative instructions).

b. If the final approach lost communications instructions are changed, differ from those for the pattern, or are not issued by the pattern controller, they shall be issued by the final controller.

c. If the pilot states that he cannot accept a lost communications procedure due to weather conditions or other reasons, request the pilot's intention.

NOTE–
The pilot is responsible for determining the adequacy of lost communications procedures with respect to aircraft performance, equipment capability, or reported weather.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 5–10–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5–10–5. RADAR CONTACT LOST

If radar contact is lost during an approach and the aircraft has not started final approach, clear the aircraft to an appropriate NAVAID/fix for an instrument approach.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH ABNORMALITIES, Para 5–10–14.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5–10–6. LANDING CHECK

USA/USN: Advise the pilot to perform landing check while the aircraft is on downwind leg and in time to complete it before turning base leg. If an incomplete pattern is used, issue this before handoff to the final controller for a PAR approach, or before starting descent on final approach for surveillance approach.

PHRASEOLOGY–
PERFORM LANDING CHECK.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5–10–7. POSITION INFORMATION

Inform the aircraft of its position at least once before starting final approach.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Number) MILES (direction) OF (airport name) AIRPORT,

or

(number) MILES (direction) OF (airport name) AIRPORT ON DOWNWIND/BASE LEG.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5–10–8. FINAL CONTROLLER CHANGEOVER

When instructing the aircraft to change frequency for final approach guidance, include the name of the facility.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CONTACT (name of facility) FINAL CONTROLLER ON (frequency).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER, Para 2–1–17.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS, Para 5–9–4.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5–10–9. COMMUNICATIONS CHECK

On initial contact with the final controller, ask the aircraft for a communication check.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft call sign), (name of facility) FINAL CONTROLLER. HOW DO YOU HEAR ME?

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5-10-10. TRANSMISSION ACKNOWLEDGMENT

After contact has been established with the final controller and while on the final approach course, instruct the aircraft not to acknowledge further transmissions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DO NOT ACKNOWLEDGE FURTHER TRANSMISSIONS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5-12-9.

5-10-11. MISSED APPROACH

Before an aircraft starts final descent for a full stop landing and weather reports indicate that any portion of the final approach will be conducted in IFR conditions, issue a specific missed approach procedure approved for the radar approach being conducted.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOUR MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE IS (missed approach procedure).

NOTE–
1 *The specific missed approach procedure is published on FAA Form 8260-4 or applicable military document.*

2 *USAF: At locations where missed approach instructions are published in base flying regulations, controllers need not issue missed approach instructions to locally assigned/attached aircraft.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5-12-9.

5-10-12. LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH-AND-GO

Before an aircraft which plans to execute a low approach or touch-and-go begins final descent, issue appropriate departure instructions to be followed upon completion of the approach. Climb-out instructions must include a specific heading and altitude except when the aircraft will maintain VFR and contact the tower.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AFTER COMPLETING LOW APPROACH/TOUCH AND GO:

CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

TURN (right or left) HEADING (degrees)/FLY RUNWAY HEADING,

or

MAINTAIN VFR, CONTACT TOWER,

or

(other instructions as appropriate).

NOTE–
This may be omitted after the first approach if instructions remain the same.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5-12-9.

5-10-13. TOWER CLEARANCE

a. When an aircraft is on final approach to an airport served by a tower, obtain a clearance to land, touch-and-go, or make low approach. Issue the clearance and the surface wind to the aircraft.

b. If the clearance is not obtained or is canceled, inform the aircraft and issue alternative instructions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TOWER CLEARANCE CANCELED/NOT RECEIVED (alternative instructions).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5-12-9.

5-10-14. FINAL APPROACH ABNORMALITIES

Instruct the aircraft if runway environment not in sight, execute a missed approach if previously given; or climb to or maintain a specified altitude and fly a specified course whenever the completion of a safe approach is questionable because one or more of the following conditions exists. The conditions in subparas a., b., and c. do not apply after the aircraft passes decision height on a PAR approach.

EXAMPLE–
Typical reasons for issuing missed approach instructions:
"Radar contact lost."
"Too high/low for safe approach."
"Too far right/left for safe approach."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, POSITION ADVISORIES, Para 5-12-7.

a. Safety limits are exceeded or radical target deviations are observed.

b. Position or identification of the aircraft is in doubt.

c. Radar contact is lost or a malfunctioning radar is suspected.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Reason) IF RUNWAY/APPROACH LIGHTS/RUNWAY LIGHTS NOT IN SIGHT, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH/(alternative instructions).

NOTE–
If the pilot requests, approval may be granted to proceed with the approach via ILS or another navigational aid/approach aid.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR CONTACT LOST, Para 5–10–5.

d. Airport conditions or traffic preclude approach completion.

PHRASEOLOGY–
EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH/(alternative instructions), (reason).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5–9–2.
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5–12–9.

5–10–15. MILITARY SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACHES

a. Utilize single frequency approach procedures as contained in a letter of agreement.

b. Do not require a frequency change from aircraft on a single frequency approach after the approach has begun unless:

1. Landing or low approach has been completed.

2. The aircraft is in visual flight rules (VFR) conditions during daylight hours.

3. The pilot requests the frequency change.

4. An emergency situation exists.

5. The aircraft is cleared for a visual approach.

6. The pilot cancels instrument flight rules (IFR).

c. Accomplish the following steps to complete communications transfer on single frequency approaches after completion of a handoff:

1. Transferring controller: Position transmitter selectors to preclude further transmissions on the special use frequencies.

2. Receiving controller: Position transmitter and receiver selectors to enable communications on the special use frequencies.

3. Do not require or expect the flight to check on frequency unless an actual frequency change is transmitted to the pilot.

Section 11. SURVEILLANCE APPROACHES- TERMINAL

5-11-1. ALTITUDE INFORMATION

Provide recommended altitudes on final approach if the pilot requests. If recommended altitudes are requested, inform the pilot that recommended altitudes which are at or above the published MDA will be given for each mile on final.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, RECOMMENDED ALTITUDES FOR SURVEILLANCE APPROACHES, Para 11-5-7.
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH GUIDANCE, Para 5-11-5.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RECOMMENDED ALTITUDES WILL BE PROVIDED FOR EACH MILE ON FINAL TO MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE/CIRCLING MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.

5-11-2. VISUAL REFERENCE REPORT

Aircraft may be requested to report the runway, approach/runway lights, or airport in sight. Helicopters making a "point-in-space" approach may be requested to report when able to proceed to the landing area by visual reference to a prescribed surface route.

PHRASEOLOGY-
REPORT (runway, approach/runway lights or airport) IN SIGHT.

REPORT WHEN ABLE TO PROCEED VISUALLY TO AIRPORT/HELIPORT.

5-11-3. DESCENT NOTIFICATION

a. Issue advance notice of where descent will begin and issue the straight-in MDA prior to issuing final descent for the approaches.

NOTE-
The point at which descent to the minimum descent altitude is authorized is the final approach fix unless an altitude limiting stepdown-fix is prescribed.

b. When it is determined that the surveillance approach will terminate in a circle to land maneuver, request the aircraft approach category from the pilot. After receiving the aircraft approach category, provide him with the applicable circling MDA prior to issuing final descent for the approach.

NOTE-
Pilots are normally expected to furnish the aircraft approach category to the controller when it is determined that the surveillance approach will terminate in a circle to land maneuver. If this information is not voluntarily given, solicit the aircraft approach category from the pilot, and then issue him the applicable circling MDA.

PHRASEOLOGY-
PREPARE TO DESCEND IN (number) MILE(S).

for straight-in approaches,

MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE (altitude).

for circling approaches,

REQUEST YOUR AIRCRAFT APPROACH CATEGORY. (Upon receipt of aircraft approach category), PUBLISHED CIRCLING MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE (altitude).

5-11-4. DESCENT INSTRUCTIONS

When an aircraft reaches the descent point, issue one of the following as appropriate:

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ELEVATION FAILURE, Para 5-12-9.

a. Unless a descent restriction exists, advise the aircraft to descend to the MDA.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Number) MILES FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/HELIPORT. DESCEND TO YOUR MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.

b. When a descent restriction exists, specify the prescribed restriction altitude. When the aircraft has passed the altitude limiting point, advise to continue descent to MDA.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Number) MILES FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/HELIPORT. DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (restriction altitude).

DESCEND TO YOUR MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.

5-11-5. FINAL APPROACH GUIDANCE

a. Issue course guidance, inform the aircraft when it is on course, and frequently inform the aircraft of any deviation from course. Transmissions with aircraft on surveillance final approach should occur approximately every 15 seconds.

PHRASEOLOGY-
HEADING (heading),

ON COURSE,
or

SLIGHTLY/WELL LEFT/RIGHT OF COURSE.

NOTE–
Controllers should not key the radio transmitter continuously during radar approaches to preclude a lengthy communications block. The decision on how often transmitters are unkeyed is the controller's prerogative.

b. Issue trend information, as required, to indicate target position with respect to the extended runway centerline and to describe the target movement as appropriate corrections are issued. Trend information may be modified by the terms "RAPIDLY" and "SLOWLY" as appropriate.

EXAMPLE–
"Going left/right of course."
"Left/right of course and holding/correcting."

c. Inform the aircraft of its distance from the runway, airport/heliport, or MAP, as appropriate, each mile on final.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Number) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/HELIPORT OR MISSED APPROACH POINT.

d. Recommended altitudes shall be furnished, if requested, in accordance with para 5–11–1, ALTITUDE INFORMATION.

PHRASEOLOGY–
If requested,

ALTITUDE SHOULD BE (altitude).

5–11–6. APPROACH GUIDANCE TERMINATION

a. Discontinue surveillance approach guidance when:

1. Requested by the pilot.

2. In your opinion, continuation of a safe approach to the MAP is questionable.

3. The aircraft is over the MAP.

b. Surveillance approach guidance may be discontinued when the pilot reports the runway or approach/runway lights in sight or if a "point-in-space" approach, he reports able to proceed to the landing area by visual reference to a prescribed surface route.

c. When approach guidance is discontinued in accordance with subpara a. and the aircraft has reported the runway or approach/runway lights in sight, advise the aircraft of its position and to proceed visually.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Distance) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/HELIPORT,

or

OVER MISSED APPROACH POINT.

PROCEED VISUALLY (additional instructions/clearance as required.)

d. When approach guidance is discontinued in accordance with subpara a. above and the aircraft has not reported the runway or approach/runway lights in sight, advise the aircraft of its position and to execute a missed approach unless the runway or approach/runway lights are in sight or, if a "point-in-space" approach, unless able to proceed visually.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Distance) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY,

or

OVER MISSED APPROACH POINT.
IF RUNWAY,

or

APPROACH/RUNWAY LIGHTS NOT IN SIGHT, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH/(missed approach instructions). (Additional instructions/clearance, as required.)

(Distance and direction) FROM AIRPORT/HELIPORT/MISSED APPROACH POINT.

IF UNABLE TO PROCEED VISUALLY, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH. (Additional instructions/clearance, if required.)

NOTE–
Terminal instrument approach procedures and flight inspection criteria require establishment of a MAP for each procedure including the point to which satisfactory radar guidance can be provided.

Section 12. PAR APPROACHES– TERMINAL

5–12–1. GLIDEPATH NOTIFICATION

Inform the aircraft when it is approaching glidepath (approximately 10 to 30 seconds before final descent).

PHRASEOLOGY–
APPROACHING GLIDEPATH.

5–12–2. DECISION HEIGHT (DH) NOTIFICATION

Provide the DH to any pilot who requests it.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DECISION HEIGHT (number of feet).

5–12–3. DESCENT INSTRUCTION

When an aircraft reaches the point where final descent is to start, instruct it to begin descent.

PHRASEOLOGY–
BEGIN DESCENT.

5–12–4. GLIDEPATH AND COURSE INFORMATION

a. Issue course guidance and inform the aircraft when it is on glidepath and on course, and frequently inform the aircraft of any deviation from glidepath or course. Transmissions with aircraft on precision final approach should occur approximately every 5 seconds.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HEADING (heading).

ON GLIDEPATH.

ON COURSE,

or

SLIGHTLY / WELL ABOVE / BELOW GLIDEPATH.

SLIGHTLY / WELL LEFT / RIGHT OF COURSE.

NOTE–
Controllers should not key the radio transmitter continuously during radar approaches to preclude a lengthy communications block. The decision on how often transmitters are unkeyed is the controller's prerogative.

b. Issue trend information as required, to indicate target position with respect to the azimuth and elevation cursors and to describe target movement as appropriate corrections are issued. Trend information may be modified by the terms "RAPIDLY" or "SLOWLY", as appropriate.

EXAMPLE–
"Going above / below glidepath."
"Going right / left of course."
"Above / below glidepath and coming down / up."
"Above / below glidepath and holding."
"Left / right of course and holding / correcting."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, POSITION ADVISORIES, Para 5–12–7.
FAAO 7110.65, MONITOR INFORMATION, Para 5–13–3.

5–12–5. DISTANCE FROM TOUCHDOWN

Inform the aircraft of its distance from touchdown at least once each mile on final approach.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Number of miles) MILES FROM TOUCHDOWN.

5–12–6. DECISION HEIGHT

Inform the aircraft when it reaches the published decision height.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AT DECISION HEIGHT.

5–12–7. POSITION ADVISORIES

a. Continue to provide glidepath and course information prescribed in para 5–12–4, GLIDEPATH AND COURSE INFORMATION, subparas a. and b. until the aircraft passes over threshold.

NOTE–
Glidepath and course information provided below decision height is advisory only. CFR Part 91.175 outlines pilot responsibilities for descent below decision height.

b. Inform the aircraft when it is passing over the approach lights.

PHRASEOLOGY–
OVER APPROACH LIGHTS.

c. Inform the aircraft when it is passing over the landing threshold and inform it of its position with respect to the final approach course.

PHRASEOLOGY–
OVER LANDING THRESHOLD, (position with respect to course).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH ABNORMALITIES, Para 5–10–14.

5-12-8. COMMUNICATION TRANSFER

Issue communications transfer instructions.

PHRASEOLOGY-

CONTACT (terminal control function) (frequency, if required) AFTER LANDING.

NOTE-

Communications transfer instructions should be delayed slightly until the aircraft is on the landing roll-out to preclude diversion of the pilot's attention during transition and touchdown.

REFERENCE-

FAAO 7110.65, RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER, Para 2-1-17.

5-12-9. ELEVATION FAILURE

a. If the elevation portion of PAR equipment fails during a precision approach:

1. Discontinue PAR instructions and tell the aircraft to take over visually or if unable, to execute a missed approach. If the aircraft executes a missed approach, apply subpara 2. below.

PHRASEOLOGY-

NO GLIDEPATH INFORMATION AVAILABLE. IF RUNWAY, APPROACH / RUNWAY LIGHTS, NOT IN SIGHT, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH / (alternative instructions).

2. If a surveillance approach, ASR or PAR without glide slope, is established for the same runway, inform the aircraft that a surveillance approach can be given. Use ASR or the azimuth portion of the PAR to conduct the approach and apply Chapter 5. RADAR, Section 11. SURVEILLANCE APPROACHES-TERMINAL. When the PAR azimuth is used, inform the pilot that mileage information will be from touchdown, and at those runways where specific minima have been established for PAR without glideslope, inform the pilot that the PAR azimuth will be used for the approach.

EXAMPLE-

[1] Approach information when PAR azimuth used:
"This will be a surveillance approach to runway three six. Mileages will be from touchdown."
or
"This will be a surveillance approach to runway three six using P-A-R azimuth. Mileages will be from touchdown."

[2] Descent Instructions:
"Five miles from touchdown, descend to your minimum descent altitude / minimum altitude."

REFERENCE-

FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INFORMATION, Para 5-10-2.
FAAO 7110.65, DESCENT INSTRUCTIONS, Para 5-11-4.

b. If the elevation portion of the PAR equipment is inoperative before starting a precision approach, apply subpara a.2.

5-12-10. SURVEILLANCE UNUSABLE

PAR approaches may be conducted when the ASR is unusable provided a nonradar instrument approach will position the aircraft over a navigational aid or DME fix within the precision radar coverage, or an adjacent radar facility can provide a direct radar handoff to the PAR controller.

NOTE-

The display of the NAVAID or DME fix in accordance with para 5-3-2, PRIMARY RADAR IDENTIFICATION METHODS, is not required provided the NAVAID or DME fix can be correlated on a PAR scope.

Section 13. USE OF PAR FOR APPROACH MONITORING- TERMINAL

5-13-1. MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT

Aircraft conducting precision or nonprecision approaches shall be monitored by PAR equipment if the PAR final approach course coincides with the NAVAID final approach course from the final approach fix to the runway and one of the following conditions exists:

NOTE-
[1] The provisions of this section do not apply to monitoring simultaneous ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches.

[2] This procedure is used in PAR facilities operated by the FAA and the military services at joint-use civil/military locations and military installations during the operational hours of the PAR.

a. The reported weather is below basic VFR minima.

b. ***USA Not applicable:*** At night.

c. Upon request of the pilot.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES-DUAL & TRIPLE, Para 5-9-7.

5-13-2. MONITOR AVAILABILITY

a. Inform the aircraft of the frequency on which monitoring information will be transmitted if it will not be the same as the communication frequency used for the approach.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RADAR MONITORING ON LOCALIZER VOICE (frequency),

and if applicable,

CONTACT (terminal control function) (frequency, if required) AFTER LANDING.

b. If the approach is not monitored, inform the aircraft that radar monitoring is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RADAR MONITORING NOT AVAILABLE.

c. If conditions prevent continued monitor after the aircraft is on final approach, advise the pilot. State the reason, and issue alternate procedures as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Reason), RADAR MONITORING NOT AVAILABLE, (alternative instructions).

NOTE-
Approach monitoring is a vital service, but during the approach, the controller acts primarily as a safety observer and does not actually guide the aircraft. Loss of the radar monitoring capability (and thus availability) is no reason to terminate an otherwise good instrument approach. Advise the pilot that radar contact has been lost (or other reason as appropriate), that radar monitoring is not available, and of actions for the pilot to take in either proceeding with or breaking off the approach; i.e., contact tower, remain on PAR frequency, etc..

5-13-3. MONITOR INFORMATION

When approaches are monitored, take the following action:

a. Advise the pilot executing a nonprecision approach that glidepath advisories are not provided. Do this prior to the pilot beginning the final descent.

PHRASEOLOGY-
GLIDEPATH ADVISORIES WILL NOT BE PROVIDED.

b. Inform the aircraft when passing the final approach fix (nonprecision approaches) or when passing the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker (precision approaches).

PHRASEOLOGY-
PASSING (FIX).

c. Advise the pilot of glidepath trend information (precision approaches) and course trend information to indicate target position and movement with respect to the elevation or azimuth cursor when the aircraft target corresponds to a position of well above / below the glidepath or well left / right of course and whenever the aircraft exceeds the radar safety limits. Repeat if no correction is observed.

EXAMPLE-
Course trend information:
"(Ident), well right/left of P-A-R course, drifting further right/left."

Glidepath trend information:
"(Ident), well above/below P-A-R glidepath."

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, GLIDEPATH AND COURSE INFORMATION, Para 5-12-4.

d. If, after repeated advisories, the aircraft is observed proceeding outside the safety limits or a radical target deviation is observed, advise the aircraft if unable to proceed visually, to execute a missed approach. Issue a specific altitude and heading if a procedure other than the published missed approach is to be executed.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Position with respect to course or glidepath). IF NOT VISUAL, ADVISE YOU EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH (alternative instructions).

e. Provide monitor information until the aircraft is over the landing threshold or commences a circling approach.

f. Provide azimuth monitoring only at locations where the MLS glidepath and the PAR glidepath are not coincidental.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION, Para 5–1–13.

Section 14. AUTOMATION– EN ROUTE

5-14-1. CONFLICT ALERT (CA) AND MODE C INTRUDER (MCI) ALERT

a. When a CA or MCI alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the alert without delay and take appropriate action.

NOTE–
DARC does not have CA/MCI alert capability.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SAFETY ALERT, Para 2-1-6.

b. If another controller is involved in the alert, initiate coordination to ensure an effective course of action. Coordination is not required when immediate action is dictated.

c. Suppressing/Inhibiting CA/MCI alert.

1. The controller may suppress the display of a CA/MCI alert from a control position with the application of one of the following suppress/inhibit computer functions:

(a) The Conflict Suppress (CO) function may be used to suppress the CA/MCI display between specific aircraft for a specific alert.

NOTE–
See NAS-MD-678 for the EARTS conflict suppress message.

(b) The Group Suppression (SG) function shall be applied exclusively to inhibit the displaying of alerts among military aircraft engaged in special military operations where standard en route separation criteria does not apply.

NOTE–
Special military operations where the SG function would typically apply involve those activities where military aircraft routinely operate in proximities to each other that are less than standard en route separation criteria; i.e., air refueling operations, ADC practice intercept operations, etc.

2. The computer entry of a message suppressing a CA/MCI alert constitutes acknowledgment for the alert and signifies that appropriate action has or will be taken.

3. The CA/MCI alert may not be suppressed or inhibited at or for another control position without being coordinated.

5-14-2. EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (E-MSAW)

a. When an E-MSAW alert is displayed, immediately analyze the situation and, if necessary, take the appropriate action to resolve the alert.

NOTE–
1 Caution should be exercised when issuing a clearance to an aircraft in reaction to an E-MSAW alert to ensure that adjacent MIA areas are not a factor.

2 DARC does not have E-MSAW capability.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SAFETY ALERT, Para 2-1-6.

b. The controller may suppress the display of an E-MSAW alert from his control position with the application of one of the following suppress/inhibit computer functions:

1. The specific alert suppression message may be used to inhibit the E-MSAW alerting display on a single flight for a specific alert.

2. The indefinite alert suppression message shall be used exclusively to inhibit the display of E-MSAW alerts on aircraft known to be flying at an altitude that will activate the alert feature of one or more MIA areas within an ARTCC.

NOTE–
1 The indefinite alert suppression message will remain in effect for the duration of the referenced flight's active status within the ARTCC unless modified by controller action.

2 The indefinite alert suppression message would typically apply to military flights with clearance to fly low-level type routes that routinely require altitudes below established minimum IFR altitudes.

c. The computer entry of a message suppressing or inhibiting E-MSAW alerts constitutes acknowledgment for the alert and indicates that appropriate action has or will be taken to resolve the situation.

5-14-3. COMPUTER ENTRY OF ASSIGNED ALTITUDE

The data block shall always reflect the current status of the aircraft unless otherwise specified in a facility directive. Whenever an aircraft is cleared to maintain an altitude different from that in the flight plan data base, enter into the computer one of the following:

NOTE–
A facility directive may be published deleting the interim altitude computer entry requirements of subpara b. The directive would apply to those conditions where heavy traffic or sector complexity preclude meeting these entry requirements.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, WAIVER TO INTERIM ALTITUDE REQUIREMENTS, Para 9–2–7.

a. The new assigned altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude, or

b. An interim altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude for a short period of time and subsequently be recleared to the altitude in the flight plan data base or a new altitude or a new interim altitude.

NOTE–
1 *Use of the interim altitude function will ensure that the data block reflects the actual status of the aircraft and eliminate superfluous altitude updates.*

2 *EARTS does not have interim altitude capability.*

5–14–4. ENTRY OF REPORTED ALTITUDE

Whenever Mode C altitude information is either not available or is unreliable, enter reported altitudes into the computer as follows:

NOTE–
Altitude updates are required to assure maximum accuracy in applying slant range correction formulas.

a. When an aircraft reaches the assigned altitude.

b. When an aircraft at an assigned altitude is issued a clearance to climb or descend.

c. A minimum of each 10,000 feet during climb to or descent from FL 180 and above.

5–14–5. SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS

To ensure the display of Mode C targets and data blocks, take the following actions:

NOTE–
Exception to these requirements may be authorized for specific altitudes in certain ARTCC sectors if defined in appropriate facility directives and approved by the regional AT division manager.

a. NAS en route Stage A/DARC, display altitude limits in the "R" CRD when operating on NAS en route Stage A or on the plan view display (PVD) when operating on DARC and select the display filter keys on the PVD to include, as a minimum, the altitude stratum of the sector, plus:

1. 1,200 feet above the highest and below the lowest altitude or flight level of the sector where 1,000 feet vertical separation is applicable, and

2. 2,200 feet above the highest and below the lowest flight level of the sector where 2,000 feet vertical separation is applicable.

b. EARTS: display the EARTS altitude filter limits to include, as a minimum, the altitude stratum of the sector, and:

1. 1,200 feet above the highest and below the lowest altitude or flight level of the sector where 1,000 feet vertical separation is applicable, and

2. 2,200 feet above the highest and below the lowest flight level of the sector where 2,000 feet vertical separation is applicable.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ALIGNMENT CHECK, Para 5–1–2.

5–14–6. SECTOR ELIGIBILITY

The use of the OK function is allowed to override sector eligibility only when one of the following conditions is met:

a. Prior coordination is effected.

b. The flight is within the control jurisdiction of the sector.

5–14–7. COAST TRACKS

Do not use coast tracks in the application of either radar or nonradar separation criteria.

5–14–8. CONTROLLER INITIATED COAST TRACKS

a. Initiate coast tracks only in Flight Plan Aided Tracking (FLAT) mode, except "free" coast tracking may be used as a reminder that aircraft without corresponding computer-stored flight plan information are under your control.

NOTE–
1 To ensure tracks are started in FLAT mode, perform a start track function at the aircraft's most current reported position, then immediately "force" the track into coast tracking by performing another start function with "CT" option in field 64. Making amendments to the stored route with trackball entry when the aircraft is rerouted, and repositioning the data block to coincide with the aircraft's position reports are methods of maintaining a coast track in FLAT mode.

2 DARC does not have the capability to initiate coast tracks.

b. Prior to initiating a coast track, ensure the following:

1. A departure message or progress report corresponding with the aircraft's current position is entered into the computer.

2. The track being started is within the Posted Time Update Interval (PTUI) of the aircraft's computer-estimated position and the Flight Plan Track Position Difference (FTPD) distance of the aircraft's flight plan route.

NOTE–
FTPD is an automation parameter, normally set to 15 miles, that is compared with the tracked target's perpendicular distance from the stored flight plan route. If the track is within the parameter miles, it is eligible for "FLAT tracking." PTUI is an automation parameter, normally set to 3 minutes, that is compared against the difference between the calculated time of arrival and the actual time of arrival over a fix. If the difference is greater than PTUI, the flight plan's stored data will be revised and fix-time update messages will be generated.

c. As soon as practicable after the aircraft is in radar surveillance, initiate action to cause radar tracking to begin on the aircraft.

Section 15. AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS (ARTS)- TERMINAL

5-15-1. APPLICATION

ARTS may be used for identifying aircraft assigned a discrete beacon code, maintaining identity of targets, and performing handoffs of these targets between controllers.

NOTE-
USAF/USN: Where PIDP/DAIR equipment is capable of performing the functions described in this section, it may be used accordingly.

5-15-2. RESPONSIBILITY

This equipment does not relieve the controller of the responsibility to ensure proper identification, maintenance of identity, handoff of the correct target associated with the alphanumeric data, and separation of aircraft.

5-15-3. FUNCTIONAL USE

In addition to other uses specified herein, terminal automation may be used for the following functions:

a. Tracking.

b. Tagging.

c. Handoff.

d. Altitude information.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE FILTERS, Para 5-2-24.

e. Coordination.

f. Ground speed.

g. Identification.

5-15-4. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Use the ARTS as follows:

NOTE-
Locally developed procedures, operating instructions, and training material are required because of differences in equipment capability. Such locally developed procedures shall be supplemental to those contained in this section and shall be designed to make maximum use of the ARTS equipment.

a. Inform all appropriate positions before terminating or reinstating use of the ARTS at a control position. When terminating the use of ARTS, all pertinent flight data of that position shall be transferred or terminated.

b. Inform other interfaced facilities of scheduled and unscheduled shutdowns.

c. Initiate a track/tag on all aircraft to the maximum extent possible. As a minimum, aircraft identification should be entered, and automated handoff functions should be used.

d. Assigned altitude, if displayed, shall be kept current at all times. Climb and descent arrows, where available, shall be used to indicate other than level flight.

e. Do not use the automatic altitude readout of an aircraft under another controller's jurisdiction for vertical separation purposes without verbal coordination.

5-15-5. INFORMATION DISPLAYED

a. Two-letter ICAO designators or three-letter designators, as appropriate, shall be used unless program limitations dictate the use of a single letter alpha prefix.

b. Use of the inhibit select switches to remove displayed information no longer required shall be in accordance with local directives, which should ensure maximum required use of the equipment.

c. Information displayed in the ATIS, General Information, and Scratch Pad areas shall be in accordance with local directives.

5-15-6. CA/MCI

a. When a CA or MCI alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the alert without delay and take appropriate action.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, SAFETY ALERT, Para 2-1-6.

b. If another controller is involved in the alert, initiate coordination to ensure an effective course of action. Coordination is not required when immediate action is dictated.

c. Suppressing/Inhibiting CA/MCI alert.

1. The suppress function may be used to suppress the display of a specific CA/MCI alert.

2. The inhibit function shall only be used to inhibit the display of CA for aircraft routinely engaged in operations where standard separation criteria do not apply.

NOTE–
Examples of operations where standard separation criteria do not apply are ADC practice intercept operations and air shows.

3. Computer entry of a message suppressing a CA/MCI alert constitutes acknowledgment for the alert and signifies that appropriate action has or will be taken.

4. CA/MCI alert may not be suppressed or inhibited at or for another control position without being coordinated.

5-15-7. INHIBITING MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (MSAW)

a. Inhibit MSAW processing of VFR aircraft and aircraft that cancel instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plans unless the pilot specifically requests otherwise.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY, Para 10-2-7.
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY, Para 10-2-8.

b. A low altitude alert may be suppressed from the control position. Computer entry of the suppress message constitutes an acknowledgment for the alert and indicates that appropriate action has or will be taken.

5-15-8. TRACK SUSPEND FUNCTION

Use the track suspend function only when data block overlap in holding patterns or in proximity of the final approach create an unworkable situation. If necessary to suspend tracks, those which are not displaying automatic altitude readouts shall be suspended. If the condition still exists, those displaying automatic altitude readouts may then be suspended.

Section 16. TPX-42- TERMINAL

5-16-1. APPLICATION

Each TPX-42 facility shall utilize the equipment to the maximum extent possible consistent with local operating conditions.

5-16-2. RESPONSIBILITY

This equipment does not relieve the controller of the responsibility to ensure proper identification, maintenance of identity, handoff of the correct radar beacon target associated with numeric data, and the separation of aircraft.

5-16-3. FUNCTIONAL USE

TPX-42 may be used for the following functions:

a. Tagging.

b. Altitude information.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE FILTERS, Para 5-2-24.

c. Coordination.

d. Target identity confirmation.

5-16-4. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Use the TPX-42 system as follows:

a. TPX-42 facilities shall inform adjacent facilities of scheduled and unscheduled shutdowns.

b. To the maximum extent practicable, tags should be utilized for all controlled aircraft.

5-16-5. INFORMATION DISPLAYED

a. Inhibiting portions of the tag shall be in accordance with facility directives, which shall ensure maximum required use of the equipment.

b. Mode C altitude information shall not be inhibited unless a ground malfunction causes repeated discrepancies of 300 feet or more between the automatic altitude readouts and pilot reported altitudes.

5-16-6. INHIBITING LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM (LAAS)

Assign a beacon code to a VFR aircraft or to an aircraft that has canceled its IFR flight plan to inhibit LAAS processing unless the aircraft has specifically requested LAAS.

Chapter 6. NONRADAR

Section 1. GENERAL

6-1-1. DISTANCE

Use mileage-based (DME and/or LTD) procedures and minima only when direct pilot/controller communications are maintained.

6-1-2. NONRECEIPT OF POSITION REPORT

When a position report affecting separation is not received, take action to obtain the report no later than 5 minutes after the aircraft was estimated over the fix.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES, Para 9-3-7.

6-1-3. DUPLICATE POSITION REPORTS

Do not require an aircraft to make the same position report to more than one facility.

6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION

TERMINAL

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

The ATC facility providing service to heavy jets/B757's and having control jurisdiction at adjacent airports shall separate arriving or departing IFR aircraft on a course that will cross behind the flight path of a heavy jet/B757 - *2 minutes.* (See FIG 6-1-1 and FIG 6-1-2.)

Adjacent Airport Operation -- Arrival

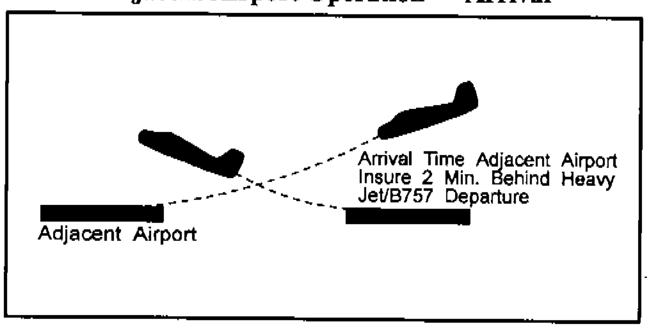


FIG 6-1-1

Adjacent Airport Operation -- Departure

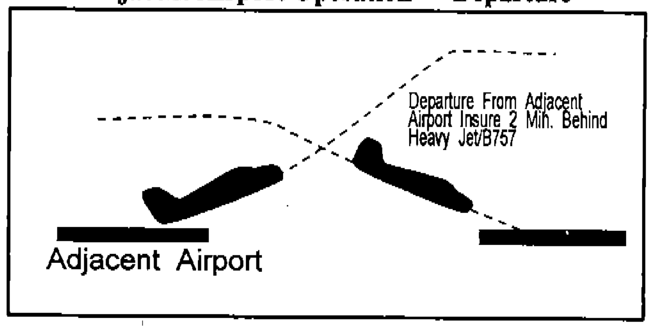


FIG 6-1-2

6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA

TERMINAL

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet/B757 by *2 minutes* when arriving:

a. The same runway (use *3 minutes* for a small aircraft behind a heavy jet/B757).

b. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet.

c. A crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross. (See FIG 6-1-3.)

Arrival Minima
Landing Behind an Arriving Heavy Jet/B757

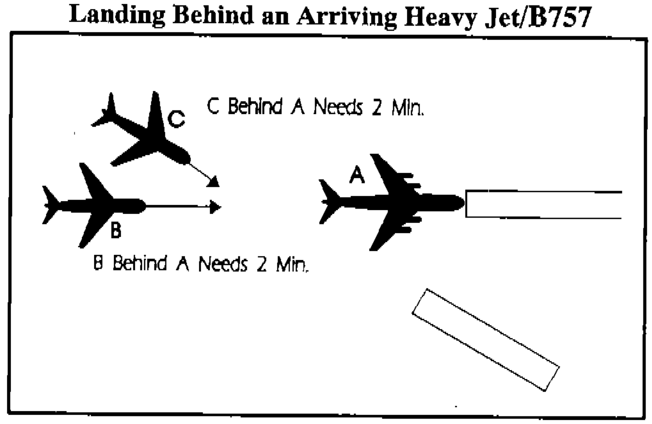


FIG 6-1-3

Section 2. INITIAL SEPARATION OF SUCCESSIVE DEPARTING AIRCRAFT

6-2-1. MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES

Separate aircraft that will fly courses diverging by 45 degrees or more after departing the same or adjacent airports by use of one of the following minima:

NOTE–
1 *Consider known aircraft performance characteristics when applying initial separation to successive departing aircraft.*

2 *When one or both of the departure surfaces is a helipad, use the takeoff course of the helicopter as a reference, comparable to the centerline of a runway and the helipad center as the threshold.*

a. When aircraft will fly diverging courses:

1. Immediately after takeoff – *1 minute* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6–2–1.)

Minima on Diverging Courses

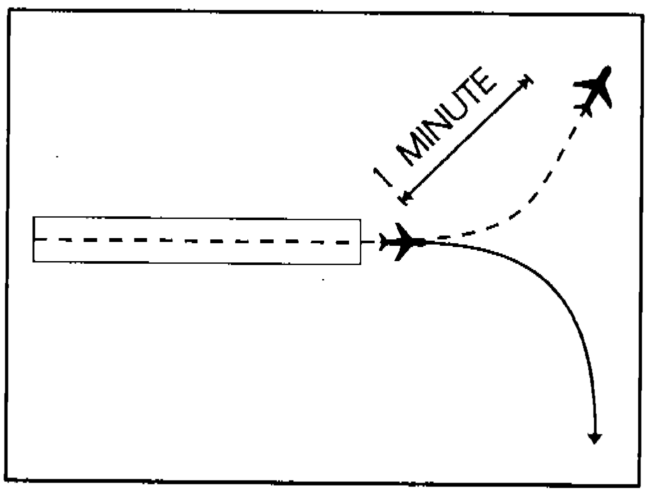


FIG 6-2-1

2. Within 5 minutes after takeoff– *2 minutes* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6–2–2.)

Minima on Diverging Courses

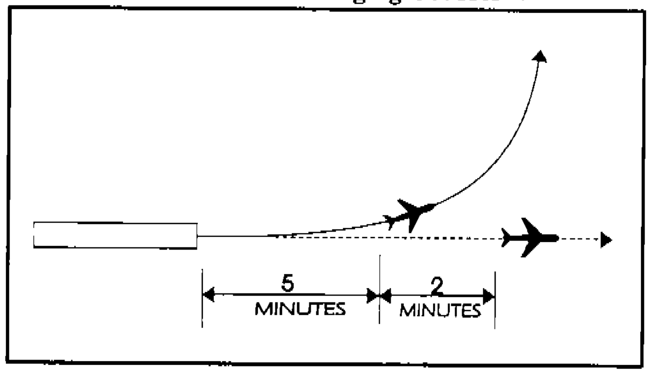


FIG 6-2-2

3. Within 13 miles DME/LTD after takeoff – *3 miles* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6–2–3.)

Minima on Diverging Courses

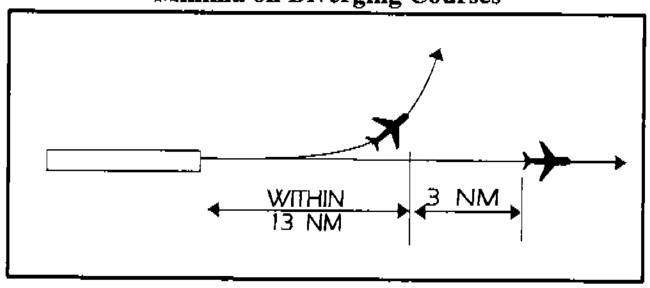


FIG 6-2-3

b. *TERMINAL:* Between aircraft departing in the same direction from different runways whose centerlines are parallel and separated by at least 3,500 feet: authorize simultaneous takeoffs when the aircraft will fly diverging courses immediately after takeoff. (See FIG 6–2–4.)

c. *TERMINAL:* Between aircraft that will fly diverging courses immediately after takeoff from diverging runways: (See FIG 6–2–5.)

1. Nonintersecting runways: authorize simultaneous takeoffs when either of the following conditions exist:

(a) The runways diverge by 30 degrees or more.

Minima on Diverging Courses

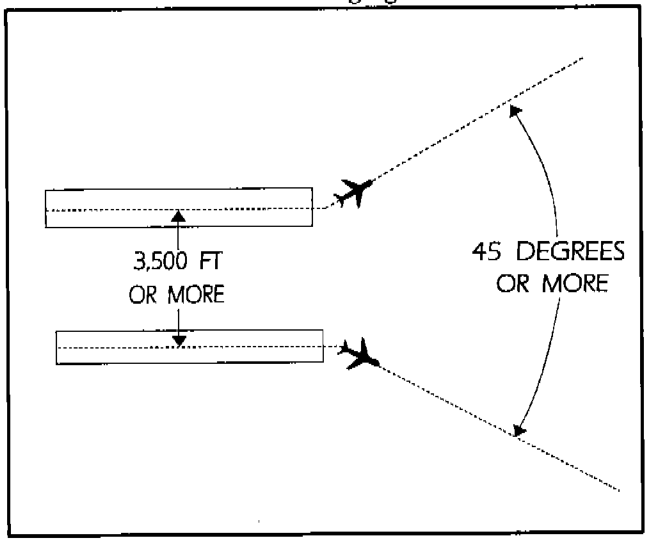


FIG 6–2–4

(b) The distance between runway centerlines at and beyond the points where takeoffs begin is at least:

(1) 2,000 feet and the runways diverge by 15 to 29 degrees inclusive.

(2) 3,500 feet and the runways diverge by less than 15 degrees.

Minima on Diverging Courses

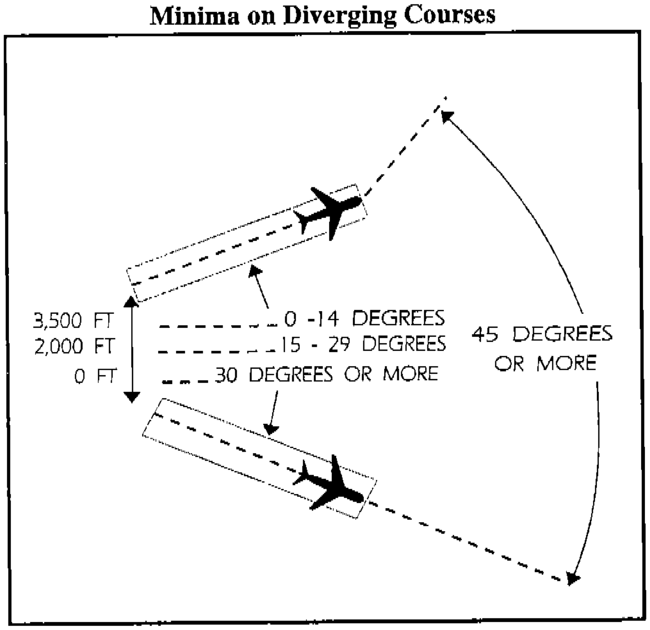


FIG 6–2–5

2. Intersecting runways: authorize takeoff of a succeeding aircraft when the preceding aircraft has passed the point of runway intersection, and

(a) The runways diverge by 30 degrees or more. (See FIG 6–2–6.)

Minima on Diverging Courses

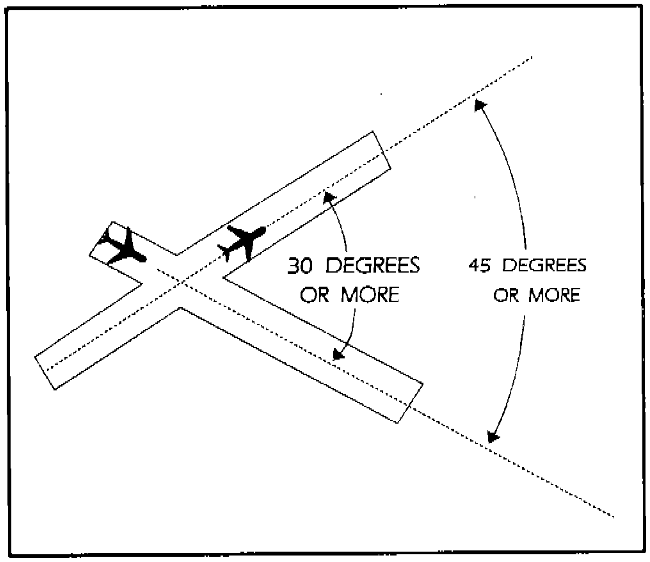


FIG 6–2–6

(b) The runways diverge by 15 to 29 degrees inclusive and the preceding aircraft has commenced a turn. (See FIG 6–2–7.)

Minima on Diverging Courses

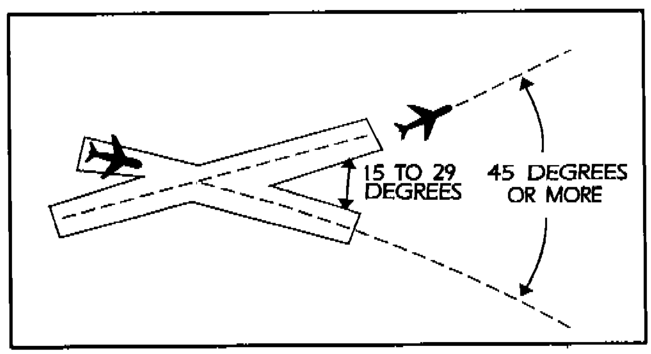


FIG 6–2–7

6–2–2. MINIMA ON SAME COURSE

Separate aircraft that will fly the same course when the following aircraft will climb through the altitude assigned to the leading aircraft by using a minimum of *3 minutes* until the following aircraft passes through the assigned altitude of the leading aircraft; or *5 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID. (See FIG 6–2–8 and FIG 6–2–9.)

Minima on Same Course

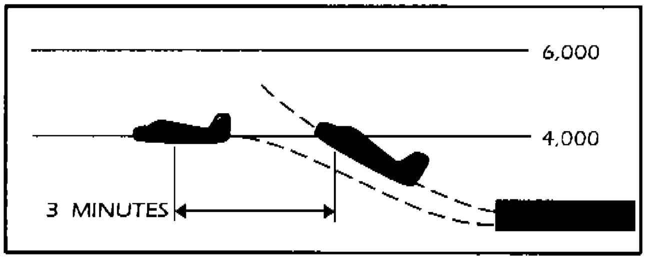


FIG 6–2–8

Minima on Same Course

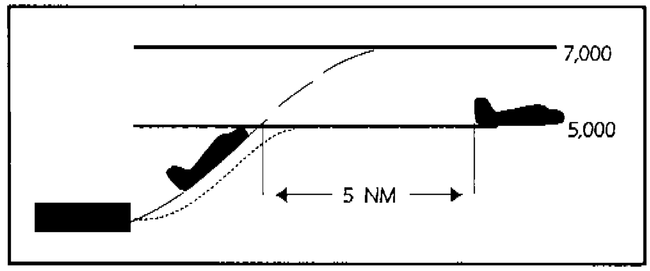


FIG 6–2–9

Section 3. INITIAL SEPARATION OF DEPARTING AND ARRIVING AIRCRAFT

6-3-1. SEPARATION MINIMA

Separate a departing aircraft from an arriving aircraft making an instrument approach to the same airport by using one of the following minima until vertical or lateral separation is achieved:

a. *TERMINAL:* When takeoff direction differs by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course: the departing aircraft takes off before the arriving aircraft leaves a fix inbound not less than *4 miles* from the airport.

b. *TERMINAL:* When takeoff direction is other than in subpara a: the departing aircraft takes off so that it is established on a course diverging by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course before the arriving aircraft leaves a fix inbound not less than *4 miles* from the airport.

c. *TERMINAL:* When the absence of an appropriate fix precludes the application of subparas a. or b. and at airports where approach control service is not provided: the separation in subparas d. or e. shall be applied.

d. When takeoff direction differs by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course: the departing aircraft takes off *3 minutes* before the arriving aircraft is estimated at the airport. (See FIG 6-3-1.)

Separation Minima

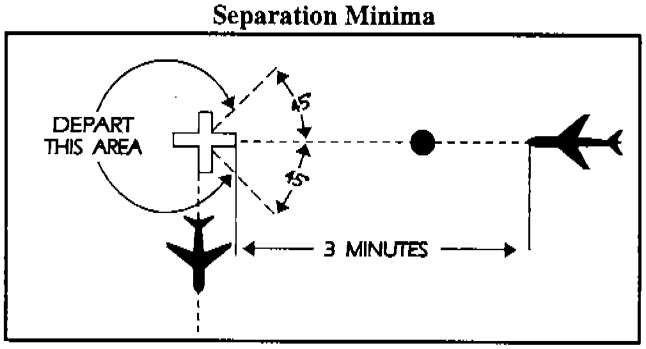


FIG 6-3-1

e. When takeoff direction is other than in subpara d: the departing aircraft takes off so that it is established on a course diverging by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course *5 minutes* before the arriving aircraft is estimated at the airport or before it starts procedure turn. (See FIG 6-3-2 and FIG 6-3-3.)

Separation Minima

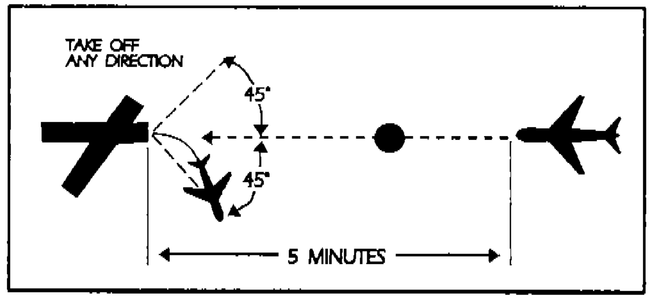


FIG 6-3-2

Separation Minima

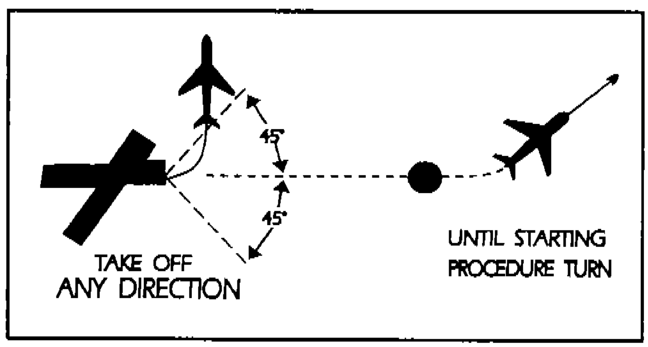


FIG 6-3-3

Section 4. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

6-4-1. APPLICATION

Separate aircraft longitudinally by requiring them to do one of the following, as appropriate:

a. Depart at a specified time.

b. Arrive at a fix at a specified time.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CROSS (fix) AT OR BEFORE (time).

CROSS (fix) AT OR AFTER (time).

c. Hold at a fix until a specified time.

d. Change altitude at a specified time or fix.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE INFORMATION, Para 4-5-7.

6-4-2. MINIMA ON SAME, CONVERGING, OR CROSSING COURSES

Separate aircraft on the same, converging, or crossing courses by an interval expressed in time or distance, using the following minima:

a. When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 44 knots faster than the following aircraft - *5 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID, or *3 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions is met:

1. A departing aircraft follows a preceding aircraft which has taken off from the same or adjacent airport. (See FIG 6-4-1.)

Minima on Same Course
44 Knots or More Separation

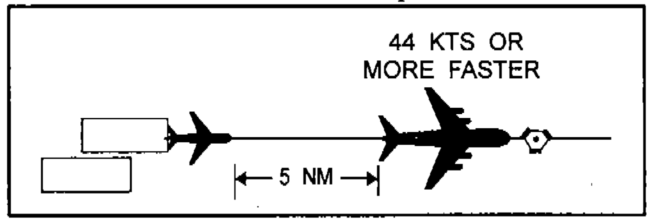


FIG 6-4-1

2. A departing aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over a fix serving the departure airport. (See FIG 6-4-2.)

Minima on Converging Courses
44 Knots or More Separation

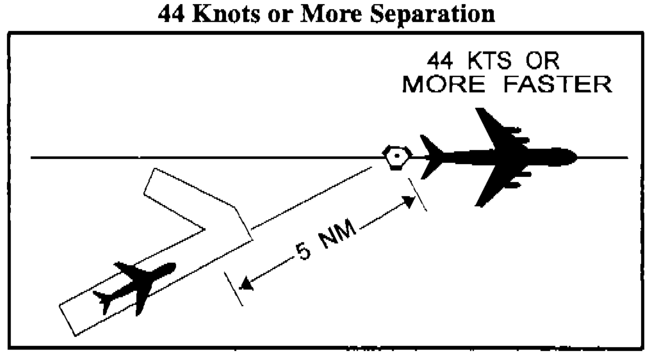


FIG 6-4-2

3. An en route aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over the same fix. (See FIG 6-4-3.)

Minima on Crossing Courses
44 Knots or More Separation

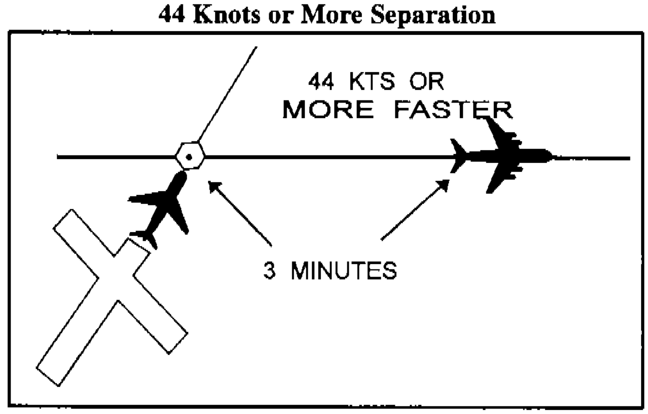


FIG 6-4-3

b. When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 22 knots faster than the following aircraft – *10 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID; or *5 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions exists:

1. A departing aircraft follows a preceding aircraft which has taken off from the same or an adjacent airport. (See FIG 6–4–4.)

Minima on Same Course
22 Knots or More Separation

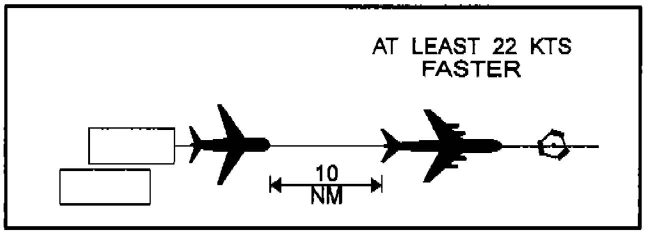


FIG 6–4–4

2. A departing aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over a fix serving the departure airport. (See FIG 6–4–5.)

Minima on Converging Courses
22 Knots or More Separation

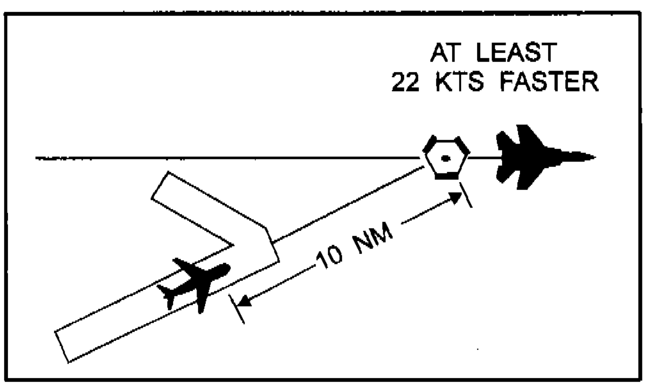


FIG 6–4–5

3. An en route aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over the same fix. (See FIG 6–4–6.)

Minima on Crossing Courses
22 Knots or More Separation

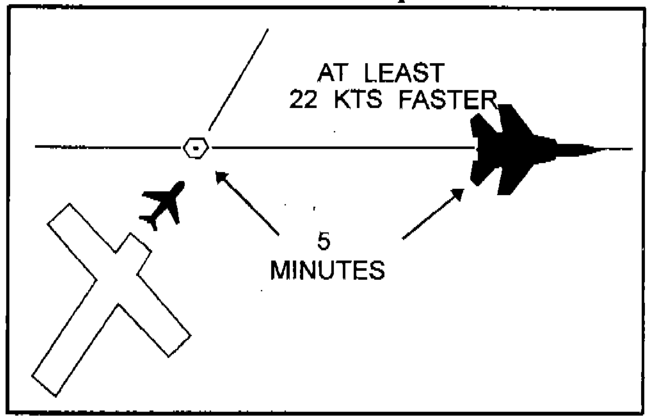


FIG 6–4–6

c. When an aircraft is climbing or descending through the altitude of another aircraft:

1. Between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID– *10 miles,* if the descending aircraft is leading or the climbing aircraft is following. (See FIG 6–4–7 and FIG 6–4–8.)

Descending Through Another Aircraft's Altitude
DME Separation

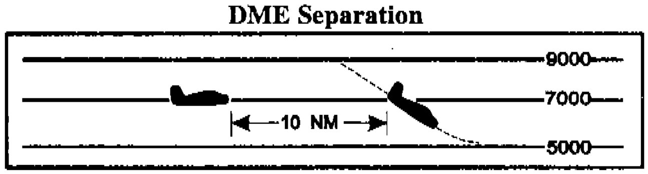


FIG 6–4–7

Climbing Through Another Aircraft's Altitude
DME Separation

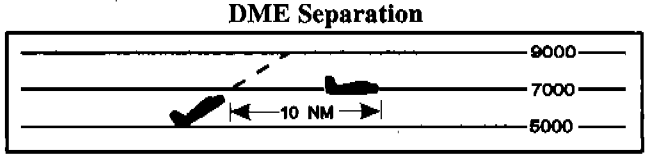


FIG 6–4–8

2. Between other aircraft– *5 minutes,* if all of the following conditions are met: (See FIG 6–4–9 and FIG 6–4–10.)

(a) The descending aircraft is leading or climbing aircraft is following.

(b) The aircraft are separated by not more than 4,000 feet when the altitude change started.

(c) The change is started within 10 minutes after a following aircraft reports over a fix reported over by the leading aircraft or has acknowledged a clearance specifying the time to cross the same fix.

3. Between RNAV aircraft that are operating along an RNAV route that is eight miles or less in width – *10 miles* provided the following conditions are met:

(a) The descending aircraft is leading or the climbing aircraft is following.

(b) The aircraft were separated by not more than 4,000 feet when the altitude change started.

Descending Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Timed Separation

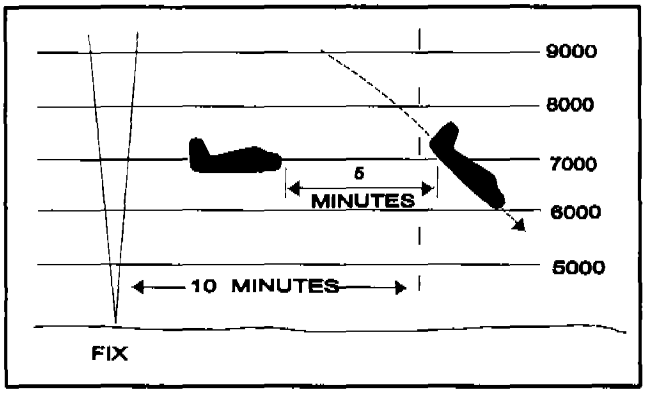


FIG 6–4–9

Climbing Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Timed Separation

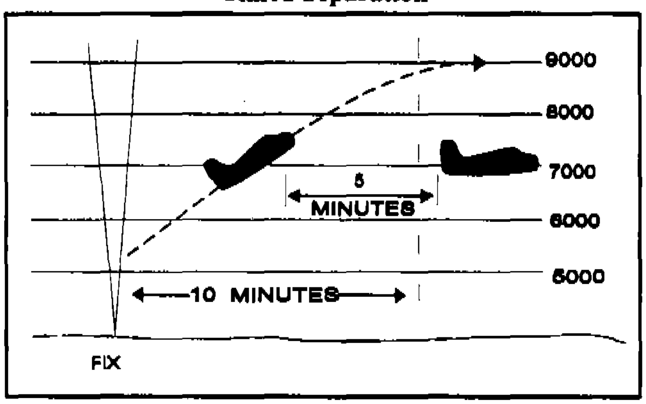


FIG 6–4–10

d. When the conditions of subparas a., b., or c., cannot be met– *20 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID; or *10 minutes* between other aircraft. (See FIG 6–4–11, FIG 6–4–12, FIG 6–4–13, FIG 6–4–14, FIG 6–4–15, and FIG 6–4–16.)

Minima for Same Course Separation

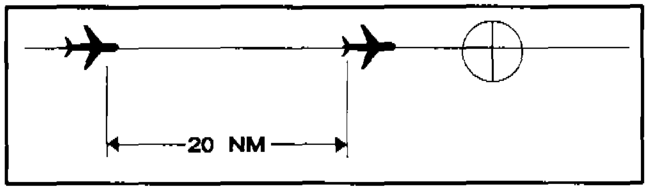


FIG 6–4–11

Minima for Crossing Courses Separation

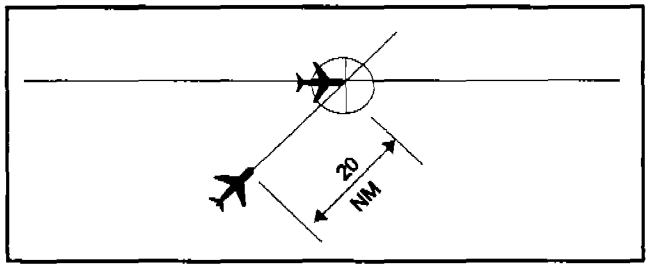


FIG 6–4–12

Minima for Same Course Separation

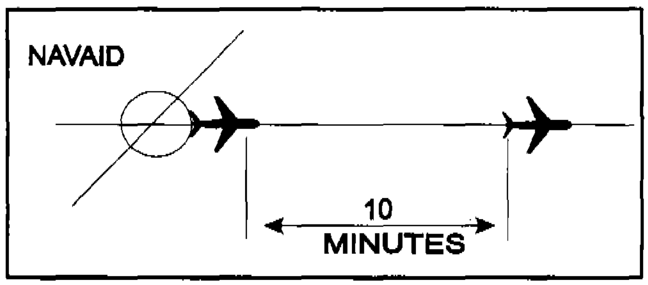


FIG 6–4–13

Minima for Crossing Courses Separation

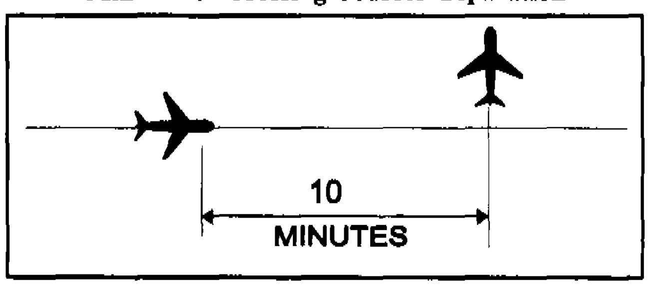


FIG 6–4–14

Climbing Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Separation

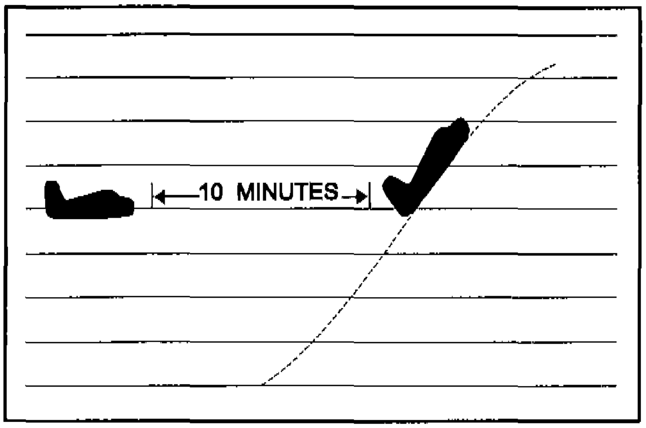


FIG 6–4–15

Descending Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Separation

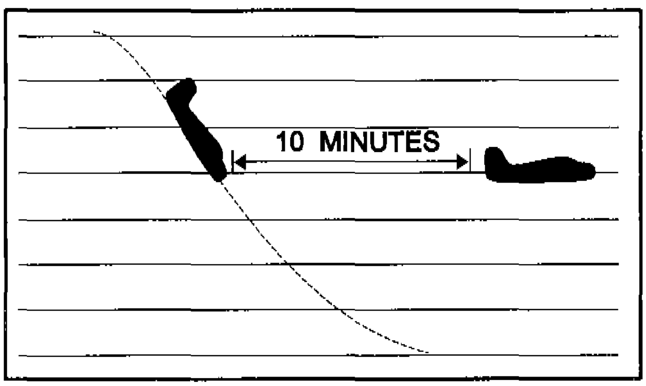


FIG 6–4–16

e. Between aircraft, when one aircraft is using DME/LTD and the other is not–*30 miles* if both the following conditions are met: (See FIG 6–4–17 and FIG 6–4–18.)

Minima for Same Course Separation

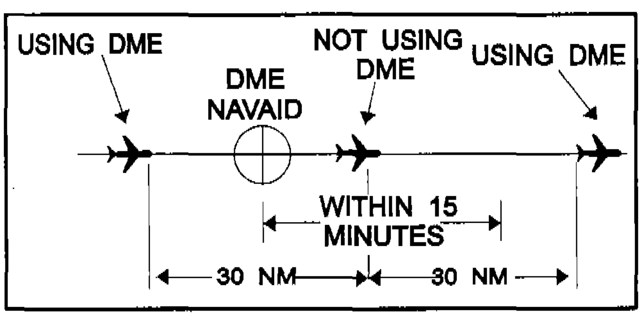


FIG 6–4–17

Minima for Crossing Courses Separation

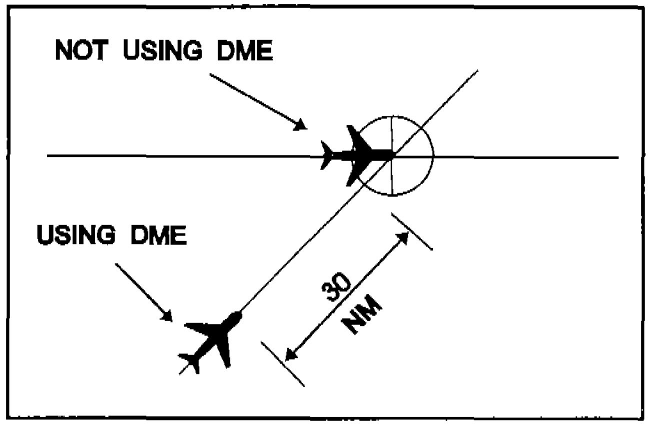


FIG 6–4–18

1. The aircraft using DME/LTD derives distance information by reference to the same NAVAID or waypoint over which the aircraft not using DME/LTD has reported.

2. The aircraft not using DME/LTD is within 15 minutes of the NAVAID.

6–4–3. MINIMA ON OPPOSITE COURSES

Separate aircraft traveling opposite courses by assigning different altitudes consistent with the approved vertical separation from *10 minutes* before, until *10 minutes* after they are estimated to pass. Vertical separation may be discontinued after one of the following conditions is met: (See FIG 6–4–19.)

Minima for Opposite Courses Separation

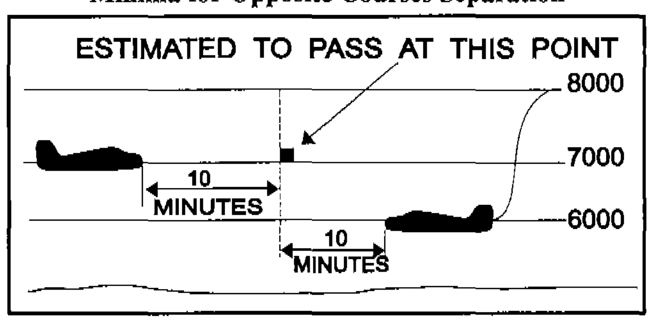


FIG 6–4–19

NOTE–
RNAV route segments that have been expanded in the proximity to reference facilities for slant-range effect are not to be considered "expanded" for purposes of applying separation criteria in this paragraph.

a. Both aircraft have reported passing NAVAID's, DME fixes, or waypoints indicating they have passed each other. (See FIG 6–4–20.)

Minima for Opposite Courses Separation

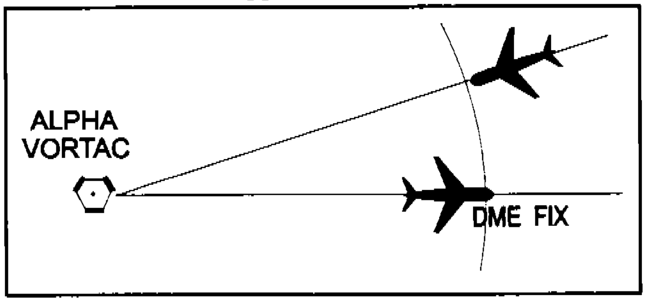


FIG 6-4-20

NOTE-
It is not intended to limit application of this procedure only to aircraft operating in opposite directions along the same airway or radial. This procedure may also be applied to aircraft established on diverging airways or radials of the same NAVAID.

b. Both aircraft have reported passing the same intersection and they are at least *3 minutes* apart.

c. Two RNAV aircraft have reported passing the same position and are at least *8 miles* apart if operating along a route that is 8 miles or less in width; or *18 miles* apart if operating along an expanded route; except that *30 miles* shall be applied if operating along that portion of any route segment defined by a navigation station requiring extended usable distance limitations beyond 130 miles.

d. An aircraft utilizing RNAV and an aircraft utilizing VOR have reported passing the same position and the RNAV aircraft is at least *4 miles* beyond the reported position when operating along a route that is 8 miles or less in width; *9 miles* beyond the point when operating along an expanded route; except that *15 miles* shall be applied if operating along that portion of any route segment defined by a navigation station requiring extended usable distance limitation beyond 130 miles; or *3 minutes* apart whichever is greater.

6-4-4. SEPARATION BY PILOTS

When pilots of aircraft on the same course in direct radio communication with each other concur, you may authorize the following aircraft to maintain longitudinal separation of *10 minutes;* or *20 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID.

PHRASEOLOGY-
MAINTAIN AT LEAST ONE ZERO MINUTES/TWO ZERO MILES SEPARATION FROM (ident).

6-4-5. RNAV AIRCRAFT ALONG VOR AIRWAYS/ROUTES

Advise the pilot to use DME distances when applying DME separation to an RNAV aircraft operating along VOR airways/routes.

PHRASEOLOGY-
USE DME DISTANCES.

NOTE-
Along Track Distance derived from area navigation devices having slant-range correction will not coincide with the direct DME readout.

Section 5. LATERAL SEPARATION

6-5-1. SEPARATION METHODS

Separate aircraft by one of the following methods:

a. Clear aircraft on different airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap.

b. Clear aircraft below 18,000 to proceed to and report over or hold at different geographical locations determined visually or by reference to NAVAID's.

c. Clear aircraft to hold over different fixes whose holding pattern airspace areas do not overlap each other or other airspace to be protected.

d. Clear departing aircraft to fly specified headings which diverge by at least 45 degrees.

6-5-2. MINIMA ON DIVERGING RADIALS

a. Consider separation to exist between aircraft established on radials of the same NAVAID that diverge by at least 15 degrees when either aircraft is clear of the airspace to be protected for the other aircraft.

Minima on Diverging Radials

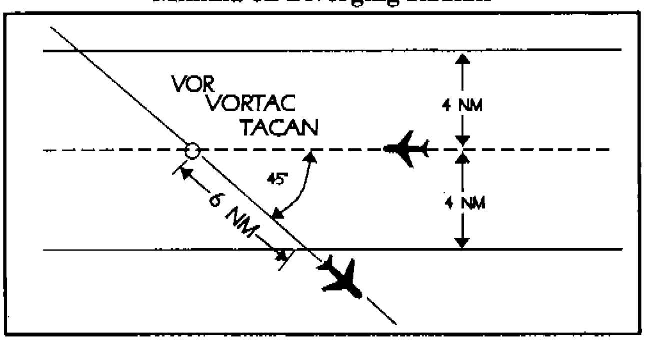


FIG 6-5-1

NOTE-
The procedure may be applied to converging as well as diverging aircraft. (See FIG 6-5-1.) The aircraft depicted 6 miles from the NAVAID would require vertical separation until reaching the 6-mile point. Reversing direction, the same aircraft would require vertical separation before passing the 6-mile point.

b. Use the TBL 6-5-1 and TBL 6-5-2 to determine the distance required for various divergence angles to clear the airspace to be protected. For divergence that falls between two values, use the lesser divergence value to obtain the distance.

Non-DME Divergence Distance Minima

Divergence (Degrees)	*Distance (NM)*
15	16
20	12
25	10
30	8
35	7
45	6
55	5
90	4
NOTE: This Table is for non-DME application only.	

TBL 6-5-1

Divergence Distance Minima

Divergence (Degrees)	*Distance (NM)*	
	Below FL 180	*Fl 180 through FL 450*
15	17	18
20	13	15
25	11	13
30	9	11
35	8	11
45	7	11
55	6	11
90	5	11
This table is for DME application and compensates for DME slant-range error.		

TBL 6-5-2

NOTE-
For altitudes of 3,000 feet or less above the elevation of the NAVAID, DME slant-range error is negligible and the values in TBL 6-5-1 may be used.

6-5-3. DME ARC MINIMA

Apply lateral DME separation by requiring aircraft using DME to fly an arc about a NAVAID at a specified distance using the following minima: (See FIG 6-5-2.)

DME Arc Minima

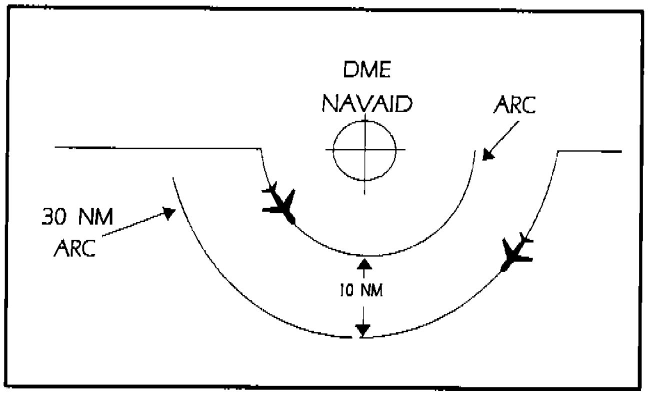


FIG 6-5-2

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, NAVAID TERMS, Para 2-5-2.

a. Between different arcs about a NAVAID regardless of direction of flight:

1. At 35 miles or less from the NAVAID- *10 miles.*

2. More than 35 miles from the NAVAID - *20 miles.*

b. Between an arc about a NAVAID and other airspace to be protected: (See FIG 6-5-3.)

DME Arc Minima

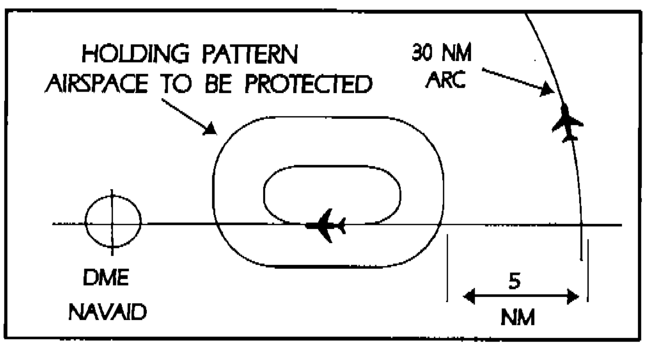


FIG 6-5-3

NOTE-
The other airspace to be protected may be a MOA, a holding pattern, airway or route, ATCAA, Warning Area, Restricted Area, Prohibited Area, ETC.

1. At 35 miles or less from the NAVAID- *5 miles.*

2. More than 35 miles from the NAVAID - *10 miles.*

PHRASEOLOGY-
VIA (number of miles) MILE ARC (direction) OF (name of DME NAVAID).

6-5-4. MINIMA ALONG OTHER THAN ESTABLISHED AIRWAYS OR ROUTES

Protect airspace along other than established airways or routes as follows: (See FIG 6-5-4.)

Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes

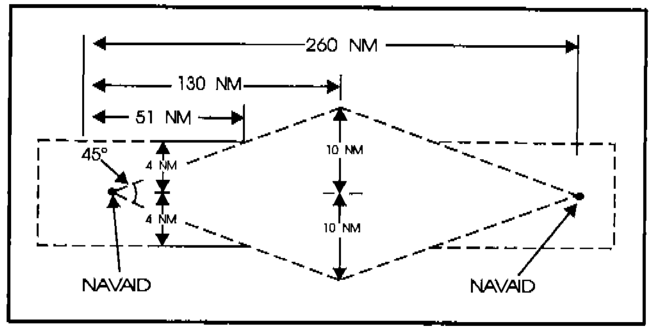


FIG 6-5-4

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-AIRWAY.
P/CG TERM-ROUTE.

a. Direct courses and course changes of 15 degrees or less:

1. Via NAVAID's or radials FL 600 and below- *4 miles* on each side of the route to a point 51 miles from the NAVAID, then increasing in width on a 4 $^1/_2$ degree angle to a width of *10 miles* on each side of the route at a distance of 130 miles from the NAVAID.

2. Via degree-distance fixes for aircraft authorized under para 4-4-3, DEGREE-DISTANCE ROUTE DEFINITION FOR MILITARY OPERATIONS.

(a) Below FL 180- *4 miles* on each side of the route.

(b) FL 180 to FL 600 inclusive- *10 miles* on each side of the route.

3. Via degree-distance fixes for RNAV flights above FL 450- *10 miles* on each side of the route.

NOTE-
Degree-distance RNAV flight (random routes) at FL 450 and below are provided radar separation.

b. When course change is 16 degrees through 90 degrees, protect the airspace on the overflown side beginning at the point where the course changes as follows: (See FIG 6-5-5.)

Overflown Side Minima
16 to 90 Degrees

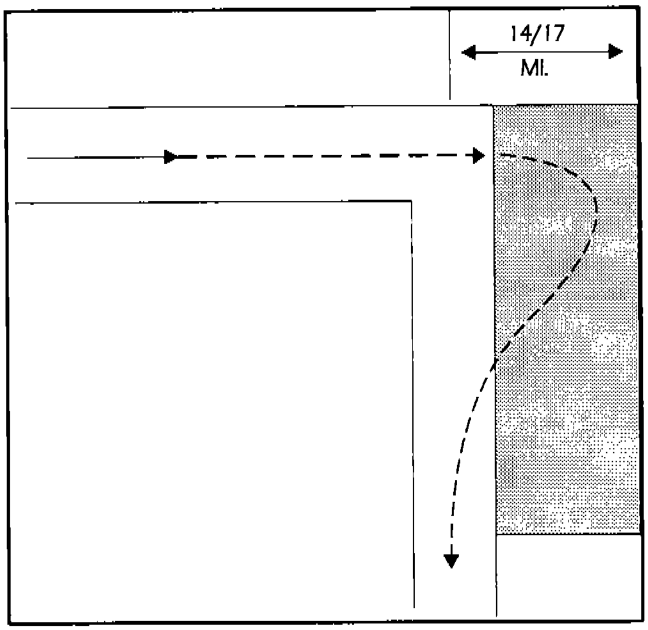


FIG 6-5-5

1. Below FL 180– same as subparas a.1. or 2.

2. FL 180 to FL 230 inclusive– *14 miles.*

3. Above FL 230 to FL 600 inclusive– *17 miles.*

c. When course change is 91 degrees through 180 degrees, protect the airspace on the overflown side beginning at the point where the course changes as follows: (See FIG 6-5-6.)

1. Below FL 180– same as subparas a.1. or 2.

2. FL 180 to FL 230 inclusive– *28 miles.*

3. Above FL 230 to FL 600 inclusive– *34 miles.*

Overflown Side Minima
91 to 180 Degrees

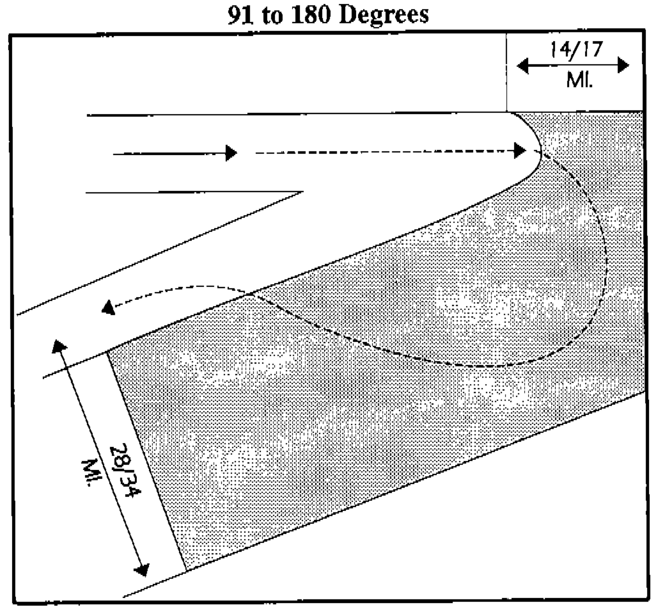


FIG 6-5-6

d. After the course changes specified in **b** or **c** have been completed and the aircraft is back on course, the appropriate minima in **a** may be used.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600, Para 9-3-11.

6-5-5. RNAV MINIMA– DIVERGING/CROSSING COURSES

Consider lateral separation to exist when an RNAV aircraft is beyond the point where the lateral protected airspace of that aircraft has ceased to overlap the lateral protected airspace of another by at least: (See FIG 6-5-7 and FIG 6-5-8.)

a. When operating along a route that is 8 miles or less in width– *4 miles.*

b. When operating along an expanded route– *9 miles,* except that *15 miles* shall be applied along that portion of any route segment requiring extended usable distance limitation beyond 130 miles of the reference facility.

RNAV Minima

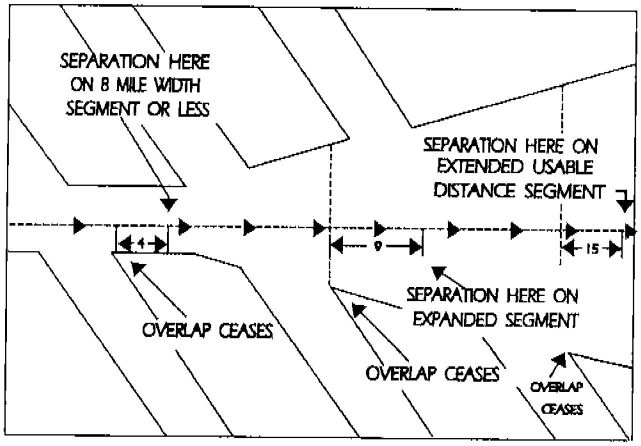


FIG 6–5–7

RNAV Minima

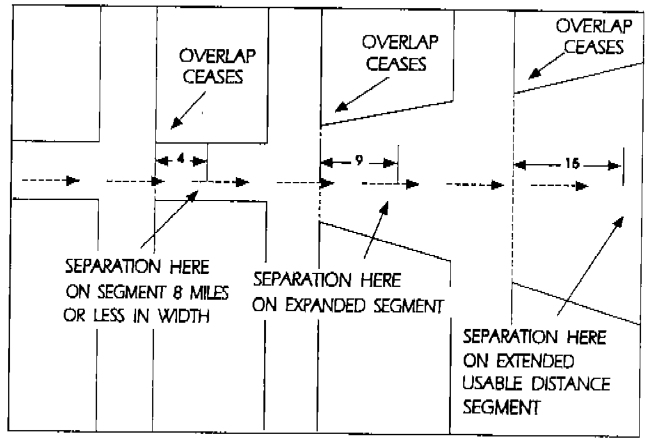


FIG 6–5–8

Section 6. VERTICAL SEPARATION

6-6-1. APPLICATION

Assign an altitude to an aircraft after the aircraft previously at that altitude has reported leaving the altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY-
REPORT LEAVING/REACHING (altitude).

REPORT LEAVING ODD/EVEN ALTITUDES/FLIGHT LEVELS.

SAY ALTITUDE.

NOTE-
Consider known aircraft performance characteristics, pilot furnished and/or Mode C detected information which indicate that climb/descent will not be consistent with the rates recommended in AIM.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, PROCEDURAL PREFERENCE, Para 2-1-3.
FAAO 7110.65, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA, Para 4-5-1.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-7-3.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-8-3.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-9-4.

6-6-2. EXCEPTIONS

Assign an altitude to an aircraft only after the aircraft previously at that altitude has reported at or passing through another altitude separated from the first by the appropriate minimum when:

a. Severe turbulence is reported.

b. Aircraft are conducting military aerial refueling.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING, Para 9-3-10.

c. The aircraft previously at the altitude has been:

1. Issued a clearance permitting climb/descent at pilot's discretion.

2. Cleared to CRUISE (altitude). However, do not use Mode C to effect separation with an aircraft on a cruise clearance.

NOTE-
An aircraft assigned a cruise clearance is assigned a block of airspace from the minimum IFR altitude up to and including the assigned cruising altitude, and climb/descent within the block is at pilot's discretion. When the pilot verbally reports leaving an altitude in descent, he may not return to that altitude.

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-CRUISE.

6-6-3. SEPARATION BY PILOTS

When pilots of aircraft in direct radio communication with each other during climb and descent concur, you may authorize the lower aircraft, if climbing, or the upper aircraft, if descending, to maintain vertical separation.

Section 7. TIMED APPROACHES

6-7-1. APPLICATION

Timed approaches using either nonradar procedures or radar vectors to the final approach course may be used at airports served by a tower if the following conditions are met:

NOTE-
These procedures require NAVAID's and standard / special instrument approach procedures or adequate radar coverage which permit an aircraft to:
[1] Hold at a fix located on the approach course or to be radar vectored to the final approach course for a straight-in approach in accordance with the minima specified in para 6-7-5, INTERVAL MINIMA.
[2] Proceed in the direction of the airport along the approach course crossing the holding / approach fix at a specified altitude if required.
[3] Continue descent for an approach to destination airport.

a. Direct communication is maintained with the aircraft until the pilot is instructed to contact the tower.

b. If more than one missed approach procedure is available, none require course reversal.

c. If only one missed approach procedure is available, the following conditions are met:

1. Course reversal is not required.

2. Reported ceiling and visibility are equal to or greater than the highest prescribed circling minimums for the instrument approach procedure in use.

NOTE-
Determination of whether or not an existing ceiling meets minima is accomplished by comparing MDA (MSL) with ceiling (AGL) plus the airport elevation.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEQUENCE, Para 6-7-2.

6-7-2. APPROACH SEQUENCE

When an aircraft passes the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach), issue clearances for a succeeding timed approach in accordance with the following:

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5-9-5.
FAAO 7110.65, LEVEL FLIGHT RESTRICTION, Para 6-7-4.
FAAO 7110.65, MISSED APPROACHES, Para 6-7-7.

a. Clear the succeeding aircraft for approach, to descend to the altitude vacated by the preceding aircraft, and to leave the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach) at a specified time; or when using radar to sequence and position aircraft on the final approach course, vector aircraft to cross the final approach fix / outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker in compliance with para 6-7-5, INTERVAL MINIMA.

Timed Approach Procedures
Using ILS and Longitudinal Separation Only

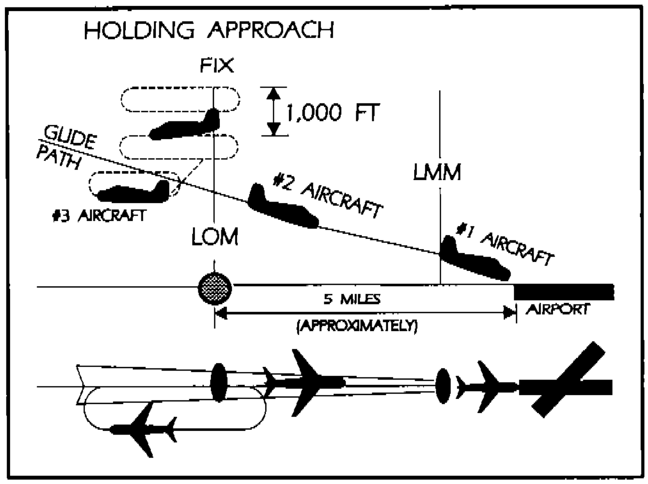


FIG 6-7-1

NOTE-
FIG 6-7-1 depicts the application of timed approach procedures using an ILS and applying longitudinal separation only. Using an interval of 2 minutes between successive approaches, the #1 and #2 aircraft have already passed the outer locator (LOM) on final approach, and the #3 aircraft has been cleared for approach and to depart the LOM 2 minutes after the #2 aircraft reported leaving the LOM inbound on final approach. After aircraft in the approach sequence depart the holding / approach fix (LOM) inbound, vertical separation is no longer provided and longitudinal separation is utilized.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION, Para 5-9-2.

b. If an alternative missed approach procedure is not available and weather conditions are less than required by para 6-7-1, APPLICATION, subpara c., clear the succeeding aircraft for an approach when the preceding aircraft has landed or canceled its IFR flight plan.

Timed Approach Procedures
Using a Bearing on an NDB and Longitudinal and Vertical Separation

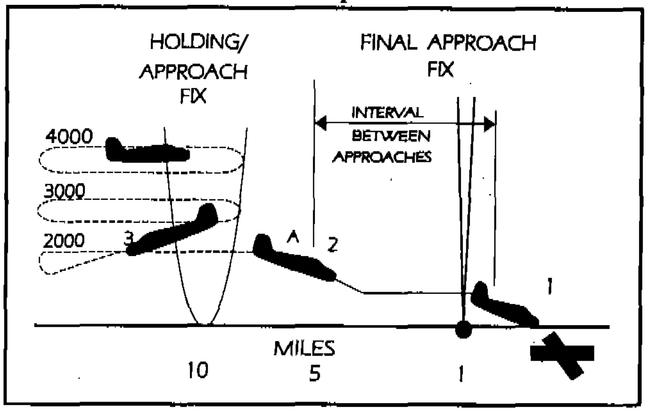


FIG 6-7-2

NOTE–
FIG 6-7-2 Depicts the application of timed approach procedures using a holding / approach fix on a bearing of an NDB and applying a combination of longitudinal and vertical separation. The #3 aircraft has been instructed to descend to 2,000 after the #2 aircraft has reported departing the holding / approach fix inbound and leaving 2,000 at point A. The #2 aircraft has departed the holding / approach fix inbound at the designated time, maintaining 2,000 until cleared for approach at point A. The #1 aircraft has been sighted, enabling the controller to issue approach clearance to the #2 aircraft at point A.

c. Release the aircraft to the tower before it reaches the final approach fix.

6–7–3. SEQUENCE INTERRUPTION

Interrupt the established timed approach sequence if necessary to allow an aircraft to execute a different type of approach.

6–7–4. LEVEL FLIGHT RESTRICTION

If the weather report indicates an aircraft will be in IFR conditions over the final approach fix (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker (precision approach) when para 6–7–2, APPROACH SEQUENCE, subpara b. is applied, clear the second aircraft for an approach early enough to allow at least 1 minute of level flight before crossing the final approach fix / outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker.

6–7–5. INTERVAL MINIMA

Use a *2–minute* or a *5–mile* radar interval (except for a small aircraft behind a heavy aircraft: use a *3–minute* or a *6–mile* radar interval) as the minimum between successive approaches and increase the interval, as necessary, taking into account the:

NOTE–
Increased separation is required for small aircraft behind heavy aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5-9-5.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 6-7-1.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEQUENCE, Para 6-7-2.

a. Relative speeds of the aircraft concerned.

b. Existing weather conditions.

c. Distance between the approach fix and the airport.

d. Type of approach being made.

6–7–6. TIME CHECK

Issue a time check to an aircraft before specifying a time to leave the approach fix inbound unless the aircraft is vectored to the final approach course.

6–7–7. MISSED APPROACHES

a. If weather conditions are such that an aircraft will likely miss an approach, issue an alternative missed approach procedure to the next aircraft.

b. If an aircraft misses an approach, allow the next aircraft to continue the approach if it has been assigned an alternative missed approach procedure. Retain radar control or hold any remaining aircraft at assigned altitudes until traffic conditions permit the issuance of approach clearances.

c. When para 6–7–2, APPROACH SEQUENCE, subpara b. is applied and the first aircraft misses an approach, retain radar control or clear the second aircraft to maintain the last assigned altitude (minimum holding altitude) and return to the holding / approach fix to hold until traffic conditions permit the issuance of approach clearances.

Chapter 7. VISUAL

Section 1. GENERAL

7-1-1. CLASS A AIRSPACE RESTRICTIONS

Do not apply visual separation or issue VFR or "VFR-on-top" clearances in Class A airspace.

7-1-2. VFR CONDITIONS

a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists:

1. The pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/descent.

2. *TERMINAL:* The clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA-approved noise abatement route or altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY-
MAINTAIN VFR CONDITIONS.

MAINTAIN VFR CONDITIONS UNTIL (time or fix).

MAINTAIN VFR CONDITIONS ABOVE/BELOW (altitude).

CLIMB/DESCEND VFR,

and if required,

BETWEEN (altitude) AND (altitude)

or

ABOVE/BELOW (altitude).

b. When, in your judgment, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.

PHRASEOLOGY-
IF UNABLE, (alternative procedure), AND ADVISE.

7-1-3. APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE FOR VFR ARRIVING AIRCRAFT

Issue the following where procedures have been established for arriving VFR aircraft to contact approach control for landing information:

a. Wind, runway, and altimeter setting at the airport of intended landing. This information may be omitted if contained in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code or if the pilot uses the phrase, "have numbers."

NOTE-
Pilot use of "have numbers" does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast.

b. Traffic information on a workload permitting basis.

c. Time or place at which the aircraft is to contact the tower on local control frequency for further landing information.

d. An aircraft may be instructed to contact approach control for landing and traffic information upon initial contact with the tower.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7-6-1.
FAAO 7110.65, SERVICE AVAILABILITY, Para 7-6-2.

7-1-4. VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT

TERMINAL

When it becomes necessary to hold VFR aircraft at visual holding fixes, take the following actions:

a. Clear aircraft to hold at selected, prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air, preferably those depicted on sectional charts.

NOTE-
At some locations, VFR checkpoints are depicted on Sectional Aeronautical and Terminal Area Charts. In selecting geographical fixes, depicted VFR checkpoints are preferred unless the pilot exhibits a familiarity with the local area.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL HOLDING POINTS, Para 4-6-5.

b. Issue traffic information to aircraft cleared to hold at the same fix.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD AT (location) UNTIL (time or other condition),

TRAFFIC (description) HOLDING AT (fix, altitude if known),

or

PROCEEDING TO (fix) FROM (direction or fix).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, HOLDING, Para 7–6–5.

Section 2. VISUAL SEPARATION

7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION

Aircraft may be separated by visual means, as provided in this paragraph, when other approved separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. To ensure that other separation will exist, consider aircraft performance, wake turbulence, closure rate, routes of flight, and known weather conditions. Reported weather conditions must allow the aircraft to remain within sight until other separation exists. Do not apply visual separation between successive departures when departure routes and / or aircraft performance preclude maintaining separation.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES, Para 2-1-20.
FAAO 7110.65, TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, Para 2-1-21.
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS, Para 3-1-9.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY, Para 5-9-5.
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7-4-1.
FAAO 7110.65, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7-4-2.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS, Para 7-4-4.
P/CG TERM- VISUAL APPROACH.
P/CG TERM- VISUAL SEPARATION.

a. TERMINAL: Visual separation may be applied between aircraft under the control of the same facility within the terminal area, provided:

1. Communication is maintained with at least one of the aircraft involved or the capability to communicate immediately as prescribed in para 3-9-3, DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS, subpara a.2. is available, and:

2. The aircraft are visually observed by the tower and visual separation is maintained between the aircraft by the tower. The tower shall not provide visual separation between aircraft when wake turbulence separation is required or when the lead aircraft is a B757.

3. A pilot sees another aircraft and is instructed to maintain visual separation from the aircraft as follows:

(a) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft including position, direction and, unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intention.

(b) Obtain acknowledgment from the pilot that the other aircraft is in sight.

(c) Instruct the pilot to maintain visual separation from that aircraft.

(d) Advise the pilot if the radar targets appear likely to converge.

NOTE-
Issue this advisory in conjunction with the instruction to maintain visual separation, or thereafter if the controller subsequently becomes aware that the targets are merging.

(e) If the aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.

PHRASEOLOGY-
TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction)-BOUND, (type of aircraft), (intentions and other relevant information).

If applicable,

ON CONVERGING COURSE.

DO YOU HAVE IT IN SIGHT?

If the answer is in the affirmative,

MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION FROM THAT TRAFFIC.

If aircraft are on converging courses, advise the other aircraft:

TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction)-bound, (type of aircraft), HAS YOU IN SIGHT AND WILL MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.

b. EN ROUTE: You may use visual separation in conjunction with visual approach procedures. Visual separation may also be used up to but not including FL 180 when the following conditions are met:

1. Direct communication is maintained with one of the aircraft involved and there is an ability to communicate with the other.

2. A pilot sees another aircraft and is instructed to maintain visual separation from it as follows:

(a) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft including position, direction and unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intentions.

(b) Obtain acknowledgment from the pilot that the other aircraft is in sight.

(c) Instruct the pilot to maintain visual separation from that aircraft.

(d) Advise the pilot if the radar targets appear likely to converge.

(e) If the aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.

(f) Advise the pilots if either aircraft is a heavy.

(g) Traffic advisories and wake turbulence cautionary advisories shall be issued in accordance with para 2-1-20, WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES, and para 2-1-21, TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7-4-1.
FAAO 7110.65, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7-4-2.

c. Nonapproach control towers may be authorized to provide visual separation between aircraft within surface areas or designated areas provided other separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. This may be applied by the nonapproach control tower providing the separation or by a pilot visually observing another aircraft and being instructed to maintain visual separation with that aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY-
VISUAL SEPARATION APPROVED BETWEEN (identification) AND (identification),

and for departing aircraft,

(departing/succeeding aircraft) RELEASED YOUR DISCRETION.

NOTE-
Separation of IFR aircraft before and after application of visual separation is an IFR control function (Approach/Departure/En Route). A nonapproach control tower by accepting authorization for visual separation becomes responsible for ensuring that separation. Separation requirements also apply to VFR aircraft when IFR, Class B, Class C or TRSA separation is prescribed.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, PRACTICE APPROACHES, Para 4-8-11.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5-6-1.
FAAO 7110.65, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7-4-2.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7-6-1.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7-7-1.
FAAO 7110.65, ISSUANCE OF EFC, Para 7-7-2.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-7-3.
FAAO 7110.65, HELICOPTER TRAFFIC, Para 7-7-4.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 7-7-5.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACH INTERVAL, Para 7-7-6.
FAAO 7110.65, TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION, Para 7-7-7.
FAAO 7110.65, CLASS C SERVICES, Para 7-8-2.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-8-3.
FAAO 7110.65, ESTABLISHING TWO-WAY COMMUNICATIONS, Para 7-8-4.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 7-8-5.
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 7-8-6.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7-9-1.
FAAO 7110.65, METHODS, Para 7-9-3.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-9-4.
FAAO 7110.65, HELICOPTER TRAFFIC, Para 7-9-6.
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS, Para 7-9-7.

Section 3. VFR-ON-TOP

7-3-1. VFR-ON-TOP

a. You may clear an aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests the clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY-
MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP.

NOTE-
1 *When an aircraft has been cleared to maintain "VFR-on-top," the pilot is responsible to fly at an appropriate VFR altitude, comply with VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria, and to be vigilant so as to see and avoid other aircraft.*

2 *Although standard IFR separation is not applied, controllers shall continue to provide traffic advisories and safety alerts, and apply merging target procedures to aircraft operating VFR-on-top.*

b. You may clear an aircraft to climb through clouds, smoke, haze, or other meteorological formations and then to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the following conditions are met:

1. The pilot requests the clearance.

2. You inform the pilot of the reported height of the tops of the meteorological formation, or

3. You inform the pilot that no top report is available.

4. When necessary, you ensure separation from all other traffic for which you have separation responsibility by issuing an alternative clearance.

5. When an aircraft is climbing to and reports reaching "VFR-on-top," reclear the aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top."

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLIMB TO AND REPORT REACHING VFR-ON-TOP,

and

TOPS REPORTED (altitude),

or

NO TOPS REPORTS.

IF NOT ON TOP AT (altitude), MAINTAIN (altitude), AND ADVISE.

MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP.

c. Do not clear an aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top" between sunset and sunrise to separate holding aircraft from each other or from en route aircraft unless restrictions are applied to ensure the appropriate IFR vertical separation.

PHRASEOLOGY-
MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP AT OR ABOVE/BELOW/BETWEEN (altitudes).

EXAMPLE-
"Maintain VFR-on-top at or above one three thousand five hundred."

"Maintain VFR-on-top at or below one two thousand five hundred."

"Maintain VFR-on-top at or between six thousand and one zero thousand."

d. When, in your judgment, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.

PHRASEOLOGY-
IF UNABLE, (alternative procedure), AND ADVISE.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VFR-ON-TOP, Para 9-4-3.

7-3-2. ALTITUDE FOR DIRECTION OF FLIGHT

Inform an aircraft maintaining "VFR-on-top" when a report indicates the pilot is not complying with CFR Part 91.159(a).

NOTE-
As required by CFR 91.159 (a), the appropriate VFR altitudes for aircraft (not in a holding pattern of 2 minutes or less, or turning) operating more than 3,000 feet above the surface to and including 18,000 feet MSL:

Magnetic courses 0-179- odd cardinal altitudes plus 500 feet; e.g., 3,500, 5,500.

Magnetic courses 180-359- even cardinal altitudes plus 500 feet; e.g., 4,500, 8,500.

PHRASEOLOGY-
VFR-ON-TOP CRUISING LEVELS FOR YOUR DIRECTION OF FLIGHT ARE:

more than 3,000 feet above the surface to FL 180:

ODD/EVEN ALTITUDES/FLIGHT LEVELS PLUS FIVE HUNDRED FEET.

Section 4. APPROACHES

7-4-1. VISUAL APPROACH

A visual approach is an ATC authorization for an aircraft on an IFR flight plan to proceed visually to the airport of intended landing; it is not an instrument approach procedure. Also, there is no missed approach segment. An aircraft unable to complete a visual approach shall be handled as any go-around and appropriate separation must be provided.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES, Para 2-1-20.
FAAO 7110.65, FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NON-APPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES, Para 3-10-2.
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS, Para 7-4-4.

7-4-2. VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH

A vector for a visual approach may be initiated if the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA and the visibility is 3 miles or greater. At airports without weather reporting service there must be reasonable assurance (e.g. area weather reports, PIREP's etc.,) that descent and flight to the airport can be made visually, and the pilot must be informed that weather information is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Ident) FLY HEADING OR TURN RIGHT/LEFT HEADING (degrees) VECTOR FOR VISUAL APPROACH TO (airport name).

(If appropriate)

WEATHER NOT AVAILABLE.

NOTE-
At airports where weather information is not available, a pilot request for a visual approach indicates that descent and flight to the airport can be made visually and clear of clouds.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VECTORS TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE, Para 5-9-1.
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.
FAAO 7110.65, CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH, Para 7-4-3.
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS, Para 7-4-4.
FAAO 7110.65, SEQUENCING, Para 7-6-7.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7-7-3.

7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH

ARTCC's and approach controls may clear aircraft for visual approaches using the following procedures:

NOTE-
Towers may exercise this authority when authorized by a LOA with the facility that provides the IFR service, or by a facility directive at collocated facilities.

a. Controllers may initiate, or pilots may request, a visual approach even when an aircraft is being vectored for an instrument approach and the pilot subsequently reports:

1. The airport or the runway in sight at airports with operating control towers.

2. The airport in sight at airports without a control tower.

b. Resolve potential conflicts with all other aircraft, advise an overtaking aircraft of the distance to the preceding aircraft and speed difference, and ensure that weather conditions at the airport are VFR or that the pilot has been informed that weather is not available for the destination airport. Advise the pilot of the frequency to receive weather information where AWOS/ASOS is available.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(Ident) (instructions) CLEARED VISUAL APPROACH RUNWAY (number);

or

(ident) (instructions) CLEARED VISUAL APPROACH TO (airport name)

(and if appropriate)

WEATHER NOT AVAILABLE OR AWOS/ASOS WEATHER AVAILABLE ON FREQUENCY (freq) MHZ.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1

c. Clear an aircraft for a visual approach when:

1. The aircraft is number one in the approach sequence, or

2. The aircraft is to follow a preceding aircraft and the pilot reports the preceding aircraft in sight and is instructed to follow it, or

NOTE-
The pilot need not report the airport/runway in sight.

3. The pilot reports the airport or runway in sight but not the preceding aircraft. Radar separation must be maintained until visual separation is provided.

d. All aircraft following a heavy jet/B757 must be informed of the airplane manufacturer and model.

EXAMPLE–
"Cessna Three Four Juliet, following a Boeing 757, 12 o'clock, six miles."

e. Inform the tower of the aircraft's position prior to communications transfer at controlled airports. ARTS functions may be used provided a facility directive or LOA specifies control and communication transfer points.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Ident) (instructions) CLEARED VISUAL APPROACH RUNWAY (number);

or

(ident) (instructions) CLEARED VISUAL APPROACH TO (airport name)

(and if appropriate)

WEATHER NOT AVAILABLE OR AWOS/ASOS WEATHER AVAILABLE ON FREQUENCY (freq) MHZ.

f. In addition to the requirements of para 7–4–2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, and subparas a., b., c., d., and e., ensure that the location of the destination airport is provided when the pilot is asked to report the destination airport in sight.

g. In those instances where airports are located in close proximity, also provide the location of the airport that may cause the confusion.

EXAMPLE–
"Cessna Five Six November, Cleveland Burke Lakefront Airport is at 12 o'clock, 5 miles. Cleveland Hopkins Airport is at 1 o'clock 12 miles. Report Cleveland Hopkins in sight."

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS, Para 7–4–4.

7–4–4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS

a. All aircraft must be informed that approaches are being conducted to parallel/ intersecting/converging runways. This may be accomplished through use of the ATIS.

b. When conducting visual approaches to multiple runways ensure the following:

1. Do not permit the respective aircrafts' primary radar returns to merge unless visual separation is being applied.

2. When the aircraft flight paths intersect, ensure standard separation is maintained until visual separation is provided.

c. In addition to the requirements in para 7–2–1, VISUAL SEPARATION, para 7–4–1, VISUAL APPROACH, para 7–4–2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, and para 7–4–3, CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH, the following conditions apply to visual approaches being conducted simultaneously to parallel, intersecting, and converging runways, as appropriate:

1. Parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Unless standard separation is provided by ATC, an aircraft must report sighting a preceding aircraft making an approach (instrument or visual) to the adjacent parallel runway. When an aircraft reports another aircraft in sight on the adjacent final approach course and visual separation is applied, controllers must advise the succeeding aircraft to maintain visual separation. However, do not permit a heavy/B757 aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.

2. Parallel runways separated by at least 2,500 feet, but less than 4,300 feet.

(a) Standard separation is provided until the aircraft are established on a heading which will intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees, and each aircraft has been issued and the pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual approach clearance.

NOTE–
The intent of the 30 degree intercept angle is to reduce the potential for overshoots of the final, and preclude side-by-side operations with one or both aircraft in a "belly-up" configuration during the turn. Aircraft performance, speed, and the number of degrees of the turn to the final are factors to be considered by the controller when vectoring aircraft to parallel runways.

(b) Visual approaches may be conducted to one runway while visual or instrument approaches are conducted simultaneously to the other runway, provided the conditions of subpara (a) are met.

(c) Provided aircraft flight paths do not intersect, and when the provisions of subparas (a) and (b) are met, it is not necessary to apply any other type of separation with aircraft on the adjacent final approach course.

3. Parallel runways separated by 4,300 feet or more.

(a) When aircraft flight paths do not intersect, visual approaches may be conducted simultaneously, provided standard separation is maintained until one of the aircraft has been issued and the pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual approach clearance.

(b) Visual approaches may be conducted to one runway while visual or instrument approaches are conducted simultaneously to the other runway, provided the conditions of subpara (a) are met.

(c) Provided the aircraft flight paths do not intersect, when the provisions of subparas (a) and (b) are met, it is not necessary to apply any other type of separation with aircraft on the adjacent final approach course.

4. Intersecting and converging runways. Visual approaches may be conducted simultaneously with visual or instrument approaches to another runway, provided:

(a) Standard separation is maintained until the aircraft conducting the visual approach has been issued and the pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual approach clearance.

(b) When aircraft flight paths intersect, radar separation must be maintained until visual separation is provided.

NOTE–
Although simultaneous approaches may be conducted to intersecting runways, staggered approaches may be necessary to meet the airport separation requirements specified in para 3–10–4, INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.79, CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES.
FAAO 7110.65, CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE, Para 7–4–5.
FAAO 7110.65, SEPARATION, Para 7–7–3.

7–4–5. CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE

Clear an aircraft for a CVFP only when the following conditions are met:

a. There is an operating control tower;

b. The published name of the CVFP and the landing runway are specified in the approach clearance, the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA, and the visibility is 3 miles or more, unless higher minimums are published for the particular CVFP;

c. When using parallel or intersecting/converging runways, the criteria specified in para 7–4–4, APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS, are applied.

d. An aircraft not following another aircraft on the approach reports sighting a charted visual landmark, or reports sighting a preceding aircraft landing on the same runway and has been instructed to follow that aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Ident) CLEARED (name of CVFP) APPROACH.

7–4–6. CONTACT APPROACH

Clear an aircraft for a contact approach only if the following conditions are met:

a. The pilot has requested it.

NOTE–
When executing a contact approach, the pilot is responsible for maintaining the required flight visibility, cloud clearance, and terrain/obstruction clearance. Unless otherwise restricted, the pilot may find it necessary to descend, climb, and/or fly a circuitous route to the airport to maintain cloud clearance and/or terrain/obstruction clearance. It is not in any way intended that controllers will initiate or suggest a contact approach to a pilot.

b. The reported ground visibility is at least 1 statute mile.

c. A standard or special instrument approach procedure has been published and is functioning for the airport of intended landing.

d. Approved separation is applied between aircraft so cleared and other IFR or SVFR aircraft. When applying vertical separation, do not assign a fixed altitude but clear the aircraft at or below an altitude which is at least 1,000 feet below any IFR traffic but not below the minimum safe altitude prescribed in CFR Part 91.119.

NOTE–
CFR Part 91.119 specifies the minimum safe altitude to be flown
(a) anywhere;
(b) over congested areas;
(c) other than congested areas;
to provide for an emergency landing in the event of power failure and without undue hazard to persons or property on the surface.
(d) helicopters; may be operated at less than the minimums prescribed in paras (b) and (c) of CFR Part 91.119 if the operation is conducted without hazard to persons or property on the surface.

e. An alternative clearance is issued when weather conditions are such that a contact approach may be impracticable.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED CONTACT APPROACH,

And if required,
AT OR BELOW (altitude) (routing).

IF NOT POSSIBLE, (alternative procedures), AND ADVISE.

Section 5. SPECIAL VFR (SVFR)

7-5-1. AUTHORIZATION

a. SVFR operations in weather conditions less than basic VFR minima are authorized:

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.

1. At any location not prohibited by CFR Part 91, Appendix D or when an exemption to CFR Part 91 has been granted and an associated LOA established. CFR Part 91 does not prohibit SVFR helicopter operations.

2. Only within the lateral boundaries of Class B, C, D, or E surface areas, below 10,000 feet MSL.

3. Only when requested by the pilot.

4. On the basis of weather conditions reported at the airport of intended landing/departure.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, CLIMB TO VFR, Para 7-5-6.
FAAO 7110.65, GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE, Para 7-5-7.

5. When weather conditions are not reported at the airport of intended landing/departure and the pilot advises that VFR cannot be maintained and requests SVFR.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED TO ENTER/OUT OF/THROUGH, (name) SURFACE AREA

and if required,

(direction) OF (name) AIRPORT (specified routing), and

MAINTAIN SPECIAL V-F-R CONDITIONS,

and if required,

AT OR BELOW (altitude below 10,000 feet MSL)

or as applicable under an exemption from CFR Part 91,

CLEARED FOR (coded arrival or departure procedure) ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE, (additional instructions as required).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, AIRSPACE CLASSES, 2-4-22.

b. SVFR operations may be authorized for aircraft operating in or transiting a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area when the primary airport is reporting VFR but the pilot advises that basic VFR cannot be maintained.

NOTE-
The basic requirements for issuance of a SVFR clearance in subpara a. apply with the obvious exception that weather conditions at the controlling airport are not required to be less than basic VFR minima.

7-5-2. PRIORITY

a. SVFR flights may be approved only if arriving and departing IFR aircraft are not delayed.

EXAMPLE-
1 A SVFR aircraft has been cleared to enter a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area and subsequently an IFR aircraft is ready to depart or is in position to begin an approach. Less overall delay might accrue to the IFR aircraft if the SVFR aircraft is allowed to proceed to the airport and land, rather than leave, a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area or be repositioned to provide IFR priority.

2 A SVFR aircraft is number one for takeoff and located in such a position that the number two aircraft, an IFR flight, cannot taxi past to gain access to the runway. Less overall delay might accrue to the IFR aircraft by releasing the SVFR departure rather than by having the aircraft taxi down the runway to a turnoff point so the IFR aircraft could be released first.

NOTE-
The priority afforded IFR aircraft over SVFR aircraft is not intended to be so rigidly applied that inefficient use of airspace results. The controller has the prerogative of permitting completion of a SVFR operation already in progress when an IFR aircraft becomes a factor if better overall efficiency will result.

b. Inform an aircraft of the anticipated delay when a SVFR clearance cannot be granted because of IFR traffic. Do not issue an EFC or expected departure time.

PHRASEOLOGY-
EXPECT (number) MINUTES DELAY, (additional instructions as necessary).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5-6-1.

7-5-3. SEPARATION

a. Apply approved separation between:

1. SVFR aircraft.

2. SVFR aircraft and IFR aircraft.

b. Alternate SVFR helicopter separation minima may be established when warranted by the volume and/or complexity of local helicopter operations. Alternate

SVFR helicopter separation minima shall be established with an LOA with the helicopter operator which shall specify, as a minimum, that SVFR helicopters are to maintain visual reference to the surface and adhere to the following aircraft separation minima:

1. Between a SVFR helicopter and an arriving or departing IFR aircraft:

(a) 1/2 mile. If the IFR aircraft is less than 1 mile from the landing airport.

(b) 1 mile. If the IFR aircraft is 1 mile or more from the airport.

2. 1 mile between SVFR helicopters. This separation may be reduced to 200 feet if:

(a) Both helicopters are departing simultaneously on courses that diverge by at least 30 degrees and:

(1) The tower can determine this separation by reference to surface markings, or:

(2) One of the departing helicopters is instructed to remain at least 200 feet from the other.

NOTE–
Radar vectors are authorized as prescribed in para 5–6–1, APPLICATION.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.

7–5–4. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT

Do not assign a fixed altitude when applying vertical separation, but clear the SVFR aircraft at or below an altitude which is at least 500 feet below any conflicting IFR traffic but not below the MSA prescribed in CFR Part 91.119.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAINTAIN SPECIAL V–F–R CONDITIONS AT OR BELOW (altitude).

NOTE–
1 *SVFR aircraft are not assigned fixed altitudes to maintain because of the clearance from clouds requirement.*

2 *The MSA's are:*
(a) Over congested areas, an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle, and
(b) Over other than congested areas, an altitude at least 500 feet above the surface.
(c) Helicopters may be operated at less than the minimum altitudes prescribed in (a) and (b) above.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5–6–1.
CFR PART 91.119, MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDES: GENERAL.

7–5–5. LOCAL OPERATIONS

a. Authorize local SVFR operations for a specified period (series of landings and takeoffs, etc.) upon request if the aircraft can be recalled when traffic or weather conditions require. Where warranted, LOA's may be consummated.

PHRASEOLOGY–
LOCAL SPECIAL V–F–R OPERATIONS IN THE IMMEDIATE VICINITY OF (name) AIRPORT ARE AUTHORIZED UNTIL (time). MAINTAIN SPECIAL V–F–R CONDITIONS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, APPROPRIATE SUBJECTS, Para 4–3–2.

b. Control facilities may also authorize an FSS to transmit SVFR clearances so that only one aircraft at a time operates in the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas unless pilots agree that they will maintain visual separation with other aircraft operating in the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas. Such authorization concerning visual separation by pilots shall be contained in a LOA between the control facility and the FSS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, DEVELOPING LOA, Para 4–3–3.
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.

7–5–6. CLIMB TO VFR

Authorize an aircraft to climb to VFR upon request if the only weather limitation is restricted visibility.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB TO V–F–R WITHIN (name) SURFACE AREA/WITHIN (a specified distance) MILES FROM (airport name) AIRPORT, MAINTAIN SPECIAL V–F–R CONDITIONS UNTIL REACHING V–F–R.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.
FAAO 7110.65, AIRSPACE CLASSES, Para 2–4–22.
FAAO 7110.65, AUTHORIZATION, Para 7–5–1.

7–5–7. GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE

CFR Part 91 does not prohibit helicopter SVFR flight when the visibility is less than 1 mile. Treat requests for SVFR fixed wing operations as follows when the ground visibility is officially reported at an airport as less than 1 mile:

a. Inform departing aircraft that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and that a clearance cannot be issued.

b. Inform arriving aircraft, operating outside of a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and that, unless an emergency exists, a clearance cannot be issued.

c. Inform arriving aircraft, operating VFR/SVFR within a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and request the pilot to advise intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Name of airport) VISIBILITY LESS THAN ONE MILE. ADVISE INTENTIONS.

NOTE–
Clear an aircraft to land at an airport with an operating control tower, traffic permitting, if the pilot reports the airport in sight. The pilot is responsible to continue to the airport or exit the surface area. CFR Part 91.157 prohibits VFR aircraft (other than helicopters) from landing at any airport within a surface area when ground visibility is less than 1 mile. A pilot could inadvertently encounter conditions that are below SVFR minimums after entering a surface area due to rapidly changing weather. The pilot is best suited to determine the action to be taken since pilots operating under SVFR are not required to be instrument rated, and the possibility exists that flight visibility may not be the same as ground visibility. CFR Part 91.3 authorizes a pilot encountering an in-flight emergency requiring immediate action to deviate from any rule of CFR Part 91 to the extent required to meet that emergency. Flight into adverse weather conditions may require the pilot to execute the emergency authority granted in CFR part 91.3 and continue inbound to land.

d. Authorize scheduled air carrier aircraft in the United States to conduct operations if ground visibility is not less than $^1/_2$ statute mile.

NOTE–
CFR Part 121 permits landing or takeoff by domestic scheduled air carriers where a local surface restriction to visibility is not less than 1/2 statute mile, provided all turns after takeoff or before landing and all flights beyond 1 statute mile from the airport boundary can be accomplished above or outside the area so restricted. The pilot is solely responsible for determining if the nature of the visibility restriction will permit compliance with the provisions of CFR Part 121.

e. Clear an aircraft to fly through the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area if the aircraft reports flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.
FAAO 7110.65, AUTHORIZATION, Para 7-5-1.

7-5-8. FLIGHT VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE

Treat requests for SVFR fixed-wing operations as follows when weather conditions are not reported at an airport and the pilot advises the flight visibility is less than 1 mile:

NOTE–
CFR Part 91 prescribes the visibility for basic VFR and SVFR operations as the official reported ground visibility at airports where provided and landing or takeoff "flight visibility" where there is no official reported ground visibility.

a. Inform departing aircraft that a clearance cannot be issued.

b. Inform arriving aircraft operating outside of a Class B, Class C, Class D or Class E surface area that a clearance cannot be issued unless an emergency exists.

c. Request the intentions of an arriving aircraft operating within a Class B, Class C, Class D or Class E surface area.

NOTE–
Clear an aircraft to land at an airport with an operating control tower, traffic permitting, if the pilot reports the airport in sight. The pilot is responsible to continue to the airport or exit the surface area. CFR Part 91.157 prohibits VFR aircraft (other than helicopters) from landing at any airport within a surface area when flight visibility is less than 1 mile. A pilot could inadvertently encounter conditions that are below SVFR minimums after entering a surface area due to rapidly changing weather. The pilot is best suited to determine the action to be taken since pilots operating under SVFR are not required to be instrument rated, and the possibility exists that flight visibility may not be the same as ground visibility. CFR Part 91.3 authorizes a pilot encountering an in-flight emergency requiring immediate action to deviate from any rule of CFR Part 91 to the extent required to meet that emergency. Flight into adverse weather conditions may require the pilot to execute the emergency authority granted in CFR Part 91.3 and continue inbound to land.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.

Section 6. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT– TERMINAL

7–6–1. APPLICATION

a. Basic radar services for VFR aircraft shall include:

1. Safety alerts.

2. Traffic advisories.

3. Limited radar vectoring when requested by the pilot.

4. Sequencing at locations where procedures have been established for this purpose and/or when covered by a LOA.

b. Apply the procedures contained in para 7–1–3, APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE FOR VFR ARRIVING AIRCRAFT, when arriving VFR aircraft are handled by approach control and provide vectoring service in accordance with Chapter 5. RADAR, Section 7. SPEED ADJUSTMENT, in addition to the radar services prescribed in para 5–6–1, APPLICATION, and para 5–6–2, METHODS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SURFACE AREAS, Para 2–1–16.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 7–6–1.
FAAO 7210.3, CHAPTER 12, SECTION 1. TERMINAL VFR RADAR SERVICES.
AIM, TERMINAL RADAR SERVICES FOR VFR AIRCRAFT, Para 4–1–17.

7–6–2. SERVICE AVAILABILITY

a. Inform aircraft on initial contact whenever this service cannot be provided because of radar outage and apply para 7–1–3, APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE FOR VFR ARRIVING AIRCRAFT.

b. Provide the service, to the extent possible using an available frequency, if an aircraft desires the service but cannot communicate on the appropriate frequencies. Aircraft which do not desire radar service may be fitted into the landing sequence by the tower. Coordination of these aircraft shall be accomplished with the approach control unless a facility directive/LOA prescribes otherwise. Nonparticipating aircraft shall, to the extent possible, be given the same landing sequence they would have received had they been sequenced by radar vectors.

c. Radar sequencing to the primary airport, when local procedures have been developed, shall be provided unless the pilot states that the service is not requested. Arriving aircraft are assumed to want radar service unless the pilot states "Negative radar service", or makes a similar comment.

7–6–3. INITIAL CONTACT

An aircraft sighted by the local controller at the time of first radio contact may be positioned in the landing sequence after coordination with approach control.

7–6–4. IDENTIFICATION

Identify the aircraft before taking action to position it in the approach sequence.

7–6–5. HOLDING

Hold VFR aircraft over the initial reporting fix or a fix near the airport when holding is required to establish an approach sequence.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT, Para 7–1–4.

7–6–6. APPROACH SEQUENCE

Do not assign landing sequence numbers, when establishing aircraft in the approach sequence, unless this responsibility has been delegated in a LOA or facility directive.

NOTE–
The landing sequence is ordinarily established by the tower.

7–6–7. SEQUENCING

a. Establish radar contact before instructing a VFR aircraft to enter the traffic pattern at a specified point or vectoring the aircraft to a position in the approach sequence. Inform the pilot of the aircraft to follow when the integrity of the approach sequence is dependent on following a preceding aircraft. Ensure visual contact is established with the aircraft to follow and provide instruction to follow that aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY–
FOLLOW (description) (position, if necessary).

b. Direct a VFR aircraft to a point near the airport to hold when a position is not available in the approach sequence for the runway in use. The aircraft may be vectored to another runway after coordination with the tower.

c. Apply the provisions of para 5–5–3, MINIMA, when radar sequencing behind a heavy jet/B757.

7-6-8. CONTROL TRANSFER

a. Inform the tower of the aircraft's position and then instruct the pilot to contact the tower.

b. The aircraft may be instructed to contact the tower prior to the tower being advised of the aircraft's position provided:

1. The tower advises the aircraft is in sight and,

2. Space is available in the landing sequence.

c. Instruct the pilot to contact the tower at the appropriate point when the approach control ARTS track data is being displayed on the tower's BRITE / DBRITE display, the aircraft is tagged by ARTS, and a facility directive specifies change of communications and control jurisdiction points.

NOTE–
The point at which an aircraft is instructed to contact the tower is determined by prior coordination between the tower and approach control and will vary, depending on the runway in use, weather, etc.. The transfer of communications ordinarily occurs at least 5 miles from the runway. The point for the transfer of communications should be a sufficient distance from the airport to permit the tower to properly sequence the aircraft, but not at a distance that could derogate the provision of radar traffic information service.

7-6-9. ABANDONED APPROACH

Instruct the aircraft to change to approach control for sequencing when an aircraft, under tower control, abandons the approach and coordination with approach control reveals no immediate space in the approach sequence.

7-6-10. VFR DEPARTURE INFORMATION

Inform departing VFR aircraft who request radar traffic advisories when to contact departure control and the frequency to use. Provide traffic advisories in accordance with para 2-1-21, TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, after the departure is radar identified.

NOTE–
Departing aircraft desiring traffic information are expected to request the service and to state their proposed direction of flight upon initial contact with ground control.

7-6-11. TERMINATION OF SERVICE

Basic radar services should be provided to the extent possible, workload permitting, until 20 miles from the radar site or the airspace boundary, whichever is less. Terminate radar service to aircraft landing at airports other than those where sequencing service is provided at a sufficient distance from the airport to permit the pilot to change to the appropriate frequency for traffic and airport information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED, SQUAWK ONE TWO ZERO ZERO,

or

SQUAWK VFR,

then

CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED,

or

CONTACT (frequency identification),
or

FREQUENCY CHANGE APPROVED.

7-6-12. SERVICE PROVIDED WHEN TOWER IS INOPERATIVE

a. Provide the following services during hours when the tower is not in operation:

1. Wind direction and velocity.

NOTE–
Issue information provided from the FSS or WSO. Otherwise, inform the pilot that wind information is not available.

2. Traffic information.

3. Inform aircraft when radar service is terminated.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION, Para 5-1-13.

b. Do not assign landing sequence.

Section 7. TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA (TRSA)– TERMINAL

7–7–1. APPLICATION

Apply TRSA procedures within the designated TRSA in addition to the basic services described in Chapter 7. VISUAL, Section 6. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT– TERMINAL.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

7–7–2. ISSUANCE OF EFC

Inform the pilot when to expect further clearance when VFR aircraft are held either inside or outside the TRSA.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

7–7–3. SEPARATION

Separate VFR aircraft from VFR/IFR aircraft by any one of the following:

a. Visual separation, as specified in para 7–2–1, VISUAL SEPARATION, para 7–4–2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, and para 7–6–7, SEQUENCING.

NOTE–
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2–1–20, WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES.

b. 500 feet vertical separation.

c. Target resolution when using broadband radar systems. The application of target resolutions at locations not using broadband radar will be individually approved by the Program Director for Air Traffic Operations, ATO–1.

NOTE–
Apply the provisions of para 5–5–3, MINIMA, subparas d. and e. when wake turbulence separation is required.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

7–7–4. HELICOPTER TRAFFIC

Helicopters need not be separated from other helicopters. Traffic information shall be exchanged, as necessary.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

7–7–5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS

a. Altitude information contained in a clearance, instruction, or advisory to VFR aircraft shall meet MVA, MSA, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, FLIGHT DIRECTION, Para 4–5–2.
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 4–5–3.
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES, Para 4–5–6.

b. If required, issue altitude assignments, consistent with the provisions of CFR Part 91.119.

NOTE–
The MSA's are:

(1) Over congested areas, an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle; and

(2) Over other than congested areas, an altitude at least 500 feet above the surface.

c. When necessary to assign an altitude for separation purposes to VFR aircraft contrary to CFR Part 91.159, advise the aircraft to resume altitudes appropriate for the direction of flight when the altitude assignment is no longer needed for separation or when leaving the TRSA.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RESUME APPROPRIATE VFR ALTITUDES.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PRACTICE APPROACHES, Para 4–8–11.
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 5–6–1.
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

7–7–6. APPROACH INTERVAL

The tower shall specify the approach interval.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

7–7–7. TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION

a. At controlled airports within the TRSA, inform a departing aircraft proposing to operate within the TRSA when to contact departure control and the frequency to use. If the aircraft is properly equipped, ground control or clearance delivery shall issue the appropriate beacon code.

NOTE–
Departing aircraft are assumed to want TRSA service unless the pilot states, "negative TRSA service," or makes a similar comment. Pilots are expected to inform the controller of intended destination and/or route of flight and altitude.

b. Provide separation until the aircraft leaves the TRSA.

c. Inform VFR participating aircraft when leaving the TRSA.

PHRASEOLOGY–
LEAVING THE (name) TRSA,

and as appropriate,

RESUME OWN NAVIGATION, REMAIN THIS FREQUENCY FOR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED, SQUAWK ONE TWO ZERO ZERO.

d. Aircraft departing satellite controlled airports that will penetrate the TRSA should be provided the same service as those aircraft departing the primary airport. Procedures for handling this situation shall be covered in a letter of agreement or facility directives, as appropriate.

e. Procedures for handling aircraft departing uncontrolled satellite airports must be advertised in a facility bulletin and service provided accordingly.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7–2–1.

Section 8. CLASS C SERVICE- TERMINAL

7-8-1. APPLICATION

Apply Class C service procedures within the designated Class C airspace and the associated outer area. Class C services are designed to keep ATC informed of all aircraft within Class C airspace, not to exclude operations. Two-way radio communications and operational transponder are normally required for operations within Class C airspace, but operations without radio communications or transponder can be conducted by LOA, facility directive, or special arrangement with Class C airspace controlling facility.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.
PART 91.215, ATC TRANSPONDER AND ALTITUDE REPORTING EQUIPMENT AND USE.

7-8-2. CLASS C SERVICES

a. Class C services include the following:

1. Sequencing of all aircraft to the primary airport.

2. Standard IFR services to IFR aircraft.

3. Separation, traffic advisories, and safety alerts between IFR and VFR aircraft.

4. Mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts between VFR aircraft.

b. Provide Class C services to all aircraft operating within Class C airspace.

c. Provide Class C services to all participating aircraft in the outer area.

d. Aircraft should not normally be held. However, if holding is necessary, inform the pilot of the expected length of delay.

e. When a radar outage occurs, advise aircraft that Class C services are not available and, if appropriate, when to contact the tower.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.

7-8-3. SEPARATION

Separate VFR aircraft from IFR aircraft by any one of the following:

a. Visual separation as specified in para 7-2-1, VISUAL SEPARATION, para 7-4-2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, and para 7-6-7, SEQUENCING.

NOTE-
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2-1-20, WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES.

b. 500 feet vertical separation;

c. Target resolution when using broadband radar systems. The application of target resolution at locations not using broadband radar will be individually approved by the Program Director for Air Traffic Operations, ATO-1.

NOTE-
Apply the provisions of para 5-5-3, MINIMA, when wake turbulence separation is required.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.

7-8-4. ESTABLISHING TWO-WAY COMMUNICATIONS

Class C service requires pilots to establish two-way radio communications before entering Class C airspace. If the controller responds to a radio call with, "(a/c callsign) standby," radio communications have been established and the pilot can enter Class C airspace. If workload or traffic conditions prevent immediate provision of Class C services, inform the pilot to remain outside Class C airspace until conditions permit the services to be provided.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(a/c callsign) REMAIN OUTSIDE CHARLIE AIRSPACE AND STANDBY.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.

7-8-5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS

a. When necessary to assign altitudes to VFR aircraft, assign altitudes that meet the MVA, MSA, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

b. Aircraft assigned altitudes which are contrary to Part 91.159 shall be advised to resume altitudes appropriate for the direction of flight when the altitude is no longer needed for separation, when leaving the outer area, or when terminating Class C service.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RESUME APPROPRIATE VFR ALTITUDES.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, VISUAL SEPARATION, Para 7-2-1.

7-8-6. EXCEPTIONS

a. VFR helicopters need not be separated from IFR helicopters. Traffic information and safety alerts shall be issued as appropriate.

b. Hot air balloons need not be separated from IFR aircraft. Traffic information and safety alerts shall be issued as appropriate.

7-8-7. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATIONS

a. Aircraft that will penetrate Class C airspace after departing controlled airports within or adjacent to Class C airspace shall be provided the same services as those aircraft departing the primary airport. Procedures for handling this situation shall be covered in a LOA or a facility directive, as appropriate.

b. Aircraft departing uncontrolled airports within Class C airspace shall be handled using procedures advertised in a Letter to Airmen.

7-8-8. TERMINATION OF SERVICE

Unless aircraft are landing at secondary airports or have requested termination of service while in the outer area, provide services until the aircraft departs the associated outer area. Terminate Class C service to aircraft landing at other than the primary airport at a sufficient distance from the airport to allow the pilot to change to the appropriate frequency for traffic and airport information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED,

or

CONTACT (facility identification).

Section 9. CLASS B SERVICE AREA– TERMINAL

7–9–1. APPLICATION

Apply Class B services and procedures within the designated Class B airspace.

a. No person may operate an aircraft within Class B airspace unless:

1. The aircraft has an operable two-way radio capable of communications with ATC on appropriate frequencies for that Class B airspace.

2. The aircraft is equipped with the applicable operating transponder and automatic altitude reporting equipment specified in para (a) of CFR Part 91.215, except as provided in para (d) of that section.

7–9–2. VFR AIRCRAFT IN CLASS B AIRSPACE

a. VFR aircraft must obtain an ATC clearance to operate in Class B airspace.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL REQUESTS, Para 2–1–18.
FAAO 7110.65, AIRSPACE CLASSES, Para 2–4–22.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED THROUGH TO ENTER/OUT OF BRAVO AIRSPACE,

and as appropriate,

VIA (route). MAINTAIN (altitude) WHILE IN BRAVO AIRSPACE.

or

CLEARED AS REQUESTED.

(Additional instructions, as necessary.)

REMAIN OUTSIDE BRAVO AIRSPACE. (When necessary, reason and/or additional instructions.)

NOTE–
1 Assignment of radar headings, routes, or altitudes is based on the provision that a pilot operating in accordance with VFR is expected to advise ATC if compliance will cause violation of any part of the CFR .

2 Separation and sequencing for VFR aircraft is dependent upon radar. Efforts should be made to segregate VFR traffic from IFR traffic flows when a radar outage occurs.

b. Approve/deny requests from VFR aircraft to operate in Class B airspace based on workload, operational limitations and traffic conditions.

c. Inform the pilot when to expect further clearance when VFR aircraft are held either inside or outside Class B airspace.

d. Inform VFR aircraft when leaving Class B airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY–
LEAVING (name) BRAVO AIRSPACE,

and as appropriate,

RESUME OWN NAVIGATION, REMAIN THIS FREQUENCY FOR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED, SQUAWK ONE TWO ZERO ZERO.

7–9–3. METHODS

a. To the extent practical, clear large turbine engine-powered airplanes to/from the primary airport using altitudes and routes that avoid VFR corridors and airspace below the Class B airspace floor where VFR aircraft are operating.

NOTE–
Pilots operating in accordance with VFR are expected to advise ATC if compliance with assigned altitudes, headings, or routes will cause violation of any part of the CFR.

b. Vector aircraft to remain in Class B airspace after entry. Inform the aircraft when leaving and reentering Class B airspace if it becomes necessary to extend the flight path outside Class B airspace for spacing.

NOTE–
CFR Part 91.131 states that "Unless otherwise authorized by ATC, each person operating a large turbine engine-powered airplane to or from a primary airport for which a Class B airspace area is designated must operate at or above the designated floors of the Class B airspace area while within the lateral limits of that area." Such authorization should be the exception rather than the rule.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, DEVIATION ADVISORIES, Para 5–1–10.

c. Aircraft departing controlled airports within Class B airspace will be provided the same services as those aircraft departing the primary airport.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL REQUESTS, Para 2–1–18.

7-9-4. SEPARATION

a. Standard IFR services to IFR aircraft.

b. VFR aircraft shall be separated from VFR/IFR aircraft that weigh more than 19,000 pounds and turbojets by no less than:

NOTE-
Aircraft weighing 19,000 pounds or less include all of the aircraft in SRS categories I and II plus SC7, G73, E110, DO82, STAR, S601, BE30, B350, SW3, B190, and C212.

1. 1 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles separation, or

2. 500 feet vertical separation, or

NOTE-
Apply the provisions of para 5-5-3, MINIMA, when wake turbulence separation is required.

3. Visual separation, as specified in para 7-2-1, VISUAL SEPARATION, para 7-4-2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, and para 7-6-7, SEQUENCING.

NOTE-
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2-1-20, WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES.

c. VFR aircraft shall be separated from all VFR/IFR aircraft which weigh 19,000 pounds or less by a minimum of:

1. Target resolution, or

2. 500 feet vertical separation, or

NOTE-
Apply the provisions of para 5-5-3, MINIMA, when wake turbulence separation is required.

3. Visual separation, as specified in para 7-2-1, VISUAL SEPARATION, para 7-4-2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, and para 7-6-7, SEQUENCING.

NOTE-
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2-1-20, WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES.

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-LATERAL SEPARATION.
P/CG TERM-RADAR SEPARATION.
P/CG TERM-TARGET RESOLUTION.
P/CG TERM-VISUAL SEPARATION.

7-9-5. TRAFFIC ADVISORIES

a. Provide mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts, between all aircraft.

b. Apply merging target procedures in accordance with para 5-1-8, MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES.

7-9-6. HELICOPTER TRAFFIC

VFR helicopters need not be separated from VFR or IFR helicopters. Traffic advisories and safety alerts shall be issued as appropriate.

7-9-7. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS

a. Altitude information contained in a clearance, instruction, or advisory to VFR aircraft shall meet MVA, MSA, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

b. Issue altitude assignments, if required, consistent with the provisions of CFR Part 91.119.

NOTE-
The MSA's are:
1. Over congested areas, an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle,
2. Over other than congested areas, an altitude at least 500 feet above the surface.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, FLIGHT DIRECTION, Para 4-5-2.
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 4-5-3.
FAAO 7110.65, MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES, Para 4-5-6.

c. Aircraft assigned altitudes which are contrary to CFR Part 91.159 shall be advised to resume altitudes appropriate for the direction of flight when the altitude assignment is no longer required or when leaving Class B airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY-
RESUME APPROPRIATE VFR ALTITUDES.

7-9-8. APPROACH INTERVAL

The tower shall specify the approach interval.

Chapter 8. OFFSHORE/OCEANIC PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL

8-1-1. ATC SERVICE

Provide air traffic control service in oceanic controlled airspace in accordance with the procedures in this chapter except when other procedures/minima are prescribed in a directive or a letter of agreement.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, PROCEDURAL LETTERS OF AGREEMENT, Para 1-1-8.

8-1-2. OPERATIONS IN OFFSHORE AIRSPACE AREAS

Provide air traffic control service in offshore airspace areas in accordance with procedures and minima in this chapter. For those situations not covered by this chapter, the provisions in this Order shall apply.

8-1-3. VFR FLIGHT PLANS

VFR flights in Oceanic FIR's may be conducted in meteorological conditions equal to or greater than those specified in CFR 91.155, Basic VFR weather minimums. Operations on a VFR flight plan are permitted only between sunrise and sunset and only within:

a. Miami, Houston, and San Juan Oceanic Control Areas (CTA's) at or below FL 180.

b. Within the Oakland FIR when operating less than 100 NM seaward from the shoreline within controlled airspace.

c. All Oceanic FIR airspace below the Oceanic CTA's.

8-1-4. TYPES OF SEPARATION

Separation shall consist of at least one of the following:

a. Vertical separation;

b. Horizontal separation, either;

1. Longitudinal; or

2. Lateral;

c. Composite separation;

d. Radar separation, as specified in Chapter 5. RADAR, where radar coverage is adequate.

8-1-5. ALTIMETER SETTING

Within oceanic control areas, unless directed and/or charted otherwise, altitude assignment shall be based on flight levels and a standard altimeter setting of 29.92 inches Hg.

8-1-6. RECEIPT OF POSITION REPORTS

When direct pilot controller communication is not available and a position report affecting separation is not received, take action to obtain the report no later than *10 minutes* after the control estimate.

8-1-7. OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORTING (ONER) PROCEDURES

FAAO 7110.82, MONITORING OF NAVIGATONAL PERFORMANCE IN OCEANIC AREAS, contains procedures for reporting and processing navigational errors observed by ATC radar for aircraft exiting oceanic airspace.

Section 2. COORDINATION

8-2-1. GENERAL

ARTCC's shall:

a. Forward to appropriate ATS facilities, as a flight progresses, current flight plan (CPL) and control information.

b. Coordinate flight plan and control information in sufficient time to permit the receiving facility to analyze the data and to effect any necessary additional coordination. This may be specified in a letter of agreement.

c. Coordinate with adjacent ATS facilities when airspace to be protected will overlap the common boundary.

d. Forward revisions of estimates of *3 minutes* or more to the appropriate ATS facility.

e. Coordinate with adjacent facilities on IFR and VFR flights to ensure the continuation of appropriate air traffic services.

8-2-2. TRANSFER OF CONTROL AND COMMUNICATIONS

a. Only one air traffic control unit shall control an aircraft at any given time.

b. The control of an aircraft shall be transferred from one control unit to another at the time the aircraft is estimated to cross the control boundary or at such other point or time agreed upon by the two units.

c. The transferring unit shall forward to the accepting unit any changed flight plan or control data which are pertinent to the transfer.

d. The accepting unit shall notify the transferring unit if it is unable to accept control under the terms specified, or it shall specify the changes or conditions required so that the aircraft can be accepted.

e. The accepting unit shall not alter the clearance of an aircraft that has not yet reached the transfer of control point without the prior approval of the transferring unit.

f. Where nonradar separation minima are being applied, the transfer of air-ground communications with an aircraft shall be made *5 minutes* before the time at which the aircraft is estimated to reach the boundary unless otherwise agreed to by the control and/or communication units concerned.

8-2-3. AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES INTERFACILITY DATA COMMUNICATIONS (AIDC)

Where interfacility data communications capability has been implemented, its use for ATC coordination should be accomplished in accordance with regional Interface Control Documents, and supported by letters of agreement between the facilities concerned.

Section 3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

8-3-1. APPLICATION

Separate aircraft by providing a time or distance interval between aircraft consistent with the required minima. Longitudinal separation expressed in distance may be applied as prescribed in Chapter 6. NONRADAR.

NOTE–
Longitudinal separation minima is contained in:
Section 7, North Atlantic ICAO Region.
Section 8, Caribbean ICAO Region.
Section 9, Pacific ICAO Region.
Section 10, North American ICAO Region.

8-3-2. SEPARATION METHODS

Separate aircraft longitudinally in accordance with the following:

Same Courses

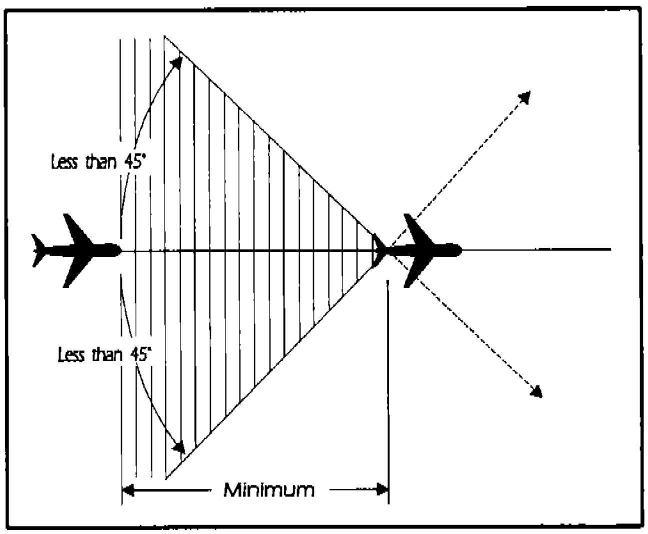


FIG 8-3-1

a. Same courses: Ensure that the spacing between aircraft is not less than the applicable minimum required. (See FIG 8-3-1.)

b. Crossing courses: Ensure that the spacing at the point of intersection is not less than the applicable minimum required. (See FIG 8-3-2.)

c. Reciprocal courses:

1. Ensure that aircraft are vertically separated for a time interval equal to the applicable minimum required before and after the aircraft are estimated to pass. (See FIG 8-3-3.)

Crossing Courses

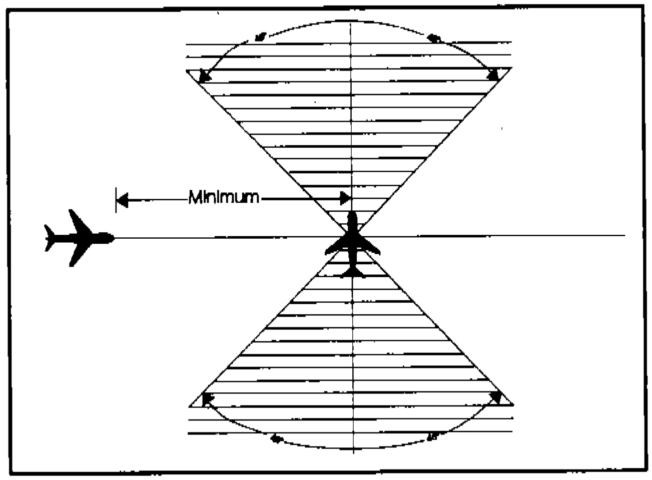


FIG 8-3-2

Reciprocal Courses

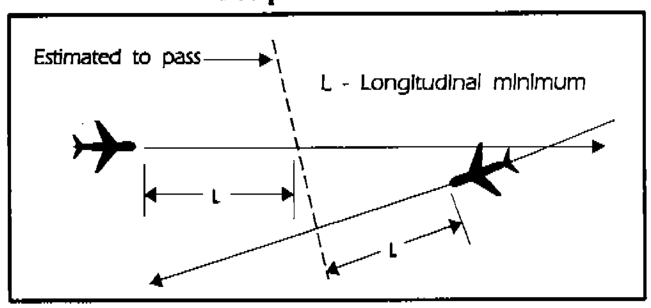


FIG 8-3-3

2. Vertical separation may be discontinued after one of the following conditions are met:

Vertical Separation

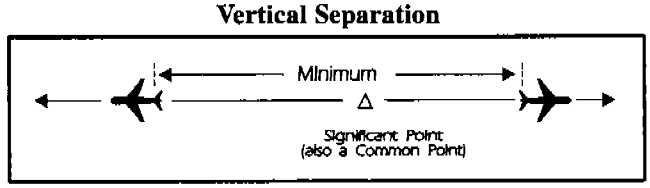


FIG 8-3-4

(a) Both aircraft have reported passing a significant point and the aircraft are separated by at least the applicable minimum required for the same direction longitudinal spacing; (See FIG 8-3-4.) or

(b) Both aircraft have reported passing ground-based NAVAID's or DME fixes indicating that they have passed each other.

8-3-3. MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE

The following conditions shall be met when the Mach number technique is being applied:

a. Aircraft Types: Turbojet aircraft only.

b. Routes:

1. The aircraft follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks, and

2. The aircraft concerned have reported over a common point; or

3. If the aircraft have *not* reported over a common point, either radar or other approved means are used to ensure that the appropriate time interval will exist at the common point; or

4. If a common point does not exist, either radar or other approved means are used to verify that the appropriate time interval will exist at a significant point on each track from which the tracks continuously diverge.

c. Altitudes:

1. Assign only a single cardinal altitude to each aircraft.

2. The aircraft concerned are in level, climbing or descending flight.

d. Mach Number Assignment:

1. A Mach number (or, when appropriate, a range of Mach numbers) shall be issued to each aircraft.

NOTE–
1 *ICAO Doc 7030/4 requires pilots to strictly adhere to the last assigned Mach number (or range of Mach numbers), even during climbs and descents, unless revised by ATC.*

2 *When it is necessary to issue crossing restrictions to ensure the appropriate time interval, it may be impossible for an aircraft to comply with both the clearance to meet the crossing restrictions and the clearance to maintain a single, specific Mach number.*

REFERENCE–
ICAO DOC 9426-AN/924, PART II, SECTION 2, Para 2.3.4, Para 2.4.7, and Para 2.5.3.

EXAMPLE–
"Maintain Mach point eight four or greater."
"Maintain Mach point eight three or less."
"Maintain Mach point eight two or greater; do not exceed Mach point eight four."

e. Separation Criteria:

1. The use of Mach number technique allows for the application of reduced longitudinal separation minima. However, the prescribed longitudinal separation between successive aircraft flying at the same level shall be provided over the entry point *and* on a particular track or tracks, or exist when climb or descent to the level of another aircraft is accomplished into the area concerned.

2. The applicable longitudinal separation minima is maintained by:

(a) Ensuring that the spacing between the estimated positions of the aircraft is not less than the prescribed minimum.

(b) Continuously monitoring aircraft position reports and updating control estimates along the aircraft's track(s). If after establishing the Mach number technique between aircraft, control information indicates that less than the applicable minima between aircraft may exist, immediately:

(1) Issue crossing restrictions to ensure the appropriate longitudinal minima at the next significant point, or

(2) Assign revised Mach numbers appropriate for the estimated interval, or

(3) Establish vertical separation.

NOTE–
Control estimates are calculated by the controller using known wind patterns, previous aircraft transit times, pilot progress reports, and pilot estimates.

f. Relative Speeds:

1. The lead aircraft maintains the same or a greater Mach number than the following aircraft; or

2. If the following aircraft is faster than the lead aircraft, ensure that the appropriate time interval will exist until another form of separation is achieved.

NOTE–
A "rule-of-thumb" may be applied which allows clearances to be issued in a timely manner, provided the expected minimum longitudinal separation over the exit point is subsequently confirmed when the calculated flight progress strip data becomes available. This rule-of-thumb can be stated as follows: for each 600 nm in distance between the entry and exit points of the area where the Mach Number Technique is used, add 1 minute for each 0.01 difference in Mach number for the two aircraft concerned to compensate for the fact that the second aircraft is overtaking the first aircraft. (See TBL 8–3–1.)

Application of the Mach Number Technique When the Following Aircraft is Faster

Difference in Mach	*Distance to Fly and Separation (in Minutes) Required at Entry Point*				
	001–600 NM	*601–1200 NM*	*1201–1800 NM*	*1801–2400 NM*	*2401–3000 NM*
0.01	11	12	13	14	15
0.02	12	14	16	18	20
0.03	13	16	19	22	25
0.04	14	18	22	26	30
0.05	15	20	25	30	35
0.06	16	22	28	34	40
0.07	17	24	31	38	45
0.08	18	26	34	42	50
0.09	19	28	37	46	55
0.10	20	30	40	50	60

TBL 8–3–1

Section 4. LATERAL SEPARATION

8-4-1. APPLICATION

Separate aircraft by assigning different flight paths whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap.

NOTE–
Lateral separation minima is contained in:
Section 7, North Atlantic ICAO Region.
Section 8, Caribbean ICAO Region.
Section 9, Pacific ICAO Region.
Section 10, North American ICAO Region.

8-4-2. SEPARATION METHODS

Lateral separation exists for:

a. Nonintersecting flight paths:

1. When the required distance is maintained between the flight paths; or (See FIG 8-4-1.)

Separation Methods

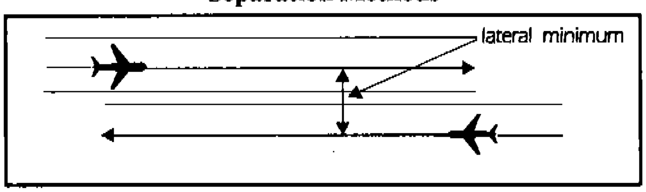


FIG 8-4-1

2. When reduced route protected airspace is applicable, and the protected airspace of the flight paths do not overlap; or (See FIG 8-4-2.)

Separation Methods

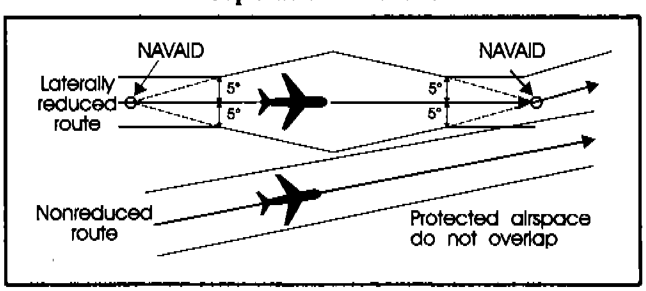


FIG 8-4-2

3. When aircraft are crossing an oceanic boundary and are entering an airspace with a larger lateral minimum than the airspace being exited; and

(a) The smaller separation exists at the boundary; and

(b) Flight paths diverge by 15° or more until the larger minimum is established. (See FIG 8-4-3.)

Separation Methods

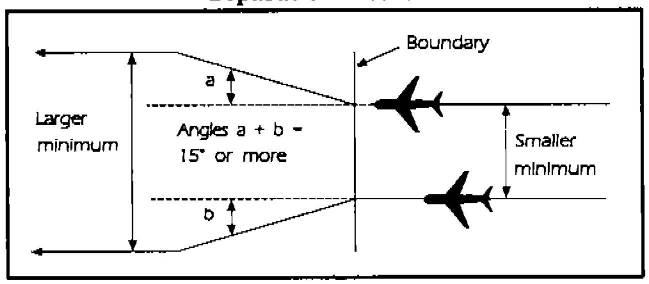


FIG 8-4-3

b. Intersecting flight paths with constant and same width protected airspace when either aircraft is at or beyond a distance equal to the applicable lateral separation minimum measured perpendicular to the flight path of the other aircraft. (See FIG 8-4-4.)

Separation Methods

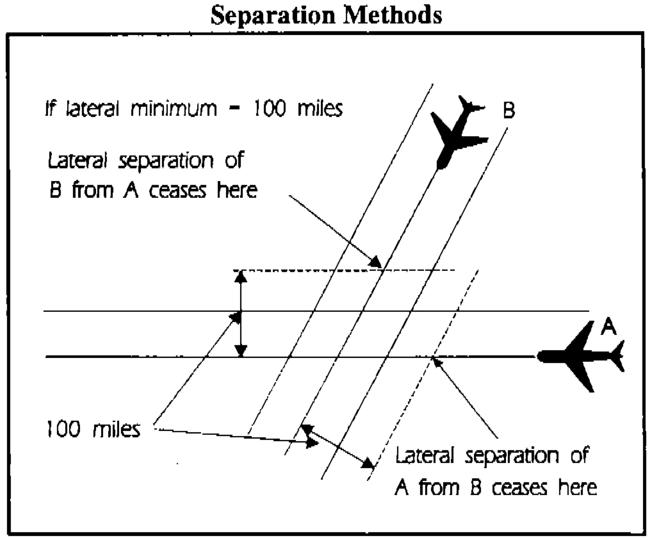


FIG 8-4-4

c. Intersecting flight paths with constant but different width protected airspace when either aircraft is at or beyond a distance equal to the sum of the protected airspace of both flight paths measured perpendicular to the flight path of the other aircraft. (See FIG 8-4-5.)

d. Intersecting flight paths with variable width protected airspace when either aircraft is at or beyond a distance equal to the sum of the protected airspace of both flight paths measured perpendicular to the flight path of the other aircraft. Measure protected airspace for each aircraft perpendicular to its flight path at the first point or the last point, as applicable, of protected airspace overlap.

Separation Methods

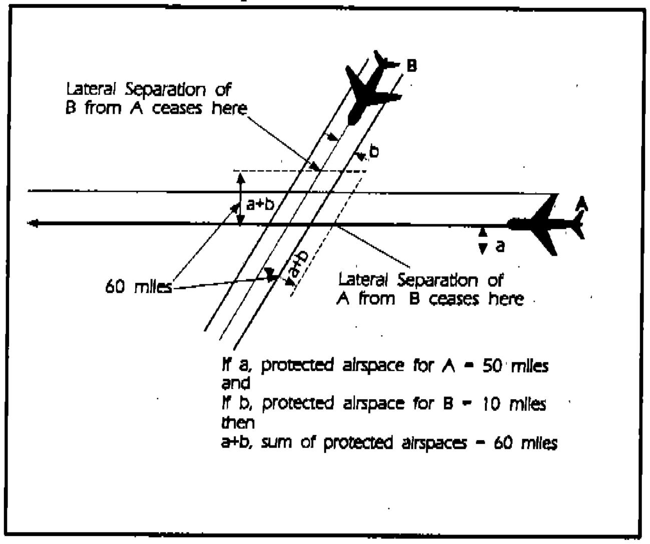


FIG 8-4-5

NOTE–
In FIG 8-4-5, the protected airspace for westbound flight A is distance "a" (50 miles), and for southwestbound flight B, distance "b" (10 miles). Therefore, the sum of distances "a" and "b"; i.e., the protected airspace of aircraft A and B, establishes the lateral separation minimum (60 miles) applicable for either flight relevant to the other.

Separation Methods

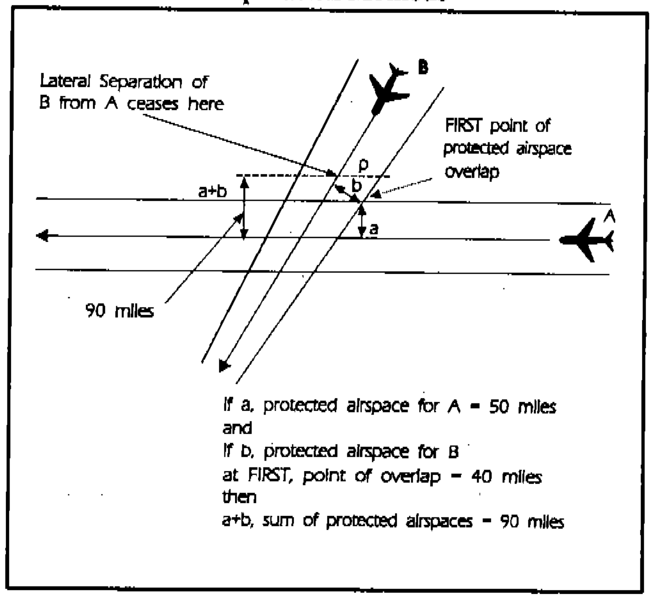


FIG 8-4-6

NOTE–
(SEE FIG 8-4-6.) At the first point of protected airspace overlap, the protected airspace for westbound flight A is distance "a" (50 miles), and for southbound flight B, distance "b" (40 miles). the sum of distances "a" and "b" (90 miles) establishes the lateral separation minimum applicable in this example for either flight as it approaches the intersection. For example, aircraft B should be vertically separated from aircraft A by the time it reaches point "p."

Separation Methods

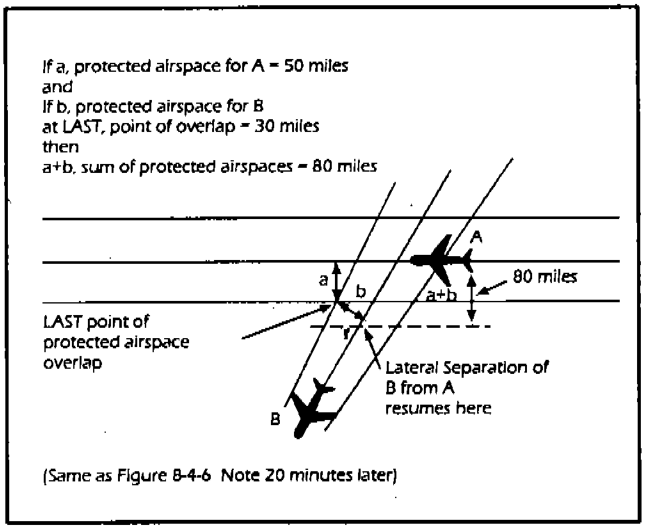


FIG 8–4–7

NOTE–
(SEE FIG 8–4–7.) Distance "a" (50 miles) and "b" (30 miles) are determined at the last point of protected airspace overlap. The sum of the distances "a" and "b" (80 miles) establishes the lateral separation minima applicable for either flight after it passes beyond the intersection. For example, aircraft B could be cleared to, or through, aircraft A's altitude after passing point "r."

8–4–3. REDUCTION OF ROUTE PROTECTED AIRSPACE

When routes have been satisfactorily flight checked and notice has been given to users, reduction in route protected airspace may be made as follows:

a. Below FL 240, reduce the width of the protected airspace to 5 miles on each side of the route centerline to a distance of 57.14 miles from the NAVAID, then increasing in width on a 5° angle from the route centerline, measured at the NAVAID, to the maximum width allowable within the lateral minima; for example, 50 miles of protected airspace on each side of centerline; i.e., a lateral minimum of 100 miles. (See FIG 8–4–8.)

Reduction of Route Protected Airspace

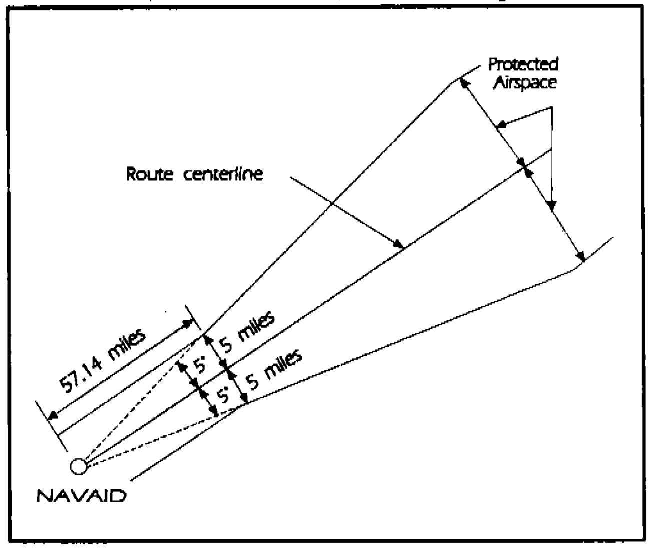


FIG 8–4–8

b. At and above FL 240, reduce the width of the protected airspace to 10 miles on each side of the route centerline to a distance of 114.29 miles from the NAVAID, then increasing in width on a 5° angle from the route centerline, as measured at the NAVAID, to the maximum width allowable within the lateral minima; for example, 60 miles of protected airspace on each side of the centerline; i.e., a lateral separation minimum of 120 miles. (See FIG 8–4–9.)

Reduction of Route Protected Airspace

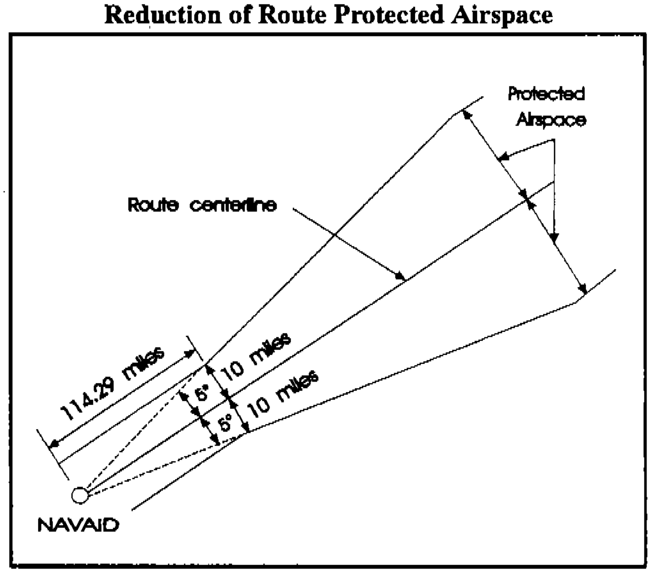


FIG 8–4–9

8-4-4. TRACK SEPARATION

Apply track separation between aircraft by requiring aircraft to fly specified tracks or radials and with specified spacings as follows:

a. *Same NAVAID:*

1. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN. Consider separation to exist between aircraft established on radials of the same NAVAID that diverge by at least 15 degrees when either aircraft is clear of the airspace to be protected for the other aircraft. Use the table to determine the flight distance required for various divergence angles and altitudes to clear the airspace to be protected.
(See FIG 8-4-10.)

Divergence-Distance Minima
VOR/VORTAC/TACAN

Divergence (degrees)	*Distance (mile)*	
	FL 230 and below	*Fl 240 through FL 450*
15–25	17	18
26–35	11	13
36–90	8	11
Note: This table compensates for DME slant range error.		

TBL 8-4-1

Track Separation
VOR

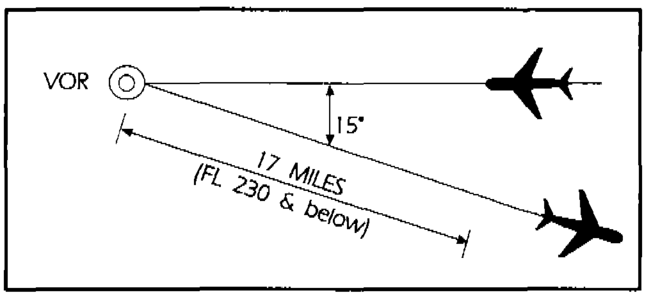


FIG 8-4-10

2. *NDB:*

(a) Consider separation to exist between aircraft established on tracks of the same NAVAID that diverge by at least 30 degrees and one aircraft is at least 15 miles from the NAVAID. This separation shall not be used when one or both aircraft are inbound to the aid unless the distance of the aircraft from the facility can be readily determined by reference to the NAVAID. Use the table to determine the flight distance required for various divergence angles to clear the airspace to be protected. For divergence that falls between two values, use the lesser value to obtain the distance.
(See FIG 8-4-11.)

Divergence-Distance Minima (NDB)

Divergence (degrees)	*Distance (mile)*	
	FL 230 and below	*FL 240 through FL 450*
30	16	17
45	13	14
60	9	10
75	7	8
90	6	7
Note: This table compensates for DME slant range error.		

TBL 8-4-2

Track Separation
NDB

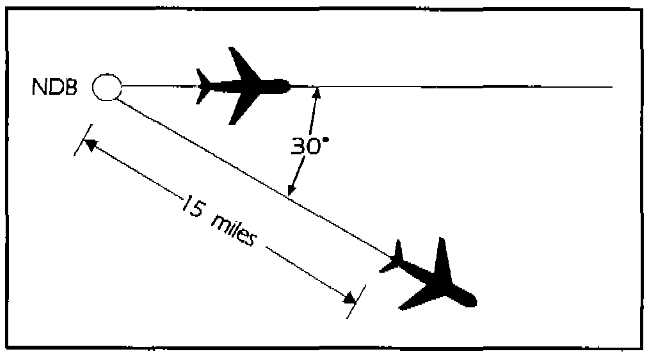


FIG 8-4-11

(**b**) Clear aircraft navigating on NDB facilities in accordance with para 2–5–2, NAVAID TERMS.

b. Different NAVAID's: Separate aircraft using different navigation aids by assigning tracks so that their protected airspace does not overlap.
(See FIG 8–4–12.)

Track Separation
Different NAVAID's

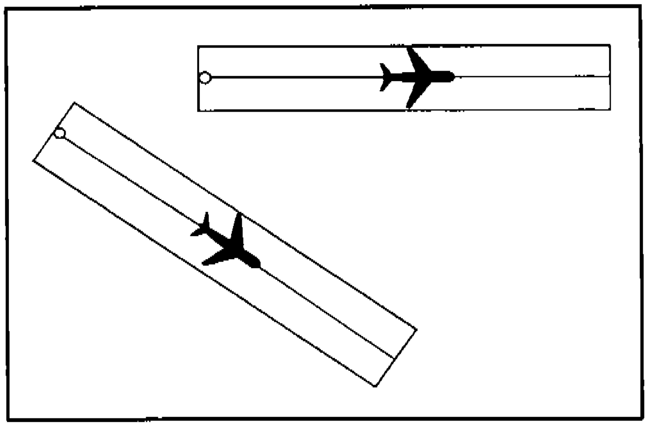


FIG 8–4–12

c. Dead Reckoning (DR):

1. Consider separation to exist between aircraft established on tracks that diverge by at least 45 degrees when one aircraft is at least 15 miles from the point of intersection of the tracks. This point may be determined either visually or by reference to a navigation aid.
(See FIG 8–4–13.)

Track Separation
Dead Reckoning

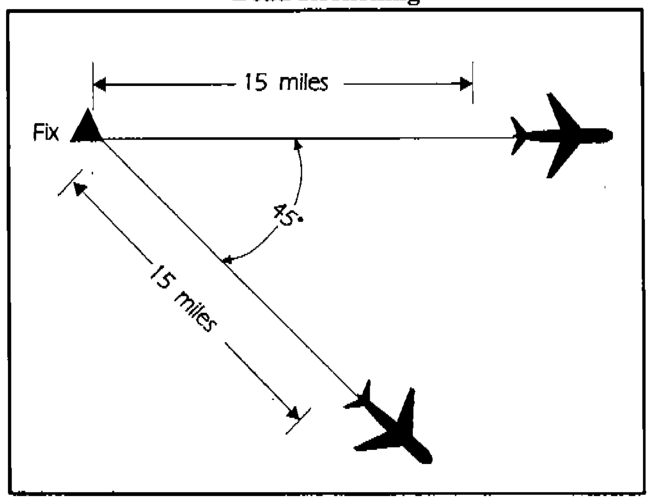


FIG 8–4–13

Section 5. OFFSHORE/OCEANIC TRANSITION PROCEDURES

8-5-1. ALTITUDE/FLIGHT LEVEL TRANSITION

When vertical separation is applied between aircraft crossing the offshore / oceanic airspace boundary below FL 180, control action shall be taken to ensure that differences between the standard altimeter setting (QNE) and local altimeter setting (QNH) do not compromise separation. (See FIG 8-5-1.)

Standard and Local Altimeter Setting Differences

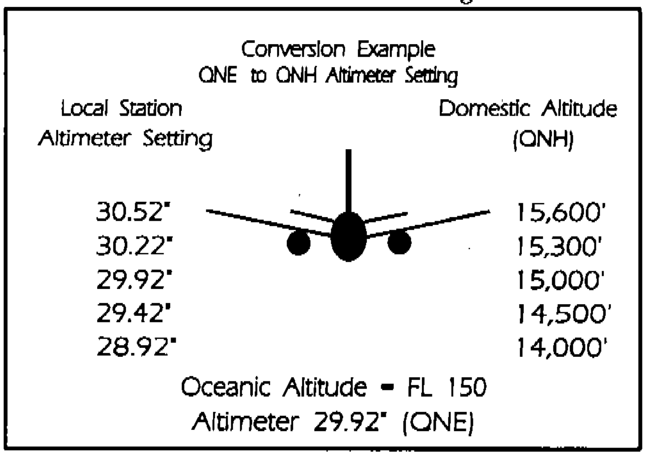


FIG 8-5-1

8-5-2. COURSE DIVERGENCE

When aircraft are entering oceanic airspace, separation will exist in oceanic airspace when:

a. Domestic lateral separation exists at the oceanic control boundary;

b. Courses diverge by a least 15° until the oceanic lateral separation is established.

8-5-3. OPPOSITE DIRECTION

When transitioning from an offshore airspace area to oceanic airspace, an aircraft may climb through opposite direction oceanic traffic provided vertical separation above that traffic is established:

a. Before the outbound crosses the offshore / oceanic boundary; and

b. 15 minutes before the aircraft are estimated to pass. (See FIG 8-5-2.)

Transitioning From Offshore to Oceanic Airspace Opposite Direction

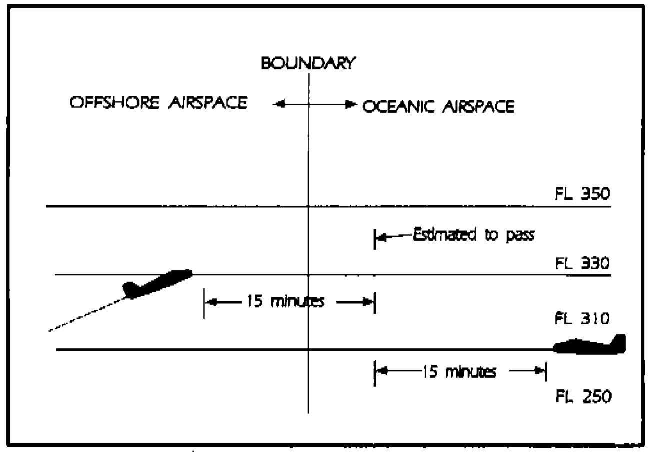


FIG 8-5-2

8-5-4. SAME DIRECTION

When transitioning from an offshore airspace area to oceanic airspace or while within oceanic airspace, apply 5 minutes minimum separation when a following aircraft on the same course is climbing through the altitude of the preceding aircraft if the following conditions are met:

a. The preceding aircraft is level at the assigned altitude and is maintaining a speed equal to or greater than the following aircraft; and

b. The minimum of *5 minutes* is maintained between the preceding and following aircraft; and

c. The following aircraft is separated by not more than 4,000 feet from the preceding aircraft when the climb clearance is issued; and

d. The following aircraft commences climb within *10 minutes* after passing:

1. An exact reporting point (DME fix or intersection formed from NAVAID's) which the preceding aircraft has reported; or

2. A radar observed position over which the preceding aircraft has been observed; and

e. The following aircraft is in direct communication with air traffic control until vertical separation is established. (See FIG 8–5–3.)

Transitioning From Offshore to Oceanic Airspace Same Direction

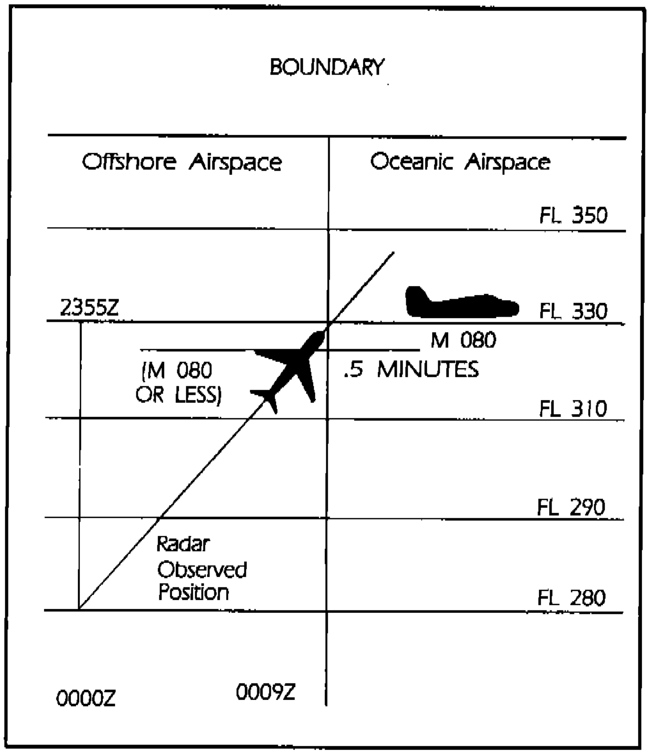


FIG 8–5–3

Section 6. SEPARATION FROM AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS

8-6-1. TEMPORARY STATIONARY AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS

Separate aircraft from a temporary stationary reservation by one of two methods:

a. Laterally: Clear aircraft so that the protected airspace along the route of flight does not overlap the geographical area of the stationary reservation. (See FIG 8-6-1.)

Temporary Stationary Airspace Reservations Lateral Separation

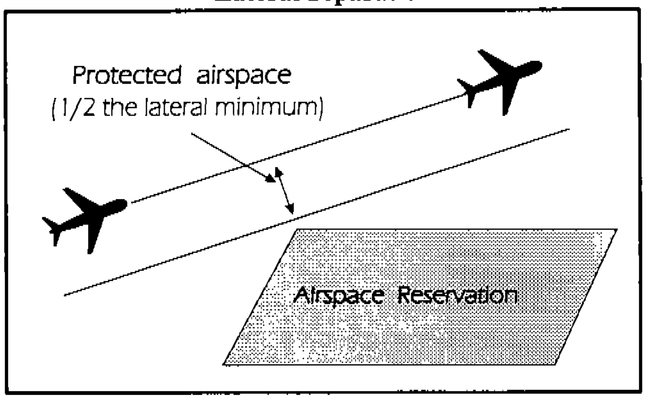


FIG 8-6-1

b. Vertically: Clear aircraft so that vertical separation exists while the aircraft is within a geographical area defined as the stationary reservation plus a buffer around the perimeter equivalent to one-half the lateral separation minimum. (See FIG 8-6-2.)

Temporary Stationary Airspace Reservations Vertical Separation

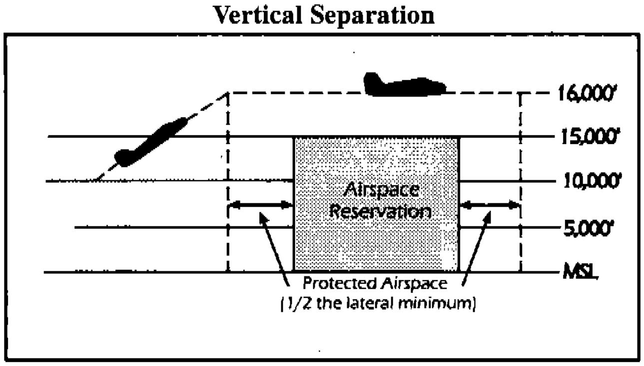


FIG 8-6-2

8-6-2. REFUSAL OF AVOIDANCE CLEARANCE

If a pilot refuses to accept a clearance to avoid a reservation, inform him/her of the potential hazard, advise him/her that services will not be provided while the flight is within the reservation and, if possible, inform the appropriate using agency.

8-6-3. TEMPORARY MOVING AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS

Separate aircraft from a temporary moving airspace reservation by one of the following methods:

a. Laterally: Clear aircraft so that the protected airspace along the route of flight does not overlap the (time-dependent) geographical area of the moving airspace reservation.

b. Longitudinally: Clear aircraft so that the appropriate longitudinal minimum exists ahead of the first or behind the last aircraft operating within the reservation.

c. Vertically: Clear aircraft so that vertical separation exists while the aircraft is within a (time-dependent) geographical area defined as the moving airspace reservation plus a buffer around the perimeter equivalent to one-half the lateral separation minimum.

8-6-4. WARNING AREAS

Separate aircraft from a Warning Area by one of two methods:

a. Laterally: Clear aircraft on airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap the peripheral boundary of the Warning Area.

b. Vertically: Assign an altitude consistent with para 4-5-1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA, so that vertical separation exists, which is at least 500 feet (above FL 290- 1,000 feet) above/below the Warning Area's upper/lower limit, while the aircraft is within a geographical area defined as the Warning Area plus a buffer around its perimeter equivalent to one-half the appropriate lateral separation minimum.

Section 7. NORTH ATLANTIC ICAO REGION

8-7-1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the North Atlantic ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section except when noted otherwise.

8-7-2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with Chapter 4. IFR, Section 5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT AND VERIFICATION.

8-7-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

Provide longitudinal separation between aircraft as follows:

a. Supersonic flight:

1. Provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8-3-3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE:

(a) *10 minutes; or*

(b) *10 minutes* when one or both aircraft has been cleared to commence the deceleration/descent phase of supersonic flight and the preceding aircraft is maintaining a Mach number which is the same as or greater than that of the following aircraft.

2. *15 minutes* between all other aircraft.

b. Operations wholly or partly in Minimum Navigation Performance Specification (MNPS) Airspace *(subsonic flight):*

1. *10 minutes*, provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8-3-3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE, and

(a) Where tracks diverge from the common point:

(1) At least *10 minutes* longitudinal separation exists at the point where the tracks diverge; and

(2) At least *5 minutes* longitudinal separation will exist where 60 NM lateral separation is achieved; and

NOTE–
When the preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft in accordance with this subparagraph, and the aircraft will follow continuously diverging tracks so that 60 NM lateral separation will be achieved by the next significant point, the requirement to have at least 5 minutes longitudinal separation where 60 NM lateral separation is achieved, may be disregarded.

(3) At least 60 NM lateral separation will be achieved at or before the next significant point (normally within ten degrees of longitude along track(s)) or, if not, within 90 minutes of the time the second aircraft passes the common point or is within 600 NM of the common point, whichever is estimated to occur first.

(b) Between *9 and 5 minutes,* provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8-3-3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE, and

(1) It is possible to ensure, by radar or other approved means, that the required time interval exists and will exist at the common point from which they either follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks; and

(2) The preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft in accordance with the following:

[a] *9 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.02 faster than the following aircraft;

[b] *8 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft;

[c] *7 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.04 faster than the following aircraft;

[d] *6 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.05 faster than the following aircraft;

[e] *5 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

2. *15 minutes* between turbojet aircraft not covered by para 8-7-3, LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION.

c. Operations in the West Atlantic Route System *(WATRS) (subsonic flight)*:

NOTE–
The WATRS area is defined as beginning at a point 27°00'N/77°00'W direct to 20°00'N/67°00'W direct to 18°00'N/62°00'W direct to 18°00'N/60°00'W direct to 38°30'N/60°00'W direct to 38°30'N/69°15'W, thence counter-clockwise along the New York Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary, thence southbound along the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the point of beginning.

1. Between all aircraft *15 minutes,* or

2. Aircraft operating at or above FL 280 within the *WATRS* area or west of 60° West when in transit to or from *WATRS*;

(a) *10 minutes* provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE; and

(1) Where tracks diverge from the common point:

[a] At least *10 minutes* longitudinal separation exists at the point where the tracks diverge; and

[b] At least *5 minutes* longitudinal separation will exist where the minimum lateral separation is achieved; and

[c] At least the minimum lateral separation will be achieved at or before the next significant point or, if not, within *90 minutes* of the time the second aircraft passes the common point or is within 600 NM of the common point, whichever is estimated to occur first;

(2) If the aircraft have not reported over a common point, it is possible to ensure, by radar or other approved means, that the appropriate time interval will exist at the common point from which they either follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks;

(b) *Between 9 and 5 minutes,* provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE; and

(1) It is possible to ensure by radar or other approved means, that the required time interval exists and will exist at the common point from which they either follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks; and

(2) The preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft in accordance with the following:

[a] *9 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.02 faster than the following aircraft;

[b] *8 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft;

[c] *7 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.04 faster than the following aircraft;

[d] *6 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.05 faster than the following aircraft;

[e] *5 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

NOTE–
When the preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft, in accordance with the above, and the aircraft will follow continuously diverging tracks so that the minimum lateral separation will be achieved by the next significant point, the requirement to have at least 5 minutes longitudinal separation where the minimum lateral separation is achieved, may be disregarded.

d. Operations outside of MNPS airspace *(subsonic flight)*: Apply the following minimum longitudinal separation:

1. *15 minutes* between turbojet aircraft, provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE.

2. Between turbojet aircraft, provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE, and *only* when it is possible to ensure by radar or other approved means that the required time interval exists and will exist at the common point:

(a) *10 minutes* when the preceding aircraft is at least Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft; or

(b) *5 minutes* when the preceding aircraft is at least Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

3. *20 minutes:*

(a) Between turbojet aircraft not covered by subpara d.1. or 2.; and

(b) Between other than turbojet aircraft operating along routes extending between the United States, Canada or Bermuda and points in the Caribbean Region, or between the United States or Canada and Bermuda; and

4. *30 minutes* between other than turbojet aircraft except those covered in subpara 3.(b) above.

8-7-4. LATERAL SEPARATION

Provide lateral separation by assigning different flight paths whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap. Apply the following:

a. 60 NM or 1 degree latitude between:

1. Supersonic aircraft operating above FL 275.

2. Aircraft which meet the MNPS and which:

NOTE–
This reduced lateral separation shall not be used if track keeping capability of the aircraft has been reduced for any reason.

(a) Operate within MNPS airspace; or

(b) Are in transit to or from MNPS airspace; or

(c) Operate for part of their flight within MNPS airspace but are cleared to operate immediately above or below such airspace for a portion of their flight.

b. *90 NM or 1 and 1/2 degrees* latitude between aircraft operating:

1. Within *WATRS*;

2. Between the United States, Canada, and Bermuda;

3. West of 55° West between the United States, Canada, or Bermuda and points in the Caribbean ICAO Region.

c. *120 NM or 2 degrees latitude* between aircraft not covered by subpara a. or b. above.

NOTE–
Tracks may be spaced with reference to their difference in latitude, provided that in any interval of 10 degrees of longitude the change in latitude of at least one of the tracks does not exceed 3 degrees when operating south of 58° North.

Section 8. CARIBBEAN ICAO REGION

8-8-1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the Caribbean ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section except when noted otherwise.

8-8-2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with Chapter 4. IFR, Section 5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT AND VERIFICATION.

8-8-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

Provide longitudinal separation between aircraft as follows:

a. Supersonic flight:

1. Provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8-3-3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE;

(a) *10 minutes,* or,

(b) *10 minutes,* when one or both aircraft has been cleared to commence the deceleration/descent phase of supersonic flight and the preceding aircraft is maintaining a Mach number which is the same or greater than that of the following aircraft.

2. *15 minutes,* between all other aircraft.

b. Operations in the West Atlantic Route System *(WATRS) (subsonic flight):*

1. Between all aircraft within the San Juan CTA/FIR *15 minutes*, or

2. Aircraft operating at or above FL 280 within the WATRS area or west of 60° West when in transit to or from WATRS;

(a) *10 minutes,* provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8-3-3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE; and

(1) Where tracks diverge from the common point:

(2) At least *10 minutes,* longitudinal separation exists at the point where the tracks diverge; and

(3) At least *5 minutes,* longitudinal separation will exist where the minimum lateral separation is achieved; and

(4) At least the minimum lateral separation will be achieved at or before the next significant point; or, if not, within *90 minutes* of the time the second aircraft passes the common point or is within 600 NM of the common point, whichever is estimated to occur first;

NOTE-
The WATRS area is defined as beginning at a point 27°00'N / 77°00'W direct to 20°00'N / 67°00'W direct to 18°00'N / 62°00'W direct to 18°00'N / 60°00'W direct to 38°30'N / 60°00'W direct to 38°30'N / 69°15'W, thence counterclockwise along the New York Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary, thence southbound along the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the point of beginning.

(b) If the aircraft have not reported over a common point, it is possible to ensure, by radar or other approved means, that the appropriate time interval will exist at the common point from which they either follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks

3. *Between 9 and 5 minutes,* provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8-3-3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE; and

(1) It is possible to ensure by radar or other approved means, that the required time interval exists and will exist at the common point from which they either follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks and

(2) The preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft in accordance with the following:

[a] *9 minutes,* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.02 faster than the following aircraft;

[b] *8 minutes,* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft;

[c] *7 minutes,* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.04 faster than the following aircraft;

[d] *6 minutes,* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.05 faster than the following aircraft;

[e] *5 minutes,* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

NOTE–
When the preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft, in accordance with the table above, and the aircraft will follow continuously diverging tracks so that the minimum lateral separation will be achieved by the next significant point, the requirement stated above, to have at least 5 minutes longitudinal separation where the minimum lateral separation is achieved, may be disregarded.

c. Between turbojet aircraft meeting the MNPS and operating in the New York oceanic CTA/FIR wholly or partly in MNPS airspace *(subsonic flight)*:

1. *10 minutes,* provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE; and

(a) Where tracks diverge from the common point:

(1) At least *10 minutes,* longitudinal separation exists at the point where the tracks diverge; and

(2) At least *5 minutes,* longitudinal separation will exists where 60 NM lateral separation is achieved; and

NOTE–
When the preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft in accordance with this subparagraph, and the aircraft will follow continuously diverging tracks so that 60 NM lateral separation will be achieved by the next significant point, the requirement to have at least 5 minutes longitudinal separation where 60 NM lateral separation is achieved, may be disregarded.

(3) At least 60 NM lateral separation will be achieved at or before the next significant point (normally within ten degrees of longitude along track(s)) or, if not, within *90 minutes* of the time the second aircraft passes the common point or is within 600 NM of the common point, whichever is estimated to occur first.

2. Between *9 and 5 minutes*, provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE; and

(a) It is possible to ensure, by radar or other approved means, that the required time interval exists and will exist at the common point from which they either follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks; and

(b) The preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft in accordance with the following:

(1) *9 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.02 faster than the following aircraft;

(2) *8 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft;

(3) *7 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.04 faster than the following aircraft;

(4) *6 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.05 faster than the following aircraft;

(5) *5 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

3. *15 minutes,* between turbojet aircraft not covered in subparas c.1. and 2.

d. Operations between aircraft not covered in subparas b. or c. *(subsonic flight)*:

1. Operations at or above FL 200.

(a) *15 minutes,* between turbojet aircraft, provided the Mach number technique is applied, in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE.

(b) Between turbojet aircraft, provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE, and *only* when it is possible to ensure by radar or other approved means that the required time interval exists and will exist at the common point:

(1) *10 minutes* when the preceding aircraft is at least Mach 0.03 greater than the following aircraft; and

(2) *5 minutes* when the preceding aircraft is at least Mach 0.06 greater than the following aircraft;

2. *20 Minutes:*

(a) Between aircraft operating below FL 200 west of 55° West;

(b) Between aircraft operating at all levels east of 55° West;

(c) Within the New York CTA/FIR;

(1) Between turbojet aircraft not covered by subparas d.1.(a) and (b) above;

(2) Between other than turbojet aircraft operating along routes extending between the United States, Canada, or Bermuda and the Caribbean ICAO Region.

8-8-4. LATERAL SEPARATION

Provide lateral separation by assigning different flight paths whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap. Apply the following:

a. 60 NM:

1. Supersonic aircraft operating above FL 275 within the New York oceanic CTA/FIR.

2. Supersonic aircraft operating at or above FL450 not covered in subpara 1. above.

NOTE–
This reduced lateral separation shall not be used if track keeping capability of the aircraft has been reduced for any reason.

3. Aircraft which meet the MNPS and while operating in the New York oceanic CTA/FIR which are in transit to or from NAT MNPS airspace.

b. *90 NM* between aircraft operating:

1. Within *WATRS;*

2. West of 55° West between the United States, Canada, or Bermuda and points in the Caribbean ICAO Region.

c. *100 NM* between aircraft operating west of 55° West not covered by subparas a. or b. above.

d. *120 NM* between aircraft operating east of 55° West.

8-8-5. VFR CLIMB AND DESCENT

a. In the Houston, Miami, and San Juan CTA's, IFR flights may be cleared to climb and descend in VFR conditions only:

1. When requested by the pilot; and

2. Between sunrise and sunset.

b. Apply the following when the flight is cleared:

1. If there is a possibility that VFR conditions may become impractical, issue alternative instructions.

2. Issue traffic information to aircraft that are not separated in accordance with the minima in this section.

Section 9. PACIFIC ICAO REGION

8–9–1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the Pacific ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section except when noted otherwise.

8–9–2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with Chapter 4. IFR Section 5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT AND VERIFICATION, except when aircraft operate within airspace where composite separation and procedures are authorized, apply the minima specified in para 8–9–5, COMPOSITE SEPARATION MINIMA.

8–9–3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

Provide longitudinal separation between aircraft as follows:

a. Between all aircraft, *15 minutes*; or

b. Between turbojet aircraft provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE:

1. *10 minutes*; or

2. Between *9 and 5 minutes* provided:

(a) It is possible to ensure by radar or other approved means that the required time interval will exist at the common point from which the aircraft either follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks; and

(b) The preceding aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the following aircraft in accordance with the following table:

(1) *9 minutes* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.02 faster than the following aircraft.

(2) *8 minutes* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft.

(3) *7 minutes* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.04 faster than the following aircraft.

(4) *6 minutes* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.05 faster than the following aircraft.

(5) *5 minutes* if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

8–9–4. LATERAL SEPARATION

Provide lateral separation by one of the following:

a. Clear aircraft on different flight paths whose route widths or protected airspace do not overlap.

b. When aircraft operate within airspace where composite separation and procedures are authorized, apply the minimum specified in para 8–9–5, COMPOSITE SEPARATION MINIMA.

c. When subparas a. or b. are not applicable, *apply 100 NM* between aircraft.

8–9–5. COMPOSITE SEPARATION MINIMA

Provide composite separation within the Central East Pacific (CEP) and North Pacific (NOPAC) composite route systems and where designated by facility directive in the Pacific Organized Track System (PACOTS) at and above FL 290 as follows:

a. *1,000 feet* vertical separation; and

b. *50 NM* lateral separation.

8–9–6. COMPOSITE SEPARATION ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT

a. Aircraft operating at or above FL 300 in a composite route system may be cleared at even flight levels. Additionally, aircraft may be cleared at even flight levels while joining, crossing, or leaving a composite route system provided such aircraft leaving the system are cleared to an appropriate odd cardinal flight level when noncomposite vertical or lateral separation is achieved.

b. Aircraft (operating at or above FL 300) leaving a composite route system at an even cardinal flight level do not have to be assigned an odd cardinal flight level provided:

1. The aircraft is being provided radar service; and

2. The aircraft will be cleared for descent and approach to an airport within the facility's domestic FIR; and

3. There is an operational advantage.

c. Aircraft operating on unidirectional routes or traffic flows may be assigned altitudes other than the appropriate altitude for direction of flight provided that 2,000 feet vertical separation is maintained between aircraft operating on the same route.

8-9-7. COMPOSITE SEPARATION APPLICATION

Provide composite separation in the CEP and the North Pacific (NOPAC) composite route systems and where designated by facility directive in the Pacific Organized Track System (PACOTS) as follows:

a. Clear an aircraft to join an outer route of the composite route system at other than the normal entry point provided:

1. Longitudinal or noncomposite vertical separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on that route; and

2. Composite separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the next adjacent route.

b. Clear an aircraft to leave an outer route of the composite route system at other than the normal exit point provided its course diverges so that lateral spacing from the route system increases until noncomposite separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft in the composite route system.

c. Clear an aircraft to change from one route to an adjacent route within the composite route system provided:

1. Longitudinal or noncomposite vertical separation is maintained between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the route being vacated until that aircraft is established on the route to which it is proceeding; and

2. Longitudinal or noncomposite vertical separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the route to which that aircraft is proceeding; and

3. Composite separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the next adjacent route.

d. Clear an aircraft to cross the composite route system provided longitudinal or noncomposite vertical or lateral separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft in the composite route system.

e. Clear aircraft to transition to or from the composite route system from an Oceanic Transition Route (OTR) provided:

1. The OTR is charted on aeronautical charts; and

2. Composite separation is maintained between that aircraft and any other aircraft within the composite route system; and

NOTE-
An aircraft is within the confines of a composite route system when the aircraft joins or crosses the outer route of the composite route system or passes a composite route entry point.

3. Composite separation is maintained between that aircraft and any other aircraft on adjacent OTR's.

f. Clear an aircraft to change altitude on a route if noncomposite separation exists between that aircraft and others operating on that route regardless of other aircraft operating on adjacent routes in the system. Pilot's discretion climbs and descents are not authorized when applying composite separation.

NOTE-
Although composite separation is not applied between aircraft on different tracks at FL 280 and FL 290, this paragraph applies to climbs and descents between FL 280 and altitudes within the composite altitude stratum (FL 300 and above).

8-9-8. VFR CLIMB AND DESCENT

a. In the Pacific CTA, IFR flights may be cleared to climb and descend in VFR conditions only if the following conditions are met:

1. When requested by the pilot.

2. Between sunrise and sunset.

b. Apply the following when the flight is cleared.

1. If there is a possibility that VFR conditions may become impractical, issue alternative instructions.

2. Issue traffic information to aircraft that are not separated in accordance with the minima in this section.

8-9-9. PROCEDURES FOR WEATHER DEVIATIONS AND OTHER CONTINGENCIES IN OCEANIC CONTROLLED AIRSPACE

Aircraft must request an ATC clearance to deviate. Since aircraft will not fly into known areas of weather, weather deviation requests should take priority over routine requests. If there is conflicting traffic and ATC is unable to establish standard separation, ATC shall:

a. Advise the pilot that standard separation cannot be applied;

b. If possible, suggest a course of action; and

NOTE-
ATC may suggest that the pilot climb or descend to a contingency altitude (1,000 feet above or below that assigned if operating above FL 290; 500 feet above or below that assigned if operating at or below FL 290).

c. To the extent practical, provide traffic information for all affected aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY–
STANDARD SEPARATION NOT AVAILABLE, DEVIATE AT PILOT'S DISCRETION; SUGGEST CLIMB (or descent) TO (appropriate altitude); TRAFFIC (position and altitude); REPORT DEVIATION COMPLETE.

d. The pilot will follow the advisory altitude when approximately 10 NM from track.

e. At the completion of the deviation, ATC shall establish standard separation as soon as practicable.

NOTE–
In the event that pilot/controller communications cannot be established or a revised ATC clearance is not available, pilots will follow the procedures outlined in the AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL (AIM) and Chart Supplements.

Section 10. NORTH AMERICAN ICAO REGION– ARCTIC CTA

8–10–1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the North American ICAO Region – Arctic CTA with the procedures and minima contained in this section.

8–10–2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with Chapter 4. IFR, Section 5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT AND VERIFICATION.

8–10–3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

Apply the following minimum longitudinal separation:

a. *15 minutes* between aircraft; or

b. Provided the Mach number technique is applied in accordance with para 8–3–3, MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE:

1. *10 minutes* when the preceding aircraft is at least Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft; or

2. *5 minutes* when the preceding aircraft is at least Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

8–10–4. LATERAL SEPARATION

Provide *90 NM* lateral separation between aircraft, except that lower minima in 7.2 of Part 3 of the Procedures for Air Navigation–Rules of the Air (PANS–RAC), (Doc 4444–RAC/501) may be applied or further reduced in accordance with para 9 of the same part where the conditions specified in the relevant PANS–RAC are met.

Chapter 9. SPECIAL FLIGHTS

Section 1. GENERAL

9-1-1. GENERAL

Provide aircraft engaged in the flight inspection of NAVAID's with maximum assistance. Unless otherwise agreed to, maintain direct contact with the pilot and exchange information regarding known traffic in the area and his intentions.

NOTE-
1 Many flight inspections are accomplished using automatic recording equipment, and an uninterrupted flight is necessary for successful completion of the mission. The workload for the limited number of aircraft engaged in these activities requires strict adherence to a schedule.

2 Flight inspection operations which require special participation of ground personnel, specific communications, or radar operation capabilities are considered to require special handling. These flights are coordinated with appropriate facilities before departure.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 8200.1, UNITED STATES STANDARD FLIGHT INSPECTION MANUAL.
FAAO 8240.41, FLIGHT INSPECTION/AIR TRAFFIC COORDINATION.

9-1-2. SPECIAL HANDLING

a. Clear the aircraft according to pilot request as soon as practicable. Do not ask the pilot to deviate from his planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 8240.41, FLIGHT INSPECTION/AIR TRAFFIC COORDINATION, APPENDIX 1, DESCRIBES CERTAIN FLIGHT INSPECTION MANEUVERS IN DETAIL.

b. Issue radar advisories to the flight inspection aircraft where adequate coverage exists and to the extent permitted by workload.

c. Suggest flight path adjustments, as required, for any aircraft which will enter or penetrate an area in which a flight inspection function is being performed.

d. Provide special handling, as required, to FAA aircraft conducting flight inspections using the call sign "Flight Check." The call sign "Flight Check (Nr) recorded" indicates automated flight inspections are in progress in terminal areas.

NOTE-
FAA flight inspection aircraft will file flight plans using the call sign "FLIGHT CHECK" during flight inspections or when inbound to conduct flight inspections. Flight plan remarks may indicate type NAVAID inspection to be accomplished; e.g. "FC OKC P".

9-1-3. FLIGHT CHECK AIRCRAFT

a. Provide special handling, as required, to expedite flight inspection of NAVAID's, direction finding (DF) equipment, and RADAR by flight check aircraft.

NOTE-
Certain flight inspection maneuvers require operations in close proximity to the surface. These maneuvers can only be performed during daylight visual meteorological conditions. Preplanned automatic flight places the following limitations on the capability of the pilot to adhere to normal ATC clearances:
A. Route of flight – orbital from 6 nautical miles to a maximum of 40 nautical miles from the facility depending on the type of inspection. During commissioning flight checks all SID's, STAR's, airways, DME fixes, and approaches must be flown.
B. Altitude assignment – from 1,000 feet above the antenna site up to the minimum en route altitude (MEA).

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.
FAAO 8240.41, FLIGHT INSPECTION/AIR TRAFFIC COORDINATION, APPENDIX 1, DESCRIBES CERTAIN FLIGHT INSPECTION MANEUVERS IN DETAIL.

b. Avoid changes in the route or altitude from that filed by the pilot in the initial flight plan.

c. Do not impose air traffic control delays in the flight except to preclude emergency situations.

d. Do not change the previously assigned discrete beacon code of special radar accuracy flight check aircraft.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, SPECIAL RADAR ACCURACY CHECKS, Para 8-1-3.
FAAO 7210.3, ASR PERFORMANCE CHECKS, Para 11-5-4.

Section 2. SPECIAL INTEREST FLIGHTS

9-2-1. GENERAL

EN ROUTE

a. All flight movement data on the aircraft listed in subparas 1. and 2. below shall be immediately brought to the attention of the operations manager and forwarded by the most expeditious means (voice, if possible) to the senior director at the concerned NORAD Region Operations Control Center/Sector Operations Control Center and to the Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC ATO-200). Voice messages will be followed up with a data communication message when directed. All flight plans on aircraft listed in subparas 1. and 2. below, including flights within the continental U.S., shall be retransmitted by data communication to ATO-200 and the Office of International Aviation, attention: AIA-101.

NOTE-
1 All flight movement data includes flight plans and changes there to such as changes from IFR to VFR, reroutes or route deviations authorized or directed by the facility, departure messages, arrival messages, unauthorized route deviations or any other unusual operations, etc.

2 These procedures are in addition to the AMIS procedures contained in FAAO 7610.4, Chapter 5.

3 The concerned NORAD region/sector is the one to whom SCATANA reports are forwarded consistent with local ARTCC/NORAD REGION SCATANA REPORTING PROCEDURES.

4 All continental U.S. facilities have either direct flow control interphone circuits or can reach ATO-200 by DSN, 725-3333, or telephone (703) 708-5100.

1. All known aircraft of Cuban registry and all known civil aircraft of other communist-controlled countries that will enter, overfly, or operate within the Continental United States, the Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico or Pacific Coastal ADIZ's, or the Southern Border Domestic ADIZ.

NOTE-
Communist-controlled countries include Albania, Bulgaria, Cambodia, Peoples Republic of China, Cuba, North Korea, Outer Mongolia, Romania, Russia, the Ukraine, and Other Members of the Commonwealth of Independent States, and Socialist Republic of Vietnam.

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM- CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES.

2. All known civil aircraft of foreign registry, other than the aircraft in subpara1., that will enter or overfly the continental United States en route to or from Cuba.

b. Advance route information which has been cleared by NORAD and coordinated by AIA-101 with the State Department, as necessary, will be passed to the concerned ARTCC's by AIA-101 via ATO-200. Inform ATO-200 of your concurrence or problems with the route, as the case may be. ATO-200 will relay any problems to AIA-101 for resolution with NORAD. Advance route information does not constitute the forwarding of flight movement data to NORAD as specified in subpara a.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, APPLICATION, Para 9-2-2.

9-2-2. APPLICATION

EN ROUTE

a. Comply with any operational request that may be received directly from NORAD or through ATO-200 unless the change will affect flight safety. When safety is a factor, acquaint NORAD with the situation and attempt to work out an alternate solution if time and circumstances permit. If unable, take the course of action dictated by flight safety considerations and inform NORAD and ATO-200 as quickly as possible thereafter. Comply with requests for information or assistance from NORAD or the State Department which may include relay of messages to facilities or an aircraft in flight.

NOTE-
State Department communications will be relayed through ATO-200.

b. Request the aircraft to return to its approved route/reroute of flight whenever any deviation is noted.

c. Immediately alert the operations manager and notify the senior director at the concerned NORAD Region Operations Control Center/Sector Operations Control Center and ATO-200 via the most expeditious means when the following conditions occur:

1. The aircraft refuses to comply with a NORAD or State Department message.

2. Communication with the aircraft is established but the aircraft's identification cannot be immediately correlated with a known flight plan. Attempt flight plan correlation when time permits.

3. The aircraft deviates from its approved route of flight and refuses to return to it when so requested.

4. The aircraft refuses a reroute when so cleared or deviates from its reroute and refuses to return to it when requested.

5. A departure message on a flight plan of an aircraft in para 9-2-1, GENERAL, subpara a.1., originating in Canada, Mexico, or Cuba is not received within 5 minutes after the proposed time and you are unable to ascertain if the aircraft has departed either IFR or VFR.

d. If NORAD dispatches aircraft to intercept and escort the flight, the control procedures in Escort of Hijacked Aircraft, FAAO 7610.4 Chapter 7, shall apply.

9-2-3. EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS

a. If an aircraft of a communist-controlled country makes an emergency or unscheduled landing in the United States, immediately alert the OM/controller-in-charge of the shift and notify:

1. *EN ROUTE:* In the Continental United States–

(a) The senior director at the concerned NORAD Region Operations Control/Sector Operations Control Center.

(b) ATO-200.

NOTE–
ATO-200 will relay or voice-patch the information to all FAA Washington Headquarters organizations concerned.

(c) U.S. Customs Service Office for the airport where the aircraft will land.

2. *EN ROUTE:* In the Pacific Region, Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands–The Air Defense Control Center and the offices specified in subparas 1.(b) and (c).

NOTE–
Guam CERAP forwards the information through the Honolulu ARTCC.

3. *EN ROUTE*: In the Alaskan Region– The Alaskan NORAD Region Operations Control Center and the offices specified in subparas 1.(b) and (c).

4. *TERMINAL:* The nearest U.S. Customs Service Office and the appropriate ARTCC.

b. Provide the following information to the organizations specified in subpara 1.(a) if available:

1. Type of aircraft.

2. Country of aircraft registry.

3. Destination airport.

4. Nature of emergency or reason for landing, as appropriate.

c. Advise the pilot that passengers must remain aboard the aircraft after landing until cleared by the U.S. Customs Service Office.

d. *TERMINAL:* In cases where communication is established with the aircraft but the aircraft identification cannot be immediately correlated with a known flight plan, notify the appropriate ARTCC and nearest U.S. Customs Service Office.

Section 3. SPECIAL OPERATIONS

9-3-1. AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS

a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when:

1. The words "dangerous cargo," or "inert devices," or both are contained in the remarks section of the filed flight plan, or

NOTE-
[1] Certain types of military flights carrying dangerous materials require strict adherence to military regulations and flight planning along carefully selected routes. These flights must avoid heavily populated areas.

[2] "Inert devices" are devices containing no dangerous materials but closely resembling nuclear or explosive items that are classified as dangerous and could be easily mistaken for their dangerous counterparts.

2. The pilot uses these words in radio communication.

b. If it becomes necessary to issue a clearance to amend the route/altitude, advise the pilot:

1. Of the proposed change, and

2. The amount of delay to expect if it is necessary to maintain the present route/altitude.

c. When it becomes necessary for the pilot to refuse a clearance amending his route/altitude, he will advise if the traffic delay is acceptable or if an alternate route/altitude is desired. In such cases, offer all possible assistance.

d. When the aircraft is provided an en route descent, do not vector the aircraft from the planned route unless the pilot concurs.

e. Use special patterns and routings in areas where they have been developed for these flights. If special patterns and routings have not been developed, employ normal procedures.

9-3-2. CELESTIAL NAVIGATION TRAINING

EN ROUTE

a. Approve flight plans specifying celestial navigation only when it is requested for USAF or USN aircraft.

NOTE-
An ATC clearance must be obtained by the pilot before discontinuing conventional navigation to begin celestial navigation training. The pilot will advise when discontinuing celestial navigation and resuming conventional navigation. Celestial navigation training will be conducted within 30 nm of the route centerline specified in the en route clearance unless otherwise authorized by ATC. During celestial navigation training, the pilot will advise ATC before initiating any heading changes which exceed 20 degrees.

b. Within conterminous U.S. airspace, limit celestial navigation training to transponder-equipped aircraft within areas of ARTCC radar coverage.

c. Prior to control transfer, ensure that the receiving controller is informed of the nature of the celestial navigation training leg.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA, Para 2-2-6.

9-3-3. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE) SPECIAL FLIGHTS

a. Provide notification of possible route or altitude changes as far in advance as possible for "RAC" flights. The pilot will indicate if the proposed change is acceptable or if alternate routing or altitude will be requested.

NOTE-
DOE contracts for civil pilots to operate public aircraft to transport radioactive or high explosive materials within the conterminous U.S. These flights operate on an IFR flight plan but principally during daylight hours and VFR conditions. These flights require flight along carefully selected routes and, in some instances, pilots will refuse clearances that require reroute or altitude changes that would derogate their objective.

b. *EN ROUTE:* Approve pilot requests to leave center frequency for operational purposes as traffic conditions permit.

c. Notify a supervisor in the event any of the following occurs with "RAC" aircraft:

1. Loss of radio contact.

2. Loss of radar contact.

3. The flight is overdue at the destination.

d. If you receive information that a "RAC" aircraft is involved in an accident, secure as much information as possible, particularly with respect to location, and immediately notify the ARTCC operations manager.

NOTE–
There is a possibility of an explosive or radiation hazard of an "RAC" aircraft involved in an accident.

9–3–4. EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS

a. When notified that an experimental aircraft requires special handling:

NOTE–
CFR Part 91.319(d)(3) requires that each person operating an aircraft with an experimental certificate shall notify the control tower of the experimental nature of the aircraft when operating into or out of airports with operating control towers.

1. Clear the aircraft according to pilot requests as traffic permits and if not contrary to ATC procedures.

2. Once approved, do not ask the pilot to deviate from a planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.

b. At locations where volume or complexity of experimental aircraft operations warrant, a letter of agreement may be consummated between the facility and operator.

9–3–5. FAA RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT FLIGHTS

When coordinated in advance and traffic permits, approve requests for special flight procedures from aircraft participating in FAA research and development test activities. These special procedures shall be applied to participating aircraft/vehicles.

NOTE–
Special flight procedures for FAA research and development test activities must be approved by the facility air traffic manager prior to their use.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT FLIGHTS, Para 6–2–4.

9–3–6. FLYNET

Provide expeditious handling for civil or military aircraft using the code name "Flynet." Relay the code name as an element in the remarks position of the flight plan.

NOTE–
The code name "FLYNET" indicates that an aircraft is transporting a nuclear emergency team or a disaster control team to the location of a nuclear accident or a major accident involving chemical agents or biological research materials. It is in the public interest that they reach their destination as rapidly as possible.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.
FAAO 7610.4, "FLYNET" FLIGHTS, NUCLEAR EMERGENCY TEAMS, Para 12–41.

9–3–7. IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES

a. Except for aircraft operating in the same altitude reservation, clear aircraft into an MTR provided separation will be applied between successive aircraft unless otherwise covered in a letter of agreement between the military scheduling activity and the concerned ATC facility.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED INTO IR (designator).
MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

MAINTAIN IR (designator) ALTITUDE(S),

or

MAINTAIN AT OR BELOW (altitude),

or

CRUISE (altitude),

and if required,

CROSS (fix) AT OR LATER THAN (time).

b. Unless otherwise covered in a letter of agreement between the military scheduling activity and the concerned FAA facility, clear aircraft to exit an MTR.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (destination / clearance limit) FROM IR (designator / exit fix) VIA (route).
MAINTAIN (altitude).

c. If the provisions of subpara a. above cannot be accomplished, MTR's may be designated for MARSA operations. To preclude an inadvertent compromise of MARSA standards by ATC, appropriate MARSA application for such routes shall be covered in a letter of agreement with the military scheduling activity. Establish separation between aircraft as soon as practicable after operation on the designated MARSA route is ended.

NOTE–
For designated MARSA routes, the military assumes responsibility for separation for MTR aircraft that have passed the primary / alternate entry fix until separation is established by ATC after operations on the MARSA route are completed.

d. The lateral airspace to be protected along an MTR is the designated width of the route.

e. Prior to an aircraft entering an MTR, request the pilot's estimate for the route's exit/alternate exit fix, the pilot's requested altitude after exiting, and, if applicable, the number of reentries on a Strategic Training Range (STR).

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Call sign) CONFIRM YOUR EXIT FIX ESTIMATE AND REQUESTED ALTITUDE AFTER EXIT,

and if applicable,

THE NUMBER OF REENTRIES.

f. Forward estimates for exit/alternate exit fixes, requested altitude after exit, and, if applicable, the number of reentries on the STR.

g. Apply the procedures of para 6–1–2, NONRECEIPT OF POSITION REPORT, based upon the pilot's estimate for the route exit fix.

h. Clearance may be issued to amend or restrict operations on a route for ATC considerations. Where a route has been designated MARSA in accordance with subpara c., ATC shall not amend or restrict operations in such a manner as to compromise MARSA provisions.

NOTE–
When MARSA is provided through route scheduling and circumstances prevent the pilot from entering the route within established time limits, it shall be the responsibility of the pilot to inform the ATC facility and advise his intentions.

i. If an aircraft on an IR experiences a two-way radio communications failure and you are unable to determine if the aircraft is proceeding VFR in accordance with CFR Part 91.185(b) or the aircraft has not been positively radar identified:

1. Provide separation to the destination airport based on the aircraft complying with the following:

(a) Maintain to the exit/alternate exit fix the higher of the following altitudes:

(1) The minimum IFR altitude for each of the remaining route segment(s) remaining on the route.

(2) The highest altitude assigned in the last ATC clearance.

(b) Depart the exit/alternate exit fix at the appropriate altitude specified in subpara (a) above, then climb/descend to the altitude filed in the flight plan for the remainder of the flight, or

NOTE–
In the event of a two-way communications failure, ATC will be based on the following anticipated pilot action at the exit fix. Unless otherwise covered in a letter of agreement, and if the pilot is unable to comply with the VFR provisions of CFR Part 91.185 / FLIP IFR Supplement, the pilot will exercise his emergency authority, squawk transponder CODE 7700, depart the exit / alternate exit fix and climb / descend (continuing to squawk 7700) to the altitude filed in the flight plan. Subsequent transponder operations will be in accordance with para 10–4–4, COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE. Air traffic controller action from the exit fix is as prescribed in para 10–1–1, EMERGENCY DETERMINATIONS.

(c) Proceed in accordance with the lost communication procedure contained in letters of agreement.

2. Continue to monitor the last ATC assigned discrete code.

NOTE–
Pilots who experience a two-way radio failure will adjust their transponder to CODE 7700 during climb / descent to altitude filed for the next leg of the flight plan; then change to CODE 7600 for a period of 15 minutes. at the end of each 15–minute period, he will squawk 7700 for a period of 1 minute; all other times he will squawk 7600.

j. Impose delays, if needed, to eliminate conflict with nonparticipating IFR aircraft when necessary to preclude denial of IR usage. Advise the pilot of the expected length and reason for delay.

9–3–8. INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS

Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense (scrambles) missions until the unknown aircraft is identified in accordance with the policies and procedures published in FAAO 7610.4 Special Military Operations.

NOTE–
The FAA and the military have mutually agreed to the implementation of policies and procedures for control of air defense interceptor operations. Effective coordination and cooperation between FAA and the military at all levels are essential if policy objectives are to be met.

a. The ADCF initiating the SCRAMBLE shall identify the mission as an active air defense mission.

b. ATC services shall be used for active air defense missions insofar as the circumstances and situation permits.

c. Upon request, the ATC facility shall expedite transfer of the control jurisdiction of the interceptors to the requesting ADCF.

9-3-9. LAW ENFORCEMENT OPERATIONS BY CIVIL AND MILITARY ORGANIZATIONS

a. Law enforcement alerts.

1. Aircraft lookouts shall not be distributed outside the FAA.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 1600.29, LAW ENFORCEMENT ALERT MESSAGE SYSTEM.
FAAO 7210.3, COOPERATION WITH LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES, Para 2-5-7.

2. Stolen aircraft alerts, including stolen aircraft summaries, may be distributed outside the FAA to: airport offices, air carriers, fixed base operators, and law enforcement agencies.

3. Upon receipt of knowledge concerning an aircraft for which a current law enforcement alert message is held, do the following:

(a) Forward any information on the aircraft to El Paso Intelligence Center (EPIC) and the requester when specified in the message.

(b) Immediately notify the cognizant Air Transportation Security division/staff by the most rapid means.

(c) DO NOT TAKE ANY OTHER ACTION AFFECTING THE AIRCRAFT, CARGO, CREW, OR PASSENGERS NOT NORMALLY RELATED TO JOB RESPONSIBILITIES.

b. Special law enforcement operations.

1. Special law enforcement operations include in-flight identification, surveillance, interdiction and pursuit activities performed in accordance with official civil and/or military mission responsibilities.

2. To facilitate accomplishment of these special missions, exemptions from specified Parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations have been granted to designated departments and agencies. However, it is each organization's responsibility to apprise ATC of their intent to operate under an authorized exemption before initiating actual operations.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, AUTHORIZATIONS AND EXEMPTIONS FROM TITLE 14, CODE OF FEDERAL AVIATION REGULATIONS (14 CFR), Para 19-3-1.

3. Additionally, some departments and agencies that perform special missions have been assigned coded identifiers to permit them to apprise ATC of ongoing mission activities and solicit special air traffic assistance.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.67, SPECIAL AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS BY LAW ENFORCEMENT/MILITARY ORGANIZATIONS.

NOTE-
As specified in para 2-1-4, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, priority of handling for aircraft operating with coded identifiers will be the same as that afforded to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.

c. Assistance to law enforcement aircraft operations.

1. Provide the maximum assistance possible to law enforcement aircraft, when requested, in helping them locate suspect aircraft.

2. Communicate with law enforcement aircraft, when possible and if requested, on a frequency not paired with your normal communications frequencies.

3. Do not allow assistance to law enforcement aircraft to violate any required separation minima.

4. Do not assist VFR law enforcement aircraft in any way that will create a situation which, in your judgement, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain or other aircraft.

9-3-10. MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING

Authorize aircraft to conduct aerial refueling along published or special tracks at their flight plan altitude, unless otherwise requested.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED TO CONDUCT REFUELING ALONG (number) TRACK,

or

FROM (fix) TO (fix),

and

MAINTAIN REFUELING LEVEL (altitude),

or

MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

COMMENCING AT (altitude), DESCENDING TO (altitude).

NOTE–
[1] During aerial refueling, tanker aircraft are responsible for receiver aircraft communication with ATC and for their navigation along the track.

[2] Aerial refueling airspace is not sterilized airspace and other aircraft may transit this airspace provided vertical or lateral separation is provided from refueling aircraft.

[3] MARSA begins between the tanker and receiver when the tanker and receiver(s) have entered the air refueling airspace and the tanker advises ATC that he is accepting MARSA.

[4] MARSA ends between the tanker and receiver when the tanker advises ATC that the tanker and receiver aircraft are vertically positioned within the air refueling airspace and ATC advises MARSA is terminated.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, USE OF MARSA, Para 2–1–11.
FAAO 7110.65 ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS, Para 5–5–7.
FAAO 7610.4 CHAPTER 10, AERIAL REFUELING.

a. Provide radar assistance to the rendezvous for participating aircraft:

1. When requested, and

2. By providing vertical separation prior to MARSA declaration.

b. Do not request receiver aircraft that have been cleared to conduct air refueling and have departed the ARIP to:

1. Make code changes when less than 5 miles from the tanker.

2. Squawk standby when less than 1 mile or more than 3 miles from the tanker.

NOTE–
Requests for receiver aircraft to make code changes during air refueling diverts the receiver pilot's attention during a critical phase of flight.

c. When issuing an initial air refueling clearance, you may request a receiver to squawk standby when the receiver reaches a point 3 miles from the tanker.

NOTE–
[1] Receiver aircraft will squawk normal when separation from the tanker is greater than 3 miles.

[2] Once rendezvous is completed, heading and altitude assignments may be made with the tanker concurrence with MARSA remaining in effect.

[3] Upon rendezvous completion, the tanker shall keep receiver aircraft within 3 miles of the tanker until MARSA is terminated.

d. After MARSA has been declared, you should avoid issuing course or altitude changes prior to rendezvous.

NOTE–
Altitude or course changes issued will automatically void MARSA.

e. Do not use the altitude vacated during the refueling operation until the refueling aircraft has reported reaching the next IFR altitude.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, EXCEPTIONS, Para 6–6–2.

f. Approve requests by the tanker pilot for vectors or alternative routes or altitudes as follows:

1. Furnish vectors or alternative altitudes at any time.

2. Furnish nonradar routes only after the refueling aircraft have passed the ARCP.

NOTE–
[1] To meet a training requirement that aerial refueling be accomplished in a nonradar environment, the military has requested that vectors be furnished only upon request.

[2] The tanker commander is responsible for coordinating all in-flight requests with other aircraft in the refueling mission before submission of such requests to the center.

[3] Normally, aircraft conducting aerial refueling operations will utilize at least three consecutive altitudes.

g. Unless a vector or alternative route has been furnished, clear the aircraft to depart the refueling track at a navigational reference point or egress fix.

h. Request an aircraft to report the ARIP, ARCP, or egress fix as necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT:

A–R–I–P,

or

A–R–C–P,

or

EGRESS FIX.

i. Expect the following procedures in addition to those required by the appropriate parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations in the event of two-way communications failure:

1. The tanker will depart the track from the highest altitude in the block.

2. The receiver will depart the track from the lowest altitude in the block.

3. Aircraft will squawk 7600 for at least 2 minutes prior to departing the track.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600, Para 9–3–11.

9–3–11. MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600

Control aircraft operating above FL 600 using the following procedures:

a. Flight plans involving supersonic flight are required 16 hours in advance of proposed departure times for processing and approval by the ARTCC's concerned. The originating ARTCC, where the flight plan is first filed, may waive the 16 hour advance filing requirement.

b. The route of flight shall be defined by at least one high altitude fix within each ARTCC area without regard to the distance between fixes. Additionally, the entry and exit points of turns of 90 degrees or more will be designated.

c. Elapsed times from takeoff to the first fix in each ARTCC area shall be included in the route of flight.

d. The ARTCC which originates the flight plan shall forward departure times to all ARTCC's responsible for processing the flight plan.

e. Approval of the flight plan indicates approval of both route and FL's (if stated) including operations below FL 600 (aerial refueling).

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED AS FILED VIA ROUTE AND FLIGHT LEVELS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING, Para 9–3–10.

f. Separation. Use the following as minima in lieu of the corresponding type of separation prescribed in:

NOTE–
The primary method described to provide separation between two supersonic aircraft is to descend the aircraft at the lower FL and provide vertical separation since the aircraft at the higher FL may not be able to climb rapidly enough to establish the required separation. Another aspect which should be considered is that supersonic aircraft during turns, either programmed or as the result of vectors, will lose a few thousand feet. Vectoring supersonic aircraft seriously affects the range and mission objectives. Radar separation is the preferred method of separating a subsonic aircraft both from another subsonic aircraft or from a supersonic aircraft.

1. Para 4–5–1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA: *5,000 feet.*

NOTE–
1 The security requirements of the military services preclude the transmission of actual altitude information on the air / ground or landline circuits. A classified document detailing the plan for ascertaining altitude codes for the day should be readily available to the controllers at their positions of operation.

2 Pilots will report their altitude, using the coded plan, and intended flight profile on initial contact with each ARTCC.

2. Para 6–5–4, MINIMA ALONG OTHER THAN ESTABLISHED AIRWAYS OR ROUTES: Protect the airspace 25 miles either side of the route centerline. For turns by supersonic aircraft, protect the airspace 75 miles on the overflown side and 25 miles on the other side. For turns by subsonic aircraft, protect the airspace 34 miles on the overflown side and 25 miles on the other side.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE, Para 4–3–3.

9–3–12. MILITARY SPECIAL USE FREQUENCIES

a. Assign special use frequency to:

NOTE–
Special use frequencies are assigned to ARTCC's in such a manner that adjacent ARTCC's will not have the same frequency. They are to be used within the ARTCC area jurisdiction from the established FL base of the high altitude sectors and above. Each high altitude sector should have the capability to use the special use frequency on a shared basis.

1. USAF Tactical Air Command (TAC), U.S. Navy, and Air National Guard (ANG) single-pilot jet aircraft formations operating at night or in instrument weather conditions. Formations of five or more USAF TAC aircraft deploying either to a Continental U.S. staging base or nonstop to an overseas location are authorized to use special use frequencies at any time. Normally these deployments will be conducted within an altitude reservation.

2. U–2 and B–57 (pressure suit flights) aircraft at all altitudes/FL's except where terminal operations require the assignment of other frequencies.

NOTE–
Aerial refueling operations may require that aircraft leave the special use frequency for communications with the tanker. This will occur when the receiver is approximately 200 miles from the ARCP. The tanker aircraft will remain on the ARTCC assigned frequency and will relay clearances to the receiver as required. An alternate means of communications between the tanker and receiver is HF radio.

3. All aircraft during supersonic flight.

NOTE–
Pilots are expected to request assignment of the special use frequency in the remarks section of the flight plan or before entering supersonic flight. B–57 aircraft engaged in pressure suit operations will use the static call sign KITE and flights will normally be conducted from Dover, Eielson, Ellington, Hickman, Howard, Kirtland, and McClellan Air Force Bases.

4. E–3A AWACS mission crews when operations are being conducted as an MRU in accordance with appropriate letters of agreement.

b. The special use frequency may be assigned as "backup" for the high-altitude sector when direct communications are essential because of a potential emergency control situation.

c. Do not assign the special use frequency to the aircraft in subpara a.1. above, when they will operate in airspace assigned for special military operations.

9–3–13. AVOIDANCE OF AREAS OF NUCLEAR RADIATION

a. Advise pilots whenever their proposed flight path will traverse a reported or forecasted area of hazardous radiation and reroute the aircraft when requested by the pilot.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7610.4, AVOIDANCE OF HAZARDOUS RADIATION AREAS, Para 4–44.

b. Inform pilots when an airfield of intended landing lies within a reported or forecasted area of hazardous radiation and request the pilot to advise his intentions.

9–3–14. SAMP

Provide special handling to USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions (atmosphere sampling for nuclear contamination). Honor in-flight clearance requests for altitude and route changes to the maximum extent possible. Other IFR aircraft may be recleared so that requests by SAMPLER aircraft are honored. Separation standards as outlined in this order shall be applied in all cases.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.
FAAO 7110.65, AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION, Para 2–4–20.
FAAO 7610.4, AVOIDANCE OF HAZARDOUS RADIATION AREAS, Para 4–44.

9–3–15. AWACS/NORAD SPECIAL FLIGHTS

Do not delay E–3 AWACS aircraft identified as "AWACS/NORAD Special" flights. The following control actions are acceptable while expediting these aircraft to the destination orbit.

a. En route altitude changes +/– 2,000 feet from the requested flight level.

b. Radar vectors or minor route changes that do not impede progress towards the destination orbit.

NOTE–
NORAD has a requirement to position E–3 AWACS aircraft at selected locations on a time-critical basis. To the extent possible these flights will utilize routes to the destination orbit that have been precoordinated with the impacted ATC facilities. To identify these flights, the words "AWACS / NORAD SPECIAL" will be included as the first item in the remarks section of the flight plan.

9–3–16. WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE FLIGHTS

TEAL and NOAA mission aircraft fly reconnaissance flights to gather meteorological data on winter storms, (NWSOP missions), hurricanes and tropical cyclones (NHOP missions). The routes and timing of these flights are determined by movement of the storm areas and not by traffic flows.

a. When a dropsonde release time is received from a TEAL or NOAA mission aircraft, workload and priorities permitting, controllers shall advise the mission aircraft of any traffic estimated to pass through the area of the drop at altitudes below that of the mission aircraft. This traffic advisory shall include:

1. Altitude.

2. Direction of flight.

3. ETA at the point closest to drop area (or at the fix/intersection where drop will occur).

NOTE–
A dropsonde is an 18–inch long cardboard cylinder about 3 inches in diameter, that weighs 3 and $^1/_2$ pounds, and has a parachute attached. When released from the aircraft it will fall at a rate of 1,000 feet per minute. Controllers should recognize that a dropsonde released at flight level 310 will be a factor for traffic at flight level 210 ten minutes later. It is the aircraft commander's responsibility to delay release of dropsondes if traffic is a factor. Aircraft commanders will delay release of dropsondes based solely upon traffic as issued by ATC.

b. When advised that an airborne TEAL or NOAA aircraft is requesting a clearance via CARCAH, issue the clearance in accordance with Chapter 4. IFR, Section 2. CLEARANCES.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CLEARANCE ITEMS, Para 4–2–1.
FAAO 7110.65, CLEARANCE PREFIX, Para 4–2–2.
FAAO 7110.65, DELIVERY INSTRUCTIONS, Para 4–2–3.

c. If a TEAL or NOAA mission aircraft must be contacted but is out of VHF, UHF, and HF radio range, advise the watch supervisor.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE FLIGHTS, Para 6–3–6.
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2–1–4.

9–3–17 EVASIVE ACTION MANEUVER

Approve a pilot request to conduct an evasive action maneuver only on the basis of a permissible traffic situation. Specify the following items, as necessary, when issuing approval:

NOTE–
The "evasive action" maneuver is performed by a bomber/fighter bomber aircraft at or above FL 250 along a 60 NM long segment of the flight plan route overlying a RBS or other site and includes:
1 Flying a zigzag pattern on both the left and right side of the flight plan route centerline. Altitude deviations are made in conjunction with the lateral maneuvering.
2 Lateral deviations from the route centerline will not normally exceed 12 miles. Altitude variations shall not exceed plus or minus 1,000 feet of the assigned flight level; i.e., confined within a 2,000 foot block.

a. Specific route segment on which the maneuver will take place.

b. Distance of maximum route deviation from the centerline in miles.

c. Altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO CONDUCT EVASIVE ACTION MANEUVER FROM (fix) TO (fix),

and

(number of miles) EITHER SIDE OF CENTERLINE,

and

MAINTAIN (altitude) THROUGH (altitude),

and

COMPLETE MANEUVER AT (fix) AT (altitude).

9–3–18. NONSTANDARD FORMATION/CELL OPERATIONS

Occasionally the military is required to operate in a nonstandard cell formation and controllers should be knowledgeable of the various tactics employed and the procedures used.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7610.4, CHAPTER 12, SECTION 13, FORMATION FLIGHT.

a. Formation leaders are responsible for obtaining ATC approval to conduct nonstandard formation / cell operations.

b. When nonstandard formation/ cell operations have been approved, controllers shall assign sufficient altitudes to allow intra-cell vertical spacing of 500 feet between each aircraft in the formation.

c. Control nonstandard formation / cell operations on the basis that MARSA is applicable between the participating aircraft until they establish approved separation which is acknowledged by ATC.

d. Apply standard separation criteria between the approved nonstandard formation/cell envelope and nonparticipating aircraft.

e. Clear aircraft operating in a nonstandard formation / cell to the breakup fix as the clearance limit. Forward data pertaining to route or altitude beyond the breakup point to the center concerned as a part of the routine flight plan information.

f. *EN ROUTE:* If the breakup occurs in your area, issue appropriate clearances to authorize transition from formation to individual routes or altitudes. If a breakup cannot be approved, issue an appropriate clearance for the flight to continue as a formation.

9-3-19. OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT

a. OPEN SKIES aircraft will be identified by the call sign "OSY" (OPEN SKIES) followed by two digits and a one-letter mission suffix.

EXAMPLE–
OSY12D
Mission suffixes:
**O = Observation Flights (Priority)*
**D = Demonstration Flights (Priority)*
**T = Transit Flights (Nonpriority).*

NOTE–
1 *Observation/Demonstration flights are conducted under rigid guidelines outlined in the Treaty of Open Skies that govern sensor usage, maximum flight distances, altitudes and priorities.*
2 *Transit flights are for the sole purpose of moving an OPEN SKIES aircraft from airport to airport in preparation for an actual OPEN SKIES "O" or "D" mission.*

b. Provide priority and special handling to expedite the movement of an OPEN SKIES observation or demonstration flight.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4(n).
FAAO 7210.3, OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT, Para 6-3-7.
TREATY ON OPEN SKIES, TREATY DOCUMENT, 102-37.

c. OPEN SKIES aircraft, while maintaining compliance with ATC procedures, shall have priority over activities in Special Use Airspace and shall be allowed to transit such airspace as filed after appropriate and timely coordination has been accomplished between the using agency and controlling agency.

1. The controlling agency shall advise the using/scheduling agency when the Open Skies aircraft is fifteen (15) minutes from the SUA boundary to allow the using agency time to cease activity.

2. If the using agency has not confirmed that all operations in the SUA have ceased, the Open Skies aircraft shall not be permitted access to the SUA.

NOTE–
The Department of Defense policy is to return all Special Use Airspace (SUA) to the appropriate controlling agency for the Open Skies flight. The flight cannot enter SUA until the using/scheduling agency has released the area and has confirmed that all operations in the airspace have ceased.

3. Return SUA to the using agency, if appropriate, within fifteen (15) minutes after the Open Skies aircraft clears the SUA.

d. Clear the aircraft according to the filed flight plan.

1. Do not ask the pilot to deviate from the planned action or route of flight except to preclude an emergency situation or other higher priority aircraft.

2. Do not impose air traffic control delays except to preclude emergency situations or other higher priority aircraft.

NOTE–
If for reasons of flight safety the route or altitude must be changed, return the aircraft to the filed flight plan route as soon as practical.

Section 4. SPECIAL USE AND ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE

9-4-1. APPLICATION

Apply the procedures in this section to aircraft operating in proximity to special use or ATC assigned airspace (ATCAA) unless the airspace is designated an Alert Area/Controlled Firing Area or one of the following conditions exist:

NOTE-
These procedures are not applicable to Alert Areas or Controlled Firing Areas.

REFERENCE-
P/CG TERM-SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.

a. The pilot informs you that permission has been obtained from the using agency to operate in the airspace.

b. The using agency informs you they have given permission for the aircraft to operate in the airspace.

NOTE-
Using agency permission may be relayed to the pilot.

c. The Restricted/Warning Area, MOA, or ATCAA has been released to the controlling agency.

d. The aircraft is on an approved ALTRV, unless the airspace area in question is an ATCAA.

NOTE-
Mission project officers are responsible for obtaining approval for ALTRV operations within Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Areas and MOA's.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, AVOIDANCE, Para 9-4-4.

e. Operations in special use airspace located in offshore/oceanic airspace will be conducted in accordance with the procedures in Chapter 8. OFFSHORE/OCEANIC PROCEDURES.

9-4-2. SEPARATION MINIMA

Separate nonparticipating aircraft from active special use airspace and ATCAA by the following minima:

a. Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Area, MOA, or ATCAA: assign an altitude consistent with para 4-5-1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA, para 4-5-2, FLIGHT DIRECTION, and para 4-5-3, EXCEPTIONS, which is at least 500 feet (above FL 290- 1,000 feet) above/below the upper/lower limit, unless subpara b. below applies.

b. Some Prohibited/Restricted Areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. Nonparticipating aircraft may be assigned any appropriate altitude above or below these Prohibited/Restricted Areas, provided the areas have been identified by facility management.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, PROHIBITED/RESTRICTED AREAS, Para 2-1-16.

c. Prohibited Area: clear aircraft on airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap the peripheral boundary.

d. Restricted/Warning Area/MOA/ATCAA: clear aircraft in accordance with subpara c. above, unless clearance of nonparticipating aircraft in/through the area is provided for in a letter of agreement.

e. Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Area, MOA, or ATCAA- *3 miles* (En route Stage A/DARC, FL 600 and above- *6 miles),* unless clearances of nonparticipating aircraft in/through/adjacent the area is provided for in a letter of agreement/facility directive.

f. Exception. Some Prohibited/Restricted Areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. The above minima for these Prohibited/Restricted Areas is not required if the areas have been identified by facility management. When separation minima is not required, vector aircraft to avoid the airspace.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, PROHIBITED/RESTRICTED AREAS, Para 2-1-16.

9-4-3. VFR-ON-TOP

If the aircraft's route, track, or altitude may cause it to enter an active Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Area, MOA, or ATCAA:

a. Inform the pilot to conduct flight "VFR-on-top" at least 500 feet (FL 290 and above- 1,000 feet) above the upper limit or below the lower limit of the airspace (subject to para 7-3-1, VFR-ON-TOP); or

PHRASEOLOGY-
MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP AT LEAST 500 FEET (FL 290 and above- 1,000 feet) ABOVE/BELOW (upper/lower limit of airspace) ACROSS (name or number of airspace) BETWEEN (fix) AND (fix);

and if the airspace is an ATCAA,

(name of ATCAA) IS ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE.

b. Clear the aircraft via a routing which provides approved separation from the airspace.

c. *Exception:* Some Prohibited/Restricted Areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. The addition of 500 (or 1,000) feet to the upper/lower limit of these Prohibited/Restricted Areas is not required if the areas have been identified by facility management.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, PROHIBITED/RESTRICTED AREAS, Para 2-1-16.

9-4-4. AVOIDANCE

When the provisions of para 9-4-1, APPLICATION, subparas a., b., c., or d. do not apply and a nonparticipating aircraft's route or track will cause it to enter special use airspace or ATCAA take the following actions:

NOTE–
Nonparticipating aircraft refers to those aircraft for which you have separation responsibility and which have not been authorized by the using agency to operate in/through the special use airspace or ATCAA in question.

a. For Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Areas– Clear nonparticipating aircraft via routing which will provide approved separation from the airspace, unless clearance of nonparticipating aircraft in/through the area is provided for in a memorandum/letter of agreement.

NOTE–
The FAA has no jurisdictional authority over the use of prohibited or nonjoint use restricted/warning airspace; therefore, clearance cannot be issued for flight therein.

b. For MOA's and ATCAA's–

1. Clear nonparticipating aircraft in/through a MOA/ATCAA provided prior coordination has been accomplished as covered in a letter of agreement between the controlling and using (scheduling) agencies and approved separation will be applied between MOA/ATCAA operations and nonparticipating aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7610.4, CHAPTER 9, SECTION 2. ATCAA AND MOA PROCEDURES.

2. If unable to clear nonparticipating aircraft in/through a MOA/ATCAA in accordance with subpara1. above, clear aircraft via routing which will provide approved separation from the MOA/ATCAA airspace.

Section 5. FUEL DUMPING

9-5-1. INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

When information is received that an aircraft plans to dump fuel, determine the route and altitude it will fly and the weather conditions in which the operation will be conducted.

9-5-2. ROUTING

Except when it is dumping fuel for emergency reasons, an aircraft in either VFR or IFR conditions may be requested to fly a different route.

9-5-3. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT

If an aircraft is dumping fuel in IFR conditions, assign an altitude at least 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle within 5 miles of the route or pattern being flown.

9-5-4. SEPARATION MINIMA

Separate known aircraft from the aircraft dumping fuel as follows:

a. IFR aircraft by one of the following:

1. *1,000 feet (2,000 feet* above FL 290) above it.

2. *2,000 feet* below it.

3. *5 miles* radar.

4. *5 miles* laterally.

b. VFR radar-identified aircraft by *5 miles* and in accordance with para 5-6-1, APPLICATION.

9-5-5. INFORMATION DISSEMINATION

a. If you are in contact with an aircraft when it starts dumping fuel, inform other controllers and facilities which might be concerned. Facilities concerned shall broadcast an advisory on appropriate radio frequencies at 3-minute intervals until the dumping stops.

PHRASEOLOGY-
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT.
FUEL DUMPING IN PROGRESS OVER (location) AT (altitude) BY (type aircraft) (flight direction).

b. Broadcast a terminating advisory when the fuel dumping operation is completed.

PHRASEOLOGY-
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT.
FUEL DUMPING OVER (location) TERMINATED.

Section 6. JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES

9-6-1. JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES

At locations where a drop area has been established for radar assistance in jettisoning of external stores, provide vectoring service upon request to:

NOTE-

[1] Where required, a mutually satisfactory drop area for the jettisoning of external stores will be determined by radar-equipped towers and centers in cooperation with the local USAF units, Air Division, or civil operators and civil aircraft companies concerned.

[2] FAA and Headquarters, USAF, have agreed to allow FAA facilities to vector USAF, Air Force Reserve, and Air National Guard aircraft for jettisoning of all external stores; i.e., tip tanks, JATO racks, special weapons, etc.. Any similar vectoring service given to civil operators and civil aircraft companies operating Air Force type aircraft requires written agreement between the FAA and the user to relieve the FAA of possible liability. The regional counsel's office acts for FAA in executing this agreement.

a. USAF, ANG, and Air Force Reserve aircraft at any time.

b. Civil operators and civil aircraft when a written agreement is in effect for your location.

Section 7. UNMANNED FREE BALLOONS

9-7-1. APPLICATION

Shapes of 11 Million Cubic Feet Balloon at Various Altitudes

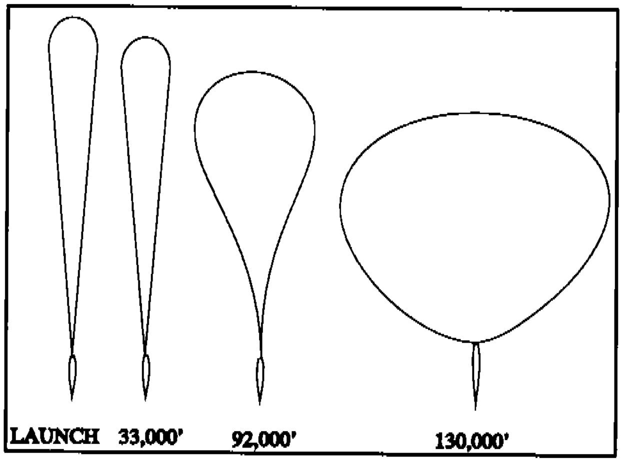


FIG 9-8-1

Apply the following procedures, as appropriate, when unmanned free balloons are within airspace for which you have control jurisdiction:

NOTE-
These procedures apply to unmanned free balloons that carry payloads as described in CFR Section 101.1(a)(4). Payloads may weigh several hundred pounds and the physical shape of the balloons change at various altitudes/flight levels. (See FIG 9-8-1.) Balloon and payload ascend at an average rate of 400 feet a minute. Over the descent area, the payload is normally released from the balloon and descends by parachute at a minimum rate of 1,000 feet a minute. The balloon is normally deflated automatically when the payload is released. The operator is required to advise ATC 1 hour in advance of descent in accordance with CFR Section 101.39.

a. Post the balloon flight on flight progress strips along the planned trajectory and revise routing as tracking/position reports require.

NOTE-
The prelaunch notice information should be posted on flight progress strips for planning and operational purposes.

b. Radar flight follow balloons to the extent that equipment capabilities permit. If radar flight following is not possible, tracking should be attempted by communication with the "chase plane," telephone contact with the operator, pilot, or ground observation reports.

NOTE-
Some operators have equipped their balloons with transponder beacons in addition to a radar reflection device or material required by CFR Section 101.35, but at cruise altitude, the balloon's communications equipment and transponder, if so equipped, are operated intermittently to conserve battery energy.

c. With pilot concurrence, provide separation between aircraft and balloons when you are satisfied that the balloon information is sufficiently reliable to provide the service. Do not attempt to separate aircraft from the balloon by using vertical separation unless you have accurate balloon altitude information.

d. Provide traffic advisories to all affected aircraft during initial contact specifying the balloon's known or estimated position, direction of movement, and altitude as "unknown" or "reported," as appropriate.

NOTE-
Unless ATC requires otherwise, operators of unmanned free balloons are required to monitor the course of the balloon and record its position at least every two hours. As required in CFR Section 101.39a, balloon position reports are not forwarded by the operator unless requested by ATC.

PHRASEOLOGY-
UNMANNED FREE BALLOON OVER (name of location),

or

ESTIMATED OVER (name of location), MOVING (direction of movement).

LAST REPORTED ALTITUDE AT (altitude as reported by the operator or determined from pilot report),

or

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

e. To transfer flight following responsibility of balloons between facilities or between controllers, forward the following information when available:

REFERENCE-
CFR SECTION 101.37, NOTICE REQUIREMENTS.
CFR SECTION 101.39, BALLOON POSITION REPORTS.

1. Identification and type; e.g., Flight 804 Balloon.

2. Last known position and altitude.

3. General direction of movement and speed.

4. ETA over facility boundary, sector boundary, or other point if believed to be reasonably accurate.

5. Other pertinent information.

6. If in radar contact, physically point out the target to the receiving controller.

7. The name and the telephone number of the location where tracking is being accomplished.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, DERELICT BALLOONS, Para 9–7–2.

9–7–2. DERELICT BALLOONS

Balloons become derelict when a moored balloon slips its mooring and becomes a hazard to air navigation or when an unmanned free balloon flight cannot be terminated as planned. When this occurs:

a. In the case of a moored balloon which has slipped its moorings, issue traffic advisories.

b. In the case of an unmanned free balloon, flight follow the balloon and, to the extent possible, provide aircraft under your control separation from the balloon.

c. Forward balloon position information received from pilot reports or derived from radar returns to your supervisor for further dissemination.

d. If radar contact with the balloon is lost, broadcast an advisory to all aircraft operating in the airspace affected by the derelict balloon at 10–minute intervals continuing until the derelict balloon is no longer a factor.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ADVISORY TO ALL AIRCRAFT.

DERELICT BALLOON REPORTED IN THE VICINITY OF (location),

or

ESTIMATED IN VICINITY OF (location),

or

REPORTED OVER (location),

or

RADAR REPORTED OVER (location).

LAST REPORTED ALTITUDE AT (altitude as reported by operator or pilot report),

or

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

e. Transfer flight following responsibility as outlined in para 9–7–1, APPLICATION, subpara e.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, DERELICT BALLOONS, Para 19–6–2.

Section 8. PARACHUTE JUMPING

9–8–1. COORDINATION

Coordinate any pertinent information prior to and at the end of each parachute jump or series of jumps which begins or ends in your area of jurisdiction with other affected ATC facilities/sectors.

NOTE–
CFR Part 105.25 prescribes the information required from each person requesting authorization or submitting notification for nonemergency parachute jumping activity.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, NONEMERGENCY PARACHUTE JUMP OPERATIONS, Para 19–5–1.
CFR PART 105, PARACHUTE JUMPING.

9–8–2. CLASS A, CLASS B, AND CLASS C AIRSPACE

a. Authorize parachute jumping only within airspace designated for the jumping activity.

b. Separate aircraft, other than those participating in the jump operation, from the airspace authorized for the jumping activity.

c. Impose, as necessary, any conditions and restrictions which in your judgment would promote the safety of the operation.

REFERENCE–
CFR PART 105.19, JUMPS IN OR INTO CLASS A, CLASS B, CLASS C, AND CLASS D AIRSPACE.

9–8–3. CLASS D AIRSPACE

TERMINAL

Handle requests to conduct jump operations in or into Class D airspace in which there is a functioning control tower operated by the United States as follows:

a. Authorize parachute jumping with respect to known or observed traffic.

b. Issue advisory information to the jump aircraft and to nonparticipating aircraft as necessary for the safe conduct of the jump operation.

9–8–4. OTHER CONTROL AIRSPACE

Handle notifications to conduct jump operations in other Class E airspace as follows:

a. Issue a traffic advisory to the jump aircraft before the jump. Include aircraft type, altitude, and direction of flight of all known traffic which will transit the airspace within which the jump will be conducted.

NOTE–
CFR Part 105.14 prescribes that, except when otherwise authorized by ATC, parachute jumping is not allowed in or into Class E airspace unless radio communications have been established between the aircraft and the nearest FAA ATC facility or FSS at least 5 minutes before the jumping activity is to begin for the purpose of receiving information in the aircraft about known air traffic in the vicinity of the jump aircraft.

b. Issue advisories to all known aircraft which will transit the airspace within which the jump operations will be conducted. Advisories shall consist of the location, time, duration, and altitude from which the jump will be made.

c. When time or numbers of aircraft make individual transmissions impractical, advisories to nonparticipating aircraft may be broadcast on appropriate control frequencies, or when available, the ATIS broadcast.

d. When requested by the pilot and to the extent possible, assist nonparticipating aircraft to avoid the airspace within which the jump will be conducted.

Chapter 10. EMERGENCIES

Section 1. GENERAL

10-1-1. EMERGENCY DETERMINATIONS

a. An emergency can be either a *Distress* or an *Urgency* condition as defined in the "Pilot / Controller Glossary."

b. A pilot who encounters a *Distress* condition should declare an emergency by beginning the initial communication with the word "Mayday," preferably repeated three times. For an *Urgency* condition, the word "Pan-Pan" should be used in the same manner.

c. If the words "Mayday" or "Pan-Pan" are not used and you are in doubt that a situation constitutes an emergency or potential emergency, handle it as though it were an emergency.

d. Because of the infinite variety of possible emergency situations, specific procedures cannot be prescribed. However, when you believe an emergency exists or is imminent, select and pursue a course of action which appears to be most appropriate under the circumstances and which most nearly conforms to the instructions in this manual.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES, Para 9-3-7.

10-1-2. OBTAINING INFORMATION

Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he is authorized by CFR Part 91 to determine a course of action.

10-1-3. PROVIDING ASSISTANCE

Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities and DF facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the Federal Communications Commission, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.

10-1-4. RESPONSIBILITY

a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.

b. When you receive information about an aircraft in distress, forward detailed data to the center in whose area the emergency exists.

NOTE-
[1] Centers serve as the central points for collecting information, for coordinating with SAR, and for conducting a communications search by distributing any necessary ALNOT's concerning:
a. Overdue or missing IFR aircraft.
b. Aircraft in an emergency situation occurring in their respective area.
c. Aircraft on a combination VFR/IFR or an airfiled IFR flight plan and 30 minutes have passed since the pilot requested IFR clearance and neither communication nor radar contact can be established with it. For SAR purposes, these aircraft are treated the same as IFR aircraft.
d. Overdue or missing aircraft which have been authorized to operate in accordance with special VFR clearances.

[2] Notifying the center about a VFR aircraft emergency allows provision of IFR separation if considered necessary.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, EMERGENCY SITUATIONS, Para 10-2-5,
FAAO 7110.65, INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO THE ARTCC, Para 10-3-2,
FAAO 7110.65, INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO THE RCC, Para 10-3-3.

c. If the aircraft involved is operated by a foreign air carrier, notify the center serving the departure or destination point, when either point is within the United States, for relay to the operator of the aircraft.

d. The ARTCC shall be responsible for receiving and relaying all pertinent ELT signal information to the appropriate authorities.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT) SIGNALS, Para 10-2-10.

e. When consideration is given to the need to escort an aircraft in distress, evaluate the close formation required by both aircraft. Special consideration should be given if the maneuver takes the aircraft through the clouds.

f. Before a determination is made to have an aircraft in distress be escorted by another aircraft, ask the pilots if they are familiar with and capable of formation flight.

1. Do not allow aircraft to join up in formation during emergency conditions, unless:

(a) The pilots involved are familiar with and capable of formation flight.

(b) They can communicate with one another, and have visual contact with each other.

2. If there is a need for aircraft that are not designated as search and rescue aircraft to get closer to one another than radar separation standards allow, the maneuver shall be accomplished, visually, by the aircraft involved.

10–1–5. COORDINATION

Coordinate efforts to the extent possible to assist any aircraft believed overdue, lost, or in emergency status.

10–1–6. AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY

TERMINAL

When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled. This also applies when routes within the airport proper are required for movement of local emergency equipment going to or from an emergency which occurs outside the airport proper.

NOTE–
Aircraft operated in proximity to accident or other emergency or disaster locations may cause hindrances to airborne and surface rescue or relief operations. Congestion, distraction or other effects, such as wake turbulence from nearby airplanes and helicopters, could prevent or delay proper execution of these operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, CHAPTER 19, SECTION 4. TEMPORARY FLIGHT RESTRICTIONS.
CFR PART 91.137, TEMPORARY FLIGHT RESTRICTIONS.

10–1–7. IN-FLIGHT EMERGENCIES INVOLVING MILITARY FIGHTER-TYPE AIRCRAFT

a. The design and complexity of military fighter-type aircraft places an extremely high workload on the pilot during an in-flight emergency. The pilot's full attention is required to maintain control of the aircraft. Therefore, radio frequency and transponder code changes should be avoided and radio transmissions held to a minimum, especially when the aircraft experiencing the emergency is at low altitude.

b. Pilots of military fighter–type aircraft, normally single engine, experiencing or anticipating loss of engine power or control may execute a flameout pattern in an emergency situation. Circumstances may dictate that the pilot, depending on the position and nature of the emergency, modify the pattern based on actual emergency recovery requirements.

c. Military airfields with an assigned flying mission may conduct practice emergency approaches. Participating units maintain specific procedures for conducting these operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, SIMULATED FLAMEOUT (SFO) APPROACHES/ PRACTICE PRECAUTIONARY APPROACHES, Para 3–10–13.

Section 2. EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

10–2–1. INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

a. Start assistance as soon as enough information has been obtained upon which to act. Information requirements will vary, depending on the existing situation. Minimum required information for in-flight emergencies is:

NOTE–
In the event of an ELT signal see para 10–2–10, EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT) SIGNALS.

1. Aircraft identification and type.

2. Nature of the emergency.

3. Pilot's desires.

b. After initiating action, obtain the following items or any other pertinent information from the pilot or aircraft operator, as necessary:

NOTE–
Normally, do not request this information from military fighter-type aircraft that are at low altitudes (i.e. on approach, immediately after departure, on a low level route, etc.). However, request the position of an aircraft that is not visually sighted or displayed on radar if the location is not given by the pilot.

1. Aircraft altitude.

2. Fuel remaining in time.

3. Pilot reported weather.

4. Pilot capability for IFR flight.

5. Time and place of last known position.

6. Heading since last known position.

7. Airspeed.

8. Navigation equipment capability.

9. NAVAID signals received.

10. Visible landmarks.

11. Aircraft color.

12. Number of people on board.

13. Point of departure and destination.

14. Emergency equipment on board.

10–2–2. FREQUENCY CHANGES

Although 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz are emergency frequencies, it might be best to keep the aircraft on the initial contact frequency. Change frequencies only when there is a valid reason.

10–2–3. AIRCRAFT ORIENTATION

Orientate an aircraft by the means most appropriate to the circumstances. Recognized methods include:

a. Radar.

b. DF.

c. NAVAID's.

d. Pilotage.

e. Sighting by other aircraft.

10–2–4. ALTITUDE CHANGE FOR IMPROVED RECEPTION

When you consider it necessary and if weather and circumstances permit, recommend that the aircraft maintain or increase altitude to improve communications, radar, or DF reception.

NOTE–
Aircraft with high-bypass turbofan engines (such as B747) encountering volcanic ash clouds have experienced total loss of power to all engines. Damage to engines due to volcanic ash ingestion increases as engine power is increased, therefore, climb while in the ash cloud is to be avoided where terrain permits.

REFERENCE–
AIM, FLIGHT OPERATIONS IN VOLCANIC ASH, Para 7–5–7.

10–2–5. EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

Consider that an aircraft emergency exists and inform the RCC or ARTCC and alert the appropriate DF facility when:

NOTE–
1 USAF facilities are only required to notify the ARTCC.

2 The requirement to alert DF facilities may be deleted if radar contact will be maintained throughout the duration of the emergency.

a. An emergency is declared by either:

1. The pilot.

2. Facility personnel.

3. Officials responsible for the operation of the aircraft.

b. There is unexpected loss of radar contact and radio communications with any IFR or VFR aircraft.

c. Reports indicate it has made a forced landing, is about to do so, or its operating efficiency is so impaired that a forced landing will be necessary.

d. Reports indicate the crew has abandoned the aircraft or is about to do so.

e. An emergency radar beacon response is received.

NOTE–
En route: During Stage A operation, ***Code 7700*** *causes EMRG to blink in field E of the data block.*

f. Intercept or escort aircraft services are required.

g. The need for ground rescue appears likely.

h. An Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) signal is heard or reported.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, PROVIDING ASSISTANCE, Para 10-1-3.
FAAO 7110.65, EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT) SIGNALS, Para 10-2-10.

10-2-6. HIJACKED AIRCRAFT

When you observe a Mode 3/A **Code 7500,** do the following:

NOTE–
1 Military facilities will notify the appropriate FAA ARTCC, or the host nation agency responsible for en route control, of any indication that an aircraft is being hijacked. They will also provide full cooperation with the civil agencies in the control of such aircraft.

2 En route: During narrowband radar operations, Code 7500 causes HIJK to blink in the data block.

NOTE–
Only nondiscrete ***CODE 7500*** *will be decoded as the hijack code.*

a. Acknowledge and confirm receipt of **Code 7500** by asking the pilot to verify it. If the aircraft is not being subjected to unlawful interference, the pilot should respond to the query by broadcasting in the clear that he is not being subjected to unlawful interference. If the reply is in the affirmative or if no reply is received, do not question the pilot further but be responsive to the aircraft requests.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) (name of facility) VERIFY SQUAWKING 7500.

NOTE–
Code 7500 is only assigned upon notification from the pilot that his aircraft is being subjected to unlawful interference. Therefore, pilots have been requested to refuse the assignment of ***Code 7500*** *in any other situation and to inform the controller accordingly.*

b. Notify supervisory personnel of the situation.

c. Flight follow aircraft and use normal handoff procedures without requiring transmissions or responses by aircraft unless communications have been established by the aircraft.

d. If aircraft are dispatched to escort the hijacked aircraft, provide all possible assistance to the escort aircraft to aid in placing them in a position behind the hijacked aircraft.

NOTE–
Escort procedures are contained in FAAO 7610.4, Chapter 7.

e. To the extent possible, afford the same control service to the aircraft operating VFR observed on the hijack code.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CODE MONITOR, Para 5-2-14.

10-2-7. VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY

a. If VFR aircraft requests assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, request the aircraft to contact the appropriate control facility. Inform that facility of the situation. If the aircraft is unable to communicate with the control facility, relay information and clearances.

b. The following shall be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of ***Code 7700:***

1. TERMINAL: Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. EN ROUTE: An appropriate keyboard entry shall be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10-2-8. RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY

a. If a VFR aircraft requests radar assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, ask the pilot if he is qualified for and capable of conducting IFR flight.

b. If the pilot states he is qualified for and capable of IFR flight, request him to file an IFR flight plan and then issue clearance to destination airport, as appropriate.

c. If the pilot states he is not qualified for or not capable of conducting IFR flight, or if he refuses to file an IFR flight plan, take whichever of the following actions is appropriate:

1. Inform the pilot of airports where VFR conditions are reported, provide other available pertinent weather information, and ask if he will elect to conduct VFR flight to such an airport.

2. If the action in subpara1. above is not feasible or the pilot declines to conduct VFR flight to another airport, provide radar assistance if the pilot:

(a) Declares an emergency.

(b) Refuses to declare an emergency and you have determined the exact nature of the radar services the pilot desires.

3. If the aircraft has already encountered IFR conditions, inform the pilot of the appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude. If the aircraft is below appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude and sufficiently accurate position information has been received or radar identification is established, furnish a heading or radial on which to climb to reach appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude.

d. The following shall be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of ***Code 7700:***

1. TERMINAL: Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. EN ROUTE: An appropriate keyboard entry shall be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10–2–9. RADAR ASSISTANCE TECHNIQUES

Use the following techniques to the extent possible when you provide radar assistance to a pilot not qualified to operate in IFR conditions:

a. Avoid radio frequency changes except when necessary to provide a clear communications channel.

b. Make turns while the aircraft is in VFR conditions so it will be in a position to fly a straight course while in IFR conditions.

c. Have pilot lower gear and slow aircraft to approach speed while in VFR conditions.

d. Avoid requiring a climb or descent while in a turn if in IFR conditions.

e. Avoid abrupt maneuvers.

f. Vector aircraft to VFR conditions.

g. The following shall be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of Code 7700:

1. TERMINAL: Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. EN ROUTE: An appropriate keyboard entry shall be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10–2–10. EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT) SIGNALS

When an ELT signal is heard or reported:

a. *EN ROUTE:* Notify the Rescue Coordination Center (RCC).

NOTE–
FAA Form 7210–8. ELT INCIDENT, contains standardized format for coordination with the RCC.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, FAA FORM 7210–8, ELT INCIDENT, Para 10–3–1.

b. *TERMINAL:* Notify the ARTCC which will coordinate with the Rescue Coordination Center (RCC).

NOTE–
1 *Operational ground testing of emergency locator transmitters (ELT's) has been authorized during the first 5 minutes of each hour. To avoid confusing the tests with an actual alarm, the testing is restricted to no more than three audio sweeps.*

2 *Controllers can expect pilots to report aircraft position and time the signal was first heard, aircraft position and time the signal was last heard, aircraft position at maximum signal strength, flight altitude, and frequency of the emergency signal (121.5/243.0). (See AIM, EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTERS, Para 6–2–5.)*

c. *EN ROUTE:* Request DF facilities obtain fixes or bearings on signal. Forward bearings or fixes obtained plus any other pertinent information to the RCC.

d. *TERMINAL:* Attempt to obtain fixes or bearings on the signal.

e. Solicit the assistance of other aircraft known to be operating in the signal area.

f. *TERMINAL:* Forward fixes or bearings and any other pertinent information to the ARTCC.

NOTE–
Fix information in relation to a VOR or VORTAC (radial-distance) facilitates accurate ELT plotting by RCC and should be provided when possible.

g. *EN ROUTE:* When the ELT signal strength indicates the signal may be emanating from somewhere on an airport or vicinity thereof, notify the on-site airway facilities personnel and the Regional Operations Center (ROC) for their actions. This action is in addition to the above.

h. *TERMINAL:* When the ELT signal strength indicates the signal may be emanating from somewhere on the airport or vicinity thereof, notify the on-site airway facilities personnel and the ARTCC for their action. This action is in addition to the above.

i. Air Traffic personnel shall not leave their required duty stations to locate an ELT signal source.

NOTE–
Portable handcarried receivers assigned to air traffic facilities (where no airway facilities personnel are available) may be loaned to responsible airport personnel or local authorities to assist in locating the ELT signal source.

j. *EN ROUTE:* Notify the RCC, the ROC, and alerted DF facilities if signal source is located/terminated.

k. *TERMINAL:* Notify the ARTCC if signal source is located/terminated.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RESPONSIBILITY, Para 10–1–4.
FAAO 7110.65, INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS, Para 10–2–1.

10–2–11. AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS

a. When information is received from any source that a bomb has been placed on, in, or near an aircraft for the purpose of damaging or destroying such aircraft, notify your supervisor or the facility air traffic manager. If the threat is general in nature, handle it as a "Suspicious Activity." When the threat is targeted against a specific aircraft and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions as appropriate:

NOTE–
1 Facility supervisors are expected to notify the appropriate offices, agencies, operators/air carriers according to applicable plans, directives, and FAAO 7210.3, HANDLING BOMB THREAT INCIDENTS, Para 2–1–8, or applicable military directives.

2 "Suspicious activity" is covered in FAAO 7210.3, SUSPICIOUS ACTIVITIES, Para 2–5–6. Military facilities would report a "general" threat through the chain of command or according to service directives.

1. Advise the pilot of the threat.

2. Inform the pilot that technical assistance can be obtained from an FAA aviation explosives expert.

NOTE–
An FAA aviation explosive expert is on call at all times and may be contacted by calling the FAA Operations Center, Washington, DC, Area Code 202–267–3333, ETN 521–0111, OR DSN 667–5592. Technical advice can be relayed to assist civil or military air crews in their search for a bomb and in determining what precautionary action to take if one is found.

3. Ask the pilot if he desires to climb or descend to an altitude that would equalize or reduce the outside air pressure/existing cabin air pressure differential. Issue or relay an appropriate clearance considering MEA, MOCA, MRA, and weather.

NOTE–
Equalizing existing cabin air pressure with outside air pressure is a key step which the pilot may wish to take to minimize the damage potential of a bomb.

4. Handle the aircraft as an emergency and/or provide the most expeditious handling possible with respect to the safety of other aircraft, ground facilities, and personnel.

NOTE–
Emergency handling is discretionary and should be based on the situation. With certain types of threats, plans may call for a low-key action or response.

5. Issue or relay clearances to a new destination if requested.

6. When a pilot requests technical assistance or if it is apparent that a pilot may need such assistance, do NOT suggest what actions the pilot should take concerning a bomb, but obtain the following information and notify your supervisor who will contact the FAA aviation explosives expert:

NOTE–
This information is needed by the FAA aviation explosives expert so that he can assess the situation and make immediate recommendations to the pilot. The aviation explosives expert may not be familiar with all military aircraft configurations but he can offer technical assistance which would be beneficial to the pilot.

(a) Type, series, and model of the aircraft.

(b) Precise location/description of the bomb device if known.

(c) Other details which may be pertinent.

NOTE–
The following details may be of significance if known, but it is not intended that the pilot should disturb a suspected bomb/bomb container to ascertain the information: the altitude or time set for the bomb to explode, type of detonating action (barometric, time, anti-handling, remote radio transmitter), power source (battery, electrical, mechanical), type of initiator (blasting cap, flash bulb, chemical), and the type of explosive/incendiary charge (dynamite, black powder, chemical).

b. When a bomb threat involves an aircraft on the ground and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions in addition to those discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate:

1. If the aircraft is at an airport where tower control or FSS advisory service is not available, or if the pilot ignores the threat at any airport, recommend that takeoff be delayed until the pilot or aircraft operator establishes that a bomb is not aboard in accordance with CFR Part 121. If the pilot insists on taking off and in your opinion the operation will not adversely affect other traffic, issue or relay an ATC clearance.

REFERENCE–
CFR PART 121.538, AIRPLANE SECURITY.

2. Advise the aircraft to remain as far away from other aircraft and facilities as possible, to clear the runway, if appropriate, and to taxi to an isolated or designated search area. When it is impractical or if the pilot takes an alternative action; e.g., parking and off-loading immediately, advise other aircraft to remain clear of the suspect aircraft by at least 100 yards if able.

NOTE–
Passenger deplaning may be of paramount importance and must be considered before the aircraft is parked or moved away from service areas. The decision to use ramp facilities rests with the pilot, aircraft operator/airport manager.

c. If you are unable to inform the suspect aircraft of a bomb threat or if you lose contact with the aircraft, advise your supervisor and relay pertinent details to other sectors or facilities as deemed necessary.

d. When a pilot reports the discovery of a bomb or suspected bomb on an aircraft which is airborne or on the ground, determine the pilot's intentions and comply with his requests in so far as possible. Take all of the actions discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate under the existing circumstances.

e. The handling of aircraft when a hijacker has or is suspected of having a bomb requires special considerations. Be responsive to the pilot's requests and notify supervisory personnel. Apply hijacking procedures and offer assistance to the pilot according to the preceding paragraphs, if needed.

10–2–12. EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K–9 TEAMS

Take the following actions should you receive an aircraft request for the location of the nearest explosive detection K–9 team.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, EXPLOSIVES DETECTION K-9 TEAMS, Para 2-1-10.

a. Obtain the aircraft identification and position and advise your supervisor of the pilot request.

b. When you receive the nearest location of the explosive detection K–9 team, relay the information to the pilot.

c. If the aircraft wishes to divert to the airport location provided, obtain an estimated arrival time from the pilot and advise your supervisor.

10–2–13. EMERGENCY AIRPORT RECOMMENDATION

a. Consider the following factors when recommending an emergency airport:

1. Remaining fuel in relation to airport distances.

2. Weather conditions.

NOTE–
Depending on the nature of the emergency, certain weather phenomena may deserve weighted consideration when recommending an airport. e.g. A pilot may elect to fly farther to land at an airport with VFR instead of IFR conditions.

3. Airport conditions.

4. NAVAID status.

5. Aircraft type.

6. Pilot's qualifications.

7. Vectoring or homing capability to the emergency airport.

b. Consideration to the provisions of subpara a. and para 10–2–14, GUIDANCE TO EMERGENCY AIRPORT, shall be used in conjunction with the information derived from any automated emergency airport information source.

10-2-14. GUIDANCE TO EMERGENCY AIRPORT

a. When necessary, use any of the following for guidance to the airport:

1. Radar.

2. DF.

3. Following another aircraft.

4. NAVAID's.

5. Pilotage by landmarks.

6. Compass headings.

b. Consideration to the provisions of para 10-2-13, EMERGENCY AIRPORT RECOMMENDATIONS, shall be used in conjunction with the information derived from any automated emergency airport information source.

10-2-15. EMERGENCY OBSTRUCTION VIDEO MAP (EOVM)

a. The EOVM is intended to facilitate advisory service to an aircraft in an emergency situation wherein an appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude cannot be maintained. It shall only be used and the service provided under the following conditions:

1. The pilot has declared an emergency, or

2. The controller has determined that an emergency condition exists or is imminent because of the pilot's inability to maintain an appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude.

NOTE-
Appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitudes may be defined as Minimum IFR Altitude (MIA), Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA), Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude (MOCA), or Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA).

b. When providing emergency vectoring service, the controller shall advise the pilot that any headings issued are emergency advisories intended only to direct the aircraft toward and over an area of lower terrain/obstacle elevation.

NOTE-
Altitudes and obstructions depicted on the EOVM are the actual altitudes and locations of the obstacle/terrain and contain no lateral or vertical buffers for obstruction clearance.

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7210.3, EMERGENCY OBSTRUCTION VIDEO MAP (EOVM), Para 3-9-4.

10-2-16. VOLCANIC ASH

a. If a volcanic ash cloud is known or forecast to be present:

1. Relay all information available to pilots to ensure that they are aware of the ash cloud's position and altitude(s).

2. Suggest appropriate reroutes to avoid the area of known or forecast ash clouds.

NOTE-
Volcanic ash clouds are not normally detected by airborne or air traffic radar systems.

b. If advised by an aircraft that it has entered a volcanic ash cloud and indicates that a distress situation exists:

1. Consider the aircraft to be in an emergency situation.

2. Do not initiate any climb clearances to turbine powered aircraft until the aircraft has exited the ash cloud.

3. Do not attempt to provide escape vectors without pilot concurrence.

NOTE-
1 *The recommended escape maneuver is to reverse course and begin a descent (if terrain permits). However, it is the pilot's responsibility to determine the safest escape route from the ash cloud.*

2 *Controllers should be aware of the possibility of complete loss of power to any turbine powered aircraft that encounters an ash cloud.*

REFERENCE-
FAAO 7110.65, ALTITUDE CHANGE FOR IMPROVED RECEPTION, Para 10-2-4.
AIM, FLIGHT OPERATIONS IN VOLCANIC ASH, Para 7-5-7.

Section 3. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT

10-3-1. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT

a. Consider an aircraft to be overdue, initiate the procedures stated in this section and issue an ALNOT when neither communications nor radar contact can be established and 30 minutes have passed since:

NOTE–
The procedures in this section also apply to an aircraft referred to as "missing" or "unreported."

1. Its ETA over a specified or compulsory reporting point or at a clearance limit in your area.

2. Its clearance void time.

b. If you have reason to believe that an aircraft is overdue prior to 30 minutes, take the appropriate action immediately.

c. The center in whose area the aircraft is first unreported or overdue will make these determinations and takes any subsequent action required.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE AND RELEASE TIMES, Para 4-3-4.

10-3-2. INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO ARTCC

TERMINAL

When an aircraft is considered to be in emergency status that may require SAR procedures, or an IFR aircraft is overdue, the terminal facility shall alert the ARTCC and forward the following information, as available:

a. Flight plan, including color of aircraft, if known.

b. Time of last transmission received, by whom, and frequency used.

c. Last position report and how determined.

d. Action taken by reporting facility and proposed action.

e. Number of persons on board.

f. Fuel status.

g. Facility working aircraft and frequency.

h. Last known position, estimated present position, and maximum range of flight of the aircraft based on remaining fuel and airspeed.

i. Position of other aircraft near aircraft's route of flight, when requested.

j. Whether or not an ELT signal has been heard or reported in the vicinity of the last known position.

k. Other pertinent information.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RESPONSIBILITY, Para 10-1-4,
FAAO 7110.65, EMERGENCY SITUATIONS, Para 10-2-5.

NOTE–
FSS's serve as the central points for collecting and disseminating information on an overdue or missing aircraft which is not on an IFR flight plan. Non-FSS ATC facilities that receive telephone calls or other inquiries regarding these flights shall refer these calls and inquiries to the appropriate AFSS/FSS.

10-3-3. INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO RCC

EN ROUTE

When an aircraft is considered to be in emergency status or an IFR aircraft is overdue, the ARTCC shall alert the RCC and forward the following information, as available:

a. Facility and person calling.

b. Flight plan, including color of aircraft, if known.

c. Time of last transmission received, by whom, and frequency used.

d. Last position report and how determined.

e. Action taken by reporting facility and proposed action.

f. Number of persons on board.

g. Fuel status.

h. Facility working aircraft and frequency.

i. Last known position, estimated present position, and maximum range of flight of the aircraft based on remaining fuel and airspeed.

j. Position of other aircraft near aircraft's route of flight, when requested.

k. Whether or not an ELT signal has been heard or reported in the vicinity of the last known position.

l. Other pertinent information.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RESPONSIBILITY, Para 10-1-4.
FAAO 7110.65, EMERGENCY SITUATIONS, Para 10-2-5.

NOTE–
FSS's serve as the central points for collecting and disseminating information on an overdue or missing aircraft which is not on an IFR flight plan. Non–FSS ATC facilities that receive telephone calls or other inquiries regarding these flights shall refer these calls and inquiries to the appropriate AFSS/FSS.

10–3–4. ALNOT

EN ROUTE

a. In addition to routing to your regional office operations center, issue an ALNOT to all centers and Area B circuits, generally 50 miles on either side of the route of flight from the last reported position to destination. Include the original or amended flight plan, as appropriate, and the last known position of the aircraft. At the recommendation of the RCC or at your discretion, the ALNOT may be issued to cover the maximum range of the aircraft.

NOTE–
1 An ALNOT must be issued before the RCC can begin search and rescue procedures.

2 Flight plan information on military aircraft is available at the FSS serving as a tie-in station for the departure or destination airport. FAA tie-in stations for airports in the continental United States are listed in the location identifiers handbook. In the Western-Pacific Region, tie-in stations are listed in regional publications entitled, "Flight Plan Routing and Airport Search Directory." For flights with overseas departure points, the information is available through the destination FSS or the appropriate IFSS.

b. Upon receipt of an INREQ or ALNOT, check the position records to determine whether the aircraft has contacted your facility. Notify the originator of the results or status of this check within one hour of the time the alert was received. Retain the alert in an active status, and immediately notify the originator of subsequent contact, until cancellation is received.

10–3–5. RESPONSIBILITY TRANSFER TO RCC

EN ROUTE

Transfer responsibility for further search to the RCC when one of the following occurs:

a. Thirty minutes have elapsed after the estimated aircraft fuel exhaustion time.

b. The aircraft has not been located within one hour after ALNOT issuance.

c. The ALNOT search has been completed with negative results.

10–3–6. AIRCRAFT POSITION PLOTS

Plot the flight path of the aircraft on a chart, including position reports, predicted positions, possible range of flight, and any other pertinent information. Solicit the assistance of other aircraft known to be operating near the aircraft in distress. Forward this information to the RCC or the ARTCC as appropriate.

10–3–7. ALNOT CANCELLATION

EN ROUTE

Cancel the ALNOT when the aircraft is located or the search is abandoned.

Section 4. CONTROL ACTIONS

10–4–1. TRAFFIC RESTRICTIONS

IFR traffic which could be affected by an overdue or unreported aircraft shall be restricted or suspended unless radar separation is used. The facility responsible shall restrict or suspend IFR traffic for a period of 30 minutes following the applicable time listed in subparas a. thru e.:

a. The time at which approach clearance was delivered to the pilot.

b. The EFC time delivered to the pilot.

c. The arrival time over the NAVAID serving the destination airport.

d. The current estimate, either the control facility's or the pilot's, whichever is later, at:

1. The appropriate en route NAVAID or fix, and

2. The NAVAID serving the destination airport.

e. The release time and, if issued, the clearance void time.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES, Para 4–3–4.

10–4–2. LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

a. *EN ROUTE:* At nontower or non–FSS locations, request the airport management to light all runway lights, approach lights, and all other required airport lighting systems for at least 30 minutes before the ETA of the unreported aircraft until the aircraft has been located or for 30 minutes after its fuel supply is estimated to be exhausted.

b. *TERMINAL:* Operate runway lights, approach lights, and all other required airport lighting systems for at least 30 minutes before the ETA of the unreported aircraft until the aircraft has been located or for 30 minutes after is fuel supply is estimated to be exhausted.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, EMERGENCY LIGHTING, Para 3–4–1.

10–4–3. TRAFFIC RESUMPTION

After the 30–minute traffic suspension period has expired, resume normal air traffic control if the operators or pilots of other aircraft concur. This concurrence must be maintained for a period of 30 minutes after the suspension period has expired.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65 DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES, Para 4–3–4.

10–4–4. COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE

Take the following actions, as appropriate, if two-way radio communications are lost with an aircraft:

NOTE–
[1] When an IFR aircraft experiences two-way radio communications failure, air traffic control is based on anticipated pilot actions. Pilot procedures and recommended practices are set forth in the AIM, CFR's, and pertinent military regulations.

[2] Should the pilot of an aircraft equipped with a coded radar beacon transponder experience a loss of two-way radio capability, the pilot can be expected to adjust the transponder to reply on Mode 3/A Code 7600.

a. In the event of lost communications with an aircraft under your control jurisdiction use all appropriate means available to reestablish communications with the aircraft. These may include, but not be limited to, emergency frequencies, NAVAID's that are equipped with voice capability, FSS, Aeronautical Radio Incorporated (ARINC), etc.

NOTE–
[1] ARINC is a commercial communications corporation which designs, constructs, operates, leases or otherwise engages in radio activities serving the aviation community. ARINC has the capability of relaying information to/from subscribing aircraft throughout the country.

NOTE–
[2] Aircraft communications addressing and reporting system (ACARS) or selective calling (SELCAL) may be utilized to reestablish radio communications with suitably equipped aircraft. ACARS can be accessed by contacting the San Francisco ARINC communications center, watch supervisor, at 415–312–7930/7931/7932. Provide ARINC the aircraft call sign, approximate location, and contact instructions. In order to utilize the SELCAL system, the SELCAL code for the subject aircraft must be known. If the SELCAL code is not contained in the remarks section of the flight plan, contact the pertinent air carrier dispatch office to determine the code. Then contact the San Francisco ARINC communications center, watch supervisor, at 415–312–7930/7931/7932. Provide ARINC the aircraft call sign, SELCAL code, approximate location, and contact instructions.

b. Broadcast clearances through any available means of communications including the voice feature of NAVAID's.

NOTE–

1 *Some UHF equipped aircraft have VHF navigation equipment and can receive 121.5 MHz.*

2 *"Any available means" includes the use of FSS and ARINC.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CLEARANCE PREFIX, Para 4–2–2.

c. Attempt to re-establish communication by having the aircraft use its transponder or make turns to acknowledge clearances and answer questions. Request any of the following in using the transponder:

1. Request the aircraft to reply Mode 3/A "IDENT."

2. Request the aircraft to reply on Code 7600 or if already on Code 7600, the appropriate stratum code.

3. Request the aircraft to change to "stand-by" for sufficient time for you to be sure that the lack of a target is the result of the requested action.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPLY NOT RECEIVED, (appropriate instructions).

(Action) OBSERVED, (additional instructions/information if necessary).

d. Broadcast a clearance for the aircraft to proceed to its filed alternate airport at the MEA if the aircraft operator concurs.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, RADIO FAILURE, Para 5–2–9.
FAAO 7110.65, IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES, Para 9–3–7.

Section 5. MISCELLANEOUS OPERATIONS

10-5-1. NAVY FLEET SUPPORT MISSIONS

When you receive information concerning an emergency to a U.S. Navy "Special Flight Number" aircraft, do the following:

a. Handle Navy Fleet Support Mission aircraft as follows:

1. *EN ROUTE:* Relay immediately, via collect telephone call, all pertinent information to Fleet Operations Control at Norfolk, Virginia, telephone 804-444-6602.

2. *TERMINAL:* Inform the nearest center of all the pertinent information.

b. Relay the words "Special Flight Number" followed by the number given as part of the routine IFR flight information.

c. Honor pilot requests for changes to route, altitude, and destination, whenever possible.

10-5-2. EXPLOSIVE CARGO

TERMINAL

When you receive information that an emergency landing will be made with explosive cargo aboard, inform the pilot of the safest or least congested airport areas. Relay the explosive cargo information to:

a. The emergency equipment crew.

b. The airport management.

c. The appropriate military agencies, when requested by the pilot.

Section 6. OCEANIC EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

10-6-1. APPLICATION

The procedures in this section are to be used solely in oceanic airspace.

10-6-2. PHASES OF EMERGENCY

Emergency phases are described as follows:

a. Uncertainty phase (INCERFA). When there is concern about the safety of an aircraft or its occupants, an INCERFA exists:

1. When communication from an aircraft has not been received within 30 minutes after the time a communication should have been received or after the time an unsuccessful attempt to establish communication with such aircraft was first made, whichever is earlier; or

2. When an aircraft fails to arrive within 30 minutes after the time of arrival last estimated by the pilot or by the ATC units, whichever is later.

b. Alert phase (ALERFA). When there is apprehension about the safety of an aircraft and its occupants, an ALERFA exists:

1. Following the uncertainty phase when subsequent attempts to establish communications with the aircraft, or inquiries to other relevant sources have failed to reveal any information about the aircraft; or

2. When information has been received which indicates that the operating efficiency of the aircraft has been impaired but not to the extent that a forced landing is likely; or

3. When communication from an aircraft has not been received within 60 minutes after the time a communication should have been received or after the time an unsuccessful attempt to establish communication with such aircraft was first made, whichever is earlier.

c. Distress phase (DETRESFA). When there is reasonable certainty that the aircraft and its occupants are threatened by grave and imminent danger, a DETRESFA exists:

1. Following the alert phase when further attempts to establish communications with the aircraft and more widespread inquiries are unsuccessful; or

2. When the fuel on board is considered to be exhausted or to be insufficient for the aircraft to reach safety; or

3. When information is received which indicates that the operating efficiency of the aircraft has been impaired to the extent that a forced landing is likely; or

4. When information is received or it is reasonably certain that the aircraft is about to make or has made a forced landing.

10-6-3. ALERTING SERVICE AND SPECIAL ASSISTANCE

a. Provide alerting service to:

1. All aircraft receiving ATC service;

2. All other aircraft which have filed a flight plan or which are otherwise known to the ATC unit; and

3. Any aircraft known or believed to be the subject of unlawful interference.

b. When alerting service is required, the responsibility for coordinating such service shall, unless otherwise established by letter of agreement, rest with the facility serving the FIR or CTA:

1. Within which the aircraft was flying at the time of last air-ground radio contact; or

2. Which the aircraft was about to enter if the last air-ground contact was established at or close to the boundary; or

3. Within which the point of destination is located if the aircraft:

(a) Was not equipped with suitable two-way radio communications equipment; or

(b) Was not under obligation to transmit position reports.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, CHAPTER 8, SECTION 2. COORDINATION.

c. The responsible Area Control Center (ACC) shall serve as the control point for:

1. Collecting all information relevant to a state of emergency of an aircraft;

2. Forwarding that information to the appropriate RCC; and

3. Coordinating with other facilities concerned.

d. The responsibility of the ACC to provide alerting service for military aircraft may be waived upon a written or recorded request from a military agency. In this case, the military request must state that the military agency assumes full responsibility for their aircraft while the aircraft are operating in the oceanic airspace.

e. Responsibility to provide alerting service for flight operations conducted under the "due regard" or "operational" prerogative of military aircraft is assumed by the military. When "due regard" operations are scheduled to end with aircraft filed under ICAO procedures, the ACC may, if specified in a letter of agreement, assume responsibility for alerting service at proposed time filed.

f. In the event of INCERFA, ALERFA, or DETRESFA, notify the following:

1. When practicable, the aircraft operator.

2. The appropriate RCC.

3. Aeronautical stations having en route communications guard responsibilities at the point of departure, along or adjacent to the route of flight, and at the destination.

4. ACC's having jurisdiction over the proposed route of flight from the last reported position to the destination airport.

g. INCERFA, ALERFA, and DETRESFA messages shall include the following information, if available, in the order listed:

1. INCERFA, ALERFA, or DETRESFA according to the phase of the emergency.

2. Agency and person originating the message.

3. Nature of the emergency.

4. Significant flight plan information.

5. The air traffic unit which made the last radio contact, the time, and the frequency used.

6. The aircraft's last position report, how it was received, and what facility received it.

7. Color and distinctive marks of aircraft.

8. Any action taken by reporting office.

9. Other pertinent remarks.

h. An INCERFA phase ends with the receipt of any information or position report on the aircraft. Cancel the INCERFA by a message addressed to the same stations as the INCERFA message.

1. An ALERFA ends when:

(a) Evidence exists that would ease apprehension about the safety of the aircraft and its occupants; or

(b) The concerned aircraft lands. Cancel the ALERFA message by a message addressed to the same stations as the ALERFA message.

2. A DETRESFA ends when the:

(a) Aircraft successfully lands; or

(b) RCC advises of a successful rescue; or

(c) RCC advises of termination of SAR activities. Cancel the DETRESFA by a message addressed to the same stations as the DETRESFA message.

i. A separate chronological record should be kept on each ALERFA and DETRESFA together with a chart which displays the projected route of the aircraft, position reports received, route of interceptor aircraft, and other pertinent information.

10–6–4. INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES

a. If an aircraft over water requests weather, sea conditions, ditching information, and/or assistance from surface vessels, or if the controller feels that this information may be necessary for aircraft safety, it should be requested from the RCC. Also, an appropriate AMVER SURPIC should be asked for if requested by the aircraft or deemed beneficial by control personnel.

NOTE–
The AMVER Center can deliver, in a matter of minutes, a SURPIC of vessels in the area of a SAR incident, including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

b. In all cases of aircraft ditching, the airspace required for SAR operations shall be determined by the RCC. The ACC shall block that airspace until the RCC advises the airspace is no longer required. An International Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) shall be issued describing the airspace affected.

c. The following actions will be taken in the event an aircraft must make an emergency descent:

1. In the event an aircraft requests an emergency descent:

(a) Issue a clearance to the requested altitude if approved separation can be provided.

(b) Advise the aircraft of the traffic, and request its intentions if traffic prevents an unrestricted descent.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATC ADVISES (aircraft identification) UNABLE TO APPROVE UNRESTRICTED DESCENT.
TRAFFIC (traffic information).
REQUEST INTENTIONS.

2. In the event an aircraft is making or will make an emergency descent without a clearance:

(a) Advise other aircraft of the emergency descent.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATC ADVISES (aircraft identification/all aircraft) BE ALERT FOR EMERGENCY DESCENT IN THE VICINITY OF (latitude/longitude) FROM (altitude/FL) TO (altitude/FL).

(b) Advise other aircraft when the emergency descent is complete.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft identification/all aircraft) EMERGENCY DESCENT AT (location) COMPLETED.

3. Upon notification that an aircraft is making an emergency descent through other traffic, take action immediately to safeguard all aircraft concerned.

4. When appropriate, broadcast by ATC communications, by radio navigation aids, and/or through aeronautical communication stations/services an emergency message to all aircraft in the vicinity of the descending aircraft. Include the following information:

(a) Location of emergency descent.

(b) Direction of flight.

(c) Type aircraft.

(d) Route if appropriate.

(e) Altitude vacated.

(f) Other information.

EXAMPLE–
"Attention all aircraft in the vicinity of Trout, a northbound D–C Ten on A–T–S Route Alfa Seven Hundred is making an emergency descent from flight level three three zero." (Repeat as you deem appropriate.)

5. If traffic conditions permit, provide traffic information to the affected aircraft.

6. Immediately after an emergency broadcast or traffic information has been made, issue appropriate clearances or instructions, as necessary, to all aircraft involved.

10–6–5. SERVICES TO RESCUE AIRCRAFT

a. Provide standard IFR separation between the SAR and the aircraft in distress, except when visual or radar contact has been established by the search and rescue aircraft and the pilots of both aircraft concur, IFR separation may be discontinued.

b. Clear the SAR aircraft to a fixed clearance limit rather than to the aircraft in distress, which is a moving fix. Issue route clearances that are consistent with that of the distressed aircraft.

c. Advise the rescue aircraft, as soon as practicable, of any factors that could adversely affect its mission; e.g., unfavorable weather conditions, anticipated problems, the possibility of not being able to approve an IFR descent through en route traffic, etc.

d. Advise the appropriate rescue agency of all pertinent information as it develops.

e. Forward immediately any information about the action being taken by the RCC, other organizations, or aircraft to the aircraft concerned.

f. Advise the aircraft operator of the current status of the SAR operation as soon as practicable.

g. Since prompt, correct, and complete information is the key to successful rescue operations, ensure that this information is swiftly and smoothly supplied to those organizations actively engaged in rescue operations.

Section 7. GROUND MISSILE EMERGENCIES

10–7–1. INFORMATION RELAY

When you receive information concerning a ground missile emergency, notify other concerned facilities and take action to have alerting advisories issued by:

a. *EN ROUTE:* Air carrier company radio stations for each VFR company aircraft which is or will be operating in the vicinity of the emergency.

b. *EN ROUTE:* FSS's adjacent to the emergency location.

c. *TERMINAL:* Relay all information concerning a ground missile emergency to the ARTCC within whose area the emergency exists and disseminate as a NOTAM.

REFERENCE–
P/CG TERM–NOTICE TO AIRMEN.

10–7–2. IFR AND SVFR MINIMA

Reroute IFR and SVFR aircraft as necessary to avoid the emergency location by one of the following minima, or by greater minima when suggested by the notifying official:

a. Lateral separation– *1 mile* between the emergency location and either of the following:

1. An aircraft under radar control and the emergency location which can be accurately determined by reference to the radar scope.

2. The airspace to be protected for the route being flown.

b. Vertical separation– *6,000 feet* above the surface over the emergency location.

10–7–3. VFR MINIMA

Advise all known VFR aircraft which are, or will be, operating in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency, to avoid the emergency location by 1 mile laterally or 6,000 feet vertically, or by a greater distance or altitude, when suggested by the notifying official.

10–7–4. SMOKE COLUMN AVOIDANCE

Advise all aircraft to avoid any observed smoke columns in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency.

10–7–5. EXTENDED NOTIFICATION

EN ROUTE

When reports indicate that an emergency will exist for an extended period of time, a Notice to Airmen may be issued.

Chapter 11. TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL

11-1-1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY

a. The traffic management system mission is to balance air traffic demand with system capacity to ensure the maximum efficient utilization of the NAS.

b. It is recognized that the ATCS is integral in the execution of the traffic management mission.

NOTE–
Complete details of traffic management initiatives and programs can be found in FAAO 7210.3.

11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

a. Operations Manager (OM) shall:

1. Ensure that an operational briefing is conducted at least once during the day and evening shifts. Participants shall include, at a minimum, the OM, Operational Supervisors (OS), Traffic Management Coordinator(s) (TMC), and other interested personnel, as designated by facility management. Discussions at the meeting should include meteorological conditions (present and forecasted), staffing, equipment status, runways in use, AAR and TM initiatives (present and anticipated).

2. Assume responsibility for TMC duties when not staffed.

3. Ensure that TM initiatives are carried out by Operational Supervisors (OS).

b. SATCS shall:

1. Keep the TMU and affected sectors apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.

2. Coordinate with the TMU and ATCS's to develop appropriate TM initiatives for sectors and airports in their area of responsibility.

3. Continuously review TM initiatives affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.

4. Ensure that TM initiatives are carried out by ATCS's.

c. ATCS's shall:

1. Ensure that TM initiatives and programs are enforced within their area of responsibility. TM initiatives and programs do not have priority over maintaining:

(a) Separation of aircraft.

(b) Procedural integrity of the sector.

2. Keep the SATCS and TMU apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.

3. Continuously review TM initiatives affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with SATCS and TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.

Chapter 12. CANADIAN AIRSPACE PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL CONTROL

12-1-1. APPLICATION

Where control responsibility within Canadian airspace has been formally delegated to the FAA by the Transport Canada Aviation Group, apply basic FAA procedures except for the Canadian procedures contained in this chapter.

NOTE–
In 1985, the United States and Canada established an agreement recognizing the inherent safety of the ATC procedures exercised by the other country. This agreement permits the use of ATC procedures of one country when that country is exercising ATC in the airspace over the territory of the other country insofar as they are not inconsistent with, or repugnant to, the laws and regulations or unique operational requirements of the country over whose territory such airspace is located. Accordingly, this chapter was revised to include only those Canadian procedures that must be used because of a Canadian regulatory or unique operational requirement.

12-1-2. AIRSPACE CLASSIFICATION

a. *Class A airspace:* Controlled airspace within which only IFR flights are permitted. Airspace designated from the base of all controlled high level airspace up to and including FL 600.

b. *Class B airspace:* Controlled airspace within which only IFR and Controlled VFR (CVFR) flights are permitted. Includes all controlled low level airspace above 12,500 feet ASL or at and above the minimum en route IFR altitude, (whichever is higher) up to but not including 18,000 feet ASL. ATC procedures pertinent to IFR flights shall be applied to CVFR aircraft.

NOTE–
The CVFR pilot is responsible to maintain VFR flight and visual reference to the ground at all times.

c. *Class C airspace:* Controlled airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted, but VFR flights require a clearance from ATC to enter.

d. *Class D airspace:* Controlled airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted, but VFR flights do not require a clearance from ATC to enter, however, they must establish two–way communications with the appropriate ATC agency prior to entering the airspace.

e. *Class E airspace:* Airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted , but for VFR flight there are no special requirements.

f. *Class F airspace:* Airspace of defined dimensions within which activities must be confined because of their nature, or within which limitations are imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities, or both. Special use airspace may be classified as Class F advisory or Class F restricted.

g. *Class G airspace:* Uncontrolled airspace within which ATC has neither the authority or responsibility for exercising control over air traffic.

12-1-3. ONE THOUSAND-ON-TOP

Clear an aircraft to maintain "at least 1,000 feet-on-top" in lieu of "VFR-on-top," provided:

a. The pilot requests it.

NOTE–
It is the pilot's responsibility to ensure that the requested operation can be conducted at least 1,000 feet above all cloud, haze, smoke, or other formation, with a flight visibility of 3 miles or more. A pilot's request can be considered as confirmation that conditions are adequate.

b. The pilot will not operate within Class A or Class B airspace.

12-1-4. SEPARATION

Apply a lateral, longitudinal, or vertical separation minimum between aircraft operating in accordance with an IFR or CVFR clearance, regardless of the weather conditions.

12-1-5. DEPARTURE CLEARANCE/ COMMUNICATION FAILURE

a. Base controller action regarding radio failures in Canadian airspace on the requirement for pilots to comply with Canadian Airspace Regulations, which are similar to CFR Part 91.185; however, the following major difference shall be considered when planning control actions. Except when issued alternate radio failure instructions by ATC, pilots will adhere to the following: if flying a turbine-powered (turboprop or turbojet) aircraft and cleared on departure to a point other than the destination, proceed to the destination airport in accordance with the flight plan, maintaining the last assigned altitude or flight level or the minimum en route IFR altitude, whichever is higher, until 10 minutes beyond the point specified in the clearance (clearance limit), and then proceed at altitude(s) or flight level(s) filed in the flight plan. When the aircraft will enter United States' airspace within 10 minutes after passing the clearance limit, the climb to the flight planned border crossing altitude is to be commenced at the estimated time of crossing the Canada / United States boundary.

12-1-6. PARACHUTE JUMPING

Do not authorize parachute jumping without prior permission from the appropriate Canadian authority.

NOTE-
Canadian regulations require written authority from the Ministry of Transport.

12-1-7. SPECIAL VFR (SVFR)

NOTE-
Pilots do not have to be IFR qualified to fly SVFR at night, nor does the aircraft have to be equipped for IFR flight.

a. Within a control zone where there is an airport controller on duty, approve or refuse a pilot's request for SVFR on the basis of current or anticipated IFR traffic only. If approved, specify the period of time during which SVFR flight is permitted.

b. Within a control zone where there is no airport controller on duty, authorize or refuse an aircraft's request for SVFR on the basis of:

1. Current or anticipated IFR traffic, and

2. Official ceiling and visibility reports.

c. Canadian SVFR weather minimums for:

1. Aircraft other than helicopters- flight visibility (ground visibility when reported) 1 mile.

2. Helicopters- Flight visibility (ground visibility when available) 1/2 mile.

Appendix A.
AIRCRAFT INFORMATION

TYPE ENGINE ABBREVIATIONS

P	piston
T	jet/turboprop
J	jet

CLIMB AND DESCENT RATES

Climb and descent rates based on average en route climb/descent profiles at median weight between maximum gross takeoff and landing weights.

SRS

SRS means "same runway separation;" categorization criteria is specified in para 3-9-6, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION.

MANUFACTURERS

Listed under the primary manufacturer are other aircraft manufacturers who also make versions of some of the aircraft in that group.

AIRCRAFT WEIGHT CLASSES

a. Heavy. Aircraft capable of takeoff weights of more than 255,000 pounds whether or not they are operating at this weight during a particular phase of flight.

b. Large. Aircraft of more than 41,000 pounds, maximum certificated takeoff weight, up to 255,000 pounds.

c. Small. Aircraft of 41,000 pounds or less maximum certificated takeoff weight.

NOTE–
** Denotes single-piloted military turbojet aircraft or aircraft to receive the same procedural handling as a single-piloted military turbojet aircraft.*

**** Denotes amphibian aircraft.*

+ Denotes aircraft weighing between 12,500 lbs. and 41,000 lbs.

Fixed-Wing Aircraft

AERONCA (USA– see Bellanca)

AERO SPACELINES (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Super Guppy	AP25	SGUP	4T/L	1,500	1,500	III
Super Turbine Guppy	AP45	SGUP	4T/L	1,500	1,500	III

AEROSPATIALE (France)

(Also MORANE-SAULNIER, PZL-OKECIE, SOCATA, SUD, SUD-EST, TBM)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Caravelle SE 210	S210	S210	2J/L	2,300	2,000	III
Corvette SN601	S601	S601	2J/S+	2,500	2,000	III
Rallye Club MS880/881/ 883/887/100S/100ST	S880	RALL	1P/S	500	500	I
Rallye Commodore Series MS892/150T/150ST/ 150SV/150SVS	S892	RALL	1P/S	630	630	I
Rallye Minerva Series MS894	S894	RALL	1P/S	750	750	I
Super Rallye MS885/886	S885	RALL	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Tampico TB-9	TB-09	TAMP	1P/S	600	700	1
Tabago TB10C/200	TB-10	TOBA	1P/S	700	700	1
Trinidad TB-20	TB-20	TRIN	1P/S	900	700	1
Trinidad TB-21	TB-21	TRIN	1P/S	850	700	1
TBM TB-700	T700	TBM7	1T/S	1700	1500	1

AEROSPATIALE/AERITALIA (France/Italy)

(Also ATR, ALENIA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
ATR 42-200/300	AT42	ATR	2T/L	2,000	2,000	III
ATR 72	AT72	ATR	2T/L	2,000	2,000	III

AEROSPATIALE/BRITISH AEROSPACE (France/UK)

(Also BAC, SUD, SUD-BAC)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Concorde	CONC	CONC	4J/H	5,000	5,000	III

AIRBUS INDUSTRIES (International)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
A300	EA30	A300	2J/H	3,500	3,500	III
A310	EA31	A310	2J/H	3,500	3,500	III
A319	–	A319	2J/L	3,500	3,500	III
A320	EA32	A320	2J/L	3,500	3,500	III
A321	–	A321	2J/L	3,500	3,500	III
A330	EA33	A330	2J/H	–	–	III
A340	EA34	A340	4J/H	–	–	III

AIR TRACTOR , INC. (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
AIR TRACTOR 401/301	AT41	AT3P	1P/S	1,000	–	I

ALON, INC. (USA)

(Also AIR PRODUCTS, ERCO, FORNAIRE, FORNEY, MOONEY)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Aircoupe A2/F–1	F02	ERCO	1P/S	630	630	I

ASTRA JET (USA– see Israel Aircraft Industries & Astra Jet)

AVIONS MUDRY ET CIE (France) (Now called MUDRY)

(Also CAARP)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Cap 10	CP10	CP10	1P/S+	1,500	2,000	I
Cap 20	CP20	CP20	1P/L	1,500	2,000	I

BEAGLE AIRCRAFT (UK)

(Also BEAGLE–AUSTER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
B.121 Pup Series	BT10	PUP	1P/S	575	750	I
B.206 Basset Series	BT6S	BASS	2P/S	1,200	1,300	II

BEECH AIRCRAFT COMPANY (USA)

(Also CCF, COLEMILL, DINFIA, EXCALIBUR, FUJI, HAMILTON, JETCRAFTERS, RAYTHEON, SWEARINGEN, VOLPAR)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Airliner 99	BE99	BE99	2T/S	1,750	1,750	II
Baron 55/Chochise	BE55/ T42	BE55	2P/S	1,700	1,700	II
Baron 58, Foxstar	BE58	BE58	2P/S	1,730	1,730	II
Beech F90 King Air	BE9F	BE9T	2T/S	2,600	2,600	II
Beech 1900/C–12J	BE02	B190	2T/S+	2,400	2,400	III
Beechjet 400/T–1 Jayhawk/ MU300 Diamond	BE40/BJ40/ T1	MU30	2J/S+	3,300	2,200	III
Bonanza 33, Debonair (E–24)	BE33	BE33	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Bonanza 35	BE35	BE35	1P/S	1,200	1,200	I
Bonanza 36	BE36	BE36	1P/S	1,100	1,100	I
Duke 60	BE60	BE60	2P/S	1,600	1,600	II
Duchess 76	BE76	BE76	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
King Air 90, A90 to E90 (T–44, V–C6), Taurus 90	BE90	BE9L	2T/S	2,000	2,000	II
King Air 100/A (U–21F Ute)	BE10/ U21F	BE10	2T/S	2,250	2,250	II
King Air 100B	BE1B	BE10	2T/S	2,250	2,250	II
Mentor T34A/B, E–17	BE45/ T34	T34P	1P/S	1,150	1,150	I
Queen Air 65 (U–8F Seminole)	BE65	BE65	2P/S	1,375	1,375	II
Queen Air 80	BE80	BE80	2P/S	1,275	1,275	II
Seminole	U8	BE65	2P/S	1,200	1,200	II
Sierra 24, Musketeer Super	BE24	BE24	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Skipper 77	BE77	BE77	1P/S	750	750	I
Sport 19, Musketeer Sport	BE19	BE19	1P/S	680	680	I
Stagger Wing 17 (UC–43 Traveler)	BE17	BE17	1P/S	1,375	1,375	I
Starship 2000	BEST	STAR	2T/S+	2,650	2,650	III
Sundowner 23, Musketeer 23	BE23	BE23	1P/S	740	800	I
Super H18	BE8S	BE18	2P/S	1,400	1,400	II
Super King Air 200/1300, Huron	BE20/ C12	BE20	2T/S	2,450	2,500	II
Super King Air 200HDC	BE2H	BE20	2T/S	2,450	2,500	II
Super King Air 300	BE30	BE30	2T/S+	3,000	3,000	III
Super King Air 300LW	BE3L	BE30	2T/S	3,000	3,000	II
Super King Air 350	BE3B	B350	2T/S+	3,000	3,000	III
Travelair 95	BE95	BE95	2P/S	1,250	1,250	II
Turbo Mentor T–34C	–	T34T	1T/S	–	–	I
Twin Beech 18	BE18/ C45	BE18	2P/S	1,400	1,000	II
Twin Bonanza 50	BE50	BE50	2P/S	1,600	1,600	II
Ute	U21	U21	2T/S	2,000	2,000	II

BELLANCA AIRCRAFT (USA)

(Also AERONCA, CHAMPION, DOWNER, HINDUSTAN, NORTHERN)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Aeronca Champion	AR58	AR7	1P/S	500	500	I
Aeronca Chief/Super Chief, Pushpak	AR11	AR11	1P/S	500	500	I
Aeronca Sedan	AR15	AR15	1P/S	500	500	I
Challenger	CH8	AR7	1P/S	1,150	1,000	I
Champion	CH5	AR7	1P/S	750	750	I
Champion Citabria	CH10	AR7	1P/S	1,120	1,120	I
Champion Citabria 7ECA	CH9	AR7	1P/S	725	725	I
Champion Lancer 402	CH40	CH40	2P/S	650	1,000	II
Cruisair, Cruismaster 14–19	BL14	B14A	1P/S	1,030	1,030	I
Decathlon, Super Decathlon	BL30	BL8	1P/S	900	1,000	I
Scout 8	BL28	BL8	1P/S	1,080	1,080	I
Super Viking	BL26	BL17	1P/S	1,210	1,210	I
Turbo Viking	BL31	BL17	1P/S	1,000	1,200	I

BOEING COMPANY (USA)

(Also GRUMMAN, NORTHROP-GRUMMAN, IAI)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
707–100/200 Series, VC–137	B707/ V137	B707	4J/H	3,500	3,500	III
707–300/400 Series, E–8 J–Stars	B07H	B707	4J/H	3,500	3,500	III
720	B720	B720	4J/L	3,000	3,000	III
727 (all series)	B727/ C22	B727	3J/L	4,500	4,500	III
737/200 Series	B737/ T43	B73A	2J/L	3,000	3,000	III
737–300/500 Series	B73S	B73B	2J/L	5,500	3,500	III
737–400 Series	B73F	B73B	2J/L	6,500	3,500	III
737–600/700/800	–	B73C	2J/L	4,000	4,000	III
747–100/200/300 Series	B747/ E4/VC25	B74A	4J/H	3,000	3,000	III
747–400 Series	B74F	B74B	4J/H	3,000	3,000	III
747SP/SUD	B74S	B74S	4J/H	3,000	3,000	III
757 (all series)	B757	B757	2J/L	2,500	2,500	III
767 (all series)	B767	B767	2J/H	3,500	3,500	III
777–200	B777	B777	2J/H	2,500	2,500	III
E3 Sentry	E3A	E3	4J/H	3,500	4,000	III
EC–137 (AWACS)	E137	C135	4J/H	3,500	3,500	III
Stearman	B75	ST75	1P/S	840	840	I
Stratofortress	B52	B52	8J/H	3,000	3,000	III
Stratofreighter	KC97	C97	4P/L	2,500	3,000	III
Stratolifter B717	C135	C135	4J/H	2,000	2,000	III
Stratotanker KC–135	KC35	C135	4J/H	2,500	3,000	III
Stratotanker KC–135E	KE35	C135	4J/L	5,000	3,000	III
Stratotanker KC–135R	KR35	C135	4J/H	5,000	3,000	III

BRITISH AEROSPACE (BAe) (UK)

(Also AIL, AVRO, BAC, BUCURESTI, DE HAVILLAND, HANDLEY-PAGE, HAWKER-SIDDELEY, JETSTREAM, KANPUR, MCDONNELL-DOUGLAS, RAYTHEON, SCOTTISH-AVIATION, VOLPAR)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Advance Turboprop (ATP), Jetstream 61	BATP	ATP	2T/L	3,000	3,000	III
BAC One–Eleven	BA11	BA11	2J/L	2,400	2,400	III
BAe 146, RJ, Quiet Trader, Avroliner	BA46	BA46	4J/L	3,500	3,500	III
BAe HS 125 Series 1/2/3/400/600	HS25	H25A	2J/S+	2,500	2,000	III
BAe HS 125 Series 700/800	BA10	H25B	2J/L	3,000	4,000	III
BAe HS 125 Series 1000	BA10	H25C	2J/L	3,000	4,000	III
BAe Harrier	AV8*	HAR*	1J/L	5,000	8,000	III
BAe HS 748 (Andover, C–91)	HS74	A748	2T/L	2,500	2,000	III
BAe Jetstream 31	BA31	JSTA	2T/S+	2,300	2,300	III
BAe 4100, Jetstream 41	BA41	JSTB	2T/S+	2,200	–	III

BRITTEN NORMAN LTD. (a subsidiary of Pilatus Aircraft LTD.) (UK)

(Also AVIONS FAIREY, BAC, BUCURESTI, DE HAVILLAND, HAWKER–SIDDELEY, IRMA, PADC, ROMAERO, VICKERS)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
BN–2A/B Islander, Defender	BN2	BN2P	2P/S	1,250	1,250	II
BN–2T Turbine Islander, Turbine Defender	BN2T	BN2T	2T/S	1,500	1,500	II
BN–2A Mark III Trislander	BN3	TRIS	3P/S	1,200	1,000	III
Trident	HS21	TRID	3J/L	3,000	3,000	III
VC–10	VC10	VC10	4J/H	1,900	2,000	III
Viscount	VC7	VISC	4T/L	1,200	1,500	III

BUSHMASTER AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)
(Now AIRCRAFT HYDRO–FORMING)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Bushmaster 2000	BU20	BU20	3P/S+	2,000	2,000	III

CAMAIR AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)

(Also RILEY, TEMCO)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Twin Navion 480, 55, D–16	CM48	TNAV	2P/S	1,800	2,000	II

CANADAIR BOMBARDIER LTD. (Canada)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
CL600/610 Challenger	CL60	CL60	2J/L	2,250	3,000	III
REGIONAL JET	CL65	CARJ	2J/L	–	–	III

CESSNA AIRCRAFT COMPANY (USA)

(Also AVIONES–COLOMBIA, COLEMILL, DINFIA, ECTOR, FMA, FUJI, REIMS, RILEY, SUMMIT, WREN)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
AGWagon/AGTruck/AGHusky 188	C188	C188	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Bird Dog 305/321	C305/ O1	O1	1P/S	1,150	1,150	I
Caravan 1– 208,(Super) Cargomaster, Grand Caravan (U27)	C208	C208	1T/S	1,400	1,400	I
Caravan 2 – F406	C406	F406	2T/S	1,850	–	II
Cardinal 177	C177	C177	1P/S	850	1,000	I
Centurion 210, Turbo Centurion	C210	C210	1P/S	900	1,000	I
Cessna 120	C120	C120	1P/S	640	640	I
Cessna 140	C14	C140	1P/S	640	640	I

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Cessna 150	C150	C150	1P/S	670	1,000	I
Cessna 152	C152	C152	1P/S	750	1,000	I
Cessna 170	C170	C170	1P/S	690	1,000	I
Cessna 190	C190	C190	1P/S	1,090	1,090	I
Cessna 195	C195	C195	1P/S	1,200	1,200	I
Cessna 310	C310/ U3	C310	2P/S	2,800	2,000	II
Cessna 318	T37*	T37*	2J/S	3,000	3,000	III
Cessna 335	C335	C335	2P/S	2,200	2,000	II
Cessna 340	C340	C340	2P/S	2,900	2,000	II
Cessna 401	C401	C402	2P/S	2,700	2,000	II
Cessna 402	C402	C402	2P/S	2,500	2,000	II
Cessna 411	C411	C411	2P/S	2,800	2,000	II
Chancellor 414, Rocket Power	C414	C414	2P/S	2,300	2,000	II
Citation 1	C500	C500	2J/S	3,100	3,500	III
Citation 1–SP	C501	C500	2J/S	4,300	3,000	III
Citation 2/–S2	C550/ T47	C550	2J/S+	5,300	3,000	III
Citation 2–SP	C551	C550	2J/S	5,300	3,000	III
Citation 3/6/7	C650	C650	2J/S+	3,900	4,000	III
Citation 5	C560	C560	2J/S+	6,000	3,500	III
Citationjet C525	C525	C525	2J/S	3,00	–	III
Conquest/Conquest 2 – 441	C441	C441	2T/S	4,200	3,000	II
Corsair/Conquest I–425	C425	C425	2T/S	3,500	2,500	II
Crusader 303	C303	C303	2P/S	3,500	3,000	II
Cutlass RG, 172RG	C172	C72R	1P/S	–	–	I
Dragonfly 318E	A37*	A37*	2J/S	3,370	3,000	III
Golden Eagle 421	C421	C421	2P/S	3,200	2,000	II
Pressurized Skymaster T337G, P337	C337	P337	2P/S	1,250	1,500	II
Skyhawk 172/Cutlass/Mescalero	C172/ T41	C172	1P/S	650	1,000	I
Skyknight 320	C320	C320	2P/S	2,900	2,000	II
Skylane 182	C182	C182	1P/S	890	1,000	I
Skylane RG, Turbo Skylane RG, R182, TR182	C182	C82R	1P/S	890	1,000	I
Skylark 175	C175	C175	1P/S	850	1,000	I
Skymaster 336	C336	C336	2P/S	1,340	1,340	II
Skywagon 180 (U–17C)	C180	C180	1P/S	1,130	1,130	I
Skywagon 185 (U–17A/B)	C185	C185	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Stationair 6, Turbo Stationair 6	C206	C206	1P/S	975	1,000	I
Stationair/Turbo Stationair 7/8	C207	C207	1P/S	810	1,000	I
Super Skymaster 337	C337/ O2	C337	2P/S	1,250	1,500	II
Super Skywagon/Super Skylane	C205	C205	1P/S	965	1,000	I
Titan 404	C404	C404	2P/S	2,600	2,000	II

CHAMPION (USA–see Bellanca Aircraft)

CONSTRUCCIONES AERONAUTICAS (CASA) (Spain)

(Also NURTANIO, NUSANTARA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
C–212 Aviocar	CA21/CS12	C212	2T/S+	900	900	III

CHRISTEN INDUSTRIES, INC. (USA)

(Also AVIAT)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
A-1 Huskey	CIA1	HUSK	1P/S	1,500	1,500	I

COLEMILL (USA) (See BEECH, PIPER, CESSNA)

CURTIS-WRIGHT CORP. (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Commando C-46 (CW-20)	CW20/ C46	C46	2P/L	600	700	III

DASSAULT-BREGUET (France)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Falcon 10, Mystere 10	DA01	FA10	2J/S+	2,300	1,600	III
Falcon 20/C thru F, Fan Jet Falcon (FJF), Mystere 20 (T-11)	DA02	FA20	2J/S+	2,000	2,400	III
Falcon 50, Mystere 50 (T-16)	DA05	FA50	3J/S+	1,800	1,600	III
Mystere Falcon 200, Falcon 20G/GF	DA20/ HU25	FA20	2J/S+	1,900	2,000	III
Falcon 900, Mystere 900 (T-18)	DA90	F900	3J/L	2,000	1,700	III

DEHAVILLAND (Canada/UK)

(Also AIRTECH, HAWKER-SIDDELEY, OGMA, RILEY, SCENIC)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Beaver DHC-2	DH2/ U6	DHC2	1P/S	840	1,000	I
Buffalo DHC-5D/E	DH5/ C8	DHC5	2T/L	2,000	1,500	III
Caribou DHC-4	DH4/ C7	DHC4	2P/S+	1,350	1,000	III
Chipmunk DHC-1	DH1	DHC1	1P/S	900	1,000	I
Comet 2, DH-106	DH62	COMT	4J/L	2,950	2,000	III
Comet 4, DH-106	DH64	COMT	4J/L	2,850	2,000	III
DASH 7 DHC-7	DH7	DHC7	4T/L	4,000	4,000	III
DASH 8 DHC-8	DH8	DHC8	2T/L	1,500	1,500	III
Dove DH-104	DH10	DOVE	2P/S	1,420	1,420	II
Heron DH-114	DH11	HERN	4P/S	1,075	1,075	III
Otter DHC-3	DH3/ U1	DHC3	1P/S	750	1,000	I
Turbo Beaver DHC-2T	DH2T	DH2T	1T/S	1,220	1,000	I
Twin Otter DHC-6 (all series)	DH6/ U18	DHC6	2T/S	1,600	1,800	II

DIAMOND (Canada)

(Also HOAC)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
DV-20 Katana	DV20	DV20	1P/S	730	–	I

DORNIER GmbH (FRG)

(Also CASA, HINDUSTAN)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Do 27	DO27	DO27	1P/S	700	800	I
Do 28 A/B (Agur)	DO28	DO28	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II
Do 28D/D–1/D–2, 128–2 Skyservant	DO8D	D28D	2P/S	–	–	II
Do–28D–6, 128–6 Turbo Skyservant	DO8D	D28T	2T/S	–	–	II
Do 228–100 Series	DO81	D228	2T/S	2,000	2,000	II
Do 228–200 Series	DO82	D228	2T/S+	2,000	2,000	III
Do 328 Series	D328	D328	2T/L	2,000	2,000	III

EMBRAER (Brazil)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Bandeirante EMB–110/111	E110	E110	2T/S	1,500	1,500	II
Brasilia EMB–120	E120	E120	2T/ST	2,300	2,300	III
EMB–145	E145	E145	2J/L	2,350	–	III

FAIRCHILD INDUSTRIES (USA–includes Swearingen Aviation)

(Also CONAIR, FAIRCHILD-HILLER, FLEET, FOKKER, KAISER, PILATUS, SWEARINGEN)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Cornell	FA62	FA62	1P/S	650	650	I
Friendship F27, Troopship, Maritime, Firefighter	FA27	F27	2T/L	3,000	3,000	III
Flying Box Car	FA24/ C119	C119	2P/L	750	750	III
Merlin 2	SW2	SW2	2T/S	2,350	2,500	II
Merlin 3	SW3	SW3	2T/S+	2,350	2,500	III
Metro, Merlin 4	SW4	SW4	2T/S	2,400	2,500	III
Pilatus/Peacemaker/Porter	PL6/ AV23	PC6P	1P/S	580	600	I
Provider	C123	C123	2P/L	890	1,000	III
Thunderbolt II	A10A*	A10*	2J/L	6,000	5,000	III
Turbo Porter	PL6	PC6T	1T/S	580	600	I

FOKKER BV (Netherlands)

(Also FAIRCHILD, FAIRCHILD-HILLER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Friendship F27, Troopship, Maritime, Firefighter	FK27	F27	2T/L	3,000	3,000	III
Fellowship F28	FK28	F28	2J/L	4,650	2,000	III
Fokker 50, Maritime Enforcer	FK50	F50	2T/L	3,500	3,500	III
Fokker 100	FK10	F100	2J/L	3,500	3,500	III

GATES LEARJET CORP. (USA)

(Also LEAR JET, LEARJET, SHIN MEIWA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Learjet 23	LR23	LJ23	2J/S	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 24	LR24	LJ24	2J/S+	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 25	LR25	LJ25	2J/S+	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 28	LR28	LJ28	2J/S+	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 29	LR29	LJ28	2J/S+	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 31	LR31	LJ31	2J/S+	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 35	LR35/ C21	LJ35	2J/S+	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 36	LR36	LJ35	2J/S+	4,500	4,000	III
Learjet 55	LR55	LJ55	2J/S+	5,000	4,000	III
Learjet 60	LR60	LJ60	2J/S+	5,000	4,000	III

GENERAL DYNAMICS CORP. (USA)

(Also BOEING CANADA, CANADAIR, CANADIAN VICKERS, CONSOLIDATED, CONVAIR, FOKKER, KELOWNA, LOCKHEED, LOCKHEED MARTIN, MITSUBISHI, SABCA, SAMSUNG, TUSAS)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Canso/Catalina***	CV14/ PBY5	CAT	2P/L	600	600	III
Convair 240	CV24	CVLP	2P/L	1,000	800	III
Convair 340, Liner, Samaritan	CV34/ C131	CVLP	2P/L	900	900	III
Convair 440	CV44	CVLP	2P/L	900	900	III
Convair 540/580	CV58	CVLT	2T/L	1,500	1,500	III
Convair 600	CV60	CVLT	2T/L	1,500	1,500	III
Convair 640	CV64	CVLT	2T/L	1,500	1,800	III
Convair 990	CV99	CV99	4J/L	2,500	2,500	III
F-111/FB-111	F111*	F111*	2J/L	5,000	5,000	III
Fighting Falcon	F16*	F16*	1J/L	8,000	5,000	III
Valiant	CV13	VALI	1P/S	600	750	I

GOVERNMENT AIRCRAFT FACTORIES (Australia) (Now GAF)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
N22B Nomad	N22B	NOMA	2T/S	1,300	1,100	II
N24A Nomad	N24A	NOMA	2T/S	1,300	1,100	II

GRUMMAN AEROSPACE CORP. (USA)

(Also AERO MOD, AMERICAN GENERAL, GRUMMAN AMERICAN, GULFSTREAM AMERICAN, MID-CONTINENT, NORTHROP GRUMMAN, SERV-AERO)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Albatross***	G64/ U16	U16	2P/S+	1,500	1,500	III
American TR/TS-2	AA2	AA1	1P/S	1,000	1,500	I
Cheetah AA-5, Traveller, Tiger	AA5	AA5	1P/S	660	1,000	I
Cougar GA-7	GA7	GA7	2P/S	1,600	1,500	II

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Goose/Super Goose	G21	G21	2P/S+	1,000	1,000	III
Greyhound	C2	C2	2T/L	1,000	2,200	III
Hawkeye, Daya	E2	E2	2T/L	2,690	3,000	III
Intruder, Prowler	A6*	A6*	2J/L	7,500	5,000	III
Mallard***	G73	G73	2P/S+	1,600	1,600	III
Model G–164 Ag–Cat, Super Ag–Cat, King Cat	G164	G164	1P/S	1,500	1,500	I
Model G164 Turbo Ag–Cat	G164	G64T	1T/s	1,500	1,500	I
Mohawk	G134/ OV1	V1	2T/S	2,100	1,300	I
Tomcat	F14*	F14*	2J/L	6,000	4,000	III
Widgeon/Super Widgeon	G44	G44	2P/S+	1,000	1,500	III
Yankee AA–1B/C, Trainer, T–Cat, Lynx	AA1	AA1	1P/S	750	1,000	I

GULFSTREAM AEROSPACE CORP. (USA)

(Also GRUMMAN, GRUMMAN AMERICAN, GULFSTREAM, GULFSTREAM AMERICAN)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
GAC 159–C, Gulfstream 1	G159/ VC4	G159	2T/S+	2,000	2,000	III
Gulfstream 2	G2/ VC11	GULF	2J/L	5,000	4,000	III
Gulfstream 3	G3/ C20	GULF	2J/L	5,000	4,000	III
Gulfstream 4/5	G4	GULF	2J/L	5,000	4,000	III

HAMBURGER FLUGZEUBAU (FRG) (Now HFB)

(Also MBB)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
HFB–320 Hansajet	HF32	HF20	2J/S+	4,500	4,500	III

HANDLEY PAGE (UK)

(Also BRITISH AEROSPACE, JETSTREAM, SCOTTISH AVIATION, VOLPAR)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Jetstream HP–137/ Super 31	HP13	JSTA	2T/S	2,100	2,100	II

HAMILTON AVIATION (USA)

(Also VOLPAR)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Westwind 2/3, Turbo 18, Turboliner	WSW	B18T	2T/S	2,000	2,000	II

HELIO AIRCRAFT COMPANY (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
H–250 Courier MarkII	HE25	COUR	1P/S	850	1,000	I
H–295 Super Courier	HE29/ U10	COUR	1P/S	1,000	1,500	I
H–391 Courier	HE39	COUR	1P/S	400	500	I
H–395 Super Courier	HE35	COUR	1P/S	500	650	I
H–550/A Stallion	HE55/ AU24	STLN	1T/S	2,200	2,200	I
H–580 Twin Courier	HE58	TCOU	2P/S	1,250	1,500	II

ILYUSHIN (USSR)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
IL–62	IL62	IL62	4J/H	3,500	2,500	III
IL–76 / 78	IL76	IL76	4J/H	3,000	2,500	III

ISRAEL AIRCRAFT INDUSTRIES (Israel)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
101 Avara, 102, 201, 202	RV01	ARVA	2T/S+	1,300	1,000	III
1123 Westwind	WW23	WW23	2J/S+	4,000	3,500	III
1124 Westwind	WW24	WW24	2J/S+	4,000	3,500	III
1124A Westwind 2	WW4A	WW24	2J/S+	4,000	3,500	III

ISRAEL AIRCRAFT INDUSTRIES & ASTRA JET (Israel/USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Astra 1125	AJ25	ASTR	2J/S+	4,000	3,500	III

LAKE AIRCRAFT (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
LA–250 Renegade/ SeaFury***	LA25	LA25	1P/S	680	680	I
LA–250 Turbo Renegade/ Turbo SeaFury***, Seawolf	LA2T	LA25	1P/S	760	760	I
LA–4/A/B***	LA04	LA4	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
LA–4–200 Buccaneer***	LA42	LA4	1P/S	1,200	1,000	I

LOCKHEED CORP. (USA)

(Also AERITALIA, CANADAIR, FIAT, FOKKER, HOWARD, LEAR, LOCKHEED-MARTIN, MBB, MESSERSCHMITT, MITSUBISHI, PACAERO, ROCKWELL, SABCA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
C-5 Galaxy	C5A	C5	4J/H	2,500	2,000	III
C-141 Starlifter	C141	C141	4J/H	3,500	3,000	III
Constellation 649	L649	CONI	4P/L	2,000	2,000	III
Constellation 749	L749	CONI	4P/L	2,000	2,000	III
Electra 188	L188/ P3	L188	4T/L	1,850	2,000	III
F-104 Starfighter	F104*	F104*	1J/L	5,000	4,000	III
L-1011 Tri-Star (all series)	L101	L101	3J/H	3,500	3,000	III
Lodestar	L18	L18	2P/L	1,800	2,000	III
Hercules, Spectre	L382/ C130	C130	4T/L	1,500	1,500	III
1329 Jetstar 6/8	L329/ C140	L29A	4J/L	4,000	3,500	III
1329-5 Jetstar 2/731	L295	L29B	4J/L	4,000	3,000	III
Orion, Aurora (L-185/285/685/785)	L188/P3	P3	4T/L	1,850	2,000	III
Starliner	L164	CONI	4P/L	1,500	1,500	III
Super Constellation	L49	CONI	4P/L	1,620	1,620	III
T-33, T-Bird	T33*	T33*	2J/L	2,000	2,000	III
F-80 Shooting Star	F80*	T33*	2J/L	2,000	2,000	III
TR-1 Trigull	TR1*	TR1*	1J/L	6,000	6,000	III
U-2	U2*	U2*	1J/S+	6,000	6,000	III
Viking S-3	S3A	S3	2J/L	2,000	2,000	III

MARTIN COMPANY (Division of Martin Marietta) (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Martin 404	M404	M404	2P/L	1,600	1,500	III

MAULE AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)

(Also SAASA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
M-4 Strata-Rocket, Astro Rocket, Bee-Dee, Jetasen, Super Rocket	ML4	M4	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
M-5 180C/200/235C Lunar-Rocket, 210TC Strata-Rocket, Patroller	ML5	M5	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
M-6 Super-Rocket	ML6	M6	1P/S	1,500	1,000	I
M-7-235, MT-7, MX-7-160/180/235, MXT-7-160/180 Super Rocket, Star Rocket	–	M7	1P/S	825	–	I
M-7-420, MX-7-420, MXT-7-420 Star Craft	–	M7T	1T/S	4,500	–	I

MCDONNELL-DOUGLAS CORP. (USA)

(Also ASTA, DOUGLAS, GAF, LISUNOV, MITSUBISHI, ON MARK, SHANGHAI, VALMET)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
DC-6/B Liftmaster	DC6/ C118	DC6	4P/L	1,000	1,000	III
DC-7/B/C Seven Seas	DC7	DC7	4P/L	1,250	1,250	III
DC-8 (all series), Jet Trader	DC8	DC8	4J/L	3,000	3,000	III
DC-9, Skytrain 2, Nightingale	DC9/ C9/ VC9	DC9	2J/L	3,000	3,000	III
MD-80 Series	MD8	MD80	2J/L	3,500	3,000	III
DC-10 (all series)	DC10/ KC10	DC10	3J/H	2,400	2,000	III
F-15 Eagle	F15*	F15*	2J/L	8,000	5,000	III
F/A-18 Hornet	F18/ A18	F18	2J/L	8,000	6,000	III
Globemaster 3	C17	C17	4J/H	–	–	III
Invader	B26	B26	2P/L	1,000	1,000	III
MD-11	MD11	MD11	3J/H	–	–	III
MD-90	–	MD90	2JL	–	–	III
Phantom 2	F4*/RF4*	F4*	2J/L	8,000	6,000	III
Skyhawk	A4*/OA4/ TA4	A4*	1J/L	5,000	5,000	III
Skymaster	DC4/ C54	DC4	4P/L	2,300	2,300	III
Skytrain (C-47, C-53, C-117 A/ B/C, R4D 1 to 7)	DC3/ C47/ VC47	DC3	2P/S+	1,200	1,200	III
Skywarrior	A3*	A3*	2J/L	5,000	6,000	III
Super DC-3 (C-117D, R4D 8)	DC3S/ C117	DC3S	2P/S+	1,330	1,330	III
Super DC-8 Series, Jet Trader	DC8S	DC8	4J/H	5,500	5,500	III

MESSERSCHMITT-BOLKOW-BLOHM (MBB) (FRG)

(Also BOLKOW, HFB, NORD)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
BO 209 Monsun	ME29	B209	1P/S	1,100	1,100	I
HFB 320 Hansa Jet	ME32	HF20	2J/S+	3,500	3,000	III
ME 108 Taifun	ME08	ME08	1P/S	400	500	III

MITSUBISHI AIRCRAFT INTERNATIONAL INC. (USA/Japan)

(Also BEECH, RAYTHEON)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Mitsubishi Diamond I/MU-300	MU3	MU30	2J/S+	3,500	4,000	III
Mitsubishi MU-2	MU2	MU2	2T/S	3,500	3,000	II
MU-2B-40 Solitaire	MU24	MU2	2T/S	4,000	3,000	II
MU-2B-60 Marquise	MU26	MU2	2T/S	4,000	3,000	II

MOONEY AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)

(Also AEROSTAR)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
M-18 Mooney Mite, Wee Scotsman	MO18	MITE	1P/S	750	750	I
Mark 10 Cadet	MO10	M10	1P/S	800	800	I
Mark 20/200/201/202/205/220/231/252	MO20	M20	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Mark 21/Mooney Ranger	MO21	M20	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Mark 22, Mustang	MO22	M22	1P/S	1,300	1,300	I
Mooney 201/M20J	MO2J	M20	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Turbo Mooney 231/M20K	MO2K	M20	1P/S	1,500	1,200	I

MUDRY (See AVIONS MUDRY ET CIE)

NAVION RANGEMASTER AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)

(Also CAMAIR, RILEY, TEMCO)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Rangemaster	NA1	RANG	1P/S	1,250	1,500	I
Twin Navion 480, 55	NA16	TNAV	2P/S	1,800	1,500	II

NIHON KOKUKI SEIZO KABUSHIKI KAISHA & NATIONAL AEROPLANE MANUFACTURING COMPANY (Japan) (Now NAMC)

(Also MITSUBISHI)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
YS-11	YS11	YS11	2T/L	1,500	1,500	III

NOORDYUN AVIATION LTD. (Canada)

(Also CCF)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Norseman Mk 4	NO4	NORS	1P/S	700	1,000	I
Norseman Mk 5	NO5	NORS	1P/S	700	1,000	I
Norseman Mk 6	NO6	NORS	1P/S	800	1,000	I

NORD AVIATION (Affiliate of Aerospatiale) (France)

(Also HOLSTE, NORDFLUG, TRANSALL)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Mohawk 298, Fregate	ND26	N262	2T/S+	2,500	2,000	III
Nortatlas 2501 to 2508	NORD	NORA	2P/L	1,500	1,500	III
Super Broussard 260	ND26	N260	2T/S+	2,500	2,000	III
Transall C–160	ND16	C160	2T/L	2,000	2,000	III

NORTHERN AVIATION (USA–see Bellanca)

NORTHROP CORP. (USA)

(Also CANADAIR, CASA, AIDC, F+W EMMEN, KOREAN AIR)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Freedom Fighter Tiger II	F5*	F5*	2J/S+	8,000	5,000	III
T–38 Talon	T38*	T38*	2J/S+	8,000	5,000	III

PARTENAVIA CONSTRUZIONI AERONAUTICHE SpA (Italy)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
P66/64 Charlie, Oscar	PN66	OSCR	1P/S	800	1,000	I
P68/B/C/–TC,Victor, Observer/P68R	PN68	P68	2P/S	1,200	1,000	I

PARTENAVIA & AERITALIA (Italy)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
AP68TP–300 Spartacus	PN6P	P68T	2T/S	1,500	1,500	II
AP68TP–600, Viator	PN6P	VTOR	2T/S	1,500	1,500	II

PIAGGIO (Industrie Aeronautiche E Meccaniche Rinaldo Piaggio SpA) (Italy)

(Also PIAGGIO–DOUGLAS, TRECKER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
P136 Gull***	P136	P136	2P/S	1,250	1,500	II
P166 Portofino***, Albatross	P166	P66P	2P/S	1,350	1,500	II
Vespa Jet PD808	P808	P808	2J/S+	4,000	3,500	III

PILATUS FLUGZEUGWERKE AG (Switzerland)

(Also FAIRCHILD, FAIRCHILD–HILLER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
PC–6 Porter	PL6	PC6P	1P/S	600	600	I
PC–6A/B/C Turbo Porter	PL6A	PC6T	1T/S	1,250	1,500	I
PC–7 Turbo Trainer	PL7	PC7	1T/S	2,800	–	I
PC–12	–	PC12	1T/S	1,900	–	I

PIPER AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)

(Also AEROSTAR, AICSA, CHINCUL, COLEMILL, EMBRAER, INDAER CHILE, JOHNSTON, MACHEN, MILLER, NIEVA, SCHAFER, SEGUIN, PZL–MIELEC, TED SMITH, WAGAERO)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Aero Star 600/700	PA60	AEST	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II
Apache 150/160	PA23	PA23	2P/S	1,050	1,000	II
Aztec. Turbo Aztec	PAZT/ U11	PA27	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II
Brave, Pawnee Brave, Super Brave	PA36	PA36	1P/S	800	1,000	I
Cherokee, Archer, Dakota, Turbo Dakota, Warrior, Cadet, Cruiser, Pathfinder	PA28/ T35	PA28	1P/S	750	1,000	I
Cherokee Arrrow 2/3, Turbo Arrow 3	PA28	P28R	1P/S	750	1,000	I
Cherokee Arrow 4, Turbo Arrow 4	PARO	P28T	1P/S	900	1,000	I
Cherokee Six, Lance, (Turbo) Saratoga	PA32	PA32	1P/S	850	1,000	I
Cherokee Lance PA–32R, Saratoga SP, Turbo Saratoga SP	PA32	P32R	1P/S	850	1,000	I
Cheyenne 2	PAYE	P31T	2T/S	2,400	2,000	II
Cheyenne 1	PA41	P31T	2T/S	2,200	2,000	II
Cheyenne 3/400	PA42	PA42	2T/S	2,400	2,000	II
Chieftan, Mohave, Navajo, T–1020	PA31	PA31	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II
Clipper	PA16	PA16	1P/S	500	500	I
Comanche	PA24	PA24	1P/S	900	1,000	I
Cruiser, J–5 Cub Cruiser	PA5	J5	1P/S	500	500	I
Cub Special	PA11	PA11	1P/S	500	500	I
Cub Trainer, J–2 Cub	PA2	J2	1P/S	500	500	I
Family Cruiser	PA14	PA14	1P/S	600	600	I
Lance 2, Turbo Lance 2	PA32	P32T	1P/S	850	1,000	I
Malibu, Malibu Mirage	PA46	PA46	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Pacer	PA20	PA20	1P/S	850	1,000	I
Pawnee	PA25	PA25	1P/S	650	650	I
Pillan PA–28R–300	T35	PILL	1P/S	750	1,000	I
Seminole, Turbo Seminole	PA44	PA44	2P/S	1,100	1,000	II
Seneca 2	PASE	PA34	2P/S	1,300	1,300	II
Seneca 3	PA34	PA34	2P/S	1,300	1,300	II
Super Cruiser	PA12	PA12	1P/S	600	600	I
Super Cub	PA18/ U7	PA18	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
T–1040	PAT4	P31T	1P/S	1,300	1,200	I

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Tomahawk	PA38	PA38	1P/S	750	750	I
Tri–Pacer, Colt, Caribbean	PA22	PA22	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Twin Comanche, Turbo Twin Comanche	PA30	PA30	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II
Vagabond	PA17	PA17	1P/S	500	500	I
Vagabond Trainer	PA15	PA15	1P/S	500	500	I

PITTS AEROBATICS (Manufactured by Christen Industries, Inc.)(USA)

(Also AEROTEK, AVIAT, CHRISTEN)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
S–1 Special	PIS1	PTS1	1P/S	1,500	1,500	I
S–2 Special	PIS2	PTS2	1P/S	1,500	1,500	I

RAYTHEON (See BEECH)

RILEY AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)

(Also AVIONES, COLOMBIA, CESSNA, COLEMILL)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
M65 Rocket, Turbo Rocket, Super 310	RY65	C310	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II

ROCKWELL INTERNATIONAL CORP. (USA)

(Also AERO COMMANDER, CANADAIR, CCF, COMMANDER, COMMONWEALTH, GULFSTREAM, HAMILTON, MITSUBISHI, NOORDUYN, NORTH AMERICAN PACAERO, PACIFIC AIRMOTIVE, ROCKWELL, RYAN, SUD, TUSCO)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Aero Commander 112	AC12	CM11	1P/S	1,000	1,200	I
Grand Commander 685/680FL	AC85	AC6L	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II
Turbo Commander 695/690/680T	AC95	AC6T	2P/S	1,500	1,500	II
Alti–Cruiser	AC72	AC72	2P/S	1,300	1,300	II
Lancer	B1*	B1*	4J/H	3,000	5,000	III
Bronco	OV10*	V10*	2T/S	2,000	2,500	II
Buckeye	T2*	T2*	2J/L	5,700	6,000	III
Commander 112A	AC2A	CM11	1P/S	1,000	1,200	I
Commander 112TC	AC2T	CM11	1T/S	1,200	1,500	I
Commander 114	AC14	CM11	1P/S	1,000	1,500	I
Commander 200	AC20	M200	1P/S	1,400	1,000	I
Commander 500	AC50	AC50	2P/S	1,340	1,500	II
Commander 520	AC52	AC52	2P/S	1,340	1,500	II
Commander 560	AC56	AC56	2P/S	1,400	1,500	II
Darter 100	AC10	VO10	1P/S	850	850	I
Grand Commander 680FL	AC60	AC6L	2P/S	1,250	1,250	II

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Jet Commander 1121	AC21	JCOM	2J/S+	5,000	4,500	III
Jet Commander 840/980/1000	AC84	AC6T	2T/S	2,500	2,500	II
Jet Prop Commander	AC69	AC6T	2T/S	2,500	1,500	II
Lark 100 Commander	LARK	LARK	1P/S	700	1,000	I
Mitchell	B25	B25	2P/L	980	980	III
Mustang	P51	P51	1P/S	2,500	2,500	III
Navion NA 145/154	N145	NAVI	1P/S	750	600	I
Sabre	F86*	F86*	1J/L	4,000	4,000	III
Sabreliner 65/40/50/60	N265/ T39	SBR1	2J/S+	4,000	3,500	III
Super Commander 680S/E/F/FP	AC68/ U4	AC68	2P/S	1,375	1,375	II
Super Sabre F-100	F100*	SSAB	1J/L	4,000	4,000	III
Texan, Harvard	N6/ T6	T6	1P/S	800	800	I
Trojan, Nomair, Nomad	T28	T28	1P/S	2,500	2,500	I
Turbo Commander 690C	AC6T	AC6T	2T/S	2,500	3,000	III

SAAB & FAIRCHILD INDUSTRIES (Sweden/USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
SF-340	SF34	SF34	2T/L	2,000	2,000	III

SHORT BROTHERS LTD. (UK)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Shorts 330, Sherpa	SH33	SH33	2T/S+	1,380	1,380	III
Shorts 360	SH36	SH36	2T/S+	1,400	1,400	III
Shorts SC7 Skyvan, Skyliner	SH7	SC7	2T/S	1,500	1,500	II

SIAI MARCHETTI SpA (Italy)

(Also AGUSTA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
SF260TP	M260/ SM6T	F26T	1T/S	1,800	1,100	I
F600, SF-600TP Canguero	SF60/ SM60	F600	2T/S	2,100	–	II

SILVAIRE (USA)

(Also LUCSOME, TEMCO)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Luscombe Silvaire	SL8	L8	1P/S	900	1,000	I

SOCATA (See AEROSPATIALE)

STINSON (USA)

(Also PIPER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Reliant (Vultee) V–77	ST77	RELI	1P/S	700	700	I
Voyager/Station Wagon 108	ST75	S108	1P/S	750	1,000	I
Voyager 10/105	ST75	S10	1P/S	750	1,000	I

SUD AVIATION (See Aerospatiale)

SWEARINGEN AVIATION (USA–see Fairchild Industries)

TAYLORCRAFT AVIATION CORP. (USA)

(Also TAYLOR KITS)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
F–15 Tourist, Foursome	TC15	TA15	1P/S	800	1,000	I
F–19 Sportsman	TC19	TF19	1P/S	800	1,000	I
F–20A Topper, Ranchwagon, Seabird, Zephyr	TC20	TA20	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
F–21, T–Kraft	TC21	TF21	1P/S	1,100	1,100	I

TED SMITH AEROSTAR CORP. (USA)

(Also AEROSTAR, AICSA, MACHEN, PIPER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Aero Star	TS60	AEST	2P/S	1,800	1,500	II

VFW–FOKKER (Zentralgesellschaft VFW–Fokker mbH (FRG/Netherlands))

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
VFW 614	VF14	VF14	2J/L	3,100	3,000	III

VOUGHT CORP. (USA)

(Also GLOBE, LTV, TEMCO)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Corsair A–7, TA–7, EA–7	A7*	A7*	1J/L	8,000	6,000	III
Swift	GC1	GC1	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I

ZENAIR (Canada)
(Also ZENITH)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
CH–2000 Zenith	–	CH2T	1P/S	780	–	I

Appendix B.

AIRCRAFT INFORMATION

Helicopters/Rotorcrafts

TYPE ENGINE ABBREVIATIONS

P	piston
T	jet/turboprop
J	jet

CLIMB AND DESCENT RATES

Climb and descent rates based on average en route climb/descent profiles at median weight between maximum gross takeoff and landing weights.

SRS

SRS means "same runway separation;" categorization criteria is specified in para 3-9-6, SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION.

MANUFACTURERS

Listed under the primary manufacturer are other aircraft manufacturers who also make versions of some of the aircraft in that group.

AEROSPATIALE (France)

(Also ATLAS, CASA, CHANGHE, EUROCOPTER, HELIBRAS, HINDUSTAN, IAR, ICA, NURTANIO, NUSANTARA, REPUBLIC, SINGAPORE, SUD, WESTLAND)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Lama SA-315	HR15/H315	LAMA	1T/S	1,000	1,000	I
Alouette 2	HR30/S313	ALO2	1T/S	1,280	1,280	I
Alouette 3	HR60/S316/S319	ALO3	1T/S	1,500	1,500	I
Dauphine SA-360/361	HR36/S360	S360	1T/S	1,400	1,500	I
Dauphine 2 SA-365C	HR3C/ HH65/S366	S65C	2T/S	1,800	1,000	I
Ecurevil/AStar AS-350/550	HR35/S350/H350	AS50	1T/S	1,000	1,000	I
Gazelle SA-341/342	HR34/S342	GAZL	1T/S	1,620	1,620	I
Puma SA-330 (CH-33, HT-19)	HR33/S330	PUMA	2T/L	1,250	1,500	I
Super Puma AS 332/532, SA-330)	HR33/S332	AS32	2T/L	1,250	1,500	I
Super Frelon SA-321/Z-8	HR32/S321/SFRL	FREL	3T/L	1,200	1,500	I
Twin Star AS-355/555	HR55/S355	AS55	2T/S	1,350	1,300	I

AUGUSTA (Constuzioni Aeronautiche Giovanni Agusta SpA) (Italy)

(Also BELL, NUSANTARA, SABCA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model 147J-3B-1, Ranger	A47J	B47J	1P/S	500	500	I
Model A 109/A/A-II	A109	A109	2T/S	1,620	1,500	I
Model 212 ASW, Griffon	A212	B12	2T/S	1,420	1,420	I

BELL/BOEING

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Osprey	V22	V22	2P/L	–	–	II

BELL HELICOPTER TEXTRON (USA)

(Also AGUSTA, AIDC, COMMONWEALTH, DORNIER, FUJI, GLOBAL, KAWASAKI, NUSANTARA, TROOPER, UNC, WESTLAND)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Biglifter, Bell 204 ,205, 214A/B, AB-204	BH14	UH1	1T/L	1,500	1,500	I
Cobra	BH09/ AH1	HUCO	1T/S	1,375	1,375	I
Jet Ranger/Long Ranger/Sea Ranger/Kiowa/Model 206, Combat Scout	BH06/ H57/ OH58	B06	1T/S	1,200	1,000	I
Huey/Iroquois/Model 205 A-1	BH05/ UH1	UH1	1T/S	1,500	1,500	I
Ranger Model 47J	BH47/H13	B47J	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Sioux/Model 47G, OH-13	BH47/ H13	B47G	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Twin Huey, Model 212, Model 214B/B-1, Model 412, Griffon	BHTH/ UH1N/ BH41/BH12	B12	2T/S	1,420	1,420	I
Model 214ST, Super Transport	BHTH/ UH1N/BHST	BSTP	2T/S	1,420	1,420	I
Model 222, 230, 430	BH22	B222	2T/S	1,500	1,000	I

BOEING VERTOL COMPANY (USA)

(Also BOEING HELICOPTERS, KAWASAKI, MERIDIONALI, VERTOL)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Chinook, Model 234	HV47/ CH47/HV34	H47	2T/L	1,500	1,500	I
Sea Knight 107, CH-113, Labrador	HV07/ CH46	H46	2T/L	2,130	2,130	I

BOLKOW (Germany)

(Also CASA, EUROCOPTER, MBB, MESSERSCHMITT-BOLKOW, NURTANIO, NUSANTARA, PADC)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model 105, BO-105	B105	B105	2T/S	1,500	1,500	I

BRANTLEY-HYNES HELICOPTER, INC. (USA)

(Also BRANTLEY, HYNES)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model B-2/A/B, H-2	HB42	BRB2	1P/S	1,400	1,400	I
Model 305	HB43	B305	1P/S	1,300	1,300	I

ENSTROM CORP. (USA)

(Also WUHAN)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Falcon/Model F-28/A/C/F, Sentinel/ Model F-28-FP, Model 280, Shark	HF28/EH28	EN28	1P/S	800	800	I
Shark/Model 280FX, 28, Falcon, Sentinel	HF80/EH80	EN28	1P/S	1,200	1,200	I
Turbo Shark 480, TH-28	HF8C	EN48	1P/S	1,500	1,500	I

FAIRCHILD/REPUBLIC (Includes Hiller) (USA)

(Also FAIRCHILD HILLER, ROGERSON HILLER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Hiller UH-12/Raven, HTE	HH12/ OH23	UH12	1P/S	1,500	1,500	I

HILLER (See FAIRCHILD/REPUBLIC (USA))

HUGHES HELICOPTERS (See MCDONNELL-DOUGLAS HELICOPTERS (USA))

KAMAN AEROSPACE CORPORATION (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
H-2 Seasprite, Super Seasprite	H2	H2	2T/L	2,400	2,400	I
Huskie 600-3/5	HK60/ H43	H43B	1T/L	2,000	2,000	I

KAWASAKI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. (Japan)

(Also BOEING VERTOL, VERTOL)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
KV-107/II, Sea Knight, Labrador, Voyaguer, CH-113	KH17/KH07	H46	2T/L	1,500	1,500	I

MCDONNELL-DOUGLAS HELICOPTERS (includes Hughes Helicopters) (USA)

(Also AGUSTA, BREDANARDI, KAWASAKI, KOREAN AIR, NARDI, RACA, SCHWEIZER)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model 77/Apache, Pethen, Longbow Apache	HU64/ AH64	H64	2T/L	1,500	1,500	I
Model 269, 200, 280, 300, Skynight, TH-55 Osage	HU26	H269	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Model 300/C	HU30	H269	1P/S	1,200	1,200	I

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model 500C, 369, 530F, Defender, Black Tiger, Night Fox, Lifter	HU50	H500	1P/S	1,500	1,500	I
Osage	H55	H269	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I
Pawnee, Model 369, Model 500D/ MD/MG	HU35/ OH6/HU50	H500	1T/S	1,500	1,500	I

MESSERSCHMIDTT-BOLKOW-BLOHM (MBB) (FRG)

(Also BOLKOW, CASA, EUROCOPTER, MBB, NURTANIO, NUSANTARA, PADC)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model BO 105	HM05/MBH5	B105	2T/S	1,200	1,200	I

MBB/KAWASAKI (FRG/Japan)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model BK 117	HM17/MDK7/ MBK7/KH17	BK17	2T/S	1,500	1,500	I

ROBINSON HELICOPTER COMPANY INC. (USA)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model R22	HR22/RH22	R22	1P/S	800	800	I

SCHWEIZER AIRCRAFT CORP. (USA)

(Also BREDANARDI, HUGHES, KAWASAKI, NARDI)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Model 269C, 200, 280, 300, Skynight	HT26	H269	1P/S	1,000	1,000	I

SIKORSKY AIRCRAFT (USA)

(Also AGUSTA, ASTA, HAWKER DE HAVILLAND, HELIPRO, KOREAN AIR, MITSUBISHI, TUSAS, UNITED CANADA, VAT, WESTLAND)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Blackhawk S-70, WS-70, Seahawk, Pavehawk, Rescue Hawk, Thunder-hawk, Jayhawk, Ocean hawk, Desert hawk, Yanshuf	SK70/ H60	H60	2T/L	2,000	2,000	I
Chickasaw S-55, H-19, HO4S, HRS	SK55/ H19	S55P	1P/S	800	1,000	I
Choctaw/Seashore/Seaboat S-58, CH-34	SK58/ H34	S58P	1P/L	1,120	1,120	I

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
LAMPS MK3, Blackhawk	SH60	H60	2T/L	2,000	2,000	I
Model S–51	SK51	S51	1P/L	1,000	1,000	I
Model S–52, Hummingbird	SK52	S52	1P/L	950	1,000	I
Model S–62	SK62/ H52	S62	1T/S	1,020	1,000	I
Model S–76, Spirit, Eagle	SK76	S76	2T/S	1,300	1,300	I
S–61R (CH–3, HH–3, Pelican)	SK61/H3	S61R	2T/L	1,500	1,500	I
S–61A/B/D/L/N Sea King, Commando, CH–124	SK61/ H3	S61	2T/L	1,500	1,500	I
Sea Stallion S–65, Yasur	SK65/ H53	H53	2T/L	1,500	1,500	I
Skycrane S–64E/F, Tarhe S–64	SK64/ H54	S64	2T/L	1,300	1,300	I

WESTLAND HELICOPTERS LTD. (UK)

Model	Type Designator		Description	Performance Information		
	Old Designator(s)	New Designator	Number & Type Engines/Weight Class	Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
WG 30	WL30	WG30	2T/S	1,200	1,200	I

Appendix C.
AIRCRAFT INFORMATION

SPECIFIC HOMEBUILT/EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT

Homebuilt and Experimental Aircraft*

Designator Criteria	Type Designator	Performance Information**		
		Climb Rate (fpm)	Descent Rate (fpm)	SRS Cat.
Aircraft with cruise (indicated) airspeeds of 100 knots or less	HXA	500	500	I
Aircraft with cruise (indicated) airspeeds of greater than 100 knots, up to and including 200 knots	HXB	750	750	I
Aircraft with cruise (indicated) airspeeds greater than 200 knots	HXC	1,000	1,000	I

NOTE–
** Configuration diversity and the fact that airworthiness certificates are issued to aircraft builders, vice manufacturers, necessitates the assignment of generic aircraft type designators based on cruise performance, rather than specific manufacturer and normal descriptive/performance information.*

NOTE–
*** All performance criteria has been estimated because configuration diversity precludes determining precise aircraft–specific information.*

Appendix D.

STANDARD OPERATING PRACTICE (SOP) FOR THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

1. PURPOSE

This appendix prescribes the method and step–by–step process for conducting a position relief briefing and transferring position responsibility from one specialist to another.

2. DISCUSSION

a. In all operational facilities, the increase in traffic density and the need for the expeditious movement of traffic without compromising safety have emphasized the importance of the position relief process.

b. The contents, methods, and practices used for position relief and briefings vary among personnel, and pertinent information is often forgotten or incompletely covered. Major problems occur whenever there is a heavy reliance upon memory, unsupported by routines or systematic reminders. This SOP addresses the complete task of transferring position responsibility and the associated relief briefing.

c. Position relief unavoidably provides workload for specialists at the time of relief. The intent of this SOP is to make the transfer of position responsibility take place smoothly and to ensure a complete transfer of information with a minimum amount of workload. The method takes advantage of a self–briefing concept in which the relieving specialist obtains needed status information by reading from the Status Information Area/s to begin the relief process. Up to the moment information related to the control of aircraft or vehicular movements requires verbal exchanges between specialists during the relief process. The method also specifies the moment when the transfer of position responsibility occurs.

d. In the final part of the relief process, the specialist being relieved monitors and reviews the position to ensure that nothing has been overlooked or incorrectly displayed and that the transfer of position responsibility occurred with a complete briefing.

3. TERMS

The following terms are important for a complete understanding of this SOP:

a. Status Information Area (SIA). Manual or automatic displays of the current status of position related equipment and operational conditions or procedures.

b. Written Notes. Manually recorded items of information kept at designated locations on the position of operation. They may be an element of the Status Information Area/s.

c. Checklist. An ordered listing of items to be covered during a position relief.

4. PRECAUTIONS

a. Specialists involved in the position relief process should not rush or be influenced to rush.

b. During position operation, each item of status information which is or may be an operational factor for the relieving specialist should be recorded as soon as it is operationally feasible so that it will not be forgotten or incorrectly recorded.

c. Extra care should be taken when more than one specialist relieves or is being relieved from a position at the same time; e. g. , combining or decombining positions. Such simultaneous reliefs should be approached with caution.

5. RESPONSIBILITIES

a. The specialist being relieved shall be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either:

1. Accurately displayed in the Status Information Area/s for which he/she has responsibility, or

2. Relayed to the position having responsibility for accurately displaying the status information.

b. The relieving specialist shall be responsible for ensuring that, prior to accepting responsibility for the position, any unresolved questions pertaining to the operation of the position are resolved.

c. The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved shall share equal responsibility for the completeness and accuracy of the position relief briefing.

d. The specialists engaged in a position relief shall conduct the relief process at the position being relieved unless other procedures have been established and authorized by the facility air traffic manager.

NOTE–
The "sharing" of this responsibility means that the specialist being relieved is obligated to provide a complete, accurate briefing and the relieving specialist is obligated to ensure that a briefing takes place and is to his/her total satisfaction.

6. STEP-BY-STEP PROCESS

a. PREVIEW THE POSITION

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
1. Follow checklist and review the Status Information Area(s).	
NOTE– *This sub-step may be replaced by an authorized pre-position briefing provided an equivalent review of checklist items is accomplished.*	
2. Observe position equipment, operational situation, and the work environment. 3. Listen to voice communications and observe other operational actions. 4. Observe current and pending aircraft and vehicular traffic and correlate with flight and other movement information. 5. Indicate to the specialist being relieved that the position has been previewed and that the verbal briefing may begin.	
NOTE– Substeps 6a2, 3, and 4 may be conducted concurrently or in any order.	

b. VERBAL BRIEFING

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
	1. Brief the relieving specialist on the abnormal status of items not listed on the Status Information Area(s) as well as on any items of special interest calling for verbal explanation or additional discussion.
	2. Brief on traffic if applicable.
3. Ask questions necessary to ensure a complete understanding of the operational situation.	
	4. Completely answer any questions asked.

c. ASSUMPTION OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
1. Make a statement or otherwise indicate to the specialist being relieved that position responsibility has been assumed.	
	2. Release the position to the relieving specialist.

d. REVIEW THE POSITION

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
1. Sign-on the position unless a facility directive authorizes substep 6d8. 2. Check, verify, and update the information obtained in steps 6a and b. 3. Check position equipment in accordance with existing directives.	
	4. Review checklist, Status Information Area/s, written notes, and other prescribed sources of information and advise the relieving specialist of known omissions, updates, or inaccuracies. 5. Observe overall position operation to determine if assistance is needed. 6. If assistance is needed, provide or summon it as appropriate. 7. Advise the appropriate position regarding known Status Information Area(s) omissions, updates, or inaccuracies. 8. Sign-on the relieving specialist if appropriate. 9. Sign off the position in accordance with existing directives or otherwise indicate that the relief process is complete.

PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY

This Glossary was compiled to promote a common understanding of the terms used in the Air Traffic Control system. It includes those terms which are intended for pilot/controller communications. Those terms most frequently used in pilot/controller communications are printed in ***bold italics***. The definitions are primarily defined in an operational sense applicable to both users and operators of the National Airspace System. Use of the Glossary will preclude any misunderstandings concerning the system's design, function, and purpose.

Because of the international nature of flying, terms used in the Lexicon, published by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), are included when they differ from FAA definitions. These terms are followed by "[ICAO]." For the reader's convenience, there are also cross references to related terms in other parts of the Glossary and to other documents, such as the Federal Aviation Regulations (FAR's) and the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM).

This Glossary will be revised, as necessary, to maintain a common understanding of the system.

A

AAI– (See ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT INTERVAL.)

AAR– (See AIRPORT ACCEPTANCE RATE.)

ABBREVIATED IFR FLIGHT PLANS– An authorization by ATC requiring pilots to submit only that information needed for the purpose of ATC. It includes only a small portion of the usual IFR flight plan information. In certain instances, this may be only aircraft identification, location, and pilot request. Other information may be requested if needed by ATC for separation/control purposes. It is frequently used by aircraft which are airborne and desire an instrument approach or by aircraft which are on the ground and desire a climb to VFR-on-top.

(See VFR-ON-TOP.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ABEAM– An aircraft is "abeam" a fix, point, or object when that fix, point, or object is approximately 90 degrees to the right or left of the aircraft track. Abeam indicates a general position rather than a precise point.

ABORT– To terminate a preplanned aircraft maneuver; e.g., an aborted takeoff.

ACC [ICAO]– (See AREA CONTROL CENTER.)

ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE– The runway plus stopway length declared available and suitable for the acceleration and deceleration of an airplane aborting a takeoff.

ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]– The length of the take-off run available plus the length of the stopway if provided.

ACDO– (See AIR CARRIER DISTRICT OFFICE.)

ACKNOWLEDGE– Let me know that you have received my message.

(See ICAO term ACKNOWLEDGE.)

ACKNOWLEDGE [ICAO]– Let me know that you have received and understood this message.

ACLS– (See AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM.)

ACLT– (See ACTUAL CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

ACROBATIC FLIGHT– An intentional maneuver involving an abrupt change in an aircraft's attitude, an abnormal attitude, or abnormal acceleration not necessary for normal flight.

(Refer to Part 91.)

(See ICAO term ACROBATIC FLIGHT.)

ACROBATIC FLIGHT [ICAO]– Maneuvers intentionally performed by an aircraft involving an abrupt change in its attitude, an abnormal attitude, or an abnormal variation in speed.

ACTIVE RUNWAY– (See RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.)

ACTUAL CALCULATED LANDING TIME– ACLT is a flight's frozen calculated landing time. An actual time determined at freeze calculated landing time (FCLT) or meter list display interval (MLDI) for the adapted vertex for each arrival aircraft based upon runway configuration, airport acceptance rate, airport arrival delay period, and other metered arrival aircraft. This time is either the vertex time of arrival (VTA) of the aircraft or the tentative calculated landing time (TCLT)/ACLT of the previous aircraft plus the arrival aircraft interval (AAI), whichever is later. This time will not be updated in response to the aircraft's progress.

ADDITIONAL SERVICES– Advisory information provided by ATC which includes but is not limited to the following:

a. Traffic advisories.

b. Vectors, when requested by the pilot, to assist aircraft receiving traffic advisories to avoid observed traffic.

c. Altitude deviation information of 300 feet or more from an assigned altitude as observed on a verified (reading correctly) automatic altitude readout (Mode C.)

d. Advisories that traffic is no longer a factor.

e. Weather and chaff information.

f. Weather assistance.

g. Bird activity information.

h. Holding pattern surveillance. Additional services are provided to the extent possible contingent only upon the controller's capability to fit them into the performance of higher priority duties and on the basis of limitations of the radar, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, and controller workload. The controller has complete discretion for determining if he/she is able to provide or continue to provide a service in a particular case. The controller's reason not to provide or continue to provide a service in a particular case is not subject to question by the pilot and need not be made known to him/her.

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ADF– (See AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER.)

ADIZ– (See AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE.)

ADLY– (See ARRIVAL DELAY.)

ADMINISTRATOR– The Federal Aviation Administrator or any person to whom he/she has delegated his/her authority in the matter concerned.

ADVISE INTENTIONS– Tell me what you plan to do.

ADVISORY– Advice and information provided to assist pilots in the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement.

(See ADVISORY SERVICE.)

ADVISORY FREQUENCY– The appropriate frequency to be used for Airport Advisory Service.

(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)

(See UNICOM.)

(Refer to ADVISORY CIRCULAR NO. 90-42.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ADVISORY SERVICE– Advice and information provided by a facility to assist pilots in the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement.

(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

(See SAFETY ALERT.)

(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)

(See RADAR ADVISORY.)

(See EN ROUTE FLIGHT ADVISORY SERVICE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AERIAL REFUELING– A procedure used by the military to transfer fuel from one aircraft to another during flight.

(Refer to VFR/IFR Wall Planning Charts.)

AERODROME– A defined area on land or water (including any buildings, installations and equipment) intended to be used either wholly or in part for the arrival, departure, and movement of aircraft.

AERODROME BEACON [ICAO]– Aeronautical beacon used to indicate the location of an aerodrome from the air.

AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]– Air traffic control service for aerodrome traffic.

AERODROME CONTROL TOWER [ICAO]– A unit established to provide air traffic control service to aerodrome traffic.

AERODROME ELEVATION [ICAO]– The elevation of the highest point of the landing area.

AERODROME TRAFFIC CIRCUIT [ICAO]– The specified path to be flown by aircraft operating in the vicinity of an aerodrome.

AERONAUTICAL BEACON– A visual NAVAID displaying flashes of white and/or colored light to indicate the location of an airport, a heliport, a landmark, a certain point of a Federal airway in mountainous terrain, or an obstruction.

(See AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AERONAUTICAL CHART– A map used in air navigation containing all or part of the following: topographic features, hazards and obstructions, navigation aids, navigation routes, designated airspace, and airports. Commonly used aeronautical charts are:

a. Sectional Aeronautical Charts (1:500,000)– Designed for visual navigation of slow or medium speed aircraft. Topographic information on these charts features the portrayal of relief and a judicious selection of visual check points for VFR flight. Aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, restricted areas, obstructions, and related data.

b. VFR Terminal Area Charts (1:250,000)– Depict Class B airspace which provides for the control or segregation of all the aircraft within Class B airspace. The chart depicts topographic information and aeronautical information which includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, restricted areas, obstructions, and related data.

c. World Aeronautical Charts (WAC) (1:1,000,000)– Provide a standard series of aeronautical charts covering land areas of the world at a size and scale convenient for navigation by moderate speed aircraft. Topographic information includes cities and towns, principal roads, railroads, distinctive landmarks, drainage, and relief. Aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, airways, restricted areas, obstructions, and other pertinent data.

d. En Route Low Altitude Charts– Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the low altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of airways, limits of controlled airspace, position identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, minimum en route and minimum obstruction clearance altitudes, airway distances, reporting points, restricted areas, and related data. Area charts, which are a part of this series, furnish terminal data at a larger scale in congested areas.

e. En Route High Altitude Charts– Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the high altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of jet routes, identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, distances, time zones, special use airspace, and related information.

f. Instrument Approach Procedures (IAP) Charts– Portray the aeronautical data which is required to execute an instrument approach to an airport. These charts depict the procedures, including all related data, and the airport diagram. Each procedure is designated for use with a specific type of electronic navigation system including NDB, TACAN, VOR, ILS/MLS, and RNAV. These charts are identified by the type of navigational aid(s) which provide final approach guidance.

g. Standard Instrument Departure (SID) Charts– Designed to expedite clearance delivery and to facilitate transition between takeoff and en route operations. Each SID procedure is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

h. Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Charts– Designed to expedite air traffic control arrival procedures and to facilitate transition between en route and instrument approach operations. Each STAR procedure is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

i. Airport Taxi Charts– Designed to expedite the efficient and safe flow of ground traffic at an airport. These charts are identified by the official airport name; e.g., Washington National Airport.

(See ICAO term AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

AERONAUTICAL CHART [ICAO]– A representation of a portion of the earth, its culture and relief, specifically designated to meet the requirements of air navigation.

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL– A primary FAA publication whose purpose is to instruct airmen about operating in the National Airspace System of the U.S. It provides basic flight information, ATC Procedures and general instructional information concerning health, medical facts, factors affecting flight safety, accident and hazard reporting, and types of aeronautical charts and their use.

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION [AIP] [ICAO]– A publication issued by or with the authority of a State and containing aeronautical information of a lasting character essential to air navigation.

A/FD– (See AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

AFFIRMATIVE– Yes.

AIM– (See AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL.)

AIP [ICAO]– (See AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION.)

AIRBORNE DELAY– Amount of delay to be encountered in airborne holding.

AIR CARRIER DISTRICT OFFICE– An FAA field office serving an assigned geographical area, staffed with Flight Standards personnel serving the aviation industry and the general public on matters related to the certification and operation of scheduled air carriers and other large aircraft operations.

AIRCRAFT– Device(s) that are used or intended to be used for flight in the air, and when used in air traffic control terminology, may include the flight crew.

(See ICAO term AIRCRAFT.)

AIRCRAFT [ICAO]– Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air other than the reactions of the air against the earth's surface.

AIRCRAFT APPROACH CATEGORY– A grouping of aircraft based on a speed of 1.3 times the stall speed in the landing configuration at maximum gross landing weight. An aircraft shall fit in only one category. If it is necessary to maneuver at speeds in excess of the upper limit of a speed range for a category, the minimums for the next higher category should be used. For example, an aircraft which falls in Category A, but is circling to land at a speed in excess of 91 knots, should use the approach Category B minimums when circling to land. The categories are as follows:

a. Category A– Speed less than 91 knots.

b. Category B– Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.

c. Category C– Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.

d. Category D– Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.

e. Category E– Speed 166 knots or more.

(Refer to Part 97.)

AIRCRAFT CLASSES– For the purposes of Wake Turbulence Separation Minima, ATC classifies aircraft as Heavy, Large, and Small as follows:

a. Heavy– Aircraft capable of takeoff weights of more than 255,000 pounds whether or not they are operating at this weight during a particular phase of flight.

b. Large– Aircraft of more than 41,000 pounds, maximum certificated takeoff weight, up to 255,000 pounds.

c. Small– Aircraft of 41,000 pounds or less maximum certificated takeoff weight.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRCRAFT SITUATION DISPLAY– ASD is a computer system that receives radar track data from all 20 CONUS ARTCC's, organizes this data into a mosaic display, and presents it on a computer screen. The display allows the traffic management coordinator multiple methods of selection and highlighting of individual aircraft or groups of aircraft. The user has the option of superimposing these aircraft positions over any number of background displays. These background options include ARTCC boundaries, any stratum of en route sector boundaries, fixes, airways, military and other special use airspace, airports, and geopolitical boundaries. By using the ASD, a coordinator can monitor any number of traffic situations or the entire systemwide traffic flows.

AIRCRAFT SURGE LAUNCH AND RECOVERY– Procedures used at USAF bases to provide increased launch and recovery rates in instrument flight rules conditions. ASLAR is based on:

a. Reduced separation between aircraft which is based on time or distance. Standard arrival separation applies between participants including multiple flights until the DRAG point. The DRAG point is a published location on an ASLAR approach where aircraft landing second in a formation slows to a predetermined airspeed. The DRAG point is the reference point at which MARSA applies as expanding elements effect separation within a flight or between subsequent participating flights.

b. ASLAR procedures shall be covered in a Letter of Agreement between the responsible USAF military ATC facility and the concerned Federal Aviation Administration facility. Initial Approach Fix spacing requirements are normally addressed as a minimum.

AIR DEFENSE EMERGENCY– A military emergency condition declared by a designated authority. This condition exists when an attack upon the continental U.S., Alaska, Canada, or U.S. installations in Greenland by hostile aircraft or missiles is considered probable, is imminent, or is taking place.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE– The area of airspace over land or water, extending upward from the surface, within which the ready identification, the location, and the control of aircraft are required in the interest of national security.

a. Domestic Air Defense Identification Zone. An ADIZ within the United States along an international boundary of the United States.

b. Coastal Air Defense Identification Zone. An ADIZ over the coastal waters of the United States.

c. Distant Early Warning Identification Zone (DEWIZ.) An ADIZ over the coastal waters of the State of Alaska.

ADIZ locations and operating and flight plan requirements for civil aircraft operations are specified in FAR Part 99.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRMAN'S METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION– (See AIRMET.)

AIRMET– In-flight weather advisories issued only to amend the area forecast concerning weather phenomena which are of operational interest to all aircraft and potentially hazardous to aircraft having limited capability because of lack of equipment, instrumentation, or pilot qualifications. AIRMET's concern weather of less severity than that covered by SIGMET's or Convective SIGMET's. AIRMET's cover moderate icing, moderate turbulence, sustained winds of 30 knots or more at the surface, widespread areas of ceilings less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility less than 3 miles, and extensive mountain obscurement.

(See AWW.)

(See SIGMET.)

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

(See CWA.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR NAVIGATION FACILITY– Any facility used in, available for use in, or designed for use in, aid of air navigation, including landing areas, lights, any apparatus or equipment for disseminating weather information, for signaling, for radio-directional finding, or for radio or other electrical communication, and any other structure or mechanism having a similar purpose for guiding or controlling flight in the air or the landing and take-off of aircraft.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

AIRPORT– An area on land or water that is used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of aircraft and includes its buildings and facilities, if any.

AIRPORT ACCEPTANCE RATE– A dynamic input parameter specifying the number of arriving aircraft which an airport or airspace can accept from the ARTCC per hour. The AAR is used to calculate the desired interval between successive arrival aircraft.

AIRPORT ADVISORY AREA– The area within ten miles of an airport without a control tower or where the tower is not in operation, and on which a Flight Service Station is located.

(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT ELEVATION– The highest point of an airport's usable runways measured in feet from mean sea level.

(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION.)

(See ICAO term AERODROME ELEVATION.)

AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY– A publication designed primarily as a pilot's operational manual containing all airports, seaplane bases, and heliports open to the public including communications data, navigational facilities, and certain special notices and procedures. This publication is issued in seven volumes according to geographical area.

AIRPORT INFORMATION AID– (See AIRPORT INFORMATION DESK.)

AIRPORT INFORMATION DESK– An airport unmanned facility designed for pilot self-service briefing, flight planning, and filing of flight plans.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT LIGHTING– Various lighting aids that may be installed on an airport. Types of airport lighting include:

a. Approach Light System (ALS)– An airport lighting facility which provides visual guidance to landing aircraft by radiating light beams in a directional pattern by which the pilot aligns the aircraft with the extended centerline of the runway on his final approach for landing. Condenser-Discharge Sequential Flashing Lights/Sequenced Flashing Lights may be installed in conjunction with the ALS at some airports. Types of Approach Light Systems are:

1. ALSF-1– Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights in ILS Cat-I configuration.

2. ALSF-2– Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights in ILS Cat-II configuration. The ALSF-2 may operate as an SSALR when weather conditions permit.

3. SSALF– Simplified Short Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights.

4. SSALR– Simplified Short Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

5. MALSF– Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights.

6. MALSR– Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

7. LDIN– Lead-in-light system– Consists of one or more series of flashing lights installed at or near ground level that provides positive visual guidance along an approach path, either curving or straight, where special problems exist with hazardous terrain, obstructions, or noise abatement procedures.

8. RAIL– Runway Alignment Indicator Lights– Sequenced Flashing Lights which are installed only in combination with other light systems.

9. ODALS– Omnidirectional Approach Lighting System consists of seven omnidirectional flashing lights located in the approach area of a nonprecision runway. Five lights are located on the runway centerline extended with the first light located 300 feet from the threshold and extending at equal intervals up to 1,500 feet from the threshold. The other two lights are located, one on each side of the runway threshold, at a lateral distance of 40 feet from the runway edge, or 75 feet from the runway edge when installed on a runway equipped with a VASI.

(Refer to FAA Order 6850.2, VISUAL GUIDANCE LIGHTING SYSTEMS.)

b. Runway Lights/Runway Edge Lights– Lights having a prescribed angle of emission used to define the lateral limits of a runway. Runway lights are uniformly spaced at intervals of approximately 200 feet, and the intensity may be controlled or preset.

c. Touchdown Zone Lighting– Two rows of transverse light bars located symmetrically about the runway centerline normally at 100 foot intervals. The basic system extends 3,000 feet along the runway.

d. Runway Centerline Lighting– Flush centerline lights spaced at 50-foot intervals beginning 75 feet from the landing threshold and extending to within 75 feet of the opposite end of the runway.

e. Threshold Lights– Fixed green lights arranged symmetrically left and right of the runway centerline, identifying the runway threshold.

f. Runway End Identifier Lights (REIL)– Two synchronized flashing lights, one on each side of the runway threshold, which provide rapid and positive identification of the approach end of a particular runway.

g. Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI)– An airport lighting facility providing vertical visual approach slope guidance to aircraft during approach to landing by radiating a directional pattern of high intensity red and white focused light beams which indicate to the pilot that he is "on path" if he sees red/white, "above path" if white/white, and "below path" if red/red. Some airports serving large aircraft have three-bar VASI's which provide two visual glide paths to the same runway.

h. Boundary Lights– Lights defining the perimeter of an airport or landing area.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT MARKING AIDS– Markings used on runway and taxiway surfaces to identify a specific runway, a runway threshold, a centerline, a hold line, etc. A runway should be marked in accordance with its present usage such as:

a. Visual.

b. Nonprecision instrument.

c. Precision instrument.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT REFERENCE POINT (ARP) – The approximate geometric center of all usable runway surfaces.

AIRPORT RESERVATION OFFICE– Office responsible for monitoring the operation of the high density rule. Receives and processes requests for IFR operations at high density traffic airports.

AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON– A visual NAVAID operated at many airports. At civil airports, alternating white and green flashes indicate the location of the airport. At military airports, the beacons flash alternately white and green, but are differentiated from civil beacons by dualpeaked (two quick) white flashes between the green flashes.

(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term AERODROME BEACON.)

AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION EQUIPMENT– Radar equipment specifically designed to detect all principal features on the surface of an airport, including aircraft and vehicular traffic, and to present the entire image on a radar indicator console in the control tower. Used to augment visual observation by tower personnel of aircraft and/or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways.

AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR– Approach control radar used to detect and display an aircraft's position in the terminal area. ASR provides range and azimuth information but does not provide elevation data. Coverage of the ASR can extend up to 60 miles.

AIRPORT TAXI CHARTS– (See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE– A service provided by a control tower for aircraft operating on the movement area and in the vicinity of an airport.

(See MOVEMENT AREA.)

(See TOWER.)

(See ICAO term AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE.)

AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL TOWER– (See TOWER.)

AIR ROUTE SURVEILLANCE RADAR– Air route traffic control center (ARTCC) radar used primarily to detect and display an aircraft's position while en route between terminal areas. The ARSR enables controllers to provide radar air traffic control service when aircraft are within the ARSR coverage. In some instances, ARSR may enable an ARTCC to provide terminal radar services similar to but usually more limited than those provided by a radar approach control.

AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER– A facility established to provide air traffic control service to aircraft operating on IFR flight plans within controlled airspace and principally during the en route phase of flight. When equipment capabilities and controller workload permit, certain advisory/assistance services may be provided to VFR aircraft.

(See NAS STAGE A.)

(See EN ROUTE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRSPACE HIERARCHY– Within the airspace classes, there is a hierarchy and, in the event of an overlap of airspace: Class A preempts Class B, Class B preempts Class C, Class C preempts Class D, Class D preempts Class E, and Class E preempts Class G.

AIRSPEED– The speed of an aircraft relative to its surrounding air mass. The unqualified term "airspeed" means one of the following:

a. Indicated Airspeed– The speed shown on the aircraft airspeed indicator. This is the speed used in pilot/controller communications under the general term "airspeed."

(Refer to FAR Part 1.)

b. True Airspeed– The airspeed of an aircraft relative to undisturbed air. Used primarily in flight planning and en route portion of flight. When used in pilot/controller communications, it is referred to as "true airspeed" and not shortened to "airspeed."

AIRSTART– The starting of an aircraft engine while the aircraft is airborne, preceded by engine shutdown during training flights or by actual engine failure.

AIR TAXI– Used to describe a helicopter/VTOL aircraft movement conducted above the surface but normally not above 100 feet AGL. The aircraft may proceed either via hover taxi or flight at speeds more than 20 knots. The pilot is solely responsible for selecting a safe airspeed/altitude for the operation being conducted.

(See HOVER TAXI.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR TRAFFIC– Aircraft operating in the air or on an airport surface, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas.

(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC.)

AIR TRAFFIC [ICAO]– All aircraft in flight or operating on the manoeuvring area of an aerodrome.

AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE– An authorization by air traffic control for the purpose of preventing collision between known aircraft, for an aircraft to proceed under specified traffic conditions within controlled airspace. The pilot-in-command of an aircraft may not deviate from the provisions of a visual flight rules (VFR) or instrument flight rules (IFR) air traffic clearance except in an emergency or unless an amended clearance has been obtained. Additionally, the pilot may request a different clearance from that which has been issued by air traffic control (ATC) if information available to the pilot makes another course of action more practicable or if aircraft equipment limitations or company procedures forbid compliance with the clearance issued. Pilots may also request clarification or amendment, as appropriate, any time a clearance is not fully understood, or considered unacceptable because of safety of flight. Controllers should, in such instances and to the extent of operational practicality and safety, honor the pilot's request. FAR Part 91.3(a) states: "The pilot in command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to, the operation of that aircraft." THE PILOT IS RESPONSIBLE TO REQUEST AN AMENDED CLEARANCE if ATC issues a clearance that would cause a pilot to deviate from a rule or regulation, or in the pilot's opinion, would place the aircraft in jeopardy.

(See ATC INSTRUCTIONS.)

(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL CLEARANCE.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL– A service operated by appropriate authority to promote the safe, orderly and expeditious flow of air traffic.

(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL CLEARANCE [ICAO]– Authorization for an aircraft to proceed under conditions specified by an air traffic control unit.

Note 1: For convenience, the term air traffic control clearance is frequently abbreviated to clearance when used in appropriate contexts.

Note 2: The abbreviated term clearance may be prefixed by the words taxi, takeoff, departure, en route, approach or landing to indicate the particular portion of flight to which the air traffic control clearance relates.

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE– (See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]– A service provided for the purpose of:

a. Preventing collisions:

1. Between aircraft; and

2. On the manoeuvring area between aircraft and obstructions; and

b. Expediting and maintaining an orderly flow of air traffic.

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SPECIALIST– A person authorized to provide air traffic control service.

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)

(See ICAO term CONTROLLER.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER– An Air Traffic Operations Service facility consisting of four operational units.

a. Central Flow Control Function (CFCF). Responsible for coordination and approval of all major intercenter flow control restrictions on a system basis in order to obtain maximum utilization of the airspace.

(See QUOTA FLOW CONTROL.)

b. Central Altitude Reservation Function (CARF). Responsible for coordinating, planning, and approving special user requirements under the Altitude Reservation (ALTRV) concept.

(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

c. Airport Reservation Office (ARO). Responsible for approving IFR flights at designated high density traffic airports (John F. Kennedy, LaGuardia, O'Hare, and Washington National) during specified hours.

(Refer to FAR Part 93 and AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

d. ATC Contingency Command Post. A facility which enables the FAA to manage the ATC system when significant portions of the system's capabilities have been lost or are threatened.

AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE– A generic term meaning:

a. Flight Information Service:

b. Alerting Service:

c. Air Traffic Advisory Service:

d. Air Traffic Control Service:

1. Area Control Service,

2. Approach Control Service, or

3. Airport Control Service.

AIRWAY– A Class E airspace area established in the form of a corridor, the centerline of which is defined by radio navigational aids.

(See FEDERAL AIRWAYS.)

(Refer to FAR Part 71.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term AIRWAY.)

AIRWAY [ICAO]– A control area or portion thereof established in the form of corridor equipped with radio navigational aids.

AIRWAY BEACON– Used to mark airway segments in remote mountain areas. The light flashes Morse Code to identify the beacon site.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIT– (See AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER.)

ALERFA (Alert Phase) [ICAO]– A situation wherein apprehension exists as to the safety of an aircraft and its occupants.

ALERT AREA– (See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

ALERT NOTICE– A request originated by a flight service station (FSS) or an air route traffic control center (ARTCC) for an extensive communication search for overdue, unreported, or missing aircraft.

ALERTING SERVICE– A service provided to notify appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid and assist such organizations as required.

ALNOT– (See ALERT NOTICE.)

ALONG TRACK DISTANCE (LTD) – The distance measured from a point–in–space by systems using area navigation reference capabilities that are not subject to slant range errors.

ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY– Letters and numerals used to show identification, altitude, beacon code, and other information concerning a target on a radar display.

(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

(See NAS STAGE A.)

ALTERNATE AERODROME [ICAO]– An aerodrome to which an aircraft may proceed when it becomes either impossible or inadvisable to proceed to or to land at the aerodrome of intended landing.

Note: The aerodrome from which a flight departs may also be an en-route or a destination alternate aerodrome for the flight.

ALTERNATE AIRPORT– An airport at which an aircraft may land if a landing at the intended airport becomes inadvisable.

(See ICAO term ALTERNATE AERODROME.)

ALTIMETER SETTING– The barometric pressure reading used to adjust a pressure altimeter for variations in existing atmospheric pressure or to the standard altimeter setting (29.92.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ALTITUDE– The height of a level, point, or object measured in feet Above Ground Level (AGL) or from Mean Sea Level (MSL.)

(See FLIGHT LEVEL.)

a. MSL Altitude– Altitude expressed in feet measured from mean sea level.

b. AGL Altitude– Altitude expressed in feet measured above ground level.

c. Indicated Altitude– The altitude as shown by an altimeter. On a pressure or barometric altimeter it is altitude as shown uncorrected for instrument error and uncompensated for variation from standard atmospheric conditions.

(See ICAO term ALTITUDE.)

ALTITUDE [ICAO]– The vertical distance of a level, a point or an object considered as a point, measured from mean sea level (MSL.)

ALTITUDE READOUT– An aircraft's altitude, transmitted via the Mode C transponder feature, that is visually displayed in 100-foot increments on a radar scope having readout capability.

(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

(See NAS STAGE A.)

(See ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ALTITUDE RESERVATION– Airspace utilization under prescribed conditions normally employed for the mass movement of aircraft or other special user requirements which cannot otherwise be accomplished. ALTRV's are approved by the appropriate FAA facility.

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

ALTITUDE RESTRICTION– An altitude or altitudes, stated in the order flown, which are to be maintained until reaching a specific point or time. Altitude restrictions may be issued by ATC due to traffic, terrain, or other airspace considerations.

ALTITUDE RESTRICTIONS ARE CANCELED– Adherence to previously imposed altitude restrictions is no longer required during a climb or descent.

ALTRV– (See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

AMVER– (See AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM

APPROACH CLEARANCE– Authorization by ATC for a pilot to conduct an instrument approach. The type of instrument approach for which a clearance and other pertinent information is provided in the approach clearance when required.

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

(See CLEARED APPROACH.)

(Refer to AIM and FAR Part 91.)

APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY– A terminal ATC facility that provides approach control service in a terminal area.

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

(See RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE– Air traffic control service provided by an approach control facility for arriving and departing VFR/IFR aircraft and, on occasion, en route aircraft. At some airports not served by an approach control facility, the ARTCC provides limited approach control service.

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]– Air traffic control service for arriving or departing controlled flights.

APPROACH GATE– An imaginary point used within ATC as a basis for vectoring aircraft to the final approach course. The gate will be established along the final approach course 1 mile from the outer marker (or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker) on the side away from the airport for precision approaches and 1 mile from the final approach fix on the side away from the airport for nonprecision approaches. In either case when measured along the final approach course, the gate will be no closer than 5 miles from the landing threshold.

APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEM– (See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE– The order in which aircraft are positioned while on approach or awaiting approach clearance.

(See LANDING SEQUENCE.)

(See ICAO term APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE [ICAO]– The order in which two or more aircraft are cleared to approach to land at the aerodrome.

APPROACH SPEED– The recommended speed contained in aircraft manuals used by pilots when making an approach to landing. This speed will vary for different segments of an approach as well as for aircraft weight and configuration.

APPROPRIATE ATS AUTHORITY [ICAO]– The relevant authority designated by the State responsible for providing air traffic services in the airspace concerned. In the United States, the "appropriate ATS authority" is the Program Director for Air Traffic Operations, ATO-1.

APPROPRIATE AUTHORITY–

a. Regarding flight over the high seas: the relevant authority is the State of Registry.

b. Regarding flight over other than the high seas: the relevant authority is the State having sovereignty over the territory being overflown.

APPROPRIATE OBSTACLE CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE– Any of the following:

(See Minimum IFR Altitude–MIA.)

(See Minimum En Route Altitude–MEA.)

(See Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude–MOCA.)

(See Minimum Vectoring Altitude–MVA.)

APPROPRIATE TERRAIN CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE– Any of the following:

(See Minimum IFR Altitude–MIA.)

(See Minimum En Route Altitude–MEA.)

(See Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude–MOCA.)

(See Minimum Vectoring Altitude–MVA.)

APRON– A defined area on an airport or heliport intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers or cargo, refueling, parking, or maintenance. With regard to seaplanes, a ramp is used for access to the apron from the water.

(See ICAO term APRON.)

APRON [ICAO]– A defined area, on a land aerodrome, intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers, mail or cargo, refueling, parking or maintenance.

ARC– The track over the ground of an aircraft flying at a constant distance from a navigational aid by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).

AREA CONTROL CENTER [ICAO]– An ICAO term for an air traffic control facility primarily responsible for ATC services being provided IFR aircraft during the en route phase of flight. The U.S. equivalent facility is an air route traffic control center (ARTCC).

AREA NAVIGATION– A method of navigation that permits aircraft operation on any desired course within the coverage of station-referenced navigation signals or within the limits of a self-contained system capability. Random area navigation routes are direct routes, based on area navigation capability, between waypoints defined in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates, degree/distance fixes, or offsets from published or established routes/airways at a specified distance and direction. The major types of equipment are:

a. VORTAC referenced or Course Line Computer (CLC) systems, which account for the greatest number of RNAV units in use. To function, the CLC must be within the service range of a VORTAC.

b. OMEGA/VLF, although two separate systems, can be considered as one operationally. A long-range navigation system based upon Very Low Frequency radio signals transmitted from a total of 17 stations worldwide.

c. Inertial (INS) systems, which are totally self-contained and require no information from external references. They provide aircraft position and navigation information in response to signals resulting from inertial effects on components within the system.

d. MLS Area Navigation (MLS/RNAV), which provides area navigation with reference to an MLS ground facility.

e. LORAN-C is a long-range radio navigation system that uses ground waves transmitted at low frequency to provide user position information at ranges of up to 600 to 1,200 nautical miles at both en route and approach altitudes. The usable signal coverage areas are determined by the signal-to-noise ratio, the envelope-to-cycle difference, and the geometric relationship between the positions of the user and the transmitting stations.

f. GPS-is a space-base radio positioning, navigation, and time-transfer system. The system provides highly accurate position and velocity information, and precise time, on a continuous global basis, to an unlimited number of properly equipped users. The system is unaffected by weather, and provides a worldwide common grid reference system.

(See ICAO term AREA NAVIGATION.)

AREA NAVIGATION [ICAO]– A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of station-referenced navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these.

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) APPROACH CONFIGURATION:

a. STANDARD T– An RNAV approach whose design allows direct flight to any one of three initial approach fixes (IAF) and eliminates the need for procedure turns. The standard design is to align the procedure on the extended centerline with the missed approach point (MAP) at the runway threshold, the final approach fix (FAF), and the initial approach/intermediate fix (IAF/IF). The other two IAF's will be established perpendicular to the IF.

b. MODIFIED T– An RNAV approach design for single or multiple runways where terrain or operational constraints do not allow for the standard T. The "T" may be modified by increasing or decreasing the angle from the corner IAF(s) to the IF or by eliminating one or both corner IAF's.

c. STANDARD I– An RNAV approach design for a single runway with both corner IAF's eliminated. Course reversal or radar vectoring may be required at busy terminals with multiple runways.

d. TERMINAL ARRIVAL AREA (TAA)– The TAA is controlled airspace established in conjunction with the Standard or Modified T and I RNAV approach configurations. In the standard TAA, there are three areas: straight–in, left base, and right base. The arc boundaries of the three areas of the TAA are published portions of the approach and allow aircraft to transition from the en route structure direct to the nearest IAF. TAA's will also eliminate or reduce feeder routes, departure extensions, and procedure turns or course reversal.

1. STRAIGHT–IN AREA– A 30NM arc centered on the IF bounded by a straight line extending through the IF perpendicular to the intermediate course.

2. LEFT BASE AREA– A 30NM arc centered on the right corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight–in area except that it extends out for 30NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

3. RIGHT BASE AREA– A 30NM arc centered on the left corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight–in area except that it extends out for 30NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

ARINC– An acronym for Aeronautical Radio, Inc., a corporation largely owned by a group of airlines. ARINC is licensed by the FCC as an aeronautical station and contracted by the FAA to provide communications support for air traffic control and meteorological services in portions of international airspace.

ARMY AVIATION FLIGHT INFORMATION BULLETIN– A bulletin that provides air operation data covering Army, National Guard, and Army Reserve aviation activities.

ARO– (See AIRPORT RESERVATION OFFICE.)

ARRESTING SYSTEM– A safety device consisting of two major components, namely, engaging or catching devices and energy absorption devices for the purpose of arresting both tailhook and/or nontailhook-equipped aircraft. It is used to prevent aircraft from overrunning runways when the aircraft cannot be stopped after landing or during aborted takeoff. Arresting systems have various names; e.g., arresting gear, hook device, wire barrier cable.

(See ABORT.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT INTERVAL– An internally generated program in hundredths of minutes based upon the AAR. AAI is the desired optimum interval between successive arrival aircraft over the vertex.

ARRIVAL CENTER– The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the impacted airport.

ARRIVAL DELAY– A parameter which specifies a period of time in which no aircraft will be metered for arrival at the specified airport.

ARRIVAL SECTOR– An operational control sector containing one or more meter fixes.

ARRIVAL SECTOR ADVISORY LIST– An ordered list of data on arrivals displayed at the PVD of the sector which controls the meter fix.

ARRIVAL SEQUENCING PROGRAM– The automated program designed to assist in sequencing aircraft destined for the same airport.

ARRIVAL TIME– The time an aircraft touches down on arrival.

ARSR– (See AIR ROUTE SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ARTCC– (See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

ARTS– (See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

ASD– (See AIRCRAFT SITUATION DISPLAY.)

ASDA– (See ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDA [ICAO]– (See ICAO Term ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDE– (See AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION EQUIPMENT.)

ASLAR– (See AIRCRAFT SURGE LAUNCH AND RECOVERY.)

ASP– (See ARRIVAL SEQUENCING PROGRAM.)

ASR– (See AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ASR APPROACH– (See SURVEILLANCE APPROACH.)

ATC– (See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

ATCAA– (See ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE.)

ATC ADVISES– Used to prefix a message of noncontrol information when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

(See ADVISORY.)

ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE– Airspace of defined vertical/lateral limits, assigned by ATC, for the purpose of providing air traffic segregation between the specified activities being conducted within the assigned airspace and other IFR air traffic.

(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

ATC CLEARANCE– (See AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE.)

ATC CLEARS– Used to prefix an ATC clearance when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATC INSTRUCTIONS– Directives issued by air traffic control for the purpose of requiring a pilot to take specific actions; e.g., "Turn left heading two five zero," "Go around," "Clear the runway."

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

ATCRBS– (See RADAR.)

ATC REQUESTS– Used to prefix an ATC request when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATCSCC– (See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

ATCSCC DELAY FACTOR– The amount of delay calculated to be assigned prior to departure.

ATCT– (See TOWER.)

ATIS– (See AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATIS [ICAO]– (See ICAO Term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATS Route [ICAO]– A specified route designed for channelling the flow of traffic as necessary for the provision of air traffic services.

Note: The term "ATS Route" is used to mean variously, airway, advisory route, controlled or uncontrolled route, arrival or departure, etc.

AUTOLAND APPROACH– An autoland approach is a precision instrument approach to touchdown and, in some cases, through the landing rollout. An autoland approach is performed by the aircraft autopilot which is receiving position information and/or steering commands from onboard navigation equipment (See COUPLED APPROACH.)

Note: Autoland and coupled approaches are flown in VFR and IFR. It is common for carriers to require their crews to fly coupled approaches and autoland approaches (if certified) when the weather conditions are less than approximately 4,000 RVR.

AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER– A precoordinated process, specifically defined in facility directives, during which a transfer of altitude control and/or radar identification is accomplished without verbal coordination between controllers using information communicated in a full data block.

AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM– A facility which can deliver, in a matter of minutes, a surface picture (SURPIC) of vessels in the area of a potential or actual search and rescue incident, including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(See FAA Order 7110.65, paragraph 10–7–4, IN-FLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS– The generic term for the ultimate in functional capability afforded by several automation systems. Each differs in functional capabilities and equipment. ARTS plus a suffix roman numeral denotes a specific system. A following letter indicates a major modification to that system. In general, an ARTS displays for the terminal controller aircraft identification, flight plan data, other flight associated information; e.g., altitude, speed, and aircraft position symbols in conjunction with his radar presentation. Normal radar co-exists with the alphanumeric display. In addition to enhancing visualization of the air traffic situation, ARTS facilitate intra/inter-facility transfer and coordination of flight information. These capabilities are enabled by specially designed computers and subsystems tailored to the radar and communications equipments and operational requirements of each automated facility. Modular design permits adoption of improvements in computer software and electronic technologies as they become available while retaining the characteristics unique to each system.

a. ARTS II. A programmable nontracking, computer-aided display subsystem capable of modular expansion. ARTS II systems provide a level of automated air traffic control capability at terminals having low to medium activity. Flight identification and altitude may be associated with the display of secondary radar targets. The system has the capability of communicating with ARTCC's and other ARTS II, IIA, III, and IIIA facilities.

b. ARTS IIA. A programmable radar-tracking computer subsystem capable of modular expansion. The ARTS IIA detects, tracks, and predicts secondary radar targets. The targets are displayed by means of computer-generated symbols, ground speed, and flight plan data. Although it does not track primary radar targets, they are displayed coincident with the secondary radar as well as the symbols and alphanumerics. The system has the capability of communicating with ARTCC's and other ARTS II, IIA, III, and IIIA facilities.

c. ARTS III. The Beacon Tracking Level of the modular programmable automated radar terminal system in use at medium to high activity terminals. ARTS III detects, tracks, and predicts secondary radar-derived aircraft targets. These are displayed by means of computer-generated symbols and alphanumeric characters depicting flight identification, aircraft altitude, ground speed, and flight plan data. Although it does not track primary targets, they are displayed coincident with the secondary radar as well as the symbols and alphanumerics. The system has the capability of communicating with ARTCC's and other ARTS III facilities.

d. ARTS IIIA. The Radar Tracking and Beacon Tracking Level (RT&BTL) of the modular, programmable automated radar terminal system. ARTS IIIA detects, tracks, and predicts primary as well as secondary radar-derived aircraft targets. This more sophisticated computer-driven system upgrades the existing ARTS III system by providing improved tracking, continuous data recording, and fail-soft capabilities.

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORT– (See ALTITUDE READOUT.)

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING– That function of a transponder which responds to Mode C interrogations by transmitting the aircraft's altitude in 100-foot increments.

AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM– U.S. Navy final approach equipment consisting of precision tracking radar coupled to a computer data link to provide continuous information to the aircraft, monitoring capability to the pilot, and a backup approach system.

AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER– An aircraft radio navigation system which senses and indicates the direction to a L/MF nondirectional radio beacon (NDB) ground transmitter. Direction is indicated to the pilot as a magnetic bearing or as a relative bearing to the longitudinal axis of the aircraft depending on the type of indicator installed in the aircraft. In certain applications, such as military, ADF operations may be based on airborne and ground transmitters in the VHF/UHF frequency spectrum.

(See BEARING.)

(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE– The continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information; e.g., "Los Angeles information Alfa. One three zero zero Coordinated Universal Time. Weather, measured ceiling two thousand overcast, visibility three, haze, smoke, temperature seven one, dew point five seven, wind two five zero at five, altimeter two niner niner six. I-L-S Runway Two Five Left approach in use, Runway Two Five Right closed, advise you have Alfa."

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE [ICAO]– The provision of current, routine information to arriving and departing aircraft by means of continuous and repetitive broadcasts throughout the day or a specified portion of the day.

AUTOROTATION– A rotorcraft flight condition in which the lifting rotor is driven entirely by action of the air when the rotorcraft is in motion.

a. Autorotative Landing/Touchdown Autorotation. Used by a pilot to indicate that the landing will be made without applying power to the rotor.

b. Low Level Autorotation. Commences at an altitude well below the traffic pattern, usually below 100 feet AGL and is used primarily for tactical military training.

c. 180 degrees Autorotation. Initiated from a downwind heading and is commenced well inside the normal traffic pattern. "Go around" may not be possible during the latter part of this maneuver.

AVAILABLE LANDING DISTANCE (ALD)– The portion of a runway available for landing and roll–out for aircraft cleared for LAHSO. This distance is measured from the landing threshold to the hold–short point.

AVIATION WEATHER SERVICE– A service provided by the National Weather Service (NWS) and FAA which collects and disseminates pertinent weather information for pilots, aircraft operators, and ATC. Available aviation weather reports and forecasts are displayed at each NWS office and FAA FSS.

(See EN ROUTE FLIGHT ADVISORY SERVICE.)

(See TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST.)

(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

(See PILOTS AUTOMATIC TELEPHONE WEATHER ANSWERING SERVICE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AWW– (See SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS.)

AZIMUTH (MLS)– A magnetic bearing extending from an MLS navigation facility.

Note: azimuth bearings are described as magnetic and are referred to as "azimuth" in radio telephone communications.

B

BACK-TAXI– A term used by air traffic controllers to taxi an aircraft on the runway opposite to the traffic flow. The aircraft may be instructed to back-taxi to the beginning of the runway or at some point before reaching the runway end for the purpose of departure or to exit the runway.

BASE LEG– (See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

BEACON– (See RADAR.)

(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

(See MARKER BEACON.)

(See AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON.)

(See AERONAUTICAL BEACON.)

(See AIRWAY BEACON.)

BEARING– The horizontal direction to or from any point, usually measured clockwise from true north, magnetic north, or some other reference point through 360 degrees.

(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

BELOW MINIMUMS– Weather conditions below the minimums prescribed by regulation for the particular action involved; e.g., landing minimums, takeoff minimums.

BLAST FENCE– A barrier that is used to divert or dissipate jet or propeller blast.

BLIND SPEED– The rate of departure or closing of a target relative to the radar antenna at which cancellation of the primary radar target by moving target indicator (MTI) circuits in the radar equipment causes a reduction or complete loss of signal.

(See ICAO term BLIND VELOCITY.)

BLIND SPOT– An area from which radio transmissions and/or radar echoes cannot be received. The term is also used to describe portions of the airport not visible from the control tower.

BLIND TRANSMISSION– (See TRANSMITTING IN THE BLIND.)

BLIND VELOCITY [ICAO]– The radial velocity of a moving target such that the target is not seen on primary radars fitted with certain forms of fixed echo suppression.

BLIND ZONE– (See BLIND SPOT.)

BLOCKED– Phraseology used to indicate that a radio transmission has been distorted or interrupted due to multiple simultaneous radio transmissions.

BOUNDARY LIGHTS– (See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

BRAKING ACTION (GOOD, FAIR, POOR, OR NIL)– A report of conditions on the airport movement area providing a pilot with a degree/quality of braking that he might expect. Braking action is reported in terms of good, fair, poor, or nil.

(See RUNWAY CONDITION READING.)

BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES– When tower controllers have received runway braking action reports which include the terms "poor" or "nil," or whenever weather conditions are conducive to deteriorating or rapidly changing runway braking conditions, the tower will include on the ATIS broadcast the statement, "BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES ARE IN EFFECT." During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect, ATC will issue the latest braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft. Pilots should be prepared for deteriorating braking conditions and should request current runway condition information if not volunteered by controllers. Pilots should also be prepared to provide a descriptive runway condition report to controllers after landing.

BREAKOUT– A technique to direct aircraft out of the approach stream. In the context of close parallel operations, a breakout is used to direct threatened aircraft away from a deviating aircraft.

BROADCAST– Transmission of information for which an acknowledgement is not expected.

(See ICAO term BROADCAST.)

BROADCAST [ICAO]– A transmission of information relating to air navigation that is not addressed to a specific station or stations.

C

CALCULATED LANDING TIME– A term that may be used in place of tentative or actual calculated landing time, whichever applies.

CALL UP– Initial voice contact between a facility and an aircraft, using the identification of the unit being called and the unit initiating the call.

(Refer to AIM.)

CALL FOR RELEASE– Wherein the overlying ARTCC requires a terminal facility to initiate verbal coordination to secure ARTCC approval for release of a departure into the en route environment.

CANADIAN MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE– That portion of Canadian domestic airspace within which MNPS separation may be applied.

CARDINAL ALTITUDES– "Odd" or "Even" thousand-foot altitudes or flight levels; e.g., 5,000, 6,000, 7,000, FL 250, FL 260, FL 270.

(See ALTITUDE.)
(See FLIGHT LEVEL.)

CARDINAL FLIGHT LEVELS– (See CARDINAL ALTITUDES.)

CAT– (See CLEAR-AIR TURBULENCE.)

CDT PROGRAMS– (See CONTROLLED DEPARTURE TIME PROGRAMS.)

CEILING– The heights above the earth's surface of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuring phenomena that is reported as "broken," "overcast," or "obscuration," and not classified as "thin" or "partial."

(See ICAO term CEILING.)

CEILING [ICAO]– The height above the ground or water of the base of the lowest layer of cloud below 6,000 meters (20,000 feet) covering more than half the sky.

CENRAP– (See CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/PROCESSING.)

CENRAP-PLUS– (See CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/PROCESSING-PLUS.)

CENTER– (See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

CENTER'S AREA– The specified airspace within which an air route traffic control center (ARTCC) provides air traffic control and advisory service.

(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/PROCESSING– A computer program developed to provide a back-up system for airport surveillance radar in the event of a failure or malfunction. The program uses air route traffic control center radar for the processing and presentation of data on the ARTS IIA or IIIA displays.

CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/PROCESSING-PLUS– A computer program developed to provide a back-up system for airport surveillance radar in the event of a terminal secondary radar system failure. The program uses a combination of Air Route Traffic Control Center Radar and terminal airport surveillance radar primary targets displayed simultaneously for the processing and presentation of data on the ARTS IIA or IIIA displays.

CENTER WEATHER ADVISORY– An unscheduled weather advisory issued by Center Weather Service Unit meteorologists for ATC use to alert pilots of existing or anticipated adverse weather conditions within the next 2 hours. A CWA may modify or redefine a SIGMET.

(See AWW.)
(See SIGMET.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See AIRMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CENTRAL EAST PACIFIC– An organized route system between the U.S. West Coast and Hawaii.

CEP– (See CENTRAL EAST PACIFIC.)

CERAP– (See COMBINED CENTER-RAPCON.)

CFR– (See CALL FOR RELEASE.)

CHAFF– Thin, narrow metallic reflectors of various lengths and frequency responses, used to reflect radar energy. These reflectors when dropped from aircraft and allowed to drift downward result in large targets on the radar display.

CHARTED VFR FLYWAYS– Charted VFR Flyways are flight paths recommended for use to bypass areas heavily traversed by large turbine-powered aircraft. Pilot compliance with recommended flyways and associated altitudes is strictly voluntary. VFR Flyway Planning charts are published on the back of existing VFR Terminal Area charts.

CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURE APPROACH– An approach conducted while operating on an instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plan which authorizes the pilot of an aircraft to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport via visual landmarks and other information depicted on a charted visual flight procedure. This approach must be authorized and under the control of the appropriate air traffic control facility. Weather minimums required are depicted on the chart.

CHASE– An aircraft flown in proximity to another aircraft normally to observe its performance during training or testing.

CHASE AIRCRAFT– (See CHASE.)

CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER– A maneuver initiated by the pilot to align the aircraft with a runway for landing when a straight-in landing from an instrument approach is not possible or is not desirable. This maneuver is made only after ATC authorization has been obtained and the pilot has established required visual reference to the airport.

(See CIRCLE TO RUNWAY.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CIRCLE TO RUNWAY (RUNWAY NUMBER)– Used by ATC to inform the pilot that he must circle to land because the runway in use is other than the runway aligned with the instrument approach procedure. When the direction of the circling maneuver in relation to the airport/runway is required, the controller will state the direction (eight cardinal compass points) and specify a left or right downwind or base leg as appropriate; e.g., "Cleared VOR Runway Three Six Approach circle to Runway Two Two," or "Circle northwest of the airport for a right downwind to Runway Two Two."

(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CIRCLING APPROACH– (See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)

CIRCLING MANEUVER– (See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)

CIRCLING MINIMA– (See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

CLASS A AIRSPACE– (SEE CONTROLLED AIRSPACE)

CLASS B AIRSPACE– (SEE CONTROLLED AIRSPACE)

CLASS C AIRSPACE– (SEE CONTROLLED AIRSPACE)

CLASS D AIRSPACE– (SEE CONTROLLED AIRSPACE)

CLASS E AIRSPACE– (SEE CONTROLLED AIRSPACE)

CLASS G AIRSPACE– That airspace not designated as Class A, B, C, D or E.

CLEAR-AIR TURBULENCE– Turbulence encountered in air where no clouds are present. This term is commonly applied to high-level turbulence associated with wind shear. CAT is often encountered in the vicinity of the jet stream.

(See WIND SHEAR.)
(See JET STREAM.)

CLEAR OF THE RUNWAY-

a. A taxiing aircraft, which is approaching a runway, is clear of the runway when all parts of the aircraft are held short of the applicable holding position marking.

b. A pilot or controller may consider an aircraft, which is exiting or crossing a runway, to be clear of the runway when all parts of the aircraft are beyond the runway edge and there is no ATC restriction to its continued movement beyond the applicable holding position marking.

c. Pilots and controllers shall exercise good judgement to ensure that adequate separation exists between all aircraft on runways and taxiways at airports with inadequate runway edge lines or holding position markings.

CLEARANCE– (See AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE.)

CLEARANCE LIMIT– The fix, point, or location to which an aircraft is cleared when issued an air traffic clearance.

(See ICAO term CLEARANCE LIMIT.)

CLEARANCE LIMIT [ICAO]– The point of which an aircraft is granted an air traffic control clearance.

CLEARANCE VOID IF NOT OFF BY (TIME)– Used by ATC to advise an aircraft that the departure clearance is automatically canceled if takeoff is not made prior to a specified time. The pilot must obtain a new clearance or cancel his IFR flight plan if not off by the specified time.

(See ICAO term CLEARANCE VOID TIME.)

CLEARANCE VOID TIME [ICAO]– A time specified by an air traffic control unit at which a clearance ceases to be valid unless the aircraft concerned has already taken action to comply therewith.

CLEARED AS FILED–Means the aircraft is cleared to proceed in accordance with the route of flight filed in the flight plan. This clearance does not include the altitude, SID, or SID Transition.

(See REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED (Type Of) APPROACH–ATC authorization for an aircraft to execute a specific instrument approach procedure to an airport; e.g., "Cleared ILS Runway Three Six Approach."

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See APPROACH CLEARANCE.)
(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

CLEARED APPROACH– ATC authorization for an aircraft to execute any standard or special instrument approach procedure for that airport. Normally, an aircraft will be cleared for a specific instrument approach procedure.

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See CLEARED (TYPE OF) APPROACH.)
(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to Part 91.)

CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF– ATC authorization for an aircraft to depart. It is predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions.

CLEARED FOR THE OPTION– ATC authorization for an aircraft to make a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stop and go, or full stop landing at the discretion of the pilot. It is normally used in training so that an instructor can evaluate a student's performance under changing situations.

(See OPTION APPROACH.)

(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED THROUGH– ATC authorization for an aircraft to make intermediate stops at specified airports without refiling a flight plan while en route to the clearance limit.

CLEARED TO LAND– ATC authorization for an aircraft to land. It is predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions.

CLEARWAY– An area beyond the takeoff runway under the control of airport authorities within which terrain or fixed obstacles may not extend above specified limits. These areas may be required for certain turbine-powered operations and the size and upward slope of the clearway will differ depending on when the aircraft was certificated.

(Refer to FAR Part 1.)

CLIMBOUT– That portion of flight operation between takeoff and the initial cruising altitude.

CLIMB TO VFR– ATC authorization for an aircraft to climb to VFR conditions within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas when the only weather limitation is restricted visibility. The aircraft must remain clear of clouds while climbing to VFR.

(See SPECIAL VFR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

CLOSE PARALLEL RUNWAYS– Two parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet, having a Precision Runway Monitoring (PRM) system that permits simultaneous independent ILS approaches.

CLOSED RUNWAY– A runway that is unusable for aircraft operations. Only the airport management/military operations office can close a runway.

CLOSED TRAFFIC– Successive operations involving takeoffs and landings or low approaches where the aircraft does not exit the traffic pattern.

CLT– (See CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

CLUTTER– In radar operations, clutter refers to the reception and visual display of radar returns caused by precipitation, chaff, terrain, numerous aircraft targets, or other phenomena. Such returns may limit or preclude ATC from providing services based on radar.

(See GROUND CLUTTER.)

(See CHAFF.)

(See PRECIPITATION.)

(See TARGET.)

(See ICAO term Radar Clutter.)

CMNPS– (See CANADIAN MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE.)

COASTAL FIX– A navigation aid or intersection where an aircraft transitions between the domestic route structure and the oceanic route structure.

CODES– The number assigned to a particular multiple pulse reply signal transmitted by a transponder.

(See DISCRETE CODE.)

COMBINED CENTER-RAPCON– An air traffic facility which combines the functions of an ARTCC and a radar approach control facility.

(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

(See RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

COMMON POINT– A significant point over which two or more aircraft will report passing or have reported passing before proceeding on the same or diverging tracks. To establish/maintain longitudinal separation, a controller may determine a common point not originally in the aircraft's flight plan and then clear the aircraft to fly over the point. (See SIGNIFICANT POINT.)

COMMON PORTION– (See COMMON ROUTE.)

COMMON ROUTE– That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and the coastal fix.

COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY (CTAF)– A frequency designed for the purpose of carrying out airport advisory practices while operating to or from an airport without an operating control tower. The CTAF may be a UNICOM, Multicom, FSS, or tower frequency and is identified in appropriate aeronautical publications.

(Refer to AC 90-42, Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers.)

COMPASS LOCATOR– A low power, low or medium frequency (L/MF) radio beacon installed at the site of the outer or middle marker of an instrument landing system (ILS). It can be used for navigation at distances of approximately 15 miles or as authorized in the approach procedure.

a. Outer Compass Locator (LOM)– A compass locator installed at the site of the outer marker of an instrument landing system.

(See OUTER MARKER.)

b. Middle Compass Locator (LMM)– A compass locator installed at the site of the middle marker of an instrument landing system.

(See MIDDLE MARKER.)

(See ICAO term LOCATOR.)

COMPASS ROSE– A circle, graduated in degrees, printed on some charts or marked on the ground at an airport. It is used as a reference to either true or magnetic direction.

COMPOSITE FLIGHT PLAN– A flight plan which specifies VFR operation for one portion of flight and IFR for another portion. It is used primarily in military operations.

(Refer to AIM.)

COMPOSITE ROUTE SYSTEM– An organized oceanic route structure, incorporating reduced lateral spacing between routes, in which composite separation is authorized.

COMPOSITE SEPARATION– A method of separating aircraft in a composite route system where, by management of route and altitude assignments, a combination of half the lateral minimum specified for the area concerned and half the vertical minimum is applied.

COMPULSORY REPORTING POINTS– Reporting points which must be reported to ATC. They are designated on aeronautical charts by solid triangles or filed in a flight plan as fixes selected to define direct routes. These points are geographical locations which are defined by navigation aids/fixes. Pilots should discontinue position reporting over compulsory reporting points when informed by ATC that their aircraft is in "radar contact."

CONFLICT ALERT– A function of certain air traffic control automated systems designed to alert radar controllers to existing or pending situations between tracked targets (known IFR or VFR aircraft) that require his/her immediate attention/action.

(See MODE C INTRUDER ALERT.)

CONFLICT RESOLUTION– The resolution of potential conflictions between aircraft that are radar identified and in communication with ATC by ensuring that radar targets do not touch. Pertinent traffic advisories shall be issued when this procedure is applied.

Note: This procedure shall not be provided utilizing mosaic radar systems.

CONSOLAN– A low frequency, long-distance NAVAID used principally for transoceanic navigations.

CONTACT–

a. Establish communication with (followed by the name of the facility and, if appropriate, the frequency to be used).

b. A flight condition wherein the pilot ascertains the attitude of his aircraft and navigates by visual reference to the surface.

(See CONTACT APPROACH.)

(See RADAR CONTACT.)

CONTACT APPROACH– An approach wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, having an air traffic control authorization, operating clear of clouds with at least 1 mile flight visibility and a reasonable expectation of continuing to the destination airport in those conditions, may deviate from the instrument approach procedure and proceed to the destination airport by visual reference to the surface. This approach will only be authorized when requested by the pilot and the reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

(Refer to AIM.)

CONTAMINATED RUNWAY– A runway is considered contaminated whenever standing water, ice, snow, slush, frost in any form, heavy rubber, or other substances are present. A runway is contaminated with respect to rubber deposits or other friction–degrading substances when the average friction value for any 500–foot segment of the runway within the ALD fails below the recommended minimum friction level and the average friction value in the adjacent 500–foot segments falls below the maintenance planning friction level.

CONTERMINOUS U.S.– The 48 adjoining States and the District of Columbia.

CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES– The 49 States located on the continent of North America and the District of Columbia.

CONTROL AREA [ICAO]– A controlled airspace extending upwards from a specified limit above the earth.

CONTROLLED AIRSPACE– An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

a. Controlled airspace is a generic term that covers Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E airspace.

b. Controlled airspace is also that airspace within which all aircraft operators are subject to certain pilot qualifications, operating rules, and equipment requirements in FAR Part 91 (for specific operating requirements, please refer to FAR Part 91). For IFR operations in any class of controlled airspace, a pilot must file an IFR flight plan and receive an appropriate ATC clearance. Each Class B, Class C, and Class D airspace area designated for an airport contains at least one primary airport around which the airspace is designated (for specific designations and descriptions of the airspace classes, please refer to FAR Part 71).

c. Controlled airspace in the United States is designated as follows:

1. CLASS A– Generally, that airspace from 18,000 feet MSL up to and including FL 600, including the airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous States and Alaska. Unless otherwise authorized, all persons must operate their aircraft under IFR.

2. CLASS B– Generally, that airspace from the surface to 10,000 feet MSL surrounding the nation's busiest airports in terms of airport operations or passenger enplanements. The configuration of each Class B airspace area is individually tailored and consists of a surface area and two or more layers (some Class B airspaces areas resemble upside-down wedding cakes), and is designed to contain all published instrument procedures once an aircraft enters the airspace. An ATC clearance is required for all aircraft to operate in the area, and all aircraft that are so cleared receive separation services within the airspace. The cloud clearance requirement for VFR operations is "clear of clouds."

3. CLASS C– Generally, that airspace from the surface to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower, are serviced by a radar approach control, and that have a certain number of IFR operations or passenger enplanements. Although the configuration of each Class C area is individually tailored, the airspace usually consists of a surface area with a 5 nautical mile (NM) radius, an outer circle with a 10NM radius that extends from 1,200 feet to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation and an outer area. Each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while within the airspace. VFR aircraft are only separated from IFR aircraft within the airspace. (See OUTER AREA)

4. CLASS D– Generally, that airspace from the surface to 2,500 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower. The configuration of each Class D airspace area is individually tailored and when instrument procedures are published, the airspace will normally be designed to contain the procedures. Arrival extensions for instrument approach procedures may be Class D or Class E airspace. Unless otherwise authorized, each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while in the airspace. No separation services are provided to VFR aircraft.

5. CLASS E– Generally, if the airspace is not Class A, Class B, Class C, or Class D, and it is controlled airspace, it is Class E airspace. Class E airspace extends upward from either the surface or a designated altitude to the overlying or adjacent controlled airspace. When designated as a surface area, the airspace will be configured to contain all instrument procedures. Also in this class are Federal airways, airspace beginning at either 700 or 1,200 feet AGL used to transition to/from the terminal or en route environment, en route domestic, and offshore airspace areas designated below 18,000 feet MSL. Unless designated at a lower altitude, Class E airspace begins at 14,500 MSL over the United States, including that airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous States and Alaska, up to, but not including 18,000 feet MSL, and the airspace above FL 600.

CONTROLLED AIRSPACE [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

(Note: Controlled airspace is a generic term which covers ATS airspace Classes A, B, C, D, and E.)

CONTROLLED DEPARTURE TIME PROGRAMS– These programs are the flow control process whereby aircraft are held on the ground at the departure airport when delays are projected to occur in either the en route system or the terminal of intended landing. The purpose of these programs is to reduce congestion in the air traffic system or to limit the duration of airborne holding in the arrival center or terminal area. A CDT is a specific departure slot shown on the flight plan as an expected departure clearance time (EDCT).

CONTROLLED TIME OF ARRIVAL– The original estimated time of arrival adjusted by the ATCSCC ground delay factor.

CONTROLLER– (See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SPECIALIST.)

CONTROLLER [ICAO]– A person authorized to provide air traffic control services.

CONTROL SECTOR– An airspace area of defined horizontal and vertical dimensions for which a controller or group of controllers has air traffic control responsibility, normally within an air route traffic control center or an approach control facility. Sectors are established based on predominant traffic flows, altitude strata, and controller workload. Pilot-communications during operations within a sector are normally maintained on discrete frequencies assigned to the sector.

(See DISCRETE FREQUENCY.)

CONTROL SLASH– A radar beacon slash representing the actual position of the associated aircraft. Normally, the control slash is the one closest to the interrogating radar beacon site. When ARTCC radar is operating in narrowband (digitized) mode, the control slash is converted to a target symbol.

CONVECTIVE SIGMET– A weather advisory concerning convective weather significant to the safety of all aircraft. Convective SIGMET's are issued for tornadoes, lines of thunderstorms, embedded thunderstorms of any intensity level, areas of thunderstorms greater than or equal to VIP level 4 with an area coverage of $^{4}/_{10}$ (40%) or more, and hail $^{3}/_{4}$ inch or greater.

(See AWW.)

(See SIGMET.)

(See CWA.)

(See AIRMET.)

(Refer to AIM.)

CONVECTIVE SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION– (See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

COORDINATES– The intersection of lines of reference, usually expressed in degrees/minutes/seconds of latitude and longitude, used to determine position or location.

COORDINATION FIX– The fix in relation to which facilities will handoff, transfer control of an aircraft, or coordinate flight progress data. For terminal facilities, it may also serve as a clearance for arriving aircraft.

COPTER– (See HELICOPTER.)

CORRECTION– An error has been made in the transmission and the correct version follows.

COUPLED APPROACH– A coupled approach is an instrument approach performed by the aircraft autopilot which is receiving position information and/or steering commands from onboard navigation equipment. In general, coupled nonprecision approaches must be discontinued and flown manually at altitudes lower than 50 feet below the minimum descent altitude, and coupled precision approaches must be flown manually below 50 feet AGL.

(See AUTOLAND APPROACH.)

Note: Coupled and autoland approaches are flown in VFR and IFR. It is common for carriers to require their crews to fly coupled approaches and autoland approaches (if certified) when the weather conditions are less than approximately 4,000 RVR.

COURSE-

a. The intended direction of flight in the horizontal plane measured in degrees from north.

b. The ILS localizer signal pattern usually specified as the front course or the back course.

c. The intended track along a straight, curved, or segmented MLS path.

(See BEARING.)

(See RADIAL.)

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

(See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)

CPL [ICAO]– (See CURRENT FLIGHT PLAN)

CRITICAL ENGINE– The engine which, upon failure, would most adversely affect the performance or handling qualities of an aircraft.

CROSS (FIX) AT (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when a specific altitude restriction at a specified fix is required.

CROSS (FIX) AT OR ABOVE (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when an altitude restriction at a specified fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a higher altitude than specified; however, the higher altitude may not be one that will violate a succeeding altitude restriction or altitude assignment.

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

CROSS (FIX) AT OR BELOW (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when a maximum crossing altitude at a specific fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a lower altitude; however, it must be at or above the minimum IFR altitude.

(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES.)

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

CROSSWIND-

a. When used concerning the traffic pattern, the word means "crosswind leg."

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

b. When used concerning wind conditions, the word means a wind not parallel to the runway or the path of an aircraft.

(See CROSSWIND COMPONENT.)

CROSSWIND COMPONENT– The wind component measured in knots at 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the runway.

CRUISE– Used in an ATC clearance to authorize a pilot to conduct flight at any altitude from the minimum IFR altitude up to and including the altitude specified in the clearance. The pilot may level off at any intermediate altitude within this block of airspace. Climb/descent within the block is to be made at the discretion of the pilot. However, once the pilot starts descent and verbally reports leaving an altitude in the block, he may not return to that altitude without additional ATC clearance. Further, it is approval for the pilot to proceed to and make an approach at destination airport and can be used in conjunction with:

a. An airport clearance limit at locations with a standard/special instrument approach procedure. The FAR's require that if an instrument letdown to an airport is necessary, the pilot shall make the letdown in accordance with a standard/special instrument approach procedure for that airport, or

b. An airport clearance limit at locations that are within/below/outside controlled airspace and without a standard/special instrument approach procedure. Such a clearance is NOT AUTHORIZATION for the pilot to descend under IFR conditions below the applicable minimum IFR altitude nor does it imply that ATC is exercising control over aircraft in Class G airspace; however, it provides a means for the aircraft to proceed to destination airport, descend, and land in accordance with applicable FAR's governing VFR flight operations. Also, this provides search and rescue protection until such time as the IFR flight plan is closed.

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

CRUISING ALTITUDE– An altitude or flight level maintained during en route level flight. This is a constant altitude and should not be confused with a cruise clearance.

(See ALTITUDE.)
(See ICAO term CRUISING LEVEL.)

CRUISING LEVEL [ICAO]– A level maintained during a significant portion of a flight.

CRUISE CLIMB– A climb technique employed by aircraft, usually at a constant power setting, resulting in an increase of altitude as the aircraft weight decreases.

CRUISING LEVEL– (See CRUISING ALTITUDE.)

CT MESSAGE– An EDCT time generated by the ATCSCC to regulate traffic at arrival airports. Normally, a CT message is automatically transferred from the Traffic Management System computer to the NAS en route computer and appears as an EDCT. In the event of a communication failure between the TMS and the NAS, the CT message can be manually entered by the TMC at the en route facility.

CTA– (See CONTROLLED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

CTA– (See CONTROL AREA [ICAO].)

CTAF– (See COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY.)

CURRENT FLIGHT PLAN [ICAO]– The flight plan, including changes, if any, brought about by subsequent clearances.

CVFP APPROACH– (See CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURE APPROACH.)

CWA– (See CENTER WEATHER ADVISORY and *WEATHER ADVISORY.*)

D

DA [ICAO]– (See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT.)

DAIR– (See DIRECT ALTITUDE AND IDENTITY READOUT.)

DANGER AREA [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions within which activities dangerous to the flight of aircraft may exist at specified times.

Note: The term "Danger Area" is not used in reference to areas within the United States or any of its possessions or territories.

DATA BLOCK– (See ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY.)

DEAD RECKONING– Dead reckoning, as applied to flying, is the navigation of an airplane solely by means of computations based on airspeed, course, heading, wind direction, and speed, groundspeed, and elapsed time.

DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT [ICAO]– A specified altitude or height (A/H) in the precision approach at which a missed approach must be initiated if the required visual reference to continue the approach has not been established.

Note 1: Decision altitude [DA] is referenced to mean sea level [MSL] and decision height [DH] is referenced to the threshold elevation.

Note 2: The required visual reference means that section of the visual aids or of the approach area which should have been in view for sufficient time for the pilot to have made an assessment of the aircraft position and rate of change of position, in relation to the desired flight path.

DECISION HEIGHT– With respect to the operation of aircraft, means the height at which a decision must be made during an ILS, MLS, or PAR instrument approach to either continue the approach or to execute a missed approach.

(See ICAO term DECISION ALTITUDE/ DECISION HEIGHT.)

DECODER– The device used to decipher signals received from ATCRBS transponders to effect their display as select codes.

(See CODES.)

(See RADAR.)

DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES– Rules applicable to flights within an ADIZ conducted under the visual flight rules in FAR Part 91.

(See AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(Refer to FAR Part 99.)

DELAY INDEFINITE (REASON IF KNOWN) EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME)– Used by ATC to inform a pilot when an accurate estimate of the delay time and the reason for the delay cannot immediately be determined; e.g., a disabled aircraft on the runway, terminal or center area saturation, weather below landing minimums, etc.

(See EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME).)

DELAY TIME– The amount of time that the arrival must lose to cross the meter fix at the assigned meter fix time. This is the difference between ACLT and VTA.

DEPARTURE CENTER– The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the airspace that generates a flight to the impacted airport.

DEPARTURE CONTROL– A function of an approach control facility providing air traffic control service for departing IFR and, under certain conditions, VFR aircraft.

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM– A program designed to assist in achieving a specified interval over a common point for departures.

DEPARTURE TIME– The time an aircraft becomes airborne.

DESCENT SPEED ADJUSTMENTS– Speed deceleration calculations made to determine an accurate VTA. These calculations start at the transition point and use arrival speed segments to the vertex.

DESIRED COURSE–

a. True– A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from true north).

b. Magnetic– A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from local magnetic north).

DESIRED TRACK– The planned or intended track between two waypoints. It is measured in degrees from either magnetic or true north. The instantaneous angle may change from point to point along the great circle track between waypoints.

DETRESFA (DISTRESS PHASE) [ICAO]– The code word used to designate an emergency phase wherein there is reasonable certainty that an aircraft and its occupants are threatened by grave and imminent danger or require immediate assistance.

DEVIATIONS-

a. A departure from a current clearance, such as an off course maneuver to avoid weather or turbulence.

b. Where specifically authorized in the FAR's and requested by the pilot, ATC may permit pilots to deviate from certain regulations.

(Refer to AIM.)

DF– (See DIRECTION FINDER.)

DF APPROACH PROCEDURE– Used under emergency conditions where another instrument approach procedure cannot be executed. DF guidance for an instrument approach is given by ATC facilities with DF capability.

(See DF GUIDANCE.)

(See DIRECTION FINDER.)

(Refer to AIM.)

DF FIX– The geographical location of an aircraft obtained by one or more direction finders.

(See DIRECTION FINDER.)

DF GUIDANCE– Headings provided to aircraft by facilities equipped with direction finding equipment. These headings, if followed, will lead the aircraft to a predetermined point such as the DF station or an airport. DF guidance is given to aircraft in distress or to other aircraft which request the service. Practice DF guidance is provided when workload permits.

(See DIRECTION FINDER.)

(See DF FIX.)

(Refer to AIM.)

DF STEER– (See DF GUIDANCE.)

DH– (See DECISION HEIGHT.)

DH [ICAO]– (See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/ DECISION HEIGHT.)

DIRECT– Straight line flight between two navigational aids, fixes, points, or any combination thereof. When used by pilots in describing off-airway routes, points defining direct route segments become compulsory reporting points unless the aircraft is under radar contact.

DIRECT ALTITUDE AND IDENTITY READOUT– The DAIR System is a modification to the AN/TPX-42 Interrogator System. The Navy has two adaptations of the DAIR System-Carrier Air Traffic Control Direct Altitude and Identification Readout System for Aircraft Carriers and Radar Air Traffic Control Facility Direct Altitude and Identity Readout System for land-based terminal operations. The DAIR detects, tracks, and predicts secondary radar aircraft targets. Targets are displayed by means of computer-generated symbols and alphanumeric characters depicting flight identification, altitude, ground speed, and flight plan data. The DAIR System is capable of interfacing with ARTCC's.

DIRECTION FINDER– A radio receiver equipped with a directional sensing antenna used to take bearings on a radio transmitter. Specialized radio direction finders are used in aircraft as air navigation aids. Others are ground-based, primarily to obtain a "fix" on a pilot requesting orientation assistance or to locate downed aircraft. A location "fix" is established by the intersection of two or more bearing lines plotted on a navigational chart using either two separately located Direction Finders to obtain a fix on an aircraft or by a pilot plotting the bearing indications of his DF on two separately located ground-based transmitters, both of which can be identified on his chart. UDF's receive signals in the ultra high frequency radio broadcast band; VDF's in the very high frequency band; and UVDF's in both bands. ATC provides DF service at those air traffic control towers and flight service stations listed in the Airport/Facility Directory and the DOD FLIP IFR En Route Supplement.

(See DF GUIDANCE.)

(See DF FIX.)

DISCRETE BEACON CODE– (See DISCRETE CODE.)

DISCRETE CODE– As used in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS), any one of the 4096 selectable Mode 3/A aircraft transponder codes except those ending in zero zero; e.g., discrete codes: 0010, 1201, 2317, 7777; nondiscrete codes: 0100, 1200, 7700. Nondiscrete codes are normally reserved for radar facilities that are not equipped with discrete decoding capability and for other purposes such as emergencies (7700), VFR aircraft (1200), etc.

(See RADAR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

DISCRETE FREQUENCY– A separate radio frequency for use in direct pilot-controller communications in air traffic control which reduces frequency congestion by controlling the number of aircraft operating on a particular frequency at one time. Discrete frequencies are normally designated for each control sector in en route/terminal ATC facilities. Discrete frequencies are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory and the DOD FLIP IFR En Route Supplement.

(See CONTROL SECTOR.)

DISPLACED THRESHOLD– A threshold that is located at a point on the runway other than the designated beginning of the runway.

(See THRESHOLD.)

(Refer to AIM.)

DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT– Equipment (airborne and ground) used to measure, in nautical miles, the slant range distance of an aircraft from the DME navigational aid.

(See TACAN.)

(See VORTAC.)

(See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)

DISTRESS– A condition of being threatened by serious and/or imminent danger and of requiring immediate assistance.

DIVE BRAKES– (See SPEED BRAKES.)

DIVERSE VECTOR AREA– In a radar environment, that area in which a prescribed departure route is not required as the only suitable route to avoid obstacles. The area in which random radar vectors below the MVA/MIA, established in accordance with the TERPS criteria for diverse departures, obstacles and terrain avoidance, may be issued to departing aircraft.

DME– (See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DME FIX– A geographical position determined by reference to a navigational aid which provides distance and azimuth information. It is defined by a specific distance in nautical miles and a radial, azimuth, or course (i.e., localizer) in degrees magnetic from that aid.

(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

(See FIX.)

(See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)

DME SEPARATION– Spacing of aircraft in terms of distances (nautical miles) determined by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).

(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DOD FLIP– Department of Defense Flight Information Publications used for flight planning, en route, and terminal operations. FLIP is produced by the National Imagery and Mapping Agency (NIMA) for world-wide use. United States Government Flight Information Publications (en route charts and instrument approach procedure charts) are incorporated in DOD FLIP for use in the National Airspace System (NAS).

DOMESTIC AIRSPACE– Airspace which overlies the continental land mass of the United States plus Hawaii and U.S. possessions. Domestic airspace extends to 12 miles offshore.

DOWNBURST– A strong downdraft which induces an outburst of damaging winds on or near the ground. Damaging winds, either straight or curved, are highly divergent. The sizes of downbursts vary from 1/2 mile or less to more than 10 miles. An intense downburst often causes widespread damage. Damaging winds, lasting 5 to 30 minutes, could reach speeds as high as 120 knots.

DOWNWIND LEG– (See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

DRAG CHUTE– A parachute device installed on certain aircraft which is deployed on landing roll to assist in deceleration of the aircraft.

DSP– (See DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM.)

DT– (See DELAY TIME.)

DUE REGARD– A phase of flight wherein an aircraft commander of a State-operated aircraft assumes responsibility to separate his aircraft from all other aircraft.

(See also FAA Order 7110.65, paragraph 1-2-1, WORD MEANINGS.)

DUTY RUNWAY– (See RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.)

DVA– (See DIVERSE VECTOR AREA.)

DVFR– (See DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

DVFR FLIGHT PLAN– A flight plan filed for a VFR aircraft which intends to operate in airspace within which the ready identification, location, and control of aircraft are required in the interest of national security.

DYNAMIC– Continuous review, evaluation, and change to meet demands.

DYNAMIC RESTRICTIONS– Those restrictions imposed by the local facility on an "as needed" basis to manage unpredictable fluctuations in traffic demands.

E

EARTS– (See EN ROUTE AUTOMATED RADAR TRACKING SYSTEM.)

EDCT– (See EXPECTED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME.)

EFC– (See EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME).)

ELT– (See EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER.)

EMERGENCY– A distress or an urgency condition.

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER– A radio transmitter attached to the aircraft structure which operates from its own power source on 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz. It aids in locating downed aircraft by radiating a downward sweeping audio tone, 2-4 times per second. It is designed to function without human action after an accident.

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(Refer to AIM.)

E-MSAW– (See EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING.)

ENGINEERED PERFORMANCE STANDARDS– A mathematically derived runway capacity standard. EPS's are calculated for each airport on an individual basis and reflect that airport's aircraft mix, operating procedures, runway layout, and specific weather conditions. EPS's do not give consideration to staffing, experience levels, equipment outages, and in-trail restrictions as does the AAR.

EN ROUTE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES– Air traffic control service provided aircraft on IFR flight plans, generally by centers, when these aircraft are operating between departure and destination terminal areas. When equipment, capabilities, and controller workload permit, certain advisory/assistance services may be provided to VFR aircraft.

(See NAS STAGE A.)

(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

(Refer to AIM.)

EN ROUTE AUTOMATED RADAR TRACKING SYSTEM– An automated radar and radar beacon tracking system. Its functional capabilities and design are essentially the same as the terminal ARTS IIIA system except for the EARTS capability of employing both short-range (ASR) and long-range (ARSR) radars, use of full digital radar displays, and fail-safe design.

(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

EN ROUTE CHARTS– (See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE DESCENT– Descent from the en route cruising altitude which takes place along the route of flight.

EN ROUTE FLIGHT ADVISORY SERVICE– A service specifically designed to provide, upon pilot request, timely weather information pertinent to his type of flight, intended route of flight, and altitude. The FSS's providing this service are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory.

(See FLIGHT WATCH.)

(Refer to AIM.)

EN ROUTE HIGH ALTITUDE CHARTS– (See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE LOW ALTITUDE CHARTS– (See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING– A function of the NAS Stage A en route computer that aids the controller by alerting him when a tracked aircraft is below or predicted by the computer to go below a predetermined minimum IFR altitude (MIA).

EN ROUTE SPACING PROGRAM– A program designed to assist the exit sector in achieving the required in-trail spacing.

EPS– (See ENGINEERED PERFORMANCE STANDARDS.)

ESP– (See EN ROUTE SPACING PROGRAM.)

ESTABLISHED–To be stable or fixed on a route, route segment, altitude, heading, etc.

ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME [ICAO]– The estimated time required to proceed from one significant point to another.

(See ICAO Term TOTAL ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME.)

ESTIMATED OFF-BLOCK TIME [ICAO]– The estimated time at which the aircraft will commence movement associated with departure.

ESTIMATED TIME OF ARRIVAL– The time the flight is estimated to arrive at the gate (scheduled operators) or the actual runway on times for nonscheduled operators.

ESTIMATED TIME EN ROUTE– The estimated flying time from departure point to destination (lift-off to touchdown).

ETA– (See ESTIMATED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

ETE– (See ESTIMATED TIME EN ROUTE.)

EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH– Instructions issued to a pilot making an instrument approach which means continue inbound to the missed approach point and execute the missed approach procedure as described on the Instrument Approach Procedure Chart or as previously assigned by ATC. The pilot may climb immediately to the altitude specified in the missed approach procedure upon making a missed approach. No turns should be initiated prior to reaching the missed approach point. When conducting an ASR or PAR approach, execute the assigned missed approach procedure immediately upon receiving instructions to "execute missed approach."

(Refer to AIM.)

EXPECT (ALTITUDE) AT (TIME) or (FIX)- Used under certain conditions to provide a pilot with an altitude to be used in the event of two-way communications failure. It also provides altitude information to assist the pilot in planning.

(Refer to AIM.)

EXPECTED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME- The runway release time assigned to an aircraft in a controlled departure time program and shown on the flight progress strip as an EDCT.

EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME)- The time a pilot can expect to receive clearance beyond a clearance limit.

EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE VIA (AIRWAYS, ROUTES OR FIXES)- Used to inform a pilot of the routing he can expect if any part of the route beyond a short range clearance limit differs from that filed.

EXPEDITE- Used by ATC when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation.

F

FAF– (See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)

FAST FILE– A system whereby a pilot files a flight plan via telephone that is tape recorded and then transcribed for transmission to the appropriate air traffic facility. Locations having a fast file capability are contained in the Airport/Facility Directory.

(Refer to AIM.)

FAWP– Final Approach Waypoint

FCLT– (See FREEZE CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

FEATHERED PROPELLER– A propeller whose blades have been rotated so that the leading and trailing edges are nearly parallel with the aircraft flight path to stop or minimize drag and engine rotation. Normally used to indicate shutdown of a reciprocating or turboprop engine due to malfunction.

FEDERAL AIRWAYS– (See LOW ALTITUDE AIRWAY STRUCTURE.)

FEEDER FIX– The fix depicted on Instrument Approach Procedure Charts which establishes the starting point of the feeder route.

FEEDER ROUTE– A route depicted on instrument approach procedure charts to designate routes for aircraft to proceed from the en route structure to the initial approach fix (IAF).

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FERRY FLIGHT– A flight for the purpose of:

a. Returning an aircraft to base.

b. Delivering an aircraft from one location to another.

c. Moving an aircraft to and from a maintenance base.– Ferry flights, under certain conditions, may be conducted under terms of a special flight permit.

FIELD ELEVATION– (See AIRPORT ELEVATION.)

FILED– Normally used in conjunction with flight plans, meaning a flight plan has been submitted to ATC.

FILED EN ROUTE DELAY– Any of the following preplanned delays at points/areas along the route of flight which require special flight plan filing and handling techniques.

a. Terminal Area Delay. A delay within a terminal area for touch-and-go, low approach, or other terminal area activity.

b. Special Use Airspace Delay. A delay within a Military Operations Area, Restricted Area, Warning Area, or ATC Assigned Airspace.

c. Aerial Refueling Delay. A delay within an Aerial Refueling Track or Anchor.

FILED FLIGHT PLAN– The flight plan as filed with an ATS unit by the pilot or his designated representative without any subsequent changes or clearances.

FINAL– Commonly used to mean that an aircraft is on the final approach course or is aligned with a landing area.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)

(See FINAL APPROACH-IFR.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH [ICAO]– That part of an instrument approach procedure which commences at the specified final approach fix or point, or where such a fix or point is not specified,

a. At the end of the last procedure turn, base turn or inbound turn of a racetrack procedure, if specified; or

b. At the point of interception of the last track specified in the approach procedure; and ends at a point in the vicinity of an aerodrome from which:

1. A landing can be made; or

2. A missed approach procedure is initiated.

FINAL APPROACH COURSE– A bearing/radial/track of an instrument approach leading to a runway or an extended runway centerline all without regard to distance.

FINAL APPROACH FIX– The fix from which the final approach (IFR) to an airport is executed and which identifies the beginning of the final approach segment. It is designated on Government charts by the Maltese Cross symbol for nonprecision approaches and the lightning bolt symbol for precision approaches; or when ATC directs a lower-than-published glideslope/path intercept altitude, it is the resultant actual point of the glideslope/path intercept.

(See FINAL APPROACH POINT.)

(See GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH-IFR– The flight path of an aircraft which is inbound to an airport on a final instrument approach course, beginning at the final approach fix or point and extending to the airport or the point where a circle-to-land maneuver or a missed approach is executed.

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)

(See FINAL APPROACH POINT.)

(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH.)

FINAL APPROACH POINT– The point, applicable only to a nonprecision approach with no depicted FAF (such as an on airport VOR), where the aircraft is established inbound on the final approach course from the procedure turn and where the final approach descent may be commenced. The FAP serves as the FAF and identifies the beginning of the final approach segment.

(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT– (See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]– That segment of an instrument approach procedure in which alignment and descent for landing are accomplished.

FINAL CONTROLLER– The controller providing information and final approach guidance during PAR and ASR approaches utilizing radar equipment.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

FINAL MONITOR AID– A high resolution color display that is equipped with the controller alert system hardware/software which is used in the precision runway monitor (PRM) system. The display includes alert algorithms providing the target predictors, a color change alert when a target penetrates or is predicted to penetrate the no transgression zone (NTZ), a color change alert if the aircraft transponder becomes inoperative, synthesized voice alerts, digital mapping, and like features contained in the PRM system.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

FINAL MONITOR CONTROLLER– Air Traffic Control Specialist assigned to radar monitor the flight path of aircraft during simultaneous parallel and simultaneous close parallel ILS approach operations. Each runway is assigned a final monitor controller during simultaneous parallel and simultaneous close parallel ILS approaches. Final monitor controllers shall utilize the Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) system during simultaneous close parallel ILS approaches.

FIR– (See FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION.)

FIRST TIER CENTER– The ARTCC immediately adjacent to the impacted center.

FIX– A geographical position determined by visual reference to the surface, by reference to one or more radio NAVAID's, by celestial plotting, or by another navigational device.

FIX BALANCING– A process whereby aircraft are evenly distributed over several available arrival fixes reducing delays and controller workload.

FLAG– A warning device incorporated in certain airborne navigation and flight instruments indicating that:

a. Instruments are inoperative or otherwise not operating satisfactorily, or

b. Signal strength or quality of the received signal falls below acceptable values.

FLAG ALARM– (See FLAG.)

FLAMEOUT– An emergency condition caused by a loss of engine power.

FLAMEOUT PATTERN –An approach normally conducted by a single–engine military aircraft experiencing loss or anticipating loss of engine power or control. The standard overhead approach starts at a relatively high altitude over a runway ("high key") followed by a continuous 180 degree turn to a high, wide position ("low key") followed by a continuous 180 degree turn final. The standard straight–in pattern starts at a point that results in a straight–in approach with a high rate of descent to the runway. Flameout approaches terminate in the type approach requested by the pilot (normally fullstop).

FLIGHT CHECK– A call-sign prefix used by FAA aircraft engaged in flight inspection/certification of navigational aids and flight procedures. The word "recorded" may be added as a suffix; e.g., "Flight Check 320 recorded" to indicate that an automated flight inspection is in progress in terminal areas.

(See FLIGHT INSPECTION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT FOLLOWING– (See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION– An airspace of defined dimensions within which Flight Information Service and Alerting Service are provided.

a. Flight Information Service. A service provided for the purpose of giving advice and information useful for the safe and efficient conduct of flights.

b. Alerting Service. A service provided to notify appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid and to assist such organizations as required.

FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE– A service provided for the purpose of giving advice and information useful for the safe and efficient conduct of flights.

FLIGHT INSPECTION– Inflight investigation and evaluation of a navigational aid to determine whether it meets established tolerances.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

(See FLIGHT CHECK.)

FLIGHT LEVEL– A level of constant atmospheric pressure related to a reference datum of 29.92 inches of mercury. Each is stated in three digits that represent hundreds of feet. For example, flight level (FL) 250 represents a barometric altimeter indication of 25,000 feet; FL 255, an indication of 25,500 feet.

(See ICAO term FLIGHT LEVEL.)

FLIGHT LEVEL [ICAO]– A surface of constant atmospheric pressure which is related to a specific pressure datum, 1013.2 hPa (1013.2 mb), and is separated from other such surfaces by specific pressure intervals.

Note 1: A pressure type altimeter calibrated in accordance with the standard atmosphere:

a. When set to a QNH altimeter setting, will indicate altitude;

b. When set to a QFE altimeter setting, will indicate height above the QFE reference datum; and

c. When set to a pressure of 1013.2 hPa (1013.2 mb), may be used to indicate flight levels.

Note 2: The terms 'height' and 'altitude,' used in Note 1 above, indicate altimetric rather than geometric heights and altitudes.

FLIGHT LINE– A term used to describe the precise movement of a civil photogrammetric aircraft along a predetermined course(s) at a predetermined altitude during the actual photographic run.

FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS– A computer system that uses a large data base to allow routes to be preprogrammed and fed into the system by means of a data loader. The system is constantly updated with respect to position accuracy by reference to conventional navigation aids. The sophisticated program and its associated data base insures that the most appropriate aids are automatically selected during the information update cycle.

FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM PROCEDURE– An arrival, departure, or approach procedure developed for use by aircraft with a slant (/) E or slant (/) F equipment suffix.

FLIGHT PATH– A line, course, or track along which an aircraft is flying or intended to be flown.

(See TRACK.)

(See COURSE.)

FLIGHT PLAN– Specified information relating to the intended flight of an aircraft that is filed orally or in writing with an FSS or an ATC facility.

(See FAST FILE.)

(See FILED.)

(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT PLAN AREA– The geographical area assigned by regional air traffic divisions to a flight service station for the purpose of search and rescue for VFR aircraft, issuance of NOTAMs, pilot briefing, in-flight services, broadcast, emergency services, flight data processing, international operations, and aviation weather services. Three letter identifiers are assigned to every flight service station and are annotated in AFD's and FAA Order 7350.6, LOCATION IDENTIFIERS, as tie-in-facilities.

(See FAST FILE.)

(See FILED.)

(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT RECORDER– A general term applied to any instrument or device that records information about the performance of an aircraft in flight or about conditions encountered in flight. Flight recorders may make records of airspeed, outside air temperature, vertical acceleration, engine RPM, manifold pressure, and other pertinent variables for a given flight.

(See ICAO term FLIGHT RECORDER.)

FLIGHT RECORDER [ICAO]– Any type of recorder installed in the aircraft for the purpose of complementing accident/incident investigation.

Note: See Annex 6 Part I, for specifications relating to flight recorders.

FLIGHT SERVICE STATION– Air traffic facilities which provide pilot briefing, en route communications and VFR search and rescue services, assist lost aircraft and aircraft in emergency situations, relay ATC clearances, originate Notices to Airmen, broadcast aviation weather and NAS information, receive and process IFR flight plans, and monitor NAVAID's. In addition, at selected locations, FSS's provide En Route Flight Advisory Service (Flight Watch), take weather observations, issue airport advisories, and advise Customs and Immigration of transborder flights.

(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT STANDARDS DISTRICT OFFICE– An FAA field office serving an assigned geographical area and staffed with Flight Standards personnel who serve the aviation industry and the general public on matters relating to the certification and operation of air carrier and general aviation aircraft. Activities include general surveillance of operational safety, certification of airmen and aircraft, accident prevention, investigation, enforcement, etc.

FLIGHT TEST– A flight for the purpose of:

a. Investigating the operation/flight characteristics of an aircraft or aircraft component.

b. Evaluating an applicant for a pilot certificate or rating.

FLIGHT VISIBILITY– (See VISIBILITY.)

FLIGHT WATCH– A shortened term for use in air-ground contacts to identify the flight service station providing En Route Flight Advisory Service; e.g., "Oakland Flight Watch."

(See EN ROUTE FLIGHT ADVISORY SERVICE.)

FLIP– (See DOD FLIP.)

FLOW CONTROL– Measures designed to adjust the flow of traffic into a given airspace, along a given route, or bound for a given aerodrome (airport) so as to ensure the most effective utilization of the airspace.

(See QUOTA FLOW CONTROL.)

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

FLY–BY WAYPOINT– A fly–by waypoint requires the use of turn anticipation to avoid overshoot of the next flight segment.

FLY HEADING (DEGREES)– Informs the pilot of the heading he should fly. The pilot may have to turn to, or continue on, a specific compass direction in order to comply with the instructions. The pilot is expected to turn in the shorter direction to the heading unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

FLY–OVER WAYPOINT– A fly–over waypoint precludes any turn until the waypoint is overflown and is followed by an intercept maneuver of the next flight segment.

FMA– (See FINAL MONITOR AID.)

FMS– (See FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM.)

FMSP– (See FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM PROCEDURE.)

FORMATION FLIGHT– More than one aircraft which, by prior arrangement between the pilots, operate as a single aircraft with regard to navigation and position reporting. Separation between aircraft within the formation is the responsibility of the flight leader and the pilots of the other aircraft in the flight. This includes transition periods when aircraft within the formation are maneuvering to attain separation from each other to effect individual control and during join-up and breakaway.

a. A standard formation is one in which a proximity of no more than 1 mile laterally or longitudinally and within 100 feet vertically from the flight leader is maintained by each wingman.

b. Nonstandard formations are those operating under any of the following conditions:

1. When the flight leader has requested and ATC has approved other than standard formation dimensions.

2. When operating within an authorized altitude reservation (ALTRV) or under the provisions of a letter of agreement.

3. When the operations are conducted in airspace specifically designed for a special activity.

(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

FRC– (See REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE.)

FREEZE/FROZEN– Terms used in referring to arrivals which have been assigned ACLT's and to the lists in which they are displayed.

FREEZE CALCULATED LANDING TIME– A dynamic parameter number of minutes prior to the meter fix calculated time of arrival for each aircraft when the TCLT is frozen and becomes an ACLT (i.e., the VTA is updated and consequently the TCLT is modified as appropriate until FCLT minutes prior to meter fix calculated time of arrival, at which time updating is suspended and an ACLT and a frozen meter fix crossing time (MFT) is assigned).

FREEZE SPEED PARAMETER– A speed adapted for each aircraft to determine fast and slow aircraft. Fast aircraft freeze on parameter FCLT and slow aircraft freeze on parameter MLDI.

FRICTION MEASUREMENT– A measurement of the friction characteristics of the runway pavement surface using continuous self–watering friction measurement equipment in accordance with the specifications, procedures and schedules contained in AC 150/5320–12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces.

FSDO– (See FLIGHT STANDARDS DISTRICT OFFICE.)

FSPD– (See FREEZE SPEED PARAMETER.)

FSS– (See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)

FUEL DUMPING– Airborne release of usable fuel. This does not include the dropping of fuel tanks.

(See JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES.)

FUEL REMAINING– A phrase used by either pilots or controllers when relating to the fuel remaining on board until actual fuel exhaustion. When transmitting such information in response to either a controller question or pilot initiated cautionary advisory to air traffic control, pilots will state the APPROXIMATE NUMBER OF MINUTES the flight can continue with the fuel remaining. All reserve fuel SHOULD BE INCLUDED in the time stated, as should an allowance for established fuel gauge system error.

FUEL SIPHONING– Unintentional release of fuel caused by overflow, puncture, loose cap, etc.

FUEL VENTING– (See FUEL SIPHONING.)

G

GADO– (See GENERAL AVIATION DISTRICT OFFICE.)

GATE HOLD PROCEDURES– Procedures at selected airports to hold aircraft at the gate or other ground location whenever departure delays exceed or are anticipated to exceed 15 minutes. The sequence for departure will be maintained in accordance with initial call-up unless modified by flow control restrictions. Pilots should monitor the ground control/clearance delivery frequency for engine start/taxi advisories or new proposed start/taxi time if the delay changes.

(See FLOW CONTROL.)

GCA– (See GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH.)

GENERAL AVIATION– That portion of civil aviation which encompasses all facets of aviation except air carriers holding a certificate of public convenience and necessity from the Civil Aeronautics Board and large aircraft commercial operators.

(See ICAO term GENERAL AVIATION.)

GENERAL AVIATION [ICAO]– All civil aviation operations other than scheduled air services and nonscheduled air transport operations for remuneration or hire.

GENERAL AVIATION DISTRICT OFFICE– An FAA field office serving a designated geographical area and staffed with Flight Standards personnel who have the responsibility for serving the aviation industry and the general public on all matters relating to the certification and operation of general aviation aircraft.

GEO MAP– The digitized map markings associated with the ASR-9 Radar System.

GLIDEPATH– (See GLIDESLOPE.)

GLIDEPATH INTERCEPT ALTITUDE– (See GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE.)

GLIDESLOPE– Provides vertical guidance for aircraft during approach and landing. The glideslope/glidepath is based on the following:

a. Electronic components emitting signals which provide vertical guidance by reference to airborne instruments during instrument approaches such as ILS/MLS, or

b. Visual ground aids, such as VASI, which provide vertical guidance for a VFR approach or for the visual portion of an instrument approach and landing.

c. PAR. Used by ATC to inform an aircraft making a PAR approach of its vertical position (elevation) relative to the descent profile.

(See ICAO term GLIDEPATH.)

GLIDEPATH [ICAO]– A descent profile determined for vertical guidance during a final approach.

GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE– The minimum altitude to intercept the glideslope/path on a precision approach. The intersection of the published intercept altitude with the glideslope/path, designated on Government charts by the lightning bolt symbol, is the precision FAF; however, when ATC directs a lower altitude, the resultant lower intercept position is then the FAF.

(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)– A space-base radio positioning, navigation, and time-transfer system. The system provides highly accurate position and velocity information, and precise time, on a continuous global basis, to an unlimited number of properly equipped users. The system is unaffected by weather, and provides a worldwide common grid reference system. The GPS concept is predicated upon accurate and continuous knowledge of the spatial position of each satellite in the system with respect to time and distance from a transmitting satellite to the user. The GPS receiver automatically selects appropriate signals from the satellites in view and translates these into three-dimensional position, velocity, and time. System accuracy for civil users is normally 100 meters horizontally.

GO AHEAD– Proceed with your message. Not to be used for any other purpose.

GO AROUND– Instructions for a pilot to abandon his approach to landing. Additional instructions may follow. Unless otherwise advised by ATC, a VFR aircraft or an aircraft conducting visual approach should overfly the runway while climbing to traffic pattern altitude and enter the traffic pattern via the crosswind leg. A pilot on an IFR flight plan making an instrument approach should execute the published missed approach procedure or proceed as instructed by ATC; e.g., "Go around" (additional instructions if required).

(See LOW APPROACH.)

(See MISSED APPROACH.)

GPS– (See Global Positioning System.)

GROUND CLUTTER– A pattern produced on the radar scope by ground returns which may degrade other radar returns in the affected area. The effect of ground clutter is minimized by the use of moving target indicator (MTI) circuits in the radar equipment resulting in a radar presentation which displays only targets which are in motion.

(See CLUTTER.)

GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH– A radar approach system operated from the ground by air traffic control personnel transmitting instructions to the pilot by radio. The approach may be conducted with surveillance radar (ASR) only or with both surveillance and precision approach radar (PAR). Usage of the term "GCA" by pilots is discouraged except when referring to a GCA facility. Pilots should specifically request a "PAR" approach when a precision radar approach is desired or request an "ASR" or "surveillance" approach when a nonprecision radar approach is desired.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

GROUND DELAY– The amount of delay attributed to ATC, encountered prior to departure, usually associated with a CDT program.

GROUND SPEED– The speed of an aircraft relative to the surface of the earth.

GROUND STOP– Normally, the last initiative to be utilized; this method mandates that the terminal facility will not allow any departures to enter the ARTCC airspace until further notified.

GROUND VISIBILITY– (See VISIBILITY.)

H

HAA– (See HEIGHT ABOVE AIRPORT.)

HAL– (See HEIGHT ABOVE LANDING.)

HANDOFF– An action taken to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another if the aircraft will enter the receiving controller's airspace and radio communications with the aircraft will be transferred.

HAT– (See HEIGHT ABOVE TOUCHDOWN.)

HAVE NUMBERS– Used by pilots to inform ATC that they have received runway, wind, and altimeter information only.

HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE– Continuous recorded hazardous inflight weather forecasts broadcasted to airborne pilots over selected VOR outlets defined as an HIWAS BROADCAST AREA.

HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION– Summary of significant meteorological information (SIGMET/WS), convective significant meteorological information (convective SIGMET/WST), urgent pilot weather reports (urgent PIREP/UUA), center weather advisories (CWA), airmen's meteorological information (AIRMET/WA) and any other weather such as isolated thunderstorms that are rapidly developing and increasing in intensity, or low ceilings and visibilities that are becoming widespread which is considered significant and are not included in a current hazardous weather advisory.

HEAVY (AIRCRAFT)– (See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)

HEIGHT ABOVE AIRPORT– The height of the Minimum Descent Altitude above the published airport elevation. This is published in conjunction with circling minimums.

(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)

HEIGHT ABOVE LANDING– The height above a designated helicopter landing area used for helicopter instrument approach procedures.

(Refer to FAR Part 97.)

HEIGHT ABOVE TOUCHDOWN– The height of the Decision Height or Minimum Descent Altitude above the highest runway elevation in the touchdown zone (first 3,000 feet of the runway). HAT is published on instrument approach charts in conjunction with all straight-in minimums.

(See DECISION HEIGHT.)

(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)

HELICOPTER– Rotorcraft that, for its horizontal motion, depends principally on its engine-driven rotors.

(See ICAO term HELICOPTER.)

HELICOPTER [ICAO]– A heavier-than-air aircraft supported in flight chiefly by the reactions of the air on one or more power-driven rotors on substantially vertical axes.

HELIPAD– A small, designated area, usually with a prepared surface, on a heliport, airport, landing/takeoff area, apron/ramp, or movement area used for takeoff, landing, or parking of helicopters.

HELIPORT– An area of land, water, or structure used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of helicopters and includes its buildings and facilities if any.

HELIPORT REFERENCE POINT (HRP)– The geographic center of a heliport.

HERTZ– The standard radio equivalent of frequency in cycles per second of an electromagnetic wave. Kilohertz (kHz) is a frequency of one thousand cycles per second. Megahertz (MHz) is a frequency of one million cycles per second.

HF– (See HIGH FREQUENCY.)

HF COMMUNICATIONS– (See HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATIONS.)

HIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 3 and 30 MHz.

(See HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATIONS.)

HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATIONS– High radio frequencies (HF) between 3 and 30 MHz used for air-to-ground voice communication in overseas operations.

HIGH SPEED EXIT– (See HIGH SPEED TAXIWAY.)

HIGH SPEED TAXIWAY– A long radius taxiway designed and provided with lighting or marking to define the path of aircraft, traveling at high speed (up to 60 knots), from the runway center to a point on the center of a taxiway. Also referred to as long radius exit or turn-off taxiway. The high speed taxiway is designed to expedite aircraft turning off the runway after landing, thus reducing runway occupancy time.

HIGH SPEED TURNOFF– (See HIGH SPEED TAXIWAY.)

HIWAS– (See HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE.)

HIWAS AREA– (See HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE.)

HIWAS BROADCAST AREA– A geographical area of responsibility including one or more HIWAS outlet areas assigned to an AFSS/FSS for hazardous weather advisory broadcasting.

HIWAS OUTLET AREA– An area defined as a 150 NM radius of a HIWAS outlet, expanded as necessary to provide coverage.

HOLDING PROCEDURE– (See HOLD PROCEDURE.)

HOLD PROCEDURE– A predetermined maneuver which keeps aircraft within a specified airspace while awaiting further clearance from air traffic control. Also used during ground operations to keep aircraft within a specified area or at a specified point while awaiting further clearance from air traffic control.

(See HOLDING FIX.)

(Refer to AIM.)

HOLD–SHORT POINT– A point on the runway beyond which a landing aircraft with a LAHSO clearance is not authorized to proceed. This point may be located prior to an intersecting runway, taxiway, predetermined point, or approach/departure flight path.

HOLDING FIX– A specified fix identifiable to a pilot by NAVAID's or visual reference to the ground used as a reference point in establishing and maintaining the position of an aircraft while holding.

(See FIX.)

(See VISUAL HOLDING.)

(Refer to AIM.)

HOLDING POINT [ICAO]– A specified location, identified by visual or other means, in the vicinity of which the position of an aircraft in flight is maintained in accordance with air traffic control clearances.

HOLD FOR RELEASE– Used by ATC to delay an aircraft for traffic management reasons; i.e., weather, traffic volume, etc. Hold for release instructions (including departure delay information) are used to inform a pilot or a controller (either directly or through an authorized relay) that an IFR departure clearance is not valid until a release time or additional instructions have been received.

(See ICAO term HOLDING POINT.)

HOLD–SHORT POSITION MARKING– The painted runway marking located at the hold–short point on all LAHSO runways.

HOLD–SHORT POSITION LIGHTS– Flashing in–pavement white lights located at specified hold–short points.

HOLD–SHORT POSITION SIGNS– Red and white holding position signs located alongside the hold–short point.

HOMING– Flight toward a NAVAID, without correcting for wind, by adjusting the aircraft heading to maintain a relative bearing of zero degrees.

(See BEARING.)

(See ICAO term HOMING.)

HOMING [ICAO]– The procedure of using the direction-finding equipment of one radio station with the emission of another radio station, where at least one of the stations is mobile, and whereby the mobile station proceeds continuously towards the other station.

HOVER CHECK– Used to describe when a helicopter/VTOL aircraft requires a stabilized hover to conduct a performance/power check prior to hover taxi, air taxi, or take-off. Altitude of the hover will vary based on the purpose of the check.

HOVER TAXI– Used to describe a helicopter/VTOL aircraft movement conducted above the surface and in ground effect at airspeeds less than approximately 20 knots. The actual height may vary, and some helicopters may require hover taxi above 25 feet AGL to reduce ground effect turbulence or provide clearance for cargo slingloads.

(See AIR TAXI.)

(See HOVER CHECK.)

(Refer to AIM.)

HOW DO YOU HEAR ME?– A question relating to the quality of the transmission or to determine how well the transmission is being received.

HZ– (See HERTZ.)

I

IAF– (See INITIAL APPROACH FIX.)

IAP– (See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

IAWP– Initial Approach Waypoint

ICAO– (See INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION.)

ICAO [ICAO]– (See ICAO Term INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION.)

ICING– The accumulation of airframe ice.

Types of icing are:

a. Rime Ice– Rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets.

b. Clear Ice– A glossy, clear, or translucent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing or large supercooled water droplets.

c. Mixed– A mixture of clear ice and rime ice.

Intensity of icing:

a. Trace–Ice becomes perceptible. Rate of accumulation is slightly greater than the rate of sublimation. It is not hazardous even though deicing\anti–icing equipment is not utilized unless encountered for an extended period of time (over 1 hour).

b. Light– The rate of accumulation may create a problem if flight is prolonged in this environment (over 1 hour). Occasional use of deicing\anti–icing equipment removes\prevents accumulation. It does not present a problem if the deicing\anti–icing equipment is used.

c. Moderate– The rate of accumulation is such that even short encounters become potentially hazardous and use of deicing\anti–icing equipment or flight diversion is necessary.

d. Severe– The rate of accumulation is such that deicing\anti–icing equipment fails to reduce or control the hazard. Immediate flight diversion is necessary.

IDENT– A request for a pilot to activate the aircraft transponder identification feature. This will help the controller to confirm an aircraft identity or to identify an aircraft.

(Refer to AIM.)

IDENT FEATURE– The special feature in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) equipment. It is used to immediately distinguish one displayed beacon target from other beacon targets.

(See IDENT.)

IF– (See INTERMEDIATE FIX.)

IFIM– (See INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT INFORMATION MANUAL.)

IF NO TRANSMISSION RECEIVED FOR (TIME)–Used by ATC in radar approaches to prefix procedures which should be followed by the pilot in event of lost communications.

(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

IFR– (See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

IFR AIRCRAFT– An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with instrument flight rules.

IFR CONDITIONS– Weather conditions below the minimum for flight under visual flight rules.

(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IFR DEPARTURE PROCEDURE– (See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

IFR FLIGHT– (See IFR AIRCRAFT.)

IFR LANDING MINIMUMS– (See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES (IR)– Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low-altitude navigation and tactical training in both IFR and VFR weather conditions below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES– Federal Aviation Regulations, Part 91, prescribes standard takeoff rules for certain civil users. At some airports, obstructions or other factors require the establishment of nonstandard takeoff minimums, departure procedures, or both to assist pilots in avoiding obstacles during climb to the minimum en route altitude. Those airports are listed in NOS/DOD Instrument Approach Charts (IAP's) under a section entitled "IFR Takeoff Minimums and Departure Procedures." The NOS/DOD IAP chart legend illustrates the symbol used to alert the pilot to nonstandard takeoff minimums and departure procedures. When departing IFR from such airports or from any airports where there are no departure procedures, SID's, or ATC facilities available, pilots should advise ATC of any departure limitations. Controllers may query a pilot to determine acceptable departure directions, turns, or headings after takeoff. Pilots should be familiar with the departure procedures and must assure that their aircraft can meet or exceed any specified climb gradients.

IF/IAWP– Intermediate Fix/Initial Approach Waypoint. The waypoint where the final approach course of a T approach meets the crossbar of the T. When designated (in conjunction with a TAA) this waypoint will be used as an IAWP when approaching the airport from certain directions, and as an IFWP when beginning the approach from another IAWP.

IFWP– Intermediate Fix Waypoint

ILS– (See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

ILS CATEGORIES– 1. ILS Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 200 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,800 feet.– 2. ILS Category II. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 100 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,200 feet.– 3. ILS Category III:

a. IIIA.-An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 700 feet.

b. IIIB.-An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 150 feet.

c. IIIC.-An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and without runway visual range minimum.

ILS PRM APPROACH– An instrument landing system (ILS) approach conducted to parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and the parallel runways have a Precision Runway Monitoring (PRM) system that permits simultaneous independent ILS approaches.

IM– (See INNER MARKER.)

IMC– (See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IMMEDIATELY– Used by ATC when such action compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

INCERFA Uncertainty Phase) [ICAO]– A situation wherein uncertainty exists as to the safety of an aircraft and its occupants.

INCREASE SPEED TO (SPEED)– (See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM– An RNAV system which is a form of self-contained navigation.

(See Area Navigation/RNAV.)

INFLIGHT REFUELING– (See AERIAL REFUELING.)

INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY– (See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

INFORMATION REQUEST– A request originated by an FSS for information concerning an overdue VFR aircraft.

INITIAL APPROACH FIX– The fixes depicted on instrument approach procedure charts that identify the beginning of the initial approach segment(s).

(See FIX.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT– (See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]– That segment of an instrument approach procedure between the initial approach fix and the intermediate approach fix or, where applicable, the final approach fix or point.

INLAND NAVIGATION FACILITY– A navigation aid on a North American Route at which the common route and/or the noncommon route begins or ends.

INNER MARKER– A marker beacon used with an ILS (CAT II) precision approach located between the middle marker and the end of the ILS runway, transmitting a radiation pattern keyed at six dots per second and indicating to the pilot, both aurally and visually, that he is at the designated decision height (DH), normally 100 feet above the touchdown zone elevation, on the ILS CAT II approach. It also marks progress during a CAT III approach.

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

(Refer to AIM.)

INNER MARKER BEACON– (See INNER MARKER.)

INREQ– (See INFORMATION REQUEST.)

INS– (See INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH– (See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE– A series of predetermined maneuvers for the orderly transfer of an aircraft under instrument flight conditions from the beginning of the initial approach to a landing or to a point from which a landing may be made visually. It is prescribed and approved for a specific airport by competent authority.

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(See AIM.)

a. U.S. civil standard instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA as prescribed under Part 97 and are available for public use.

b. U.S. military standard instrument approach procedures are approved and published by the Department of Defense.

c. Special instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA for individual operators but are not published in Part 97 for public use.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE [ICAO]– A series of predetermined maneuvers by reference to flight instruments with specified protection from obstacles from the initial approach fix, or where applicable, from the beginning of a defined arrival route to a point from which a landing can be completed and thereafter, if a landing is not completed, to a position at which holding or en route obstacle clearance criteria apply.

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURES CHARTS– (See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES– Rules governing the procedures for conducting instrument flight. Also a term used by pilots and controllers to indicate type of flight plan.

(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to AIM.)
(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES [ICAO]– A set of rules governing the conduct of flight under instrument meteorological conditions.

INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM– A precision instrument approach system which normally consists of the following electronic components and visual aids:

a. Localizer.
(See LOCALIZER.)

b. Glideslope.
(See GLIDESLOPE.)

c. Outer Marker.
(See OUTER MARKER.)

d. Middle Marker.
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)

e. Approach Lights.
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(Refer to FAR Part 91.)
(See AIM.)

INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS– Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud, and ceiling less than the minima specified for visual meteorological conditions.

(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY– A runway equipped with electronic and visual navigation aids for which a precision or nonprecision approach procedure having straight-in landing minimums has been approved.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT RUNWAY.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY [ICAO]– One of the following types of runways intended for the operation of aircraft using instrument approach procedures:

a. Nonprecision Approach Runway-An instrument runway served by visual aids and a nonvisual aid providing at least directional guidance adequate for a straight-in approach.

b. Precision Approach Runway, Category I-An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 60 m (200 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 800 m.

c. Precision Approach Runway, Category II-An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 30 m (100 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 400 m.

d. Precision Approach Runway, Category III-An instrument runway served by ILS to and along the surface of the runway and:

1. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 200 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids during the final phase of landing;

2. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 50 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids for taxiing;

3. Intended for operations without reliance on visual reference for landing or taxiing.

Note 1: See Annex 10 Volume I, Part I, Chapter 3, for related ILS specifications.

Note 2: Visual aids need not necessarily be matched to the scale of nonvisual aids provided. The criterion for the selection of visual aids is the conditions in which operations are intended to be conducted.

INTEGRITY– The ability of a system to provide timely warnings to users when the system should not be used for navigation.

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT– (See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]– That segment of an instrument approach procedure between either the intermediate approach fix and the final approach fix or point, or between the end of a reversal, race track or dead reckoning track procedure and the final approach fix or point, as appropriate.

INTERMEDIATE FIX– The fix that identifies the beginning of the intermediate approach segment of an instrument approach procedure. The fix is not normally identified on the instrument approach chart as an intermediate fix (IF).

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE LANDING– On the rare occasion that this option is requested, it should be approved. The departure center, however, must advise the ATCSCC so that the appropriate delay is carried over and assigned at the intermediate airport. An intermediate landing airport within the arrival center will not be accepted without coordination with and the approval of the ATCSCC.

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT– Relating to international flight, it means:

a. An airport of entry which has been designated by the Secretary of Treasury or Commissioner of Customs as an international airport for customs service.

b. A landing rights airport at which specific permission to land must be obtained from customs authorities in advance of contemplated use.

c. Airports designated under the Convention on International Civil Aviation as an airport for use by international commercial air transport and/or international general aviation.

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

(Refer to IFIM.)

(See ICAO term INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT.)

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT [ICAO]– Any airport designated by the Contracting State in whose territory it is situated as an airport of entry and departure for international air traffic, where the formalities incident to customs, immigration, public health, animal and plant quarantine and similar procedures are carried out.

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION [ICAO]– A specialized agency of the United Nations whose objective is to develop the principles and techniques of international air navigation and to foster planning and development of international civil air transport.

a. Regions include:

1. African-Indian Ocean Region

2. Caribbean Region

3. European Region

4. Middle East/Asia Region

5. North American Region

6. North Atlantic Region

7. Pacific Region

8. South American Region

INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT INFORMATION MANUAL– A publication designed primarily as a pilot's preflight planning guide for flights into foreign airspace and for flights returning to the U.S. from foreign locations.

INTERROGATOR– The ground-based surveillance radar beacon transmitter-receiver, which normally scans in synchronism with a primary radar, transmitting discrete radio signals which repetitiously request all transponders on the mode being used to reply. The replies received are mixed with the primary radar returns and displayed on the same plan position indicator (radar scope). Also, applied to the airborne element of the TACAN/DME system.

(See TRANSPONDER.)

(Refer to AIM.)

INTERSECTING RUNWAYS– Two or more runways which cross or meet within their lengths.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION-

a. A point defined by any combination of courses, radials, or bearings of two or more navigational aids.

b. Used to describe the point where two runways, a runway and a taxiway, or two taxiways cross or meet.

INTERSECTION DEPARTURE– A departure from any runway intersection except the end of the runway.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION TAKEOFF– (See INTERSECTION DEPARTURE.)

IR– (See IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

I SAY AGAIN– The message will be repeated.

J

JAMMING– Electronic or mechanical interference which may disrupt the display of aircraft on radar or the transmission / reception of radio communications / navigation.

JET BLAST– Jet engine exhaust (thrust stream turbulence).

(See WAKE TURBULENCE.)

JET ROUTE– A route designed to serve aircraft operations from 18,000 feet MSL up to and including flight level 450. The routes are referred to as "J" routes with numbering to identify the designated route; e.g., J105.

(See Class A AIRSPACE.)

(Refer to FAR Part 71.)

JET STREAM– A migrating stream of high-speed winds present at high altitudes.

JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES– Airborne release of external stores; e.g., tiptanks, ordnance.

(See FUEL DUMPING.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

JOINT USE RESTRICTED AREA– (See RESTRICTED AREA.)

K

KNOWN TRAFFIC– With respect to ATC clearances, means aircraft whose altitude, position, and intentions are known to ATC.

L

LAA– (See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)

LAAS– (See LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM.)

LAHSO– An acronym for "Land and Hold Short Operation." These operations include landing and holding short of an intersecting runway, a taxiway, a predetermined point, or an approach/departure flightpath.

LAHSO–DRY– Land and hold short operations on runways that are dry.

LAHSO–WET– Land and hold short operations on runways that are wet (but not contaminated).

LAND AND HOLD SHORT OPERATIONS– Operations which include simultaneous takeoffs and landings and/or simultaneous landings when a landing aircraft is able and is instructed by the controller to hold–short of the intersecting runway/taxiway or designated hold–short point. Pilots are expected to promptly inform the controller if the hold short clearance cannot be accepted.

(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING AREA– Any locality either on land, water, or structures, including airports/heliports and intermediate landing fields, which is used, or intended to be used, for the landing and takeoff of aircraft whether or not facilities are provided for the shelter, servicing, or for receiving or discharging passengers or cargo.

(See ICAO term LANDING AREA.)

LANDING AREA [ICAO]– That part of a movement area intended for the landing or takeoff of aircraft.

LANDING DIRECTION INDICATOR– A device which visually indicates the direction in which landings and takeoffs should be made.

(See TETRAHEDRON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]– The length of runway which is declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane landing.

LANDING MINIMUMS– The minimum visibility prescribed for landing a civil aircraft while using an instrument approach procedure. The minimum applies with other limitations set forth in FAR Part 91 with respect to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) or Decision Height (DH) prescribed in the instrument approach procedures as follows:

a. Straight-in landing minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility, or DH and visibility, required for a straight – in landing on a specified runway, or

b. Circling minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility required for the circle-to-land maneuver.

Note: Descent below the established MDA or DH is not authorized during an approach unless the aircraft is in a position from which a normal approach to the runway of intended landing can be made and adequate visual reference to required visual cues is maintained.

(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)
(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)
(See DECISION HEIGHT.)
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)
(See VISIBILITY.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

LANDING ROLL– The distance from the point of touchdown to the point where the aircraft can be brought to a stop or exit the runway.

LANDING SEQUENCE– The order in which aircraft are positioned for landing.

(See APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

LAST ASSIGNED ALTITUDE– The last altitude/flight level assigned by ATC and acknowledged by the pilot.

(See MAINTAIN.)
(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

LATERAL SEPARATION– The lateral spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by requiring operation on different routes or in different geographical locations.

(See SEPARATION.)

LDA– (See LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID.)

LDA [ICAO]– (See ICAO Term LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

LF– (See LOW FREQUENCY.)

LIGHTED AIRPORT– An airport where runway and obstruction lighting is available.

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LIGHT GUN– A handheld directional light signaling device which emits a brilliant narrow beam of white, green, or red light as selected by the tower controller. The color and type of light transmitted can be used to approve or disapprove anticipated pilot actions where radio communication is not available. The light gun is used for controlling traffic operating in the vicinity of the airport and on the airport movement area.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER– The component of an ILS which provides course guidance to the runway.

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term LOCALIZER COURSE.)

LOCALIZER COURSE [ICAO]– The locus of points, in any given horizontal plane, at which the DDM (difference in depth of modulation) is zero.

LOCALIZER OFFSET– An angular offset of the localizer from the runway extended centerline in a direction away from the no transgression zone (NTZ) that increases the normal operating zone (NOZ) width. An offset requires a 50 foot increase in DH and is not authorized for CAT II and CAT III approaches.

LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID– A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches with utility and accuracy comparable to a localizer but which is not a part of a complete ILS and is not aligned with the runway.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER USABLE DISTANCE– The maximum distance from the localizer transmitter at a specified altitude, as verified by flight inspection, at which reliable course information is continuously received.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY [LAA]– A service provided by flight service stations or the military at airports not serviced by an operating control tower. This service consists of providing information to arriving and departing aircraft concerning wind direction and speed, favored runway, altimeter setting, pertinent known traffic, pertinent known field conditions, airport taxi routes and traffic patterns, and authorized instrument approach procedures. This information is advisory in nature and does not constitute an ATC clearance.

(See AIRPORT ADVISORY AREA.)

LOCAL TRAFFIC– Aircraft operating in the traffic pattern or within sight of the tower, or aircraft known to be departing or arriving from flight in local practice areas, or aircraft executing practice instrument approaches at the airport.

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

LOCATOR [ICAO]– An LM/MF NDB used as an aid to final approach.

Note: A locator usually has an average radius of rated coverage of between 18.5 and 46.3 km (10 and 25 NM).

LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION– The longitudinal spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by a minimum distance expressed in units of time or miles.

(See SEPARATION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

LONG RANGE NAVIGATION– (See LORAN.)

LORAN– An electronic navigational system by which hyperbolic lines of position are determined by measuring the difference in the time of reception of synchronized pulse signals from two fixed transmitters. Loran A operates in the 1750-1950 kHz frequency band. Loran C and D operate in the 100-110 kHz frequency band.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOST COMMUNICATIONS– Loss of the ability to communicate by radio. Aircraft are sometimes referred to as NORDO (No Radio). Standard pilot procedures are specified in Part 91. Radar controllers issue procedures for pilots to follow in the event of lost communications during a radar approach when weather reports indicate that an aircraft will likely encounter IFR weather conditions during the approach.

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(Refer AIM.)

LOW ALTITUDE AIRWAY STRUCTURE– The network of airways serving aircraft operations up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL.

(See AIRWAY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

LOW ALTITUDE ALERT, CHECK YOUR ALTITUDE IMMEDIATELY– (See SAFETY ALERT.)

LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM– An automated function of the TPX-42 that alerts the controller when a Mode C transponder – equipped aircraft on an IFR flight plan is below a predetermined minimum safe altitude. If requested by the pilot, LAAS monitoring is also available to VFR Mode C transponder – equipped aircraft.

LOW APPROACH– An approach over an airport or runway following an instrument approach or a VFR approach including the go – around maneuver where the pilot intentionally does not make contact with the runway.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOW FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 30 and 300 kHz.

(Refer to AIM.)

M

MAA– (See MAXIMUM AUTHORIZED ALTITUDE.)

MACH NUMBER– The ratio of true airspeed to the speed of sound; e.g., MACH .82, MACH 1.6. (See AIRSPEED.)

MACH TECHNIQUE [ICAO]– Describes a control technique used by air traffic control whereby turbojet aircraft operating successively along suitable routes are cleared to maintain appropriate MACH numbers for a relevant portion of the en route phase of flight. The principle objective is to achieve improved utilization of the airspace and to ensure that separation between successive aircraft does not decrease below the established minima.

MAHWP– Missed Approach Holding Waypoint

MAINTAIN–

a. Concerning altitude/flight level, the term means to remain at the altitude/flight level specified. The phrase "climb and" or "descend and" normally precedes "maintain" and the altitude assignment; e.g., "descend and maintain 5,000."

b. Concerning other ATC instructions, the term is used in its literal sense; e.g., maintain VFR.

MAINTENANCE PLANNING FRICTION LEVEL– The friction level specified in AC 150/5320–12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, which represents the friction value below which the runway pavement surface remains acceptable for any category or class of aircraft operations but which is beginning to show signs of deterioration. This value will vary depending on the particular friction measurement equipment used.

MAKE SHORT APPROACH– Used by ATC to inform a pilot to alter his traffic pattern so as to make a short final approach.

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

MANDATORY ALTITUDE– An altitude depicted on an instrument Approach Procedure Chart requiring the aircraft to maintain altitude at the depicted value.

MAP– (See MISSED APPROACH POINT.)

MARKER BEACON– An electronic navigation facility transmitting a 75 mHz vertical fan or boneshaped radiation pattern. Marker beacons are identified by their modulation frequency and keying code, and when received by compatible airborne equipment, indicate to the pilot, both aurally and visually, that he is passing over the facility.

(See OUTER MARKER.)
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)
(See INNER MARKER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MARSA– (See MILITARY AUTHORITY ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR SEPARATION OF AIRCRAFT.)

MAWP– Missed Approach Waypoint

MAXIMUM AUTHORIZED ALTITUDE– A published altitude representing the maximum usable altitude or flight level for an airspace structure or route segment. It is the highest altitude on a Federal airway, jet route, area navigation low or high route, or other direct route for which an MEA is designated in Part 95 at which adequate reception of navigation aid signals is assured.

MAYDAY– The international radiotelephony distress signal. When repeated three times, it indicates imminent and grave danger and that immediate assistance is requested.

(See PAN-PAN-PAN.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MCA– (See MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE.)

MDA– (See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)

MEA– (See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

METEOROLOGICAL IMPACT STATEMENT– An unscheduled planning forecast describing conditions expected to begin within 4 to 12 hours which may impact the flow of air traffic in a specific center's (ARTCC) area.

METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME– A calculated time to depart the meter fix in order to cross the vertex at the ACLT. This time reflects descent speed adjustment and any applicable time that must be absorbed prior to crossing the meter fix.

METER LIST DISPLAY INTERVAL– A dynamic parameter which controls the number of minutes prior to the flight plan calculated time of arrival at the meter fix for each aircraft, at which time the TCLT is frozen and becomes an ACLT; i.e., the VTA is updated and consequently the TCLT modified as appropriate until frozen at which time updating is suspended and an ACLT is assigned. When frozen, the flight entry is inserted into the arrival sector's meter list for display on the sector PVD. MLDI is used if filed true airspeed is less than or equal to freeze speed parameters (FSPD).

METERING– A method of time-regulating arrival traffic flow into a terminal area so as not to exceed a predetermined terminal acceptance rate.

METERING AIRPORTS– Airports adapted for metering and for which optimum flight paths are defined. A maximum of 15 airports may be adapted.

METERING FIX– A fix along an established route from over which aircraft will be metered prior to entering terminal airspace. Normally, this fix should be established at a distance from the airport which will facilitate a profile descent 10,000 feet above airport elevation [AAE] or above.

METERING POSITION(S)– Adapted PVD's and associated "D" positions eligible for display of a metering position list. A maximum of four PVD's may be adapted.

METERING POSITION LIST– An ordered list of data on arrivals for a selected metering airport displayed on a metering position PVD.

MFT– (See METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME.)

MHA– (See MINIMUM HOLDING ALTITUDE.)

MIA– (See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES.)

MICROBURST– A small downburst with outbursts of damaging winds extending 2.5 miles or less. In spite of its small horizontal scale, an intense microburst could induce wind speeds as high as 150 knots

(Refer to AIM.)

MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM– A precision instrument approach system operating in the microwave spectrum which normally consists of the following components:

a. Azimuth Station.

b. Elevation Station.

c. Precision Distance Measuring Equipment.

(See MLS CATEGORIES.)

MIDDLE COMPASS LOCATOR– (See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

MIDDLE MARKER– A marker beacon that defines a point along the glideslope of an ILS normally located at or near the point of decision height (ILS Category I). It is keyed to transmit alternate dots and dashes, with the alternate dots and dashes keyed at the rate of 95 dot/dash combinations per minute on a 1300 Hz tone, which is received aurally and visually by compatible airborne equipment.

(See MARKER BEACON.)

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

(Refer to AIM.)

MID RVR– (See VISIBILITY.)

MILES-IN-TRAIL– A specified distance between aircraft, normally, in the same stratum associated with the same destination or route of flight.

MILITARY AUTHORITY ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR SEPARATION OF AIRCRAFT– A condition whereby the military services involved assume responsibility for separation between participating military aircraft in the ATC system. It is used only for required IFR operations which are specified in letters of agreement or other appropriate FAA or military documents.

MILITARY OPERATIONS AREA– (See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES– Airspace of defined vertical and lateral dimensions established for the conduct of military flight training at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

(See IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

(See VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

MINIMA– (See MINIMUMS.)

MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE– The lowest altitude at certain fixes at which an aircraft must cross when proceeding in the direction of a higher minimum en route IFR altitude (MEA).

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE– The lowest altitude, expressed in feet above mean sea level, to which descent is authorized on final approach or during circle-to-land maneuvering in execution of a standard instrument approach procedure where no electronic glideslope is provided.

(See NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE– The lowest published altitude between radio fixes which assures acceptable navigational signal coverage and meets obstacle clearance requirements between those fixes. The MEA prescribed for a Federal airway or segment thereof, area navigation low or high route, or other direct route applies to the entire width of the airway, segment, or route between the radio fixes defining the airway, segment, or route.

(Refer to Part 91.)

(Refer to Part 95.)

(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM FRICTION LEVEL– The friction level specified in AC 150/5320–12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, that represents the minimum recommended wet pavement surface friction value for any turbojet aircraft engaged in LAHSO. This value will vary with the particular friction measurement equipment used.

MINIMUM FUEL– Indicates that an aircraft's fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching the destination, it can accept little or no delay. This is not an emergency situation but merely indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM HOLDING ALTITUDE– The lowest altitude prescribed for a holding pattern which assures navigational signal coverage, communications, and meets obstacle clearance requirements.

MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES– Minimum altitudes for IFR operations as prescribed in Part 91. These altitudes are published on aeronautical charts and prescribed in Part 95 for airways and routes, and in Part 97 for standard instrument approach procedures. If no applicable minimum altitude is prescribed in FAR 95 or FAR 97, the following minimum IFR altitude applies:

a. In designated mountainous areas, 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or

b. Other than mountainous areas, 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or

c. As otherwise authorized by the Administrator or assigned by ATC.

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)
(Refer to Part 91.)

MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION– A set of standards which require aircraft to have a minimum navigation performance capability in order to operate in MNPS designated airspace. In addition, aircraft must be certified by their State of Registry for MNPS operation.

MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS AIRSPACE– Designated airspace in which MNPS procedures are applied between MNPS certified and equipped aircraft. Under certain conditions, non-MNPS aircraft can operate in MNPSA. However, standard oceanic separation minima is provided between the non-MNPS aircraft and other traffic. Currently, the only designated MNPSA is described as follows:

a. Between FL 285 and FL 420;

b. Between latitudes 27°N and the North Pole;

c. In the east, the eastern boundaries of the CTA's Santa Maria Oceanic, Shanwick Oceanic, and Reykjavik;

d. In the west, the western boundaries of CTA's Reykjavik and Gander Oceanic and New York Oceanic excluding the area west of 60°W and south of 38°30'N.

MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE– The lowest published altitude in effect between radio fixes on VOR airways, off-airway routes, or route segments which meets obstacle clearance requirements for the entire route segment and which assures acceptable navigational signal coverage only within 25 statute (22 nautical) miles of a VOR.

(Refer to Part 91.)
(Refer to Part 95.)

MINIMUM RECEPTION ALTITUDE– The lowest altitude at which an intersection can be determined.

(Refer to Part 95.)

MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE-

a. The minimum altitude specified in Part 91 for various aircraft operations.

b. Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance for emergency use within a specified distance from the navigation facility upon which a procedure is predicated. These altitudes will be identified as Minimum Sector Altitudes or Emergency Safe Altitudes and are established as follows:

1. Minimum Sector Altitudes. Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance within a 25-mile radius of the navigation facility upon which the procedure is predicated. Sectors depicted on approach charts must be at least 90 degrees in scope. These altitudes are for emergency use only and do not necessarily assure acceptable navigational signal coverage.

(See ICAO term Minimum Sector Altitude.)

2. Emergency Safe Altitudes. Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet of obstacle clearance in designated mountainous areas within a 100-mile radius of the navigation facility upon which the procedure is predicated and normally used only in military procedures. These altitudes are identified on published procedures as "Emergency Safe Altitudes."

MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING– A function of the ARTS III computer that aids the controller by alerting him when a tracked Mode C– equipped aircraft is below or is predicted by the computer to go below a predetermined minimum safe altitude.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM SECTOR ALTITUDE [ICAO]– The lowest altitude which may be used under emergency conditions which will provide a minimum clearance of 300 m (1,000 feet) above all obstacles located in an area contained within a sector of a circle of 46 km (25 NM) radius centered on a radio aid to navigation.

MINIMUMS– Weather condition requirements established for a particular operation or type of operation; e.g., IFR takeoff or landing, alternate airport for IFR flight plans, VFR flight, etc.

(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See VFR CONDITIONS.)
(See IFR CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE– The lowest MSL altitude at which an IFR aircraft will be vectored by a radar controller, except as otherwise authorized for radar approaches, departures, and missed approaches. The altitude meets IFR obstacle clearance criteria. It may be lower than the published MEA along an airway or J-route segment. It may be utilized for radar vectoring only upon the controller's determination that an adequate radar return is being received from the aircraft being controlled. Charts depicting minimum vectoring altitudes are normally available only to the controllers and not to pilots.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINUTES-IN-TRAIL– A specified interval between aircraft expressed in time. This method would more likely be utilized regardless of altitude.

MIS– (See METEOROLOGICAL IMPACT STATEMENT.)

MISSED APPROACH-

a. A maneuver conducted by a pilot when an instrument approach cannot be completed to a landing. The route of flight and altitude are shown on instrument approach procedure charts. A pilot executing a missed approach prior to the Missed Approach Point (MAP) must continue along the final approach to the MAP. The pilot may climb immediately to the altitude specified in the missed approach procedure.

b. A term used by the pilot to inform ATC that he is executing the missed approach.

c. At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure.

(See MISSED APPROACH POINT.)

(Refer to AIM.)

MISSED APPROACH POINT– A point prescribed in each instrument approach procedure at which a missed approach procedure shall be executed if the required visual reference does not exist.

(See MISSED APPROACH.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE [ICAO]– The procedure to be followed if the approach cannot be continued.

MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT– (See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MLDI– (See METER LIST DISPLAY INTERVAL.)

MLS– (See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)

MLS CATEGORIES-

a. MLS Category I. An MLS approach procedure which provides for an approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 200 feet and a runway visual range of not less than 1,800 feet.

b. MLS Category II. Undefined until data gathering/analysis completion.

c. MLS Category III. Undefined until data gathering/analysis completion.

MM– (See MIDDLE MARKER.)

MNPS– (See MINIMUM PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION.)

MNPSA– (See MINIMUM PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS AIRSPACE.)

MOA– (See MILITARY OPERATIONS AREA.)

MOCA– (See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)

MODE– The letter or number assigned to a specific pulse spacing of radio signals transmitted or received by ground interrogator or airborne transponder components of the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). Mode A (military Mode 3) and Mode C (altitude reporting) are used in air traffic control.

(See TRANSPONDER.)

(See INTERROGATOR.)

(See RADAR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term MODE.)

MODE (SSR MODE) [ICAO]– The letter or number assigned to a specific pulse spacing of the interrogation signals transmitted by an interrogator. There are 4 modes, A, B, C and D specified in Annex 10, corresponding to four different interrogation pulse spacings.

MODE C INTRUDER ALERT– A function of certain air traffic control automated systems designed to alert radar controllers to existing or pending situations between a tracked target (known IFR or VFR aircraft) and an untracked target (unknown IFR or VFR aircraft) that requires immediate attention/action.

(See CONFLICT ALERT.)

MONITOR– (When used with communication transfer) listen on a specific frequency and stand by for instructions. Under normal circumstances do not establish communications.

MONITOR ALERT (MA)– A function of the ETMS that provides traffic management personnel with a tool for predicting potential capacity problems in individual operational sectors. The MA is an indication that traffic management personnel need to analyze a particular sector for actual activity and to determine the required action(s), if any, needed to control the demand.

MONITOR ALERT PARAMETER (MAP)– The number designated for use in monitor alert processing by the ETMS. The MAP is designated for each operational sector for increments of 15 minutes.

MOVEMENT AREA– The runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport/heliport which are utilized for taxiing/ hover taxiing, air taxiing, takeoff, and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas. At those airports/heliports with a tower, specific approval for entry onto the movement area must be obtained from ATC.

(See ICAO term MOVEMENT AREA.)

MOVEMENT AREA [ICAO]– That part of an aerodrome to be used for the takeoff, landing and taxiing of aircraft, consisting of the maneuvering area and the apron(s).

MOVING TARGET INDICATOR– An electronic device which will permit radar scope presentation only from targets which are in motion. A partial remedy for ground clutter.

MRA– (See MINIMUM RECEPTION ALTITUDE.)

MSA– (See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE.)

MSAW– (See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING.)

MTI– (See MOVING TARGET INDICATOR.)

MTR– (See MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

MULTICOM– A mobile service not open to public correspondence used to provide communications essential to conduct the activities being performed by or directed from private aircraft.

MULTIPLE RUNWAYS– The utilization of a dedicated arrival runway(s) for departures and a dedicated departure runway(s) for arrivals when feasible to reduce delays and enhance capacity.

MVA– (See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

N

NAS– (See NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM.)

NAS STAGE A– The en route ATC system's radar, computers and computer programs, controller plan view displays (PVD's/Radar Scopes), input/output devices, and the related communications equipment which are integrated to form the heart of the automated IFR air traffic control system. This equipment performs Flight Data Processing (FDP) and Radar Data Processing (RDP). It interfaces with automated terminal systems and is used in the control of en route IFR aircraft.

(Refer to AIM.)

NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM– The common network of U.S. airspace; air navigation facilities, equipment and services, airports or landing areas; aeronautical charts, information and services; rules, regulations and procedures, technical information, and manpower and material. Included are system components shared jointly with the military.

NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE– Airspace over United States territory located within the North American continent between Canada and Mexico, including adjacent territorial waters outward to about boundaries of oceanic control areas (CTA)/Flight Information Regions (FIR).

(See FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION.)

NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA CENTER– A facility in Washington D.C., established by FAA to operate a central aeronautical information service for the collection, validation, and dissemination of aeronautical data in support of the activities of government, industry, and the aviation community. The information is published in the National Flight Data Digest.

(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST– A daily (except weekends and Federal holidays) publication of flight information appropriate to aeronautical charts, aeronautical publications, Notices to Airmen, or other media serving the purpose of providing operational flight data essential to safe and efficient aircraft operations.

NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP)– The NRP is a set of rules and procedures which are designed to increase the flexibility of user flight planning within published guidelines.

NATIONAL SEARCH AND RESCUE PLAN– An interagency agreement which provides for the effective utilization of all available facilities in all types of search and rescue missions.

NAVAID– (See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

NAVAID CLASSES– VOR, VORTAC, and TACAN aids are classed according to their operational use. The three classes of NAVAID's are:

a. T– Terminal.

b. L– Low altitude.

c. H– High altitude.

Note: The normal service range for T, L, and H class aids is found in the AIM. Certain operational requirements make it necessary to use some of these aids at greater service ranges than specified. Extended range is made possible through flight inspection determinations. Some aids also have lesser service range due to location, terrain, frequency protection, etc. Restrictions to service range are listed in Airport/Facility Directory.

NAVIGABLE AIRSPACE– Airspace at and above the minimum flight altitudes prescribed in the FAR's including airspace needed for safe takeoff and landing.

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

NAVIGATIONAL AID– Any visual or electronic device airborne or on the surface which provides point-to-point guidance information or position data to aircraft in flight.

(See AIR NAVIGATION FACILITY.)

NBCAP AIRSPACE– (See NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE.)

NDB– (See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

NEGATIVE– "No," or "permission not granted," or "that is not correct."

NEGATIVE CONTACT– Used by pilots to inform ATC that:

a. Previously issued traffic is not in sight. It may be followed by the pilot's request for the controller to provide assistance in avoiding the traffic.

b. They were unable to contact ATC on a particular frequency.

NFDC– (See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA CENTER.)

NFDD– (See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

NIGHT– The time between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as published in the American Air Almanac, converted to local time.

(See ICAO term NIGHT.)

NIGHT [ICAO]– The hours between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight or such other period between sunset and sunrise as may be specified by the appropriate authority.

Note. Civil twilight ends in the evening when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon and begins in the morning when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon.

NO GYRO APPROACH– A radar approach/vector provided in case of a malfunctioning gyro-compass or directional gyro. Instead of providing the pilot with headings to be flown, the controller observes the radar track and issues control instructions "turn right/left" or "stop turn" as appropriate.

(Refer to AIM.)

NO GYRO VECTOR– (See NO GYRO APPROACH.)

NO TRANSGRESSION ZONE (NTZ)– The NTZ is a 2,000 foot wide zone, located equidistant between parallel runway final approach courses in which flight is not allowed.

NONAPPROACH CONTROL TOWER– Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace. The primary function of a nonapproach control tower is the sequencing of aircraft in the traffic pattern and on the landing area. Nonapproach control towers also separate aircraft operating under instrument flight rules clearances from approach controls and centers. They provide ground control services to aircraft, vehicles, personnel, and equipment on the airport movement area.

NONCOMMON ROUTE/PORTION– That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and a designated North American terminal.

NONCOMPOSITE SEPARATION– Separation in accordance with minima other than the composite separation minimum specified for the area concerned.

NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON– An L/MF or UHF radio beacon transmitting nondirectional signals whereby the pilot of an aircraft equipped with direction finding equipment can determine his bearing to or from the radio beacon and "home" on or track to or from the station. When the radio beacon is installed in conjunction with the Instrument Landing System marker, it is normally called a Compass Locator.

(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

(See AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER.)

NONMOVEMENT AREAS– Taxiways and apron (ramp) areas not under the control of air traffic.

NONPRECISION APPROACH– (See NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE– A standard instrument approach procedure in which no electronic glideslope is provided; e.g., VOR, TACAN, NDB, LOC, ASR, LDA, or SDF approaches.

NONRADAR– Precedes other terms and generally means without the use of radar, such as:

a. Nonradar Approach. Used to describe instrument approaches for which course guidance on final approach is not provided by ground-based precision or surveillance radar. Radar vectors to the final approach course may or may not be provided by ATC. Examples of nonradar approaches are VOR, NDB, TACAN, and ILS/MLS approaches.

(See FINAL APPROACH-IFR.)

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

b. Nonradar Approach Control. An ATC facility providing approach control service without the use of radar.

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

c. Nonradar Arrival. An aircraft arriving at an airport without radar service or at an airport served by a radar facility and radar contact has not been established or has been terminated due to a lack of radar service to the airport.

(See RADAR ARRIVAL.)

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

d. Nonradar Route. A flight path or route over which the pilot is performing his own navigation. The pilot may be receiving radar separation, radar monitoring, or other ATC services while on a nonradar route.

(See RADAR ROUTE.)

e. Nonradar Separation. The spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minima without the use of radar; e.g., vertical, lateral, or longitudinal separation.

(See RADAR SEPARATION.)

(See ICAO term NONRADAR SEPARATION.)

NONRADAR SEPARATION [ICAO]– The separation used when aircraft position information is derived from sources other than radar.

NOPAC– (See NORTH PACIFIC.)

NORDO– (See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

NORMAL OPERATING ZONE (NOZ)– The NOZ is the operating zone within which aircraft flight remains during normal independent simultaneous parallel ILS approaches.

NORTH AMERICAN ROUTE– A numerically coded route preplanned over existing airway and route systems to and from specific coastal fixes serving the North Atlantic. North American Routes consist of the following:

a. Common Route/Portion. That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and the coastal fix.

b. Noncommon Route/Portion. That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and a designated North American terminal.

c. Inland Navigation Facility. A navigation aid on a North American Route at which the common route and/or the noncommon route begins or ends.

d. Coastal Fix. A navigation aid or intersection where an aircraft transitions between the domestic route structure and the oceanic route structure.

NORTH MARK– A beacon data block sent by the host computer to be displayed by the ARTS on a 360 degree bearing at a locally selected radar azimuth and distance. The North Mark is used to ensure correct range/azimuth orientation during periods of CENRAP.

NORTH PACIFIC– An organized route system between the Alaskan west coast and Japan.

NOTAM– (See NOTICE TO AIRMEN.)

NOTICE TO AIRMEN– A notice containing information (not known sufficiently in advance to publicize by other means) concerning the establishment, condition, or change in any component (facility, service, or procedure of, or hazard in the National Airspace System) the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations.

a. NOTAM(D)– A NOTAM given (in addition to local dissemination) distant dissemination beyond the area of responsibility of the Flight Service Station. These NOTAM's will be stored and available until canceled.

b. NOTAM(L)– A NOTAM given local dissemination by voice and other means, such as telautograph and telephone, to satisfy local user requirements.

c. FDC NOTAM– A NOTAM regulatory in nature, transmitted by USNOF and given system wide dissemination.

(See ICAO term NOTAM.)

NOTAM [ICAO]– A notice containing information concerning the establishment, condition or change in any aeronautical facility, service, procedure or hazard, the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations.

a. I Distribution– Distribution by means of telecommunication.

b. II Distribution– Distribution by means other than telecommunications.

NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION– A publication issued every 28 days, designed primarily for the pilot, which contains current NOTAM information considered essential to the safety of flight as well as supplemental data to other aeronautical publications. The contraction NTAP is used in NOTAM text.

(See NOTICE TO AIRMEN.)

NTAP– (See NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION.)

NUMEROUS TARGETS VICINITY (LOCATION)– A traffic advisory issued by ATC to advise pilots that targets on the radar scope are too numerous to issue individually.

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

O

OBSTACLE– An existing object, object of natural growth, or terrain at a fixed geographical location or which may be expected at a fixed location within a prescribed area with reference to which vertical clearance is or must be provided during flight operation.

OBSTACLE FREE ZONE– The OFZ is a three dimensional volume of airspace which protects for the transition of aircraft to and from the runway. The OFZ clearing standard precludes taxiing and parked airplanes and object penetrations, except for frangible NAVAID locations that are fixed by function. Additionally, vehicles, equipment, and personnel may be authorized by air traffic control to enter the area using the provisions of FAA Order 7110.65, *paragraph 3–1–5, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS.* The runway OFZ and when applicable, the inner-approach OFZ, and the inner-transitional OFZ, comprise the OFZ.

a. Runway OFZ. The runway OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered above the runway. The runway OFZ is the airspace above a surface whose elevation at any point is the same as the elevation of the nearest point on the runway centerline. The runway OFZ extends 200 feet beyond each end of the runway. The width is as follows:

1. For runways serving large airplanes, the greater of:

(a) 400 feet, or

(b) 180 feet, plus the wingspan of the most demanding airplane, plus 20 feet per 1,000 feet of airport elevation.

2. For runways serving only small airplanes:

(a) 300 feet for precision instrument runways.

(b) 250 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of 50 knots, or more.

(c) 120 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of less than 50 knots.

b. Inner-approach OFZ. The inner-approach OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered on the approach area. The inner-approach OFZ applies only to runways with an approach lighting system. The inner-approach OFZ begins 200 feet from the runway threshold at the same elevation as the runway threshold and extends 200 feet beyond the last light unit in the approach lighting system. The width of the inner-approach OFZ is the same as the runway OFZ and rises at a slope of 50 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) from the beginning.

c. Inner-transitional OFZ. The inner transitional surface OFZ is a defined volume of airspace along the sides of the runway and inner-approach OFZ and applies only to precision instrument runways. The inner-transitional surface OFZ slopes 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) out from the edges of the runway OFZ and inner-approach OFZ to a height of 150 feet above the established airport elevation.

(Refer to AC 150/5300-13, Chapter 3 and FAA Order 7110.65, paragraph 3–1–5, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS.)

OBSTRUCTION– Any object/obstacle exceeding the obstruction standards specified by FAR Part 77, Subpart C.

OBSTRUCTION LIGHT– A light or one of a group of lights, usually red or white, frequently mounted on a surface structure or natural terrain to warn pilots of the presence of an obstruction.

OCEANIC AIRSPACE– Airspace over the oceans of the world, considered international airspace, where oceanic separation and procedures per the International Civil Aviation Organization are applied. Responsibility for the provisions of air traffic control service in this airspace is delegated to various countries, based generally upon geographic proximity and the availability of the required resources.

OCEANIC DISPLAY AND PLANNING SYSTEM– An automated digital display system which provides flight data processing, conflict probe, and situation display for oceanic air traffic control.

OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORT– A report filed when an aircraft exiting oceanic airspace has been observed by radar to be off course. ONER reporting parameters and procedures are contained in FAA Order 7110.82, Monitoring of Navigational Performance In Oceanic Areas.

OCEANIC PUBLISHED ROUTE– A route established in international airspace and charted or described in flight information publications, such as Route Charts, DOD Enroute Charts, Chart Supplements, NOTAM's, and Track Messages.

OCEANIC TRANSITION ROUTE– An ATS route established for the purpose of transitioning aircraft to/from an organized track system.

ODAPS– (See OCEANIC DISPLAY AND PLANNING SYSTEM.)

OFF COURSE– A term used to describe a situation where an aircraft has reported a position fix or is observed on radar at a point not on the ATC-approved route of flight.

OFFSHORE CONTROL AREA– That portion of airspace between the U.S. 12-mile limit and the oceanic CTA/FIR boundary within which air traffic control is exercised. These areas are established to permit the application of domestic procedures in the provision of air traffic control services. Offshore control area is generally synonymous with Federal Aviation Regulations, FAR Part 71, Subpart E, "Control Areas and Control Area Extensions."

OFF-ROUTE VECTOR– A vector by ATC which takes an aircraft off a previously assigned route. Altitudes assigned by ATC during such vectors provide required obstacle clearance.

OFFSET PARALLEL RUNWAYS– Staggered runways having centerlines which are parallel.

OFT– (See OUTER FIX TIME.)

OM– (See OUTER MARKER.)

OMEGA– An RNAV system designed for long-range navigation based upon ground-based electronic navigational aid signals.

ONE-MINUTE WEATHER– The most recent one minute updated weather broadcast received by a pilot from an uncontrolled airport ASOS/AWOS.

ONER– (See OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORT.)

OPERATIONAL– (See DUE REGARD.)

ON COURSE-

a. Used to indicate that an aircraft is established on the route centerline.

b. Used by ATC to advise a pilot making a radar approach that his aircraft is lined up on the final approach course.

(See ON-COURSE INDICATION-COURSE INDICATION.)

ON-COURSE INDICATION– An indication on an instrument, which provides the pilot a visual means of determining that the aircraft is located on the centerline of a given navigational track, or an indication on a radar scope that an aircraft is on a given track.

OPPOSITE DIRECTION AIRCRAFT– Aircraft are operating in opposite directions when:

a. They are following the same track in reciprocal directions; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in reciprocal directions; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of more than 135°.

OPTION APPROACH– An approach requested and conducted by a pilot which will result in either a touch-and-go, missed approach, low approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing.

(See CLEARED FOR THE OPTION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM– A movable system of oceanic tracks that traverses the North Atlantic between Europe and North America the physical position of which is determined twice daily taking the best advantage of the winds aloft.

ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM– A series of ATS routes which are fixed and charted; i.e., CEP, NOPAC, or flexible and described by NOTAM; i.e., NAT TRACK MESSAGE.

OROCA– An off-route altitude which provides obstruction clearance with a 1,000 foot buffer in nonmountainous terrain areas and a 2,000 foot buffer in designated mountainous areas within the United States. This altitude may not provide signal coverage from ground-based navigational aids, air traffic control radar, or communications coverage.

OTR– (See OCEANIC TRANSITION ROUTE.)

OTS– (See ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM.)

OUT– The conversation is ended and no response is expected.

OUTER AREA (associated with Class C airspace)– Nonregulatory airspace surrounding designated Class C airspace airports wherein ATC provides radar vectoring and sequencing on a full-time basis for all IFR and participating VFR aircraft. The service provided in the outer area is called Class C service which includes: IFR/IFR-standard IFR separation; IFR/VFR-traffic advisories and conflict resolution; and VFR/VFR-traffic advisories and, as appropriate, safety alerts. The normal radius will be 20 nautical miles with some variations based on site-specific requirements. The outer area extends outward from the primary Class C airspace airport and extends from the lower limits of radar/radio coverage up to the ceiling of the approach control's delegated airspace excluding the Class C charted area and other airspace as appropriate.

(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

(See CONFLICT RESOLUTION.)

OUTER COMPASS LOCATOR– (See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

OUTER FIX– A general term used within ATC to describe fixes in the terminal area, other than the final approach fix. Aircraft are normally cleared to these fixes by an Air Route Traffic Control Center or an Approach Control Facility. Aircraft are normally cleared from these fixes to the final approach fix or final approach course.

OUTER FIX– An adapted fix along the converted route of flight, prior to the meter fix, for which crossing times are calculated and displayed in the metering position list.

OUTER FIX TIME– A calculated time to depart the outer fix in order to cross the vertex at the ACLT. The time reflects descent speed adjustments and any applicable delay time that must be absorbed prior to crossing the meter fix.

OUTER MARKER– A marker beacon at or near the glideslope intercept altitude of an ILS approach. It is keyed to transmit two dashes per second on a 400 Hz tone, which is received aurally and visually by compatible airborne equipment. The OM is normally located four to seven miles from the runway threshold on the extended centerline of the runway.

(See MARKER BEACON.)
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(Refer to AIM.)

OVER– My transmission is ended; I expect a response.

OVERHEAD MANEUVER– A series of predetermined maneuvers prescribed for aircraft (often in formation) for entry into the visual flight rules (VFR) traffic pattern and to proceed to a landing. An overhead maneuver is not an instrument flight rules (IFR) approach procedure. An aircraft executing an overhead maneuver is considered VFR and the IFR flight plan is cancelled when the aircraft reaches the "initial point" on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. The pattern usually specifies the following:

a. The radio contact required of the pilot.

b. The speed to be maintained.

c. An initial approach 3 to 5 miles in length.

d. An elliptical pattern consisting of two 180 degree turns.

e. A break point at which the first 180 degree turn is started.

f. The direction of turns.

g. Altitude (at least 500 feet above the conventional pattern).

h. A "Roll-out" on final approach not less than 1/4 mile from the landing threshold and not less than 300 feet above the ground.

OVERLYING CENTER– The ARTCC facility that is responsible for arrival/departure operations at a specific terminal.

P

P TIME–
(See PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME.)

PAN-PAN– The international radio-telephony urgency signal. When repeated three times, indicates uncertainty or alert followed by the nature of the urgency.

(See MAYDAY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

PAR–
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PAR [ICAO]–
(See ICAO Term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PARALLEL ILS APPROACHES– Approaches to parallel runways by IFR aircraft which, when established inbound toward the airport on the adjacent final approach courses, are radar-separated by at least 2 miles.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)

(See SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES.)

PARALLEL MLS APPROACHES–
(See PARALLEL ILS APPROACHES.)

PARALLEL OFFSET ROUTE– A parallel track to the left or right of the designated or established airway/route. Normally associated with Area Navigation (RNAV) operations.

(See AREA NAVIGATION.)

PARALLEL RUNWAYS– Two or more runways at the same airport whose centerlines are parallel. In addition to runway number, parallel runways are designated as L (left) and R (right) or, if three parallel runways exist, L (left), C (center), and R (right).

PATWAS–
(See PILOTS AUTOMATIC TELEPHONE WEATHER ANSWERING SERVICE.)

PBCT–
(See PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME.)

PERMANENT ECHO– Radar signals reflected from fixed objects on the earth's surface; e.g., buildings, towers, terrain. Permanent echoes are distinguished from "ground clutter" by being definable locations rather than large areas. Under certain conditions they may be used to check radar alignment.

PHOTO RECONNAISSANCE– Military activity that requires locating individual photo targets and navigating to the targets at a preplanned angle and altitude. The activity normally requires a lateral route width of 16 NM and altitude range of 1,500 feet to 10,000 feet AGL.

PIDP–
(See PROGRAMMABLE INDICATOR DATA PROCESSOR.)

PILOT BRIEFING– A service provided by the FSS to assist pilots in flight planning. Briefing items may include weather information, NOTAMS, military activities, flow control information, and other items as requested.

(Refer to AIM.)

PILOT IN COMMAND– The pilot responsible for the operation and safety of an aircraft during flight time.

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

PILOTS AUTOMATIC TELEPHONE WEATHER ANSWERING SERVICE– A continuous telephone recording containing current and forecast weather information for pilots.
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

PILOT'S DISCRETION– When used in conjunction with altitude assignments, means that ATC has offered the pilot the option of starting climb or descent whenever he wishes and conducting the climb or descent at any rate he wishes. He may temporarily level off at any intermediate altitude. However, once he has vacated an altitude, he may not return to that altitude.

PILOT WEATHER REPORT– A report of meteorological phenomena encountered by aircraft in flight.

(Refer to AIM.)

PIREP–
(See PILOT WEATHER REPORT.)

POINT OUT–
(See RADAR POINT OUT.)

POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE– A system of organized routes between Iceland and Alaska which overlie Canadian MNPS Airspace.

POSITION REPORT– A report over a known location as transmitted by an aircraft to ATC.

(Refer to AIM.)

POSITION SYMBOL– A computer-generated indication shown on a radar display to indicate the mode of tracking.

POSITIVE CONTROL– The separation of all air traffic within designated airspace by air traffic control.

PRACTICE INSTRUMENT APPROACH– An instrument approach procedure conducted by a VFR or an IFR aircraft for the purpose of pilot training or proficiency demonstrations.

PREARRANGED COORDINATION– A standardized procedure which permits an air traffic controller to enter the airspace assigned to another air traffic controller without verbal coordination. The procedures are defined in a facility directive which ensures standard separation between aircraft.

PRECIPITATION– Any or all forms of water particles (rain, sleet, hail, or snow) that fall from the atmosphere and reach the surface.

PRECISION APPROACH–
(See PRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE– A standard instrument approach procedure in which an electronic glideslope/glidepath is provided; e.g., ILS/MLS and PAR.

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

(See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)

(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR– Radar equipment in some ATC facilities operated by the FAA and/or the military services at joint-use civil/military locations and separate military installations to detect and display azimuth, elevation, and range of aircraft on the final approach course to a runway. This equipment may be used to monitor certain non-radar approaches, but is primarily used to conduct a precision instrument approach (PAR) wherein the controller issues guidance instructions to the pilot based on the aircraft's position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), the glidepath (elevation), and the distance (range) from the touchdown point on the runway as displayed on the radar scope.

(Note: The abbreviation "PAR" is also used to denote preferential arrival routes in ARTCC computers).

(See GLIDEPATH.)

(See PAR.)

(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)

(See ICAO term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR [ICAO]– Primary radar equipment used to determine the position of an aircraft during final approach, in terms of lateral and vertical deviations relative to a nominal approach path, and in range relative to touchdown.

Note: Precision approach radars are designed to enable pilots of aircraft to be given guidance by radio communication during the final stages of the approach to land.

PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM)– Provides air traffic controllers with high precision secondary surveillance data for aircraft on final approach to parallel runways that have extended centerlines separated by less than 4,300 feet. High resolution color monitoring displays (FMA) are required to present surveillance track data to controllers along with detailed maps depicting approaches and no transgression zone.

PREFERENTIAL ROUTES– Preferential routes (PDR's, PAR's, and PDAR's) are adapted in ARTCC computers to accomplish inter/intrafacility controller coordination and to assure that flight data is posted at the proper control positions. Locations having a need for these specific inbound and outbound routes normally publish such routes in local facility bulletins, and their use by pilots minimizes flight plan route amendments. When the workload or traffic situation permits, controllers normally provide radar vectors or assign requested routes to minimize circuitous routing. Preferential routes are usually confined to one ARTCC's area and are referred to by the following names or acronyms:

a. Preferential Departure Route (PDR). A specific departure route from an airport or terminal area to an en route point where there is no further need for flow control. It may be included in a Standard Instrument Departure (SID) or a Preferred IFR Route.

b. Preferential Arrival Route (PAR). A specific arrival route from an appropriate en route point to an airport or terminal area. It may be included in a Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) or a Preferred IFR Route. The abbreviation "PAR" is used primarily within the ARTCC and should not be confused with the abbreviation for Precision Approach Radar.

c. Preferential Departure and Arrival Route (PDAR). A route between two terminals which are within or immediately adjacent to one ARTCC's area. PDAR's are not synonymous with Preferred IFR Routes but may be listed as such as they do accomplish essentially the same purpose.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)

(See NAS STAGE A.)

PREFERRED IFR ROUTES– Routes established between busier airports to increase system efficiency and capacity. They normally extend through one or more ARTCC areas and are designed to achieve balanced traffic flows among high density terminals. IFR clearances are issued on the basis of these routes except when severe weather avoidance procedures or other factors dictate otherwise. Preferred IFR Routes are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory. If a flight is planned to or from an area having such routes but the departure or arrival point is not listed in the Airport/Facility Directory, pilots may use that part of a Preferred IFR Route which is appropriate for the departure or arrival point that is listed. Preferred IFR Routes are correlated with SID's and STAR's and may be defined by airways, jet routes, direct routes between NAVAID's, Waypoints, NAVAID radials/ DME, or any combinations thereof.

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE.)

(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)

(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)

(See CENTER'S AREA.)

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

(Refer to NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION.)

PRE-FLIGHT PILOT BRIEFING–
(See PILOT BRIEFING.)

PREVAILING VISIBILITY–
(See VISIBILITY.)

PRM–
(See ILS PRM APPROACH and PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR.)

PROCEDURE TURN– The maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish an aircraft on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. The outbound course, direction of turn, distance within which the turn must be completed, and minimum altitude are specified in the procedure. However, unless otherwise restricted, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn are left to the discretion of the pilot.

(See ICAO term PROCEDURE TURN.)

PROCEDURE TURN [ICAO]– A manoeuvre in which a turn is made away from a designated track followed by a turn in the opposite direction to permit the aircraft to intercept and proceed along the reciprocal of the designated track.

Note 1: Procedure turns are designated "left" or "right" according to the direction of the initial turn.

Note 2: Procedure turns may be designated as being made either in level flight or while descending, according to the circumstances of each individual approach procedure.

PROCEDURE TURN INBOUND– That point of a procedure turn maneuver where course reversal has been completed and an aircraft is established inbound on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. A report of "procedure turn inbound" is normally used by ATC as a position report for separation purposes.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)

(See PROCEDURE TURN.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PROFILE DESCENT– An uninterrupted descent (except where level flight is required for speed adjustment; e.g., 250 knots at 10,000 feet MSL) from cruising altitude/level to interception of a glideslope or to a minimum altitude specified for the initial or intermediate approach segment of a nonprecision instrument approach. The profile descent normally terminates at the approach gate or where the glideslope or other appropriate minimum altitude is intercepted.

PROGRAMMABLE INDICATOR DATA PROCESSOR– The PIDP is a modification to the AN/TPX-42 interrogator system currently installed in fixed RAPCON's. The PIDP detects, tracks, and predicts secondary radar aircraft targets. These are displayed by means of computer-generated symbols and alphanumeric characters depicting flight identification, aircraft altitude, ground speed, and flight plan data. Although primary radar targets are not tracked, they are displayed coincident with the secondary radar targets as well as with the other symbols and alphanumerics. The system has the capability of interfacing with ARTCC's.

PROGRESS REPORT–
(See POSITION REPORT.)

PROGRESSIVE TAXI– Precise taxi instructions given to a pilot unfamiliar with the airport or issued in stages as the aircraft proceeds along the taxi route.

PROHIBITED AREA–
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

(See ICAO term PROHIBITED AREA.)

PROHIBITED AREA [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is prohibited.

PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME– Each center has a PBCT parameter for each internal airport. Proposed internal flight plans are transmitted to the adjacent center if the flight time along the proposed route from the departure airport to the center boundary is less than or equal to the value of PBCT or if airport adaptation specifies transmission regardless of PBCT.

PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME– The time a scheduled flight will depart the gate (scheduled operators) or the actual runway off time for nonscheduled operators. For EDCT purposes, the ATCSCC adjusts the "P" time for scheduled operators to reflect the runway off times.

PROTECTED AIRSPACE– The airspace on either side of an oceanic route/track that is equal to one-half the lateral separation minimum except where reduction of protected airspace has been authorized.

PT–
(See PROCEDURE TURN.)

PTS–
(See POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE.)

PUBLISHED ROUTE– A route for which an IFR altitude has been established and published; e.g., Federal Airways, Jet Routes, Area Navigation Routes, Specified Direct Routes.

Q

QUEUING– (See STAGING/QUEUING.)

QNE– The barometric pressure used for the standard altimeter setting (29.92 inches Hg.).

QNH– The barometric pressure as reported by a particular station.

QUADRANT– A quarter part of a circle, centered on a NAVAID, oriented clockwise from magnetic north as follows: NE quadrant 000-089, SE quadrant 090-179, SW quadrant 180-269, NW quadrant 270-359.

QUICK LOOK– A feature of NAS Stage A and ARTS which provides the controller the capability to display full data blocks of tracked aircraft from other control positions.

QUOTA FLOW CONTROL– A flow control procedure by which the Central Flow Control Function (CFCF) restricts traffic to the ARTC Center area having an impacted airport, thereby avoiding sector/area saturation.

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

R

RADAR– A device which, by measuring the time interval between transmission and reception of radio pulses and correlating the angular orientation of the radiated antenna beam or beams in azimuth and/or elevation, provides information on range, azimuth, and/or elevation of objects in the path of the transmitted pulses.

a. Primary Radar– A radar system in which a minute portion of a radio pulse transmitted from a site is reflected by an object and then received back at that site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

b. Secondary Radar/Radar Beacon (ATCRBS)– A radar system in which the object to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a radio receiver/transmitter (transponder). Radar pulses transmitted from the searching transmitter/receiver (interrogator) site are received in the cooperative equipment and used to trigger a distinctive transmission from the transponder. This reply transmission, rather than a reflected signal, is then received back at the transmitter/receiver site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)
(See ICAO term PRIMARY RADAR.)
(See ICAO term RADAR.)
(See ICAO term SECONDARY RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR [ICAO]– A radio detection device which provides information on range, azimuth and/or elevation of objects.

a. Primary Radar– Radar system which uses reflected radio signals.

b. Secondary Radar– Radar system wherein a radio signal transmitted from a radar station initiates the transmission of a radio signal from another station.

RADAR ADVISORY– The provision of advice and information based on radar observations.

(See ADVISORY SERVICE.)

RADAR ALTIMETER– (See RADIO ALTIMETER.)

RADAR APPROACH– An instrument approach procedure which utilizes Precision Approach Radar (PAR) or Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR).

(See AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)
(See SURVEILLANCE APPROACH.)
(See ICAO term RADAR APPROACH.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR APPROACH [ICAO]– An approach, executed by an aircraft, under the direction of a radar controller.

RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY– A terminal ATC facility that uses radar and nonradar capabilities to provide approach control services to aircraft arriving, departing, or transiting airspace controlled by the facility

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

a. Provides radar ATC services to aircraft operating in the vicinity of one or more civil and/or military airports in a terminal area. The facility may provide services of a ground controlled approach (GCA); i.e., ASR and PAR approaches. A radar approach control facility may be operated by FAA, USAF, US Army, USN, USMC, or jointly by FAA and a military service. Specific facility nomenclatures are used for administrative purposes only and are related to the physical location of the facility and the operating service generally as follows:

1. Army Radar Approach Control (ARAC) (Army).

2. Radar Air Traffic Control Facility (RATCF) (Navy/FAA).

3. Radar Approach Control (RAPCON) (Air Force/FAA).

4. Terminal Radar Approach Control (TRACON) (FAA).

5. Air Traffic Control Tower (ATCT) (FAA). (Only those towers delegated approach control authority.).

RADAR ARRIVAL– An aircraft arriving at an airport served by a radar facility and in radar contact with the facility.

(See NONRADAR.)

RADAR BEACON– (See RADAR.)

RADAR CONTACT-

a. Used by ATC to inform an aircraft that it is identified on the radar display and radar flight following will be provided until radar identification is terminated. Radar service may also be provided within the limits of necessity and capability. When a pilot is informed of "radar contact," he automatically discontinues reporting over compulsory reporting points.

(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)

(See RADAR FLIGHT FOLLOWING.)

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

(See RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED.)

(Refer to AIM.)

b. The term used to inform the controller that the aircraft is identified and approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controllers airspace.

(See ICAO term RADAR CONTACT.)

RADAR CONTACT LOST- Used by ATC to inform a pilot that radar data used to determine the aircraft's position is no longer being received, or is no longer reliable and radar service is no longer being provided. The loss may be attributed to several factors including the aircraft merging with weather or ground clutter, the aircraft operating below radar line of sight coverage, the aircraft entering an area of poor radar return, failure of the aircraft transponder, or failure of the ground radar equipment.

(See CLUTTER.)

(See RADAR CONTACT.)

RADAR CLUTTER [ICAO]- The visual indication on a radar display of unwanted signals.

RADAR CONTACT [ICAO]- The situation which exists when the radar blip or radar position symbol of a particular aircraft is seen and identified on a radar display.

RADAR ENVIRONMENT- An area in which radar service may be provided.

(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)

(See RADAR CONTACT.)

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR FLIGHT FOLLOWING- The observation of the progress of radar identified aircraft, whose primary navigation is being provided by the pilot, wherein the controller retains and correlates the aircraft identity with the appropriate target or target symbol displayed on the radar scope.

(See RADAR CONTACT.)

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR IDENTIFICATION- The process of ascertaining that an observed radar target is the radar return from a particular aircraft.

(See RADAR CONTACT.)

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

(See ICAO term RADAR IDENTIFICATION.)

RADAR IDENTIFICATION [ICAO]- The process of correlating a particular radar blip or radar position symbol with a specific aircraft.

RADAR IDENTIFIED AIRCRAFT- An aircraft, the position of which has been correlated with an observed target or symbol on the radar display.

(See RADAR CONTACT.)

(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)

RADAR MONITORING- (See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR NAVIGATIONAL GUIDANCE- (See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR POINT OUT- An action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller if the aircraft will or may enter the airspace or protected airspace of another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.

RADAR REQUIRED- A term displayed on charts and approach plates and included in FDC NOTAM's to alert pilots that segments of either an instrument approach procedure or a route are not navigable because of either the absence or unusability of a NAVAID. The pilot can expect to be provided radar navigational guidance while transiting segments labeled with this term.

(See RADAR ROUTE.)

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR ROUTE- A flight path or route over which an aircraft is vectored. Navigational guidance and altitude assignments are provided by ATC.

(See FLIGHT PATH.)

(See ROUTE.)

RADAR SEPARATION- (See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR SERVICE- A term which encompasses one or more of the following services based on the use of radar which can be provided by a controller to a pilot of a radar identified aircraft.

a. Radar Monitoring- The radar flight-following of aircraft, whose primary navigation is being performed by the pilot, to observe and note deviations from its authorized flight path, airway, or route. When being applied specifically to radar monitoring of instrument approaches; i.e., with precision approach radar (PAR) or radar monitoring of simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches, it includes advice and instructions whenever an aircraft nears or exceeds the prescribed PAR safety limit or simultaneous ILS/MLS no transgression zone.

(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

b. Radar Navigational Guidance– Vectoring aircraft to provide course guidance.

c. Radar Separation– Radar spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minima.

(See ICAO term RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR SERVICE [ICAO]– Term used to indicate a service provided directly by means of radar.

a. Monitoring– The use of radar for the purpose of providing aircraft with information and advice relative to significant deviations from nominal flight path.

b. Separation– The separation used when aircraft position information is derived from radar sources.

RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED– Used by ATC to inform a pilot that he will no longer be provided any of the services that could be received while in radar contact. Radar service is automatically terminated, and the pilot is not advised in the following cases:

a. An aircraft cancels its IFR flight plan, except within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where Basic Radar service is provided.

b. An aircraft conducting an instrument, visual, or contact approach has landed or has been instructed to change to advisory frequency.

c. An arriving VFR aircraft, receiving radar service to a tower-controlled airport within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where sequencing service is provided, has landed; or to all other airports, is instructed to change to tower or advisory frequency.

d. An aircraft completes a radar approach.

RADAR SURVEILLANCE– The radar observation of a given geographical area for the purpose of performing some radar function.

RADAR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES– Advisories issued to alert pilots to known or observed radar traffic which may affect the intended route of flight of their aircraft.

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE– (See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR VECTORING [ICAO]– Provision of navigational guidance to aircraft in the form of specific headings, based on the use of radar.

RADAR WEATHER ECHO INTENSITY LEVELS– Existing radar systems cannot detect turbulence. However, there is a direct correlation between the degree of turbulence and other weather features associated with thunderstorms and the radar weather echo intensity. The National Weather Service has categorized radar weather echo intensity for precipitation into six levels. These levels are sometimes expressed during communications as "VIP LEVEL" 1 through 6 (derived from the component of the radar that produces the information-Video Integrator and Processor). The following list gives the "VIP LEVELS" in relation to the precipitation intensity within a thunderstorm:

a. Level 1. WEAK

b. Level 2. MODERATE

c. Level 3. STRONG

d. Level 4. VERY STRONG

e. Level 5. INTENSE

f. Level 6. EXTREME

(See AC 00-45, Aviation Weather Services.)

RADIAL– A magnetic bearing extending from a VOR/VORTAC/TACAN navigation facility.

RADIO-

a. A device used for communication.

b. Used to refer to a flight service station; e.g., "Seattle Radio" is used to call Seattle FSS.

RADIO ALTIMETER– Aircraft equipment which makes use of the reflection of radio waves from the ground to determine the height of the aircraft above the surface.

RADIO BEACON– (See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

RADIO DETECTION AND RANGING– (See RADAR.)

RADIO MAGNETIC INDICATOR– An aircraft navigational instrument coupled with a gyro compass or similar compass that indicates the direction of a selected NAVAID and indicates bearing with respect to the heading of the aircraft.

RAMP– (See APRON.)

RANDOM ALTITUDE– An altitude inappropriate for direction of flight and/or not in accordance with FAA Order 7110.65, paragraph 4-5-1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA.

RANDOM ROUTE– Any route not established or charted/published or not otherwise available to all users.

RC– (See ROAD RECONNAISSANCE.)

RCAG– (See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY.)

RCC– (See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)

RCO– (See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

RCR– (See RUNWAY CONDITION READING.)

READ BACK– Repeat my message back to me.

RECEIVER AUTONOMOUS INTEGRITY MONITORING (RAIM)– A technique whereby a civil GNSS receiver/processor determines the integrity of the GNSS navigation signals without reference to sensors or non–DoD integrity systems other than the receiver itself. This determination is achieved by a consistency check among redundant pseudorange measurements.

RECEIVING CONTROLLER– A controller/facility receiving control of an aircraft from another controller/facility.

RECEIVING FACILITY– (See RECEIVING CONTROLLER.)

REDUCE SPEED TO (SPEED)– (See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

REIL– (See RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS.)

RELEASE TIME– A departure time restriction issued to a pilot by ATC (either directly or through an authorized relay) when necessary to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.

(See ICAO term RELEASE TIME.)

RELEASE TIME [ICAO]– Time prior to which an aircraft should be given further clearance or prior to which it should not proceed in case of radio failure.

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY– An unmanned VHF/UHF transmitter/receiver facility which is used to expand ARTCC air/ground communications coverage and to facilitate direct contact between pilots and controllers. RCAG facilities are sometimes not equipped with emergency frequencies 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz.

(Refer to AIM.)

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET– An unmanned communications facility remotely controlled by air traffic personnel. RCO's serve FSS's. RTR's serve terminal ATC facilities. An RCO or RTR may be UHF or VHF and will extend the communication range of the air traffic facility. There are several classes of RCO's and RTR's. The class is determined by the number of transmitters or receivers. Classes A through G are used primarily for air/ground purposes. RCO and RTR class O facilities are nonprotected outlets subject to undetected and prolonged outages. RCO (O's) and RTR (O's) were established for the express purpose of providing ground-to-ground communications between air traffic control specialists and pilots located at a satellite airport for delivering en route clearances, issuing departure authorizations, and acknowledging instrument flight rules cancellations or departure/landing times. As a secondary function, they may be used for advisory purposes whenever the aircraft is below the coverage of the primary air/ground frequency.

REMOTE TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER– (See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

REPORT– Used to instruct pilots to advise ATC of specified information; e.g., "Report passing Hamilton VOR."

REPORTING POINT– A geographical location in relation to which the position of an aircraft is reported.

(See COMPULSORY REPORTING POINTS.)

(See ICAO term REPORTING POINT.)

(Refer to AIM.)

REPORTING POINT [ICAO]– A specified geographical location in relation to which the position of an aircraft can be reported.

REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE– Used by pilots to request that the entire route of flight be read verbatim in an ATC clearance. Such request should be made to preclude receiving an ATC clearance based on the original filed flight plan when a filed IFR flight plan has been revised by the pilot, company, or operations prior to departure.

RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER– A search and rescue (SAR) facility equipped and manned to coordinate and control SAR operations in an area designated by the SAR plan. The U.S. Coast Guard and the U.S. Air Force have responsibility for the operation of RCC's.

(See ICAO term RESCUE CO-ORDINATION CENTRE.)

RESCUE CO-ORDINATION CENTRE [ICAO]– A unit responsible for promoting efficient organization of search and rescue service and for coordinating the conduct of search and rescue operations within a search and rescue region.

RESOLUTION ADVISORY–A display indication given to the pilot by the traffic alert and collision avoidance systems (TCAS II) recommending a maneuver to increase vertical separation relative to an intruding aircraft. Positive, negative, and vertical speed limit (VSL) advisories constitute the resolution advisories. A resolution advisory is also classified as corrective or preventive

RESTRICTED AREA– (See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

(See ICAO term RESTRICTED AREA.)

RESTRICTED AREA [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions.

RESUME OWN NAVIGATION– Used by ATC to advise a pilot to resume his own navigational responsibility. It is issued after completion of a radar vector or when radar contact is lost while the aircraft is being radar vectored.

(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)

(See RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED.)

RESUME NORMAL SPEED– Used by ATC to advise a pilot that previously issued speed control restrictions are deleted. An instruction to "resume normal speed" does not delete speed restrictions that are applicable to published procedures of upcoming segments of flight, unless specifically stated by ATC. This does not relieve the pilot of those speed restrictions which are applicable to FAR 91.117.

RMI– (See RADIO MAGNETIC INDICATOR.)

RNAV– (See AREA NAVIGATION.)

RNAV [ICAO]– (See ICAO Term AREA NAVIGATION.)

RNAV APPROACH– An instrument approach procedure which relies on aircraft area navigation equipment for navigational guidance.

(See AREA NAVIGATION.)

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

ROAD RECONNAISSANCE– Military activity requiring navigation along roads, railroads, and rivers. Reconnaissance route/route segments are seldom along a straight line and normally require a lateral route width of 10 NM to 30 NM and an altitude range of 500 feet to 10,000 feet AGL.

ROGER– I have received all of your last transmission. It should not be used to answer a question requiring a yes or a no answer.

(See AFFIRMATIVE.)

(See NEGATIVE.)

ROLLOUT RVR– (See VISIBILITY.)

ROUTE– A defined path, consisting of one or more courses in a horizontal plane, which aircraft traverse over the surface of the earth.

(See AIRWAY.)

(See JET ROUTE.)

(See PUBLISHED ROUTE.)

(See UNPUBLISHED ROUTE.)

ROUTE SEGMENT– As used in Air Traffic Control, a part of a route that can be defined by two navigational fixes, two NAVAID's, or a fix and a NAVAID.

(See FIX.)

(See ROUTE.)

(See ICAO term ROUTE SEGMENT.)

ROUTE SEGMENT [ICAO]– A portion of a route to be flown, as defined by two consecutive significant points specified in a flight plan.

RSA– (See RUNWAY SAFETY AREA.)

RTR– (See REMOTE TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER.)

RUNWAY– A defined rectangular area on a land airport prepared for the landing and takeoff run of aircraft along its length. Runways are normally numbered in relation to their magnetic direction rounded off to the nearest 10 degrees; e.g., Runway 01, Runway 25.

(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)

(See ICAO term RUNWAY.)

RUNWAY [ICAO]– A defined rectangular area on a land aerodrome prepared for the landing and takeoff of aircraft.

RUNWAY CENTERLINE LIGHTING– (See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY CONDITION READING– Numerical decelerometer readings relayed by air traffic controllers at USAF and certain civil bases for use by the pilot in determining runway braking action. These readings are routinely relayed only to USAF and Air National Guard Aircraft.

(See BRAKING ACTION.)

RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS– (See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY GRADIENT– The average slope, measured in percent, between two ends or points on a runway. Runway gradient is depicted on Government aerodrome sketches when total runway gradient exceeds 0.3%.

RUNWAY HEADING– The magnetic direction that corresponds with the runway centerline extended, not the painted runway number. When cleared to "fly or maintain runway heading," pilots are expected to fly or maintain the heading that corresponds with the extended centerline of the departure runway. Drift correction shall not be applied; e.g., Runway 4, actual magnetic heading of the runway centerline 044, fly 044.

RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY– Any runway or runways currently being used for takeoff or landing. When multiple runways are used, they are all considered active runways. In the metering sense, a selectable adapted item which specifies the landing runway configuration or direction of traffic flow. The adapted optimum flight plan from each transition fix to the vertex is determined by the runway configuration for arrival metering processing purposes.

RUNWAY LIGHTS– (See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY MARKINGS– (See AIRPORT MARKING AIDS.)

RUNWAY OVERRUN– In military aviation exclusively, a stabilized or paved area beyond the end of a runway, of the same width as the runway plus shoulders, centered on the extended runway centerline.

RUNWAY PROFILE DESCENT– An instrument flight rules (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure to a runway published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form and may be associated with a STAR. Runway Profile Descents provide routing and may depict crossing altitudes, speed restrictions, and headings to be flown from the en route structure to the point where the pilot will receive clearance for and execute an instrument approach procedure. A Runway Profile Descent may apply to more than one runway if so stated on the chart.

(Refer to AIM.)

RUNWAY SAFETY AREA– A defined surface surrounding the runway prepared, or suitable, for reducing the risk of damage to airplanes in the event of an undershoot, overshoot, or excursion from the runway. The dimensions of the RSA vary and can be determined by using the criteria contained within AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design, Chapter 3. Figure 3-1 in AC 150/5300-13 depicts the RSA. The design standards dictate that the RSA shall be:

a. Cleared, graded, and have no potentially hazardous ruts, humps, depressions, or other surface variations;

b. Drained by grading or storm sewers to prevent water accumulation;

c. Capable, under dry conditions, of supporting snow removal equipment, aircraft rescue and firefighting equipment, and the occasional passage of aircraft without causing structural damage to the aircraft; and,

d. Free of objects, except for objects that need to be located in the runway safety area because of their function. These objects shall be constructed on low impact resistant supports (frangible mounted structures) to the lowest practical height with the frangible point no higher than 3 inches above grade.

(Refer to AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design, Chapter 3.)

RUNWAY USE PROGRAM– A noise abatement runway selection plan designed to enhance noise abatement efforts with regard to airport communities for arriving and departing aircraft. These plans are developed into runway use programs and apply to all turbojet aircraft 12,500 pounds or heavier; turbojet aircraft less than 12,500 pounds are included only if the airport proprietor determines that the aircraft creates a noise problem. Runway use programs are coordinated with FAA offices, and safety criteria used in these programs are developed by the Office of Flight Operations. Runway use programs are administered by the Air Traffic Service as "Formal" or "Informal" programs.

a. Formal Runway Use Program– An approved noise abatement program which is defined and acknowledged in a Letter of Understanding between Flight Operations, Air Traffic Service, the airport proprietor, and the users. Once established, participation in the program is mandatory for aircraft operators and pilots as provided for in FAR Part 91.129.

b. Informal Runway Use Program– An approved noise abatement program which does not require a Letter of Understanding, and participation in the program is voluntary for aircraft operators/pilots.

RUNWAY VISIBILITY VALUE– (See VISIBILITY.)

RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE– (See VISIBILITY.)

S

SAFETY ALERT– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. The controller may discontinue the issuance of further alerts if the pilot advises he is taking action to correct the situation or has the other aircraft in sight.

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions; e.g., "Low Altitude Alert, check your altitude immediately."

b. Aircraft Conflict Alert– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware of an aircraft that is not under their control at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places both aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, ATC will offer the pilot an alternate course of action when feasible; e.g., "Traffic Alert, advise you turn right heading zero niner zero or climb to eight thousand immediately."

The issuance of a safety alert is contingent upon the capability of the controller to have an awareness of an unsafe condition. The course of action provided will be predicated on other traffic under ATC control. Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, he will take.

SAIL BACK– A maneuver during high wind conditions (usually with power off) where float plane movement is controlled by water rudders/opening and closing cabin doors.

SAME DIRECTION AIRCRAFT– Aircraft are operating in the same direction when:

a. They are following the same track in the same direction; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in the same direction; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of less than 45 degrees.

SAR–

(*See* SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SAY AGAIN– Used to request a repeat of the last transmission. Usually specifies transmission or portion thereof not understood or received; e.g., "Say again all after ABRAM VOR."

SAY ALTITUDE– Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's specific altitude/flight level. When the aircraft is climbing or descending, the pilot should state the indicated altitude rounded to the nearest 100 feet.

SAY HEADING– Used by ATC to request an aircraft heading. The pilot should state the actual heading of the aircraft.

SDF–

(*See* SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY.)

SEA LANE– A designated portion of water outlined by visual surface markers for and intended to be used by aircraft designed to operate on water.

SEARCH AND RESCUE– A service which seeks missing aircraft and assists those found to be in need of assistance. It is a cooperative effort using the facilities and services of available Federal, state and local agencies. The U.S. Coast Guard is responsible for coordination of search and rescue for the Maritime Region, and the U.S. Air Force is responsible for search and rescue for the Inland Region. Information pertinent to search and rescue should be passed through any air traffic facility or be transmitted directly to the Rescue Coordination Center by telephone.

(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SEARCH AND RESCUE FACILITY– A facility responsible for maintaining and operating a search and rescue (SAR) service to render aid to persons and property in distress. It is any SAR unit, station, NET, or other operational activity which can be usefully employed during an SAR Mission; e.g., a Civil Air Patrol Wing, or a Coast Guard Station.

(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SECTIONAL AERONAUTICAL CHARTS–

(*See* AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL– A parameter number of minutes after the meter fix time when arrival aircraft will be deleted from the arrival sector list.

SEE AND AVOID– When weather conditions permit, pilots operating IFR or VFR are required to observe and maneuver to avoid other aircraft. Right-of-way rules are contained in FAR Part 91.

SEGMENTED CIRCLE– A system of visual indicators designed to provide traffic pattern information at airports without operating control towers.

(Refer to AIM.)

SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE– An instrument approach procedure may have as many as four separate segments depending on how the approach procedure is structured.

a. Initial Approach– The segment between the initial approach fix and the intermediate fix or the point where the aircraft is established on the intermediate course or final approach course.

(See ICAO term INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

b. Intermediate Approach– The segment between the intermediate fix or point and the final approach fix.

(See ICAO term INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT.)

c. Final Approach– The segment between the final approach fix or point and the runway, airport, or missed approach point.

(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

d. Missed Approach– The segment between the missed approach point or the point of arrival at decision height and the missed approach fix at the prescribed altitude.

(Refer to FAR Part 97.)

(See ICAO term MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SELECTED GROUND DELAYS– A traffic management procedure whereby selected flights are issued ground delays to better regulate traffic flows over a particular fix or area.

SEPARATION– In air traffic control, the spacing of aircraft to achieve their safe and orderly movement in flight and while landing and taking off.

(See SEPARATION MINIMA.)

(See ICAO term SEPARATION.)

SEPARATION [ICAO]– Spacing between aircraft, levels or tracks.

SEPARATION MINIMA– The minimum longitudinal, lateral, or vertical distances by which aircraft are spaced through the application of air traffic control procedures.

(See SEPARATION.)

SERVICE– A generic term that designates functions or assistance available from or rendered by air traffic control. For example, Class C service would denote the ATC services provided within a Class C airspace area.

SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN– An approved plan to minimize the affect of severe weather on traffic flows in impacted terminal and/or ARTCC areas. SWAP is normally implemented to provide the least disruption to the ATC system when flight through portions of airspace is difficult or impossible due to severe weather.

SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS– Preliminary messages issued in order to alert users that a Severe Weather Watch Bulletin (WW) is being issued. These messages define areas of possible severe thunderstorms or tornado activity. The messages are unscheduled and issued as required by the National Severe Storm Forecast Center at Kansas City, Missouri.

(See AIRMET.)

(See SIGMET.)

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

(See CWA.)

SFA–

(*See* SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SFO–

(*See* SIMULATED FLAMEOUT.)

SHF–

(*See* SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY.)

SHORT RANGE CLEARANCE– A clearance issued to a departing IFR flight which authorizes IFR flight to a specific fix short of the destination while air traffic control facilities are coordinating and obtaining the complete clearance.

SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT AIRCRAFT– An aircraft which, at some weight within its approved operating weight, is capable of operating from a STOL runway in compliance with the applicable STOL characteristics, airworthiness, operations, noise, and pollution standards.

(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

SIAP–

(*See* STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SIDESTEP MANEUVER– A visual maneuver accomplished by a pilot at the completion of an instrument approach to permit a straight-in landing on a parallel runway not more than 1,200 feet to either side of the runway to which the instrument approach was conducted.

(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET– A weather advisory issued concerning weather significant to the safety of all aircraft. SIGMET advisories cover severe and extreme turbulence, severe icing, and widespread dust or sandstorms that reduce visibility to less than 3 miles.

(See AIRMET.)

(See AWW.)

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

(See CWA.)

(See ICAO term SIGMET INFORMATION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET INFORMATION [ICAO]– Information issued by a meteorological watch office concerning the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of aircraft operations.

SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION–

(*See* SIGMET.)

SIGNIFICANT POINT– A point, whether a named intersection, a NAVAID, a fix derived from a NAVAID(s), or geographical coordinate expressed in degrees of latitude and longitude, which is established for the purpose of providing separation, as a reporting point, or to delineate a route of flight.

SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY– A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches. The final approach course is similar to that of an ILS localizer except that the SDF course may be offset from the runway, generally not more than 3 degrees, and the course may be wider than the localizer, resulting in a lower degree of accuracy.

(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULATED FLAMEOUT– A practice approach by a jet aircraft (normally military) at idle thrust to a runway. The approach may start at a runway (high key) and may continue on a relatively high and wide downwind leg with a continuous turn to final. It terminates in landing or low approach. The purpose of this approach is to simulate a flameout.

(See FLAMEOUT.)

SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES– An approach system permitting simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 4,300 feet between centerlines. Integral parts of a total system are ILS/MLS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and appropriate airborne equipment.

(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)

(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULTANEOUS MLS APPROACHES–

(*See* SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES.)

SINGLE DIRECTION ROUTES– Preferred IFR Routes which are sometimes depicted on high altitude en route charts and which are normally flown in one direction only.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH– A service provided under a letter of agreement to military single-piloted turbojet aircraft which permits use of a single UHF frequency during approach for landing. Pilots will not normally be required to change frequency from the beginning of the approach to touchdown except that pilots conducting an en route descent are required to change frequency when control is transferred from the air route traffic control center to the terminal facility. The abbreviation "SFA" in the DOD FLIP IFR Supplement under "Communications" indicates this service is available at an aerodrome.

SINGLE-PILOTED AIRCRAFT– A military turbojet aircraft possessing one set of flight controls, tandem cockpits, or two sets of flight controls but operated by one pilot is considered single-piloted by ATC when determining the appropriate air traffic service to be applied.

(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SLASH– A radar beacon reply displayed as an elongated target.

SLDI–

(*See* SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL.)

SLOT TIME–

(*See* METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME.)

SLOW TAXI– To taxi a float plane at low power or low RPM.

SN–

(*See* SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION.)

SPEAK SLOWER– Used in verbal communications as a request to reduce speech rate.

SPECIAL EMERGENCY– A condition of air piracy or other hostile act by a person(s) aboard an aircraft which threatens the safety of the aircraft or its passengers.

SPECIAL INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE–

(*See* INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE– Airspace of defined dimensions identified by an area on the surface of the earth wherein activities must be confined because of their nature and/or wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities. Types of special use airspace are:

a. Alert Area– Airspace which may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. Alert Areas are depicted on aeronautical charts for the information of nonparticipating pilots. All activities within an Alert Area are conducted in accordance with Federal Aviation Regulations, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area are equally responsible for collision avoidance.

b. Controlled Firing Area– Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground.

c. Military Operations Area (MOA)– A MOA is airspace established outside of Class A airspace area to separate or segregate certain nonhazardous military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted.

(Refer to AIM.)

d. Prohibited Area– Airspace designated under part 73 within which no person may operate an aircraft without the permission of the using agency.

(Refer to En Route Charts, AIM.)

e. Restricted Area– Airspace designated under FAR Part 73, within which the flight of aircraft, while not wholly prohibited, is subject to restriction. Most restricted areas are designated joint use and IFR/VFR operations in the area may be authorized by the controlling ATC facility when it is not being utilized by the using agency. Restricted areas are depicted on en route charts. Where joint use is authorized, the name of the ATC controlling facility is also shown.

(Refer to FAR Part 73.)

(Refer to AIM.)

f. Warning Area– A warning area is airspace of defined dimensions extending from 3 nautical miles outward from the coast of the United States, that contains activity that may be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The purpose of such warning area is to warn nonparticipating pilots of the potential danger. A warning area may be located over domestic or international waters or both.

SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS– Meteorological conditions that are less than those required for basic VFR flight in Class B, C, D, or E surface areas and in which some aircraft are permitted flight under visual flight rules.

(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT [ICAO]– A VFR flight cleared by air traffic control to operate within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in metrological conditions below VMC.

SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS– Aircraft operating in accordance with clearances within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in weather conditions less than the basic VFR weather minima. Such operations must be requested by the pilot and approved by ATC.

(See SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS.)

(See ICAO term SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT.)

SPEED– (*See* AIRSPEED.)

(See GROUND SPEED.)

SPEED ADJUSTMENT– An ATC procedure used to request pilots to adjust aircraft speed to a specific value for the purpose of providing desired spacing. Pilots are expected to maintain a speed of plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed.

Examples of speed adjustments are:

1. "Increase/reduce speed to Mach point (number.)"

2. "Increase/reduce speed to (speed in knots)" or "Increase/reduce speed (number of knots) knots."

SPEED BRAKES– Moveable aerodynamic devices on aircraft that reduce airspeed during descent and landing.

SPEED SEGMENTS– Portions of the arrival route between the transition point and the vertex along the optimum flight path for which speeds and altitudes are specified. There is one set of arrival speed segments adapted from each transition point to each vertex. Each set may contain up to six segments.

SQUAWK (Mode, Code, Function)– Activate specific modes/codes/functions on the aircraft transponder; e.g., "Squawk three/alpha, two one zero five, low."

(See TRANSPONDER.)

STAGING/QUEUING– The placement, integration, and segregation of departure aircraft in designated movement areas of an airport by departure fix, EDCT, and/or restriction.

STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE–

(*See* INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control departure procedure printed for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form. SID's provide transition from the terminal to the appropriate en route structure.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE CHARTS–

(*See* AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

STANDARD RATE TURN– A turn of three degrees per second.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form. STAR's provide transition from the en route structure to an outer fix or an instrument approach fix/arrival waypoint in the terminal area.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL CHARTS–

(*See* AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

STAND BY– Means the controller or pilot must pause for a few seconds, usually to attend to other duties of a higher priority. Also means to wait as in "stand by for clearance." The caller should reestablish contact if a delay is lengthy. "Stand by" is not an approval or denial.

STAR–

(*See* STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)

STATE AIRCRAFT– Aircraft used in military, customs and police service, in the exclusive service of any government, or of any political subdivision, thereof including the government of any state, territory, or possession of the United States or the District of Columbia, but not including any government-owned aircraft engaged in carrying persons or property for commercial purposes.

STATIC RESTRICTIONS– Those restrictions that are usually not subject to change, fixed, in place, and/or published.

STATIONARY RESERVATIONS– Altitude reservations which encompass activities in a fixed area. Stationary reservations may include activities, such as special tests of weapons systems or equipment, certain U.S. Navy carrier, fleet, and anti-submarine operations, rocket, missile and drone operations, and certain aerial refueling or similar operations.

STEPDOWN FIX– A fix permitting additional descent within a segment of an instrument approach procedure by identifying a point at which a controlling obstacle has been safely overflown.

STEP TAXI– To taxi a float plane at full power or high RPM.

STEP TURN– A maneuver used to put a float plane in a planing configuration prior to entering an active sea lane for takeoff. The STEP TURN maneuver should only be used upon pilot request.

STEREO ROUTE– A routinely used route of flight established by users and ARTCC's identified by a coded name; e.g., ALPHA 2. These routes minimize flight plan handling and communications.

STOL AIRCRAFT–

(*See* SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK– Used by ATC to inform an aircraft to turn-off the automatic altitude reporting feature of its transponder. It is issued when the verbally reported altitude varies 300 feet or more from the automatic altitude report.

(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)

(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP AND GO– A procedure wherein an aircraft will land, make a complete stop on the runway, and then commence a takeoff from that point.

(See LOW APPROACH.)

(See OPTION APPROACH.)

STOP BURST–

(*See* STOP STREAM.)

STOP BUZZER–

(*See* STOP STREAM.)

STOPOVER FLIGHT PLAN– A flight plan format which permits in a single submission the filing of a sequence of flight plans through interim full-stop destinations to a final destination.

STOP SQUAWK (Mode or Code)– Used by ATC to tell the pilot to turn specified functions of the aircraft transponder off.

(See STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK.)

(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP STREAM– Used by ATC to request a pilot to suspend electronic countermeasure activity.

(See JAMMING.)

STOPWAY– An area beyond the takeoff runway no less wide than the runway and centered upon the extended centerline of the runway, able to support the airplane during an aborted takeoff, without causing structural damage to the airplane, and designated by the airport authorities for use in decelerating the airplane during an aborted takeoff.

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR– An instrument approach wherein final approach is begun without first having executed a procedure turn, not necessarily completed with a straight-in landing or made to straight-in landing minimums.

(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)

(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR– Entry into the traffic pattern by interception of the extended runway centerline (final approach course) without executing any other portion of the traffic pattern.

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING– A landing made on a runway aligned within 30° of the final approach course following completion of an instrument approach.

(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH-IFR.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS–

(*See* LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS–

(*See* STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS.)

SUBSTITUTIONS– Users are permitted to exchange CTA's. Normally, the airline dispatcher will contact the ATCSCC with this request. The ATCSCC shall forward approved substitutions to the TMU's who will notify the appropriate terminals. Permissible swapping must not change the traffic load for any given hour of an EQF program.

SUBSTITUTE ROUTE– A route assigned to pilots when any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status. These routes consist of:

a. Substitute routes which are shown on U.S. Government charts.

b. Routes defined by ATC as specific NAVAID radials or courses.

c. Routes defined by ATC as direct to or between NAVAID's.

SUNSET AND SUNRISE– The mean solar times of sunset and sunrise as published in the Nautical Almanac, converted to local standard time for the locality concerned. Within Alaska, the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as defined for each locality.

SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 3 and 30 gigahertz (GHz). The elevation and azimuth stations of the microwave landing system operate from 5031 MHz to 5091 MHz in this spectrum.

SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION– Airport facilities staffed with contract personnel who take weather observations and provide current local weather to pilots via telephone or radio. (All other services are provided by the parent FSS).

SUPPS– Refers to ICAO Document 7030 Regional Supplementary Procedures. SUPPS contain procedures for each ICAO Region which are unique to that Region and are not covered in the worldwide provisions identified in the ICAO Air Navigation Plan. Procedures contained in chapter 8 are based in part on those published in SUPPS.

SURFACE AREA– The airspace contained by the lateral boundary of the Class B, C, D, or E airspace designated for an airport that begins at the surface and extends upward.

SURPIC– A description of surface vessels in the area of a Search and Rescue incident including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(See FAA Order 7110.65, paragraph 10-6-4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

SURVEILLANCE APPROACH– An instrument approach wherein the air traffic controller issues instructions, for pilot compliance, based on aircraft position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), and the distance (range) from the end of the runway as displayed on the controller's radar scope. The controller will provide recommended altitudes on final approach if requested by the pilot.

(Refer to AIM.)

SWAP– *(See* SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN.)

SWSL– *(See* SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION.)

SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION– Military activity accomplished by navigating along a preplanned route using internal aircraft systems to maintain a desired track. This activity normally requires a lateral route width of 10 NM and altitude range of 1,000 feet to 6,000 feet AGL with some route segments that permit terrain following.

T

TACAN–

(*See* TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION.)

TACAN-ONLY AIRCRAFT– An aircraft, normally military, possessing TACAN with DME but no VOR navigational system capability. Clearances must specify TACAN or VORTAC fixes and approaches.

TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION– An ultra-high frequency electronic rho-theta air navigation aid which provides suitably equipped aircraft a continuous indication of bearing and distance to the TACAN station.

(See VORTAC.)

(Refer to AIM.)

TAILWIND– Any wind more than 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the runway. The magnetic direction of the runway shall be used as the basis for determining the longitudinal axis.

TAKEOFF AREA–

(*See* LANDING AREA.)

TAKE-OFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]– The length of the take-off run available plus the length of the clearway, if provided.

TAKE-OFF RUN AVAILABLE [ICAO]– The length of runway declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane take-off.

TARGET– The indication shown on a radar display resulting from a primary radar return or a radar beacon reply.

(See RADAR.)

(See TARGET SYMBOL.)

(See ICAO term TARGET.)

TARGET [ICAO]– In radar:

a. Generally, any discrete object which reflects or retransmits energy back to the radar equipment.

b. Specifically, an object of radar search or surveillance.

TARGET RESOLUTION– A process to ensure that correlated radar targets do not touch. Target resolution shall be applied as follows:

a. Between the edges of two primary targets or the edges of the ASR-9 primary target symbol.

b. Between the end of the beacon control slash and the edge of a primary target.

c. Between the ends of two beacon control slashes.

MANDATORY TRAFFIC ADVISORIES AND SAFETY ALERTS SHALL BE ISSUED WHEN THIS PROCEDURE IS USED.

Note: This procedure shall not be provided utilizing mosaic radar systems.

TARGET SYMBOL– A computer-generated indication shown on a radar display resulting from a primary radar return or a radar beacon reply.

TAXI– The movement of an airplane under its own power on the surface of an airport (FAR Part 135.100 [Note]). Also, it describes the surface movement of helicopters equipped with wheels.

(See AIR TAXI.)

(See HOVER TAXI.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(Refer to FAR Part 135.100.)

TAXI INTO POSITION AND HOLD– Used by ATC to inform a pilot to taxi onto the departure runway in takeoff position and hold. It is not authorization for takeoff. It is used when takeoff clearance cannot immediately be issued because of traffic or other reasons.

(See CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.)

TAXI PATTERNS– Patterns established to illustrate the desired flow of ground traffic for the different runways or airport areas available for use.

TCAS–

(*See* TRAFFIC ALERT AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEM.)

TCH–

(*See* THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT.)

TCLT–

(*See* TENTATIVE CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

TDZE–

(*See* TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION.)

TELEPHONE INFORMATION BRIEFING SERVICE– A continuous telephone recording of meteorological and/or aeronautical information.

(Refer to AIM.)

TENTATIVE CALCULATED LANDING TIME– A projected time calculated for adapted vertex for each arrival aircraft based upon runway configuration, airport acceptance rate, airport arrival delay period, and other metered arrival aircraft. This time is either the VTA of the aircraft or the TCLT/ACLT of the previous aircraft plus the AAI, whichever is later. This time will be updated in response to an aircraft's progress and its current relationship to other arrivals.

TERMINAL AREA– A general term used to describe airspace in which approach control service or airport traffic control service is provided.

TERMINAL AREA FACILITY– A facility providing air traffic control service for arriving and departing IFR, VFR, Special VFR, and on occasion en route aircraft.

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

(See TOWER.)

TERMINAL VFR RADAR SERVICE– A national program instituted to extend the terminal radar services provided instrument flight rules (IFR) aircraft to visual flight rules (VFR) aircraft. The program is divided into four types service referred to as basic radar service, terminal radar service area (TRSA) service, Class B service and Class C service. The type of service provided at a particular location is contained in the Airport/Facility Directory.

a. Basic Radar Service– These services are provided for VFR aircraft by all commissioned terminal radar facilities. Basic radar service includes safety alerts, traffic advisories, limited radar vectoring when requested by the pilot, and sequencing at locations where procedures have been established for this purpose and/or when covered by a letter of agreement. The purpose of this service is to adjust the flow of arriving IFR and VFR aircraft into the traffic pattern in a safe and orderly manner and to provide traffic advisories to departing VFR aircraft.

b. TRSA Service– This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, sequencing of all IFR and participating VFR aircraft to the primary airport and separation between all participating VFR aircraft. The purpose of this service is to provide separation between all participating VFR aircraft and all IFR aircraft operating within the area defined as a TRSA.

c. Class C Service– This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation between IFR and VFR aircraft, and sequencing of VFR aircraft, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport.

d. Class B Service– This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation of aircraft based on IFR, VFR, and/or weight, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport(s).

(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

(See TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA– Airspace surrounding designated airports wherein ATC provides radar vectoring, sequencing, and separation on a full-time basis for all IFR and participating VFR aircraft. Service provided in a TRSA is called Stage III Service. The AIM contains an explanation of TRSA. TRSA's are depicted on VFR aeronautical charts. Pilot participation is urged but is not mandatory.

(See TERMINAL RADAR PROGRAM.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

TERMINAL-VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION– A very high frequency terminal omnirange station located on or near an airport and used as an approach aid.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

(See VOR.)

TERRAIN FOLLOWING– The flight of a military aircraft maintaining a constant AGL altitude above the terrain or the highest obstruction. The altitude of the aircraft will constantly change with the varying terrain and/or obstruction.

TETRAHEDRON– A device normally located on uncontrolled airports and used as a landing direction indicator. The small end of a tetrahedron points in the direction of landing. At controlled airports, the tetrahedron, if installed, should be disregarded because tower instructions supersede the indicator.

(See SEGMENTED CIRCLE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

TF–

(See TERRAIN FOLLOWING.)

THAT IS CORRECT– The understanding you have is right.

360 OVERHEAD–

(See OVERHEAD APPROACH.)

THRESHOLD– The beginning of that portion of the runway usable for landing.

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

(See DISPLACED THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT– The theoretical height above the runway threshold at which the aircraft's glideslope antenna would be if the aircraft maintains the trajectory established by the mean ILS glideslope or MLS glidepath.

(See GLIDESLOPE.)

(See THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD LIGHTS–

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TIBS–

(See TELEPHONE INFORMATION BRIEFING SERVICE.)

TIME GROUP– Four digits representing the hour and minutes from the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) clock. FAA uses UTC for all operations. The term "ZULU" may be used to denote UTC. The word "local" or the time zone equivalent shall be used to denote local when local time is given during radio and telephone communications. When written, a time zone designator is used to indicate local time; e.g. "0205M" (Mountain). The local time may be based on the 24-hour clock system. The day begins at 0000 and ends at 2359.

TMPA-

(*See* TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT.)

TMU-

(*See* TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT UNIT.)

TODA [ICAO]-

(*See* ICAO Term TAKE-OFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

TORA [ICAO]-

(*See* ICAO Term TAKE-OFF RUN AVAILABLE.)

TORCHING- The burning of fuel at the end of an exhaust pipe or stack of a reciprocating aircraft engine, the result of an excessive richness in the fuel air mixture.

TOTAL ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME [ICAO]- For IFR flights, the estimated time required from take-off to arrive over that designated point, defined by reference to navigation aids, from which it is intended that an instrument approach procedure will be commenced, or, if no navigation aid is associated with the destination aerodrome, to arrive over the destination aerodrome. For VFR flights, the estimated time required from takeoff to arrive over the destination aerodrome.

(See ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME.)

TOUCH-AND-GO- An operation by an aircraft that lands and departs on a runway without stopping or exiting the runway.

TOUCH-AND-GO LANDING-

(*See* TOUCH-AND-GO.)

TOUCHDOWN-

a. The point at which an aircraft first makes contact with the landing surface.

b. Concerning a precision radar approach (PAR), it is the point where the glide path intercepts the landing surface.

(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN.)

TOUCHDOWN [ICAO]- The point where the nominal glide path intercepts the runway.

Note: Touchdown as defined above is only a datum and is not necessarily the actual point at which the aircraft will touch the runway.

TOUCHDOWN RVR-

(*See* VISIBILITY.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE- The first 3,000 feet of the runway beginning at the threshold. The area is used for determination of Touchdown Zone Elevation in the development of straight-in landing minimums for instrument approaches.

(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE [ICAO]- The portion of a runway, beyond the threshold, where it is intended landing aircraft first contact the runway.

TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION- The highest elevation in the first 3,000 feet of the landing surface. TDZE is indicated on the instrument approach procedure chart when straight-in landing minimums are authorized.

(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTING-

(*See* AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TOWER- A terminal facility that uses air/ground communications, visual signaling, and other devices to provide ATC services to aircraft operating in the vicinity of an airport or on the movement area. Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace area regardless of flight plan or weather conditions (IFR or VFR). A tower may also provide approach control services (radar or nonradar).

(See AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE.)

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

(See MOVEMENT AREA.)

(See TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term AERODROME CONTROL TOWER.)

TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE- The control of IFR en route traffic within delegated airspace between two or more adjacent approach control facilities. This service is designed to expedite traffic and reduce control and pilot communication requirements.

TOWER TO TOWER-

(*See* TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)

TPX-42- A numeric beacon decoder equipment/system. It is designed to be added to terminal radar systems for beacon decoding. It provides rapid target identification, reinforcement of the primary radar target, and altitude information from Mode C.

(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

(See TRANSPONDER.)

TRACK– The actual flight path of an aircraft over the surface of the earth.

(See COURSE.)

(See ROUTE.)

(See FLIGHT PATH.)

(See ICAO term TRACK.)

TRACK [ICAO]– The projection on the earth's surface of the path of an aircraft, the direction of which path at any point is usually expressed in degrees from North (True, Magnetic, or Grid).

TRAFFIC-

a. A term used by a controller to transfer radar identification of an aircraft to another controller for the purpose of coordinating separation action. Traffic is normally issued:

1. in response to a handoff or point out,

2. in anticipation of a handoff or point out, or

3. in conjunction with a request for control of an aircraft.

b. A term used by ATC to refer to one or more aircraft.

TRAFFIC ADVISORIES– Advisories issued to alert pilots to other known or observed air traffic which may be in such proximity to the position or intended route of flight of their aircraft to warrant their attention. Such advisories may be based on:

a. Visual observation.

b. Observation of radar identified and nonidentified aircraft targets on an ATC radar display, or

c. Verbal reports from pilots or other facilities.

Note 1: The word "traffic" followed by additional information, if known, is used to provide such advisories; e.g., "Traffic, 2 o'clock, one zero miles, southbound, eight thousand."

Note 2: Traffic advisory service will be provided to the extent possible depending on higher priority duties of the controller or other limitations; e.g., radar limitations, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, or controller workload. Radar/nonradar traffic advisories do not relieve the pilot of his responsibility to see and avoid other aircraft. Pilots are cautioned that there are many times when the controller is not able to give traffic advisories concerning all traffic in the aircraft's proximity; in other words, <u>when a pilot requests or is receiving traffic advisories, he should not assume that all traffic will be issued.</u>

(Refer to AIM.)

TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY, (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

(See SAFETY ALERT.)

TRAFFIC ALERT AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEM– An airborne collision avoidance system based on radar beacon signals which operates independent of ground-based equipment. TCAS-I generates traffic advisories only. TCAS-II generates traffic advisories, and resolution (collision avoidance) advisories in the vertical plane.

TRAFFIC INFORMATION–

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

TRAFFIC IN SIGHT– Used by pilots to inform a controller that previously issued traffic is in sight.

(See NEGATIVE CONTACT.)

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT– A term used in a Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) issued in conjunction with a special traffic management program to alert pilots to the existence of the program and to refer them to either the Notices to Airmen publication or a special traffic management program advisory message for program details. The contraction TMPA is used in NOTAM text.

TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT UNIT– The entity in ARTCC's and designated terminals responsible for direct involvement in the active management of facility traffic. Usually under the direct supervision of an assistant manager for traffic management.

TRAFFIC NO FACTOR– Indicates that the traffic described in a previously issued traffic advisory is no factor.

TRAFFIC NO LONGER OBSERVED– Indicates that the traffic described in a previously issued traffic advisory is no longer depicted on radar, but may still be a factor.

TRAFFIC PATTERN– The traffic flow that is prescribed for aircraft landing at, taxiing on, or taking off from an airport. The components of a typical traffic pattern are upwind leg, crosswind leg, downwind leg, base leg, and final approach.

a. <u>Upwind Leg</u>– A flight path parallel to the landing runway in the direction of landing.

b. <u>Crosswind Leg</u>– A flight path at right angles to the landing runway off its upwind end.

c. <u>Downwind Leg</u>– A flight path parallel to the landing runway in the direction opposite to landing. The downwind leg normally extends between the crosswind leg and the base leg.

d. <u>Base Leg</u>– A flight path at right angles to the landing runway off its approach end. The base leg normally extends from the downwind leg to the intersection of the extended runway centerline.

e. Final Approach. A flight path in the direction of landing along the extended runway centerline. The final approach normally extends from the base leg to the runway. An aircraft making a straight-in approach VFR is also considered to be on final approach.

(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)

(See TAXI PATTERNS.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(See ICAO term AERODROME TRAFFIC CIRCUIT.)

TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST– A continuous recording of meteorological and aeronautical information that is broadcast on L/MF and VOR facilities for pilots.

(Refer to AIM.)

TRANSFER OF CONTROL– That action whereby the responsibility for the separation of an aircraft is transferred from one controller to another.

(See ICAO term TRANSFER OF CONTROL.)

TRANSFER OF CONTROL [ICAO]– Transfer of responsibility for providing air traffic control service.

TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER– A controller/facility transferring control of an aircraft to another controller/facility.

(See ICAO term TRANSFERRING UNIT/CONTROLLER.)

TRANSFERRING FACILITY–

(See TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER.)

TRANSFERRING UNIT/CONTROLLER [ICAO]– Air traffic control unit/air traffic controller in the process of transferring the responsibility for providing air traffic control service to an aircraft to the next air traffic control unit/air traffic controller along the route of flight.

Note: See definition of accepting unit/controller.

TRANSITION-

a. The general term that describes the change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another; e.g., transition from en route flight to the approach or transition from instrument flight to visual flight.

b. A published procedure (SID Transition) used to connect the basic SID to one of several en route airways/jet routes, or a published procedure (STAR Transition) used to connect one of several en route airways/jet routes to the basic STAR.

(Refer to SID/STAR Charts.)

TRANSITIONAL AIRSPACE– That portion of controlled airspace wherein aircraft change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another.

TRANSITION POINT– A point at an adapted number of miles from the vertex at which an arrival aircraft would normally commence descent from its en route altitude. This is the first fix adapted on the arrival speed segments.

TRANSMISSOMETER– An apparatus used to determine visibility by measuring the transmission of light through the atmosphere. It is the measurement source for determining runway visual range (RVR) and runway visibility value (RVV).

(See VISIBILITY.)

TRANSMITTING IN THE BLIND– A transmission from one station to other stations in circumstances where two-way communication cannot be established, but where it is believed that the called stations may be able to receive the transmission.

TRANSPONDER– The airborne radar beacon receiver/transmitter portion of the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) which automatically receives radio signals from interrogators on the ground, and selectively replies with a specific reply pulse or pulse group only to those interrogations being received on the mode to which it is set to respond.

(See INTERROGATOR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(See ICAO term TRANSPONDER.)

TRANSPONDER [ICAO]– A receiver/transmitter which will generate a reply signal upon proper interrogation; the interrogation and reply being on different frequencies.

TRANSPONDER CODES–

(See CODES.)

TRSA–

(See TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA.)

TURBOJET AIRCRAFT– An aircraft having a jet engine in which the energy of the jet operates a turbine which in turn operates the air compressor.

TURBOPROP AIRCRAFT– An aircraft having a jet engine in which the energy of the jet operates a turbine which drives the propeller.

TURN ANTICIPATION– (maneuver anticipation).

TVOR–

(See TERMINAL-VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION.)

TWEB–

(See TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST.)

TWO-WAY RADIO COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE–

(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

U

UDF–

(*See* DIRECTION FINDER.)

UHF–

(*See* ULTRAHIGH FREQUENCY.)

ULTRAHIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 300 and 3,000 mHz. The bank of radio frequencies used for military air/ground voice communications. In some instances this may go as low as 225 mHz and still be referred to as UHF.

ULTRALIGHT VEHICLE– An aeronautical vehicle operated for sport or recreational purposes which does not require FAA registration, an airworthiness certificate, nor pilot certification. They are primarily single occupant vehicles, although some two-place vehicles are authorized for training purposes. Operation of an ultralight vehicle in certain airspace requires authorization from ATC.

(See FAR Part 103.)

UNABLE– Indicates inability to comply with a specific instruction, request, or clearance.

UNDER THE HOOD– Indicates that the pilot is using a hood to restrict visibility outside the cockpit while simulating instrument flight. An appropriately rated pilot is required in the other control seat while this operation is being conducted.

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

UNICOM– A nongovernment communication facility which may provide airport information at certain airports. Locations and frequencies of UNICOM's are shown on aeronautical charts and publications.

(See AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

UNPUBLISHED ROUTE– A route for which no minimum altitude is published or charted for pilot use. It may include a direct route between NAVAID's, a radial, a radar vector, or a final approach course beyond the segments of an instrument approach procedure.

(See PUBLISHED ROUTE.)

(See ROUTE.)

UPWIND LEG–

(*See* TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

URGENCY– A condition of being concerned about safety and of requiring timely but not immediate assistance; a potential distress condition.

(See ICAO term URGENCY.)

URGENCY [ICAO]– A condition concerning the safety of an aircraft or other vehicle, or of person on board or in sight, but which does not require immediate assistance.

USAFIB–

(*See* ARMY AVIATION FLIGHT INFORMATION BULLETIN.)

UVDF–

(*See* DIRECTION FINDER.)

V

VASI–

(See VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR.)

VDF–

(See DIRECTION FINDER.)

VDP–

(See VISUAL DESCENT POINT.)

VECTOR– A heading issued to an aircraft to provide navigational guidance by radar.

(See ICAO term RADAR VECTORING.)

VERIFY– Request confirmation of information; e.g., "verify assigned altitude."

VERIFY SPECIFIC DIRECTION OF TAKEOFF (OR TURNS AFTER TAKEOFF)– Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's direction of takeoff and/or direction of turn after takeoff. It is normally used for IFR departures from an airport not having a control tower. When direct communication with the pilot is not possible, the request and information may be relayed through an FSS, dispatcher, or by other means.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

VERTEX– The last fix adapted on the arrival speed segments. Normally, it will be the outer marker of the runway in use. However, it may be the actual threshold or other suitable common point on the approach path for the particular runway configuration.

VERTEX TIME OF ARRIVAL– A calculated time of aircraft arrival over the adapted vertex for the runway configuration in use. The time is calculated via the optimum flight path using adapted speed segments.

VERTICAL SEPARATION– Separation established by assignment of different altitudes or flight levels.

(See SEPARATION.)

(See ICAO term VERTICAL SEPARATION.)

VERTICAL SEPARATION [ICAO]– Separation between aircraft expressed in units of vertical distance.

VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT– Aircraft capable of vertical climbs and/or descents and of using very short runways or small areas for takeoff and landings. These aircraft include, but are not limited to, helicopters.

(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 30 and 300 MHz. Portions of this band, 108 to 118 MHz, are used for certain NAVAID's; 118 to 136 MHz are used for civil air/ground voice communications. Other frequencies in this band are used for purposes not related to air traffic control.

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION–

(See VOR.)

VERY LOW FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 3 and 30 kHz.

VFR–

(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR AIRCRAFT– An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with visual flight rules.

(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR CONDITIONS– Weather conditions equal to or better than the minimum for flight under visual flight rules. The term may be used as an ATC clearance/instruction only when:

a. An IFR aircraft requests a climb/descent in VFR conditions.

b. The clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA approved noise abatement route or altitude.

c. A pilot has requested a practice instrument approach and is not on an IFR flight plan.

Note: All pilots receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria in FAR Part 91. Use of the term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSA's as required by FAA Order 7110.65. When used as an ATC clearance/instruction, the term may be abbreviated "VFR;" e.g., "MAINTAIN VFR," "CLIMB/DESCEND VFR," etc.

VFR FLIGHT–

(See VFR AIRCRAFT.)

VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES– Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low–altitude navigation and tactical training under VFR below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

VFR NOT RECOMMENDED– An advisory provided by a flight service station to a pilot during a preflight or inflight weather briefing that flight under visual flight rules is not recommended. To be given when the current and/or forecast weather conditions are at or below VFR minimums. It does not abrogate the pilot's authority to make his own decision.

VFR-ON-TOP– ATC authorization for an IFR aircraft to operate in VFR conditions at any appropriate VFR altitude (as specified in FAR and as restricted by ATC). A pilot receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility, distance from cloud criteria, and the minimum IFR altitudes specified in FAR Part 91. The use of this term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSA's as required by FAA Order 7110.65.

VFR TERMINAL AREA CHARTS–

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

VHF– (See VERY HIGH FREQUENCY.)

VHF OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE/TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION–

(See VORTAC.)

VIDEO MAP– An electronically displayed map on the radar display that may depict data such as airports, heliports, runway centerline extensions, hospital emergency landing areas, NAVAID's and fixes, reporting points, airway/route centerlines, boundaries, handoff points, special use tracks, obstructions, prominent geographic features, map alignment indicators, range accuracy marks, minimum vectoring altitudes.

VISIBILITY– The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night. Visibility is reported as statute miles, hundreds of feet or meters.

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(See AIM.)

a. Flight Visibility– The average forward horizontal distance, from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight, at which prominent unlighted objects may be seen and identified by day and prominent lighted objects may be seen and identified by night.

b. Ground Visibility– Prevailing horizontal visibility near the earth's surface as reported by the United States National Weather Service or an accredited observer.

c. Prevailing Visibility– The greatest horizontal visibility equaled or exceeded throughout at least half the horizon circle which need not necessarily be continuous.

d. Runway Visibility Value (RVV)– The visibility determined for a particular runway by a transmissometer. A meter provides a continuous indication of the visibility (reported in miles or fractions of miles) for the runway. RVV is used in lieu of prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

e. Runway Visual Range (RVR)– An instrumentally derived value, based on standard calibrations, that represents the horizontal distance a pilot will see down the runway from the approach end. It is based on the sighting of either high intensity runway lights or on the visual contrast of other targets whichever yields the greater visual range. RVR, in contrast to prevailing or runway visibility, is based on what a pilot in a moving aircraft should see looking down the runway. RVR is horizontal visual range, not slant visual range. It is based on the measurement of a transmissometer made near the touchdown point of the instrument runway and is reported in hundreds of feet. RVR is used in lieu of RVV and/or prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

1. Touchdown RVR– The RVR visibility readout values obtained from RVR equipment serving the runway touchdown zone.

2. Mid-RVR– The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located midfield of the runway.

3. Rollout RVR– The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located nearest the rollout end of the runway.

(See ICAO term VISIBILITY.)

(See ICAO term FLIGHT VISIBILITY.)

(See ICAO term GROUND VISIBILITY.)

(See ICAO term RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE.)

VISIBILITY [ICAO]– The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night.

a. Flight Visibility–The visibility forward from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight.

b. Ground Visibility–The visibility at an aerodrome as reported by an accredited observer.

c. Runway Visual Range [RVR]–The range over which the pilot of an aircraft on the centerline of a runway can see the runway surface markings or the lights delineating the runway or identifying its centerline.

VISUAL APPROACH– An approach conducted on an instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plan which authorizes the pilot to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport. The pilot must, at all times, have either the airport or the preceding aircraft in sight. This approach must be authorized and under the control of the appropriate air traffic control facility. Reported weather at the airport must be ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility of 3 miles or greater.

(See ICAO term VISUAL APPROACH.)

VISUAL APPROACH [ICAO]– An approach by an IFR flight when either part or all of an instrument approach procedure is not completed and the approach is executed in visual reference to terrain.

VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR–

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

VISUAL DESCENT POINT– A defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided the approach threshold of that runway, or approach lights, or other markings identifiable with the approach end of that runway are clearly visible to the pilot.

VISUAL FLIGHT RULES– Rules that govern the procedures for conducting flight under visual conditions. The term "VFR" is also used in the United States to indicate weather conditions that are equal to or greater than minimum VFR requirements. In addition, it is used by pilots and controllers to indicate type of flight plan.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(Refer to AIM.)

VISUAL HOLDING– The holding of aircraft at selected, prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air.

(See HOLDING FIX.)

VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS– Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud, and ceiling equal to or better than specified minima.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VISUAL SEPARATION– A means employed by ATC to separate aircraft in terminal areas and en route airspace in the NAS. There are two ways to effect this separation:

a. The tower controller sees the aircraft involved and issues instructions, as necessary, to ensure that the aircraft avoid each other.

b. A pilot sees the other aircraft involved and upon instructions from the controller provides his own separation by maneuvering his aircraft as necessary to avoid it. This may involve following another aircraft or keeping it in sight until it is no longer a factor.

(See and Avoid.)

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

VLF–

(See VERY LOW FREQUENCY.)

VMC–

(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM– The VSCS is a computer controlled switching system that provides air traffic controllers with all voice circuits (air to ground and ground to ground) necessary for air traffic control.

(See VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM.)

(Refer to AIM.)

VOR– A ground–based electronic navigation aid transmitting very high frequency navigation signals, 360 degrees in azimuth, oriented from magnetic north. Used as the basis for navigation in the National Airspace System. The VOR periodically identifies itself by Morse Code and may have an additional voice identification feature. Voice features may be used by ATC or FSS for transmitting instructions/information to pilots.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

(Refer to AIM.)

VORTAC– A navigation aid providing VOR azimuth, TACAN azimuth, and TACAN distance measuring equipment (DME) at one site.

(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

(See TACAN.)

(See VOR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

VORTICES– Circular patterns of air created by the movement of an airfoil through the air when generating lift. As an airfoil moves through the atmosphere in sustained flight, an area of area of low pressure is created above it. The air flowing from the high pressure area to the low pressure area around and about the tips of the airfoil tends to roll up into two rapidly rotating vortices, cylindrical in shape. These vortices are the most predominant parts of aircraft wake turbulence and their rotational force is dependent upon the wing loading, gross weight, and speed of the generating aircraft. The vortices from medium to heavy aircraft can be of extremely high velocity and hazardous to smaller aircraft.

(See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)

(See WAKE TURBULENCE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

VOR TEST SIGNAL–

(See VOT.)

VOT– A ground facility which emits a test signal to check VOR receiver accuracy. Some VOT's are available to the user while airborne, and others are limited to ground use only.

(Refer to FAR Part 91.)

(See AIM.)

(See AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

VR–

(See VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

VSCS–

(See VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM.)

VTA–

(See VERTEX TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

VTOL AIRCRAFT–

(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

W

WA–

(*See* AIRMET.)

(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

WAKE TURBULENCE– Phenomena resulting from the passage of an aircraft through the atmosphere. The term includes vortices, thrust stream turbulence, jet blast, jet wash, propeller wash, and rotor wash both on the ground and in the air.

(See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)

(See JET BLAST.)

(See VORTICES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

WARNING AREA– (See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

WAYPOINT– A predetermined geographical position used for route/instrument approach definition, or progress reporting purposes, that is defined relative to a VORTAC station or in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates.

WEATHER ADVISORY– In aviation weather forecast practice, an expression of hazardous weather conditions not predicted in the area forecast, as they affect the operation of air traffic and as prepared by the NWS.

(See SIGMET.)

(See AIRMET.)

WHEN ABLE– When used in conjunction with ATC instructions, gives the pilot the latitude to delay compliance until a condition or event has been reconciled. Unlike "pilot discretion," when instructions are prefaced "when able," the pilot is expected to seek the first opportunity to comply. Once a maneuver has been initiated, the pilot is expected to continue until the specifications of the instructions have been met. "When able," should not be used when expeditious compliance is required.

WILCO– I have received your message, understand it, and will comply with it.

WIND SHEAR– A change in wind speed and/or wind direction in a short distance resulting in a tearing or shearing effect. It can exist in a horizontal or vertical direction and occasionally in both.

WING TIP VORTICES–

(*See* VORTICES.)

WORDS TWICE–

a. As a request: "Communication is difficult. Please say every phrase twice."

b. As information: "Since communications are difficult, every phrase in this message will be spoken twice."

WORLD AERONAUTICAL CHARTS–

(*See* AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

WS–

(*See* SIGMET.)

(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

WST–

(*See* CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

INDEX

[References are to page numbers]

A

B

C

D

E

F

P

Q

R

U

V

W

OFFICES OF PRIMARY INTEREST

Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
1–1–1.	PURPOSE	ATO–100
1–1–2.	DISTRIBUTION	ATO–100
1–1–3.	CANCELLATION	ATA–10
1–1–4.	EXPLANATION OF MAJOR CHANGES	ATO–100
1–1–5.	EFFECTIVE DATE	ATA–10
1–1–6.	RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PROCEDURAL CHANGES	ATO–100
1–1–7.	PUBLICATION AND DELIVERY DATES	ATA–10
1–1–8.	PROCEDURAL LETTERS OF AGREEMENT	ATO–120
1–1–9.	CONSTRAINTS GOVERNING SUPPLEMENTS AND PROCEDURAL DEVIATIONS	ATO–120

Section 2. TERMS OF REFERENCE

PARAGRAPH		OPI
1–2–1.	WORD MEANINGS	ATA/ATO/ ARW
1–2–2.	COURSE DEFINITION	ATO–100
1–2–3.	NOTES	ATO–100
1–2–4.	REFERENCES	ATO–100
1–2–5.	ANNOTATIONS	ATO–100
1–2–6.	ABBREVIATIONS	All OPI's

Chapter 2. GENERAL CONTROL

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–1–1.	ATC SERVICE	ATO–100
2–1–2.	DUTY PRIORITY	ATO–100
2–1–3.	PROCEDURAL PREFERENCE	ATO–100
2–1–4.	OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	ATO–100
2–1–5.	EXPEDITIOUS COMPLIANCE	ATO–120
2–1–6.	SAFETY ALERT	ATO–120
2–1–7.	INFLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS	ATO–110
2–1–8.	MINIMUM FUEL	ATO–110
2–1–9.	REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION	ATO–120
2–1–10.	NAVAID MALFUNCTIONS	ATO–110
2–1–11.	USE OF MARSA	ATO–130
2–1–12.	MILITARY PROCEDURES	ATO–130
2–1–13.	FORMATION FLIGHTS	ATO–130
2–1–14.	COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE	ATO–110
2–1–15.	CONTROL TRANSFER	ATO–110
2–1–16.	SURFACE AREAS	ATO–120
2–1–17.	RADIO COMMUNICATIONS TRANSFER	ATO–110
2–1–18.	OPERATIONAL REQUESTS	ATO–120
2–1–19.	WAKE TURBULENCE	ATO–120
2–1–20.	WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES	ATO–120
2–1–21.	TRAFFIC ADVISORIES	ATO–120
2–1–22.	BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION	ATO–120
2–1–23.	TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	ATO–110
2–1–24.	WHEELS DOWN CHECK	ATO–120
2–1–25.	SUPERVISORY NOTIFICATION	ATO–120
2–1–26.	PILOT DEVIATION NOTIFICATION	ATO–110
2–1–27.	TCAS RESOLUTION ADVISORIES	ATO–120

Section 2. FLIGHT PLANS AND CONTROL INFORMATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–2–1.	RECORDING INFORMATION	ATO–110
2–2–2.	FORWARDING INFORMATION	ATO–110
2–2–3.	FORWARDING VFR DATA	ATO–120
2–2–4.	MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES	ATO–130
2–2–5.	IFR TO VFR FLIGHT PLAN CHANGE	ATO–110
2–2–6.	IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA	ATO–110
2–2–7.	MANUAL INPUT OF COMPUTER–ASSIGNED BEACON CODES	ATO–110
2–2–8.	ALTRV INFORMATION	ATO–130
2–2–9.	COMPUTER MESSAGE VERIFICATION	ATO–110
2–2–10.	TRANSMIT PROPOSED FLIGHT PLAN	ATO–110
2–2–11.	FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	ATO–110
2–2–12.	AIRBORNE MILITARY FLIGHTS	ATO–110
2–2–13.	FORWARDING FLIGHT PLAN DATA BETWEEN U.S. ARTCC'S – CANADIAN ACC'S	ATO–110
2–2–14.	TELETYPE FLIGHT DATA FORMAT–U.S. ARTCC'S – CANADIAN ACC'S	ATO–110
2–2–15.	NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION	ATO–110

Section 3. FLIGHT PROGRESS STRIPS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–3–1.	GENERAL	ATO–100
2–3–2.	EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES	ATO–110
2–3–3.	TERMINAL DATA ENTRIES	ATO–120
2–3–4.	AIRCRAFT IDENTITY	ATO–120
2–3–5.	AIRCRAFT TYPE	ATO–120

2–3–6.	USAF/USN UNDERGRADUATE PILOTS	ATO–130
2–3–7.	AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX	ATO–110
2–3–8.	CLEARANCE STATUS	ATO–100
2–3–9.	CONTROL SYMBOLOGY	ATO–100

Section 4. RADIO AND INTERPHONE COMMUNICATIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–4–1.	RADIO COMMUNICATIONS	ATO–100
2–4–2.	MONITORING	ATO–100
2–4–3.	PILOT ACKNOWLEDGMENT/ READBACK	ATO–100
2–4–4.	AUTHORIZED INTERRUPTIONS	ATO–100
2–4–5.	AUTHORIZED TRANSMISSIONS	ATO–100
2–4–6.	FALSE OR DECEPTIVE COMMUNICATIONS	ATO–100
2–4–7.	AUTHORIZED RELAYS	ATO–100
2–4–8.	RADIO MESSAGE FORMAT	ATO–100
2–4–9.	ABBREVIATED TRANSMISSIONS	ATO–100
2–4–10.	INTERPHONE TRANSMISSION PRIORITIES	ATO–100
2–4–11.	PRIORITY INTERRUPTION	ATO–100
2–4–12.	INTERPHONE MESSAGE FORMAT	ATO–100
2–4–13.	INTERPHONE MESSAGE TERMINATION	ATO–100
2–4–14.	WORDS AND PHRASES	ATO–100
2–4–15.	EMPHASIS FOR CLARITY	ATO–100
2–4–16.	ICAO PHONETICS	ATO–100
2–4–17.	NUMBERS USAGE	ATO–100
2–4–18.	NUMBER CLARIFICATION	ATO–100
2–4–19.	FACILITY IDENTIFICATION	ATO–100
2–4–20.	AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION	ATO–100
2–4–21.	DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES	ATO–100
2–4–22.	AIRSPACE CLASSES	ATO–100

Section 5. ROUTE AND NAVAID DESCRIPTION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–5–1.	AIRWAYS AND ROUTES	ATO–110
2–5–2.	NAVAID TERMS	ATO–100
2–5–3.	NAVAID FIXES	ATO–110

Section 6. WEATHER INFORMATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–6–1.	FAMILIARIZATION	ATO–120
2–6–2.	HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)	ATO–120
2–6–3.	PIREP INFORMATION	ATO–120
2–6–4.	WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	ATO–120
2–6–5.	CALM WIND CONDITIONS	ATO–120
2–6–6.	REPORTING WEATHER CONDITIONS	ATO–120
2–6–7.	DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION	ATO–120

Section 7. ALTIMETER SETTINGS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–7–1.	CURRENT SETTINGS	ATO–110
2–7–2.	ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL	ATO–110

Section 8. RUNWAY VISIBILITY REPORTING– TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–8–1.	FURNISH RVR/RVV VALUES	ATO–120
2–8–2.	ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE RUNWAY VISIBILITY	ATO–120
2–8–3.	TERMINOLOGY	ATO–120

Section 9. AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–9–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–120
2–9–2.	OPERATING PROCEDURES	ATO–120
2–9–3.	CONTENT	ATO–120

Section 10. TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
2–10–1.	EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES	ATO–110
2–10–2.	TERMINAL RADAR/NONRADAR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES	ATO–120
2–10–3.	TOWER TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES	ATO–120

Chapter 3. AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL– TERMINAL

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3–1–1.	PROVIDE SERVICE	ATO–120
3–1–2.	PREVENTIVE CONTROL	ATO–120
3–1–3.	USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS	ATO–120
3–1–4.	COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS	ATO–120
3–1–5.	VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS	ATO–120
3–1–6.	TRAFFIC INFORMATION	ATO–120
3–1–7.	POSITION DETERMINATION	ATO–120

3-1-8.	LOW LEVEL WINDSHEAR ADVISORIES	ATO-120
3-1-9.	USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS	ATO-120
3-1-10.	OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES	ATO-120
3-1-11.	SURFACE AREA RESTRICTIONS	ATO-120
3-1-12.	VISUALLY SCANNING RUNWAYS	ATO-120
3-1-13.	ESTABLISHING TWO-WAY COMMUNICATIONS	ATO-120
3-1-14.	GROUND OPERATIONS WHEN VOLCANIC ASH IS PRESENT	ATO-100

Section 2. VISUAL SIGNALS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-2-1.	LIGHT SIGNALS	ATO-120
3-2-2.	WARNING SIGNAL	ATO-120
3-2-3.	RECEIVER-ONLY ACKNOWLEDGMENT	ATO-120

Section 3. AIRPORT CONDITIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-3-1.	LANDING AREA CONDITION	ATO-120
3-3-2.	CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION	ATO-120
3-3-3.	TIMELY INFORMATION	ATO-120
3-3-4.	BRAKING ACTION	ATO-120
3-3-5.	BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES	ATO-120
3-3-6.	ARRESTING SYSTEM OPERATION	ATO-120
3-3-7.	FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT	ATO-120

Section 4. AIRPORT LIGHTING

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-4-1.	EMERGENCY LIGHTING	ATO-120
3-4-2.	RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-3.	VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATORS (VASI)	ATO-120
3-4-4.	APPROACH LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-5.	ALS INTENSITY SETTINGS	ATO-120
3-4-6.	SEQUENCED FLASHING LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-7.	MALSR/ODALS	ATO-120
3-4-8.	ALSF-2/SSALR	ATO-120
3-4-9.	RUNWAY EDGE LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-10.	HIGH INTENSITY RUNWAY, RUNWAY CENTERLINE, AND TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-11.	HIRL ASSOCIATED WITH MALSR	ATO-120
3-4-12.	HIRL CHANGES AFFECTING RVR	ATO-120
3-4-13.	MEDIUM INTENSITY RUNWAY LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-14.	SIMULTANEOUS APPROACH AND RUNWAY EDGE LIGHT OPERATION	ATO-120
3-4-15.	HIGH SPEED TURNOFF LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-16.	TAXIWAY LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-17.	OBSTRUCTION LIGHTS	ATO-120
3-4-18.	ROTATING BEACON	ATO-120

Section 5. RUNWAY SELECTION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-5-1.	SELECTION	ATO-120
3-5-2.	STOL RUNWAYS	ATO-120
3-5-3.	TAILWIND COMPONENTS	ATO-120

Section 6. AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-6-1.	EQUIPMENT USAGE	ATO-120
3-6-2.	INFORMATION USAGE	ATO-120
3-6-3.	IDENTIFICATION	ATO-120

Section 7. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-7-1.	GROUND TRAFFIC MOVEMENT	ATO-120
3-7-2.	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	ATO-120
3-7-3.	GROUND OPERATIONS	ATO-120
3-7-4.	RUNWAY PROXIMITY	ATO-120
3-7-5.	PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA	ATO-120

Section 8. SPACING AND SEQUENCING

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-8-1.	SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION	ATO-120
3-8-2.	TOUCH-AND-GO OR STOP-AND-GO OR LOW APPROACH	ATO-120
3-8-3.	SIMULTANEOUS SAME DIRECTION OPERATION	ATO-120
3-8-4.	SIMULTANEOUS OPPOSITE DIRECTION OPERATION	ATO-120

Section 9. DEPARTURE PROCEDURES AND SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3-9-1.	DEPARTURE INFORMATION	ATO-120
3-9-2.	DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION	ATO-120
3-9-3.	DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS	ATO-120
3-9-4.	TAKEOFF POSITION HOLD	ATO-120
3-9-5.	ANTICIPATING SEPARATION	ATO-120
3-9-6.	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	ATO-120

3–9–7.	WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES	ATO–120
3–9–8.	INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	ATO–120
3–9–9.	TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	ATO–120
3–9–10.	CANCELLATION OF TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	ATO–120

Section 10. ARRIVAL PROCEDURES AND SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3–10–1.	LANDING INFORMATION	ATO–120
3–10–2.	FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NONAPPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES	ATO–120
3–10–3.	SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	ATO–120
3–10–4.	INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	ATO–120
3–10–5.	LANDING CLEARANCE	ATO–120
3–10–6.	ANTICIPATING SEPARATION	ATO–120
3–10–7.	LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION	ATO–120
3–10–8.	WITHHOLDING LANDING CLEARANCE	ATO–120
3–10–9.	RUNWAY EXITING	ATO–120
3–10–10.	ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH	ATO–120
3–10–11.	CLOSED TRAFFIC	ATO–120
3–10–12.	OVERHEAD MANEUVER	ATO–120
3–10–13.	SIMULATED FLAMEOUT (SFO) APPROACHES/PRACTICE PRECAUTIONARY APPROACHES	ATO–120

Section 11. HELICOPTER OPERATIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3–11–1.	TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION	ATO–120
3–11–2.	HELICOPTER TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	ATO–120
3–11–3.	HELICOPTER DEPARTURE SEPARATION	ATO–120
3–11–4.	HELICOPTER ARRIVAL SEPARATION	ATO–120
3–11–5.	SIMULTANEOUS LANDINGS OR TAKEOFFS	ATO–120
3–11–6.	HELICOPTER LANDING CLEARANCE	ATO–120

Section 12. SEA LANE OPERATIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
3–12–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–120
3–12–2.	DEPARTURE SEPARATION	ATO–120
3–12–3.	ARRIVAL SEPARATION	ATO–120

Chapter 4. IFR

Section 1. NAVAID USE LIMITATIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–1–1.	ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS	ATO–100
4–1–2.	EXCEPTIONS	ATO–100
4–1–3.	CROSSING ALTITUDE	ATO–100
4–1–4.	VFR–ON–TOP	ATO–100
4–1–5.	FIX USE	ATO–100

Section 2. CLEARANCES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–2–1.	CLEARANCE ITEMS	ATO–120
4–2–2.	CLEARANCE PREFIX	ATO–120
4–2–3.	DELIVERY INSTRUCTIONS	ATO–120
4–2–4.	CLEARANCE RELAY	ATO–100
4–2–5.	ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS	ATO–100
4–2–6.	THROUGH CLEARANCES	ATO–100
4–2–7.	ALTRV CLEARANCE	ATO–130
4–2–8.	IFR–VFR AND VFR–IFR FLIGHTS	ATO–100
4–2–9.	CLEARANCE ITEMS	ATO–120

Section 3. DEPARTURE PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–3–1.	DEPARTURE TERMINOLOGY	ATO–120
4–3–2.	DEPARTURE CLEARANCES	ATO–120
4–3–3.	ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE	ATO–120
4–3–4.	DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	ATO–120 ATO–200
4–3–5.	DELAY SEQUENCING	ATO–200
4–3–6.	FORWARD DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION	ATO–110
4–3–7.	COORDINATION WITH RECEIVING FACILITY	ATO–110
4–3–8.	VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE	ATO–120
4–3–9.	FORWARDING DEPARTURE TIMES	ATO–120

Section 4. ROUTE ASSIGNMENT

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–4–1.	ROUTE USE	ATO–100
4–4–2.	ROUTE STRUCTURE TRANSITIONS	ATO–100
4–4–3.	DEGREE–DISTANCE ROUTE DEFINITION FOR MILITARY OPERATIONS	ATO–130
4–4–4.	ALTERNATIVE ROUTES	ATO–110
4–4–5.	CLASS G AIRSPACE	ATO–100

Section 5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT AND VERIFICATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–5–1.	VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA	ATO–100
4–5–2.	FLIGHT DIRECTION	ATA–400
4–5–3.	EXCEPTIONS	ATO–100
4–5–4.	LOWEST USABLE FLIGHT LEVEL	ATO–110
4–5–5.	ADJUSTED MINIMUM FLIGHT LEVEL	ATO–110
4–5–6.	MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES	ATO–100
4–5–7.	ALTITUDE INFORMATION	ATO–100
4–5–8.	ANTICIPATED ALTITUDE CHANGES	ATO–100
4–5–9.	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION–NONRADAR	ATO–100

Section 6. HOLDING AIRCRAFT

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–6–1.	CLEARANCE TO HOLDING FIX	ATO–100
4–6–2.	CLEARANCE BEYOND FIX	ATO–100
4–6–3.	DELAYS	ATO–200
4–6–4.	HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS	ATO–100
4–6–5.	VISUAL HOLDING POINTS	ATO–100
4–6–6.	HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION	ATO–100
4–6–7.	UNMONITORED NAVAID'S	ATO–100
4–6–8.	ILS PROTECTION/CRITICAL AREAS	ATO–120

Section 7. ARRIVAL PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–7–1.	CLEARANCE INFORMATION	ATO–120
4–7–2.	ADVANCE DESCENT CLEARANCE	ATO–120
4–7–3.	SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACHES (SFA)	ATO–130
4–7–4.	RADIO FREQUENCY AND RADAR BEACON CHANGES FOR MILITARY AIRCRAFT	ATO–130
4–7–5.	MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT	ATO–110
4–7–6.	ADVANCE APPROACH INFORMATION	ATO–110
4–7–7.	ARRIVAL INFORMATION	ATO–120
4–7–8.	WEATHER INFORMATION	ATO–120
4–7–9.	BELOW MINIMA REPORT BY PILOT	ATO–120
4–7–10.	TRANSFER OF JURISDICTION	ATO–120
4–7–11.	APPROACH INFORMATION	ATO–120
4–7–12.	ARRIVAL INFORMATION BY APPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES	ATO–120
4–7–13.	AIRPORT CONDITIONS	ATO–120
4–7–14.	SWITCHING ILS/MLS RUNWAYS	ATO–120

Section 8. APPROACH CLEARANCE PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
4–8–1.	APPROACH CLEARANCE	ATO–120
4–8–2.	CLEARANCE LIMIT	ATO–120
4–8–3.	RELAYED APPROACH CLEARANCE	ATO–120
4–8–4.	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT FOR MILITARY HIGH ALTITUDE INSTRUMENT APPROACHES	ATO–130
4–8–5.	SPECIFYING ALTITUDE	ATO–120
4–8–6.	CIRCLING APPROACH	ATO–120
4–8–7.	SIDE–STEP MANEUVER	ATO–120
4–8–8.	COMMUNICATIONS RELEASE	ATO–120
4–8–9.	MISSED APPROACH	ATO–120
4–8–10.	APPROACH INFORMATION	ATO–120
4–8–11.	PRACTICE APPROACHES	ATO–120
4–8–12.	LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH–AND–GO	ATO–120

Chapter 5. RADAR

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–1–1.	PRESENTATION AND EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE	ATO–100
5–1–2.	ALIGNMENT CHECK	ATO–100
5–1–3.	RADAR USE	ATO–100
5–1–4.	BEACON RANGE ACCURACY	ATO–100
5–1–5.	ECM/ECCM ACTIVITY	ATO–100
5–1–6.	SERVICE LIMITATIONS	ATO–100
5–1–7.	ELECTRONIC CURSOR	ATO–120
5–1–8.	MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES	ATO–100
5–1–9.	HOLDING PATTERN SURVEILLANCE	ATO–120
5–1–10.	DEVIATION ADVISORIES	ATO–120
5–1–11.	RADAR FIX POSTING	ATO–110
5–1–12.	POSITION REPORTING	ATO–100
5–1–13.	RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION	ATO–120

Section 2. BEACON SYSTEMS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–2–1.	ASSIGNMENT CRITERIA	ATO–100
5–2–2.	DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	ATO–120
5–2–3.	NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT	ATO–120
5–2–4.	MIXED ENVIRONMENT	ATO–120
5–2–5.	RADAR BEACON CODE CHANGES	ATO–120
5–2–6.	FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS	ATO–110
5–2–7.	REVERTING TO BROADBAND	ATO–110
5–2–8.	EMERGENCY CODE ASSIGNMENT	ATO–100
5–2–9.	RADIO FAILURE	ATO–100
5–2–10.	VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS	ATO–100
5–2–11.	BEACON CODE FOR PRESSURE SUIT FLIGHTS AND FLIGHTS ABOVE FL 600	ATO–130

5–2–12.	AIR DEFENSE EXERCISE BEACON CODE ASSIGNMENT	ATO–130
5–2–13.	STANDBY OR LOW SENSITIVITY OPERATION	ATO–100
5–2–14.	CODE MONITOR	ATO–120
5–2–15.	FAILURE TO DISPLAY ASSIGNED BEACON CODE OR INOPERATIVE/ MALFUNCTIONING TRANSPONDER	ATO–100
5–2–16.	INOPERATIVE OR MALFUNCTIONING INTERROGATOR	ATO–100
5–2–17.	FAILED TRANSPONDER IN CLASS A AIRSPACE	ATO–110
5–2–18.	VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT	ATO–100
5–2–19.	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION– MODE C	ATO–100
5–2–20.	ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION– NONMODE C	ATO–100
5–2–21.	AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING	ATO–100
5–2–22.	INFLIGHT DEVIATIONS FROM TRANSPONDER/MODE C REQUIREMENTS BETWEEN 10,000 FEET AND 18,000 FEET	ATO–110
5–2–23.	BEACON TERMINATION	ATO–100
5–2–24.	ALTITUDE FILTERS	ATO–100

Section 3. RADAR IDENTIFICATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–3–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–100
5–3–2.	PRIMARY RADAR IDENTIFICATION METHODS	ATO–120
5–3–3.	BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS	ATO–100
5–3–4.	ARTS/PIDP IDENTIFICATION METHODS	ATO–120
5–3–5.	QUESTIONABLE IDENTIFICATION	ATO–120
5–3–6.	POSITION INFORMATION	ATO–120
5–3–7.	IDENTIFICATION STATUS	ATO–120
5–3–8.	TARGET MARKERS	ATO–110

Section 4. TRANSFER OF RADAR IDENTIFICATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–4–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–100
5–4–2.	TERMS	ATO–100
5–4–3.	METHODS	ATO–100
5–4–4.	TRAFFIC	ATO–100
5–4–5.	TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	ATO–100
5–4–6.	RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	ATO–100
5–4–7.	POINT OUT	ATO–100
5–4–8.	AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER (AIT)	ATO–110
5–4–9.	INTERFACILITY AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER	ATO–110

Section 5. RADAR SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–5–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–100
5–5–2.	TARGET SEPARATION	ATO–100
5–5–3.	MINIMA	ATO–100
5–5–4.	VERTICAL APPLICATION	ATO–100
5–5–5.	EXCEPTIONS	ATO–100
5–5–6.	PASSING OR DIVERGING	ATO–120
5–5–7.	ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS	ATO–100
5–5–8.	SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS	ATO–100
5–5–9.	ADJACENT AIRSPACE	ATO–100
5–5–10.	EDGE OF SCOPE	ATO–100
5–5–11.	BEACON TARGET DISPLACEMENT	ATO–120
5–5–12.	GPA 102/103 CORRECTION FACTOR	ATO–120

Section 6. VECTORING

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–6–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–100
5–6–2.	METHODS	ATO–100
5–6–3.	VECTORS BELOW MINIMUM ALTITUDE	ATO–100

Section 7. SPEED ADJUSTMENT

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–7–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–100
5–7–2.	METHODS	ATO–100
5–7–3.	MINIMA	ATO–100
5–7–4.	TERMINATION	ATO–100

Section 8. RADAR DEPARTURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5–8–1.	PROCEDURES	ATO–120
5–8–2.	INITIAL HEADING	ATO–120
5–8–3.	SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES	ATO–120
5–8–4.	DEPARTURE AND ARRIVAL	ATO–120
5–8–5.	DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS	ATO–120

Section 9. RADAR ARRIVALS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-9-1.	VECTORS TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE	ATO-120
5-9-2.	FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION	ATO-120
5-9-3.	VECTORS ACROSS FINAL APPROACH COURSE	ATO-120
5-9-4.	ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS	ATO-120
5-9-5.	APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY	ATO-120
5-9-6.	PARALLEL DEPENDENT ILS/MLS APPROACHES	ATO-120
5-9-7.	SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT ILS/ MLS APPROACHES- DUAL & TRIPLE	ATO-120
5-9-8.	SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT DUAL ILS/MLS APPROACHES- HIGH UPDATE RADAR	ATO-120

Section 10. RADAR APPROACHES- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-10-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
5-10-2.	APPROACH INFORMATION	ATO-120
5-10-3.	NO-GYRO APPROACH	ATO-120
5-10-4.	LOST COMMUNICATIONS	ATO-120
5-10-5.	RADAR CONTACT LOST	ATO-120
5-10-6.	LANDING CHECK	ATO-120
5-10-7.	POSITION INFORMATION	ATO-120
5-10-8.	FINAL CONTROLLER CHANGEOVER	ATO-120
5-10-9.	COMMUNICATIONS CHECK	ATO-120
5-10-10.	TRANSMISSION ACKNOWLEDGMENT	ATO-120
5-10-11.	MISSED APPROACH	ATO-120
5-10-12.	LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH-AND-GO	ATO-120
5-10-13.	TOWER CLEARANCE	ATO-120
5-10-14.	FINAL APPROACH ABNORMALITIES	ATO-120
5-10-15.	MILITARY SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACHES	ATO-130

Section 11. SURVEILLANCE APPROACHES- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-11-1.	ALTITUDE INFORMATION	ATO-120
5-11-2.	VISUAL REFERENCE REPORT	ATO-120
5-11-3.	DESCENT NOTIFICATION	ATO-120
5-11-4.	DESCENT INSTRUCTIONS	ATO-120
5-11-5.	FINAL APPROACH GUIDANCE	ATO-120
5-11-6.	APPROACH GUIDANCE TERMINATION	ATO-120

Section 12. PAR APPROACHES- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-12-1.	GLIDEPATH NOTIFICATION	ATO-120
5-12-2.	DECISION HEIGHT (DH) NOTIFICATION	ATO-120
5-12-3.	DESCENT INSTRUCTION	ATO-120
5-12-4.	GLIDEPATH AND COURSE INFORMATION	ATO-120
5-12-5.	DISTANCE FROM TOUCHDOWN	ATO-120
5-12-6.	DECISION HEIGHT	ATO-120
5-12-7.	POSITION ADVISORIES	ATO-120
5-12-8.	COMMUNICATION TRANSFER	ATO-120
5-12-9.	ELEVATION FAILURE	ATO-120
5-12-10.	SURVEILLANCE UNUSABLE	ATO-120

Section 13. USE OF PAR FOR APPROACH MONITORING- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-13-1.	MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT	ATO-120
5-13-2.	MONITOR AVAILABILITY	ATO-120
5-13-3.	MONITOR INFORMATION	ATO-120

Section 14. AUTOMATION- EN ROUTE

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-14-1.	CONFLICT ALERT (CA) AND MODE C INTRUDER (MCI) ALERT	ATO-110
5-14-2.	EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (E-MSAW)	ATO-110
5-14-3.	COMPUTER ENTRY OF ASSIGNED ALTITUDE	ATO-110
5-14-4.	ENTRY OF REPORTED ALTITUDE	ATO-110
5-14-5.	SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS	ATO-110
5-14-6.	SECTOR ELIGIBILITY	ATO-110
5-14-7.	COAST TRACKS	ATO-110
5-14-8.	CONTROLLER INITIATED COAST TRACKS	ATO-110

Section 15. AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS (ARTS)- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-15-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
5-15-2.	RESPONSIBILITY	ATO-120
5-15-3.	FUNCTIONAL USE	ATO-120
5-15-4.	SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	ATO-120
5-15-5.	INFORMATION DISPLAYED	ATO-120
5-15-6.	CA/MCI	ATO-120
5-15-7.	INHIBITING MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (MSAW)	ATO-120
5-15-8.	TRACK SUSPEND FUNCTION	ATO-120

Section 16. TPX-42- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
5-16-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
5-16-2.	RESPONSIBILITY	ATO-120
5-16-3.	FUNCTIONAL USE	ATO-120
5-16-4.	SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	ATO-120
5-16-5.	INFORMATION DISPLAYED	ATO-120
5-16-6.	INHIBITING LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM (LAAS)	ATO-120

Chapter 6. NONRADAR

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
6-1-1.	DISTANCE	ATO-100
6-1-2.	NONRECEIPT OF POSITION REPORT	ATO-100
6-1-3.	DUPLICATE POSITION REPORTS	ATO-100
6-1-4.	ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION	ATO-120
6-1-5.	ARRIVAL MINIMA	ATO-120

Section 2. INITIAL SEPARATION OF SUCCESSIVE DEPARTING AIRCRAFT

PARAGRAPH		OPI
6-2-1.	MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES	ATO-120
6-2-2.	MINIMA ON SAME COURSE	ATO-100

Section 3. INITIAL SEPARATION OF DEPARTING AND ARRIVING AIRCRAFT

PARAGRAPH		OPI
6-3-1.	SEPARATION MINIMA	ATO-120

Section 4. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
6-4-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-100
6-4-2.	MINIMA ON SAME, CONVERGING, OR CROSSING COURSES	ATO-100
6-4-3.	MINIMA ON OPPOSITE COURSES	ATO-100
6-4-4.	SEPARATION BY PILOTS	ATO-100
6-4-5.	RNAV AIRCRAFT ALONG VOR AIRWAYS/ROUTES	ATO-100

Section 5. LATERAL SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
6-5-1.	SEPARATION METHODS	ATO-100
6-5-2.	MINIMA ON DIVERGING RADIALS	ATO-100
6-5-3.	DME ARC MINIMA	ATO-100
6-5-4.	MINIMA ALONG OTHER THAN ESTABLISHED AIRWAYS OR ROUTES	ATO-100
6-5-5.	RNAV MINIMA- DIVERGING/ CROSSING COURSES	ATO-100

Section 6. VERTICAL SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
6-6-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-100
6-6-2.	EXCEPTIONS	ATO-100
6-6-3.	SEPARATION BY PILOTS	ATO-100

Section 7. TIMED APPROACHES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
6-7-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
6-7-2.	APPROACH SEQUENCE	ATO-120
6-7-3.	SEQUENCE INTERRUPTION	ATO-120
6-7-4.	LEVEL FLIGHT RESTRICTION	ATO-120
6-7-5.	INTERVAL MINIMA	ATO-120
6-7-6.	TIME CHECK	ATO-120
6-7-7.	MISSED APPROACHES	ATO-120

Chapter 7. VISUAL

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-1-1.	CLASS A AIRSPACE RESTRICTIONS	ATO-110
7-1-2.	VFR CONDITIONS	ATO-100
7-1-3.	APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE FOR VFR ARRIVING	ATO-120
7-1-4.	VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT	ATO-120

Section 2. VISUAL SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-2-1.	VISUAL SEPARATION	ATO-100

Section 3. VFR-ON-TOP

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-3-1.	VFR-ON-TOP	ATO-100
7-3-2.	ALTITUDE FOR DIRECTION OF FLIGHT	ATO-100 ATA-400

Section 4. APPROACHES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-4-1.	VISUAL APPROACH	ATO-120
7-4-2.	VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH	ATO-120
7-4-3.	CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH	ATO-120
7-4-4.	APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS	ATO-120

7-4-5.	CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE	ATO-120
7-4-6.	CONTACT APPROACH	ATO-120

Section 5. SPECIAL VFR (SVFR)

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-5-1.	AUTHORIZATION	ATO-120
7-5-2.	PRIORITY	ATO-120
7-5-3.	SEPARATION	ATO-120
7-5-4.	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT	ATO-120
7-5-5.	LOCAL OPERATIONS	ATO-120
7-5-6.	CLIMB TO VFR	ATO-120
7-5-7.	GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE	ATO-120
7-5-8.	FLIGHT VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE	ATO-120

Section 6. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-6-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
7-6-2.	SERVICE AVAILABILITY	ATO-120
7-6-3.	INITIAL CONTACT	ATO-120
7-6-4.	IDENTIFICATION	ATO-120
7-6-5.	HOLDING	ATO-120
7-6-6.	APPROACH SEQUENCE	ATO-120
7-6-7.	SEQUENCING	ATO-120
7-6-8.	CONTROL TRANSFER	ATO-120
7-6-9.	ABANDONED APPROACH	ATO-120
7-6-10.	VFR DEPARTURE INFORMATION	ATO-120
7-6-11.	TERMINATION OF SERVICE	ATO-120
7-6-12.	SERVICE PROVIDED WHEN TOWER IS INOPERATIVE	ATO-120

Section 7. TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA (TRSA)- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-7-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
7-7-2.	ISSUANCE OF EFC	ATO-120
7-7-3.	SEPARATION	ATO-120
7-7-4.	HELICOPTER TRAFFIC	ATO-120
7-7-5.	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS	ATO-120
7-7-6.	APPROACH INTERVAL	ATO-120
7-7-7.	TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION	ATO-120

Section 8. CLASS C SERVICE- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-8-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
7-8-2.	CLASS C SERVICES	ATO-120
7-8-3.	SEPARATION	ATO-120
7-8-4.	ESTABLISHING TWO-WAY COMMUNICATIONS	ATO-120
7-8-5.	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS	ATO-120
7-8-6.	EXCEPTIONS	ATO-120
7-8-7.	ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATIONS	ATO-120
7-8-8.	TERMINATION OF SERVICE	ATO-120

Section 9. CLASS B SERVICE AREA- TERMINAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
7-9-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-120
7-9-2.	VFR AIRCRAFT IN CLASS B AIRSPACE	ATO-120
7-9-3.	METHODS	ATO-120
7-9-4.	SEPARATION	ATO-120
7-9-5.	TRAFFIC ADVISORIES	ATO-120
7-9-6.	HELICOPTER TRAFFIC	ATO-120
7-9-7.	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS	ATO-120
7-9-8.	APPROACH INTERVAL	ATO-120

Chapter 8. OFFSHORE/OCEANIC PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-1-1.	ATC SERVICE	ATO-150
8-1-2.	OPERATIONS IN OFFSHORE AIRSPACE AREAS	ATO-150
8-1-3.	VFR FLIGHT PLANS	ATO-150
8-1-4.	TYPES OF SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-1-5.	ALTIMETER SETTING	ATO-150
8-1-6.	RECEIPT OF POSITION REPORTS	ATO-150
8-1-7.	OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORTING (ONER) PROCEDURES	ATO-150

Section 2. COORDINATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-2-1.	GENERAL	ATO-150
8-2-2.	TRANSFER OF CONTROL AND COMMUNICATIONS	ATO-150
8-2-3.	AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES INTERFACILITY DATA COMMUNICATIONS (AIDC)	ATO-150

Section 3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-3-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-150
8-3-2.	SEPARATION METHODS	ATO-150
8-3-3.	MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE	ATO-150

Section 4. LATERAL SEPARATION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-4-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-150
8-4-2.	SEPARATION METHODS	ATO-150
8-4-3.	REDUCTION OF ROUTE PROTECTED AIRSPACE	ATO-150
8-4-4.	TRACK SEPARATION	ATO-150

Section 5. OFFSHORE/OCEANIC TRANSITION PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-5-1.	ALTITUDE/FLIGHT LEVEL TRANSITION	ATO-150
8-5-2.	COURSE DIVERGENCE	ATO-150
8-5-3.	OPPOSITE DIRECTION	ATO-150
8-5-4.	SAME DIRECTION	ATO-150

Section 6. SEPARATION FROM AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-6-1.	TEMPORARY STATIONARY AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS	ATO-150
8-6-2.	REFUSAL OF AVOIDANCE CLEARANCE	ATO-150
8-6-3.	TEMPORARY MOVING AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS	ATO-150
8-6-4.	WARNING AREAS	ATO-150

Section 7. NORTH ATLANTIC ICAO REGION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-7-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-150
8-7-2.	VERTICAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-7-3.	LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-7-4.	LATERAL SEPARATION	ATO-150

Section 8. CARIBBEAN ICAO REGION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-8-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-150
8-8-2.	VERTICAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-8-3.	LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-8-4.	LATERAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-8-5.	VFR CLIMB AND DESCENT	ATO-150

Section 9. PACIFIC ICAO REGION

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-9-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-150
8-9-2.	VERTICAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-9-3.	LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-9-4.	LATERAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-9-5.	COMPOSITE SEPARATION MINIMA	ATO-150
8-9-6.	COMPOSITE SEPARATION ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT	ATO-150
8-9-7.	COMPOSITE SEPARATION APPLICATION	ATO-150
8-9-8.	VFR CLIMB AND DESCENT	ATO-150
8-9-9.	PROCEDURES FOR WEATHER DEVIATIONS AND OTHER CONTINGENCIES IN OCEANIC CONTROLLED AIRSPACE	ATO-150

Section 10. NORTH AMERICAN ICAO REGION- ARCTIC CTA

PARAGRAPH		OPI
8-10-1.	APPLICATION	ATO-150
8-10-2.	VERTICAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-10-3.	LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	ATO-150
8-10-4.	LATERAL SEPARATION	ATO-150

Chapter 9. SPECIAL FLIGHTS

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9-1-1.	GENERAL	ATO-100
9-1-2.	SPECIAL HANDLING	ATO-100
9-1-3.	FLIGHT CHECK AIRCRAFT	ATO-100

Section 2. SPECIAL INTEREST FLIGHTS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9-2-1.	GENERAL	ATO-200
9-2-2.	APPLICATION	ATO-200
9-2-3.	EMERGENCY OR UNSCHEDULED LANDINGS	ATO-200

Section 3. SPECIAL OPERATIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9-3-1.	AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS	ATO-130
9-3-2.	CELESTIAL NAVIGATION TRAINING	ATO-130
9-3-3.	DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE) SPECIAL FLIGHTS	ATO-100
9-3-4.	EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS	ATO-120
9-3-5.	FAA RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT FLIGHTS	ATO-100
9-3-6.	FLYNET	ATO-130

9–3–7.	IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES	ATO–100
9–3–8.	INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS	ATO–130
9–3–9.	LAW ENFORCEMENT OPERATIONS BY CIVIL AND MILITARY ORGANIZATIONS	ATO–130
9–3–10.	MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING	ATO–130
9–3–11.	MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600	ATO–130
9–3–12.	MILITARY SPECIAL USE FREQUENCIES	ATO–130
9–3–13.	AVOIDANCE OF AREAS OF NUCLEAR RADIATION	ATO–130
9–3–14.	SAMP	ATO–130
9–3–15.	AWACS/NORAD SPECIAL FLIGHTS	ATO–130
9–3–16.	WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE FLIGHTS	ATO–200
9–3–17.	EVASIVE ACTION MANEUVER	ATO–110
9–3–18.	NONSTANDARD FORMATION/CELL OPERATIONS	ATO–100
9–3–19.	OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT	ATO–130

Section 4. SPECIAL USE AND ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9–4–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–130
9–4–2.	SEPARATION MINIMA	ATO–130
9–4–3.	VFR–ON–TOP	ATO–130
9–4–4.	AVOIDANCE	ATO–130

Section 5. FUEL DUMPING

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9–5–1.	INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS	ATO–100
9–5–2.	ROUTING	ATO–100
9–5–3.	ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT	ATO–100
9–5–4.	SEPARATION MINIMA	ATO–100
9–5–6.	INFORMATION DISSEMINATION	ATO–100

Section 6. JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9–6–1.	JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES	ATO–130

Section 7. UNMANNED FREE BALLOONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9–7–1.	APPLICATION	ATA–400
9–7–2.	DERELICT BALLOONS	ATA–400

Section 8. PARACHUTE JUMPING

PARAGRAPH		OPI
9–8–1.	COORDINATION	ATA–400
9–8–2.	CLASS A, CLASS B, AND CLASS C AIRSPACE	ATA–400
9–8–3.	CLASS D AIRSPACE	ATA–400
9–8–4.	OTHER CONTROL AIRSPACE	ATA–400

Chapter 10. EMERGENCIES

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
10–1–1.	EMERGENCY DETERMINATIONS	ATO–100
10–1–2.	OBTAINING INFORMATION	ATO–100
10–1–3.	PROVIDING ASSISTANCE	ATO–100
10–1–4.	RESPONSIBILITY	ATO–100
10–1–5.	COORDINATION	ATO–100
10–1–6.	AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY	ATO–120
10–1–7.	INFLIGHT EMERGENCIES INVOLVING MILITARY FIGHTER TYPE AIRCRAFT	ATO–130

Section 2. EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

PARAGRAPH		OPI
10–2–1.	INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS	ATO–100
10–2–2.	FREQUENCY CHANGES	ATO–100
10–2–3.	AIRCRAFT ORIENTATION	ATO–100
10–2–4.	ALTITUDE CHANGE FOR IMPROVED RECEPTION	ATO–100
10–2–5.	EMERGENCY SITUATIONS	ATO–100
10–2–6.	HIJACKED AIRCRAFT	ATO–100
10–2–7.	VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	ATO–100
10–2–8.	RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY	ATO–100
10–2–9.	RADAR ASSISTANCE TECHNIQUES	ATO–100
10–2–10.	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT) SIGNALS	ATO–100
10–2–11.	AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS	ATO–100
10–2–12.	EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K–9 TEAMS	ATO–100
10–2–13.	EMERGENCY AIRPORT RECOMMENDATION	ATO–100
10–2–14.	GUIDANCE TO EMERGENCY AIRPORT	ATO–100
10–2–15.	EMERGENCY OBSTRUCTION VIDEO MAP (EOVM)	ATO–100
10–2–16.	VOLCANIC ASH	ATO–100

Section 3. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT

PARAGRAPH		OPI
10–3–1.	OVERDUE AIRCRAFT	ATO–100
10–3–2.	INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO ARTCC	ATO–120

10–3–3.	INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO RCC	ATO–110
10–3–4.	ALNOT	ATO–110
10–3–5.	RESPONSIBILITY TRANSFER TO RCC	ATO–100
10–3–6.	AIRCRAFT POSITION PLOTS	ATO–100
10–3–7.	ALNOT CANCELLATION	ATO–110

Section 4. CONTROL ACTIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
10–4–1.	TRAFFIC RESTRICTIONS	ATO–100
10–4–2.	LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS	ATO–100
10–4–3.	TRAFFIC RESUMPTION	ATO–100
10–4–4.	COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE	ATO–100

Section 5. MISCELLANEOUS OPERATIONS

PARAGRAPH		OPI
10–5–1.	NAVY FLEET SUPPORT MISSIONS	ATO–130
10–5–2.	EXPLOSIVE CARGO	ATO–130

Section 6. OCEANIC EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
10–6–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–150
10–6–2.	PHASES OF EMERGENCY	AT0–150
10–6–3.	ALERTING SERVICE AND SPECIAL ASSISTANCE	AT0–150
10–6–4.	IN-FLIGHT CONTINGENCIES	AT0–150
10–6–5.	SERVICES TO RESCUE AIRCRAFT	AT0–150

Section 7. GROUND MISSILE EMERGENCIES

PARAGRAPH		OPI
10–7–1.	INFORMATION RELAY	ATO–130
10–7–2.	IFR AND SPECIAL VFR MINIMA	ATO–130
10–7–3.	VFR MINIMA	ATO–130
10–7–4.	SMOKE COLUMN AVOIDANCE	ATO–130
10–7–5.	EXTENDED NOTIFICATION	ATO–130

Chapter 11. TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
11–1–1.	DUTY RESPONSIBILITY	ATO–200
11–1–2.	DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES	ATO–200

Chapter 12. CANADIAN AIRSPACE PROCEDURES

Section 1. GENERAL CONTROL

PARAGRAPH		OPI
12–1–1.	APPLICATION	ATO–100
12–1–2.	AIRSPACE CLASSIFICATION	ATO–100
12–1–3.	ONE THOUSAND–ON–TOP	ATO–100
12–1–4.	SEPARATION	ATO–100
12–1–5.	DEPARTURE CLEARANCE/ COMMUNICATION FAILURE	ATO–100
12–1–6.	PARACHUTE JUMPING	ATO–100
12–1–7.	SPECIAL VFR (SVFR)	ATO–100

APPENDICES

APPENDIX	OPI
APPENDIX A. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION	ATO–120
APPENDIX B. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION HELICOPTER/ROTORCRAFTS	ATO–120
APPENDIX C. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION SPECIFIC HOMEBUILT/EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT	ATO–120
APPENDIX D. STANDARD OPERATING PRACTICE (SOP) FOR THE TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY	ATO–100

PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY

PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY	ATO–100

U.S. Department
of Transportation
**Federal Aviation
Administration**

BRIEFING GUIDE

**U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION**

Initiated By: ATO-100

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-1-4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY and **2-2-15. NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION**

2. BACKGROUND: The final phase of the National Route Program became effective on October 7, 1996. The basic requirements for this program are contained in Notice N 7210.452, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM. This notice is now being incorporated into FAAO 7110.65 and FAAO 7210.3, FACILITY OPERATION AND ADMINISTRATION. This change is needed to publish directions to the air traffic control specialist regarding the handling of flights participating in the National Route Program.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-1-4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	**2-1-4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY**
Add	**o. Aircraft operating under the National Route Program are not subject to route limiting restrictions (e.g. published preferred IFR routes, letter of agreement requirements, standard operating procedures).**
	REFERENCE- *FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES, Para 2-3-2.* *FAAO 7110.65, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION, Para 2-2-15.* *FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS, Para 4-2-5.* *FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 18, Section 17, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM.*

OLD	NEW
Add	**2-2-15. NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION**
	a. "NRP" shall be retained in the remarks section of the flight plan if the aircraft is moved due to weather, traffic, or other tactical reasons.
	NOTE- *Every effort should be made to ensure the aircraft is returned to the original filed flight plan/altitude as soon as conditions warrant.*
	b. If the route of flight is altered due to a pilot request, "NRP" shall be removed from the remarks section of the flight plan.
	c. "NRP" shall not be entered in the remarks section of a flight plan, unless prior coordination is accomplished with the ATCSCC or as prescribed by international NRP flight operations procedures.
	d. The en route facility within which an international flight entering the conterminous United States requests to participate in the NRP shall enter "NRP" in the remarks section of the flight plan.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.
FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES, Para 2-3-2.
FAAO 7110.65, ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS, Para 4-2-5.
FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 18, Section 17, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-1-19. WAKE TURBULENCE

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR–1 relating to wake turbulence. Concurrent to this change is a change to paragraph 5–5–3, Minima, which increases the separation distance to 5 miles at the runway landing threshold for a small aircraft following a Boeing 757 (B757).

The change to this paragraph reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-1-19. WAKE TURBULENCE	**2-1-19. WAKE TURBULENCE**
a. Apply wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind heavy jets and, where indicated, to small aircraft behind large aircraft.	**a.** Apply wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind heavy jets/**B757's** and, where indicated, to small aircraft behind large aircraft.
NOTE– *FAAO 7110.65, Para 5-5-3 specifies increased radar separation for small type aircraft landing behind large or heavy aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.*	*NOTE–* *Para 5-5-3, MINIMA, specifies increased radar separation for small type aircraft landing behind large, heavy, or B757 aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.*
b.	No Change
Add	**c. When parallel runways are less than 2,500 feet apart, do not permit a heavy jet/B757 aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal. There are already special separation standards applied to the B757 aircraft. This change is merely a tie–in to other paragraphs that specify operating procedures.

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-1-20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES**

2. **BACKGROUND:** Figure 2-1-1 was determined to be confusing and misleading and was deleted.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD	NEW
2-1-20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES	**2-1-20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES**
a.	No Change
1. *TERMINAL:* VFR aircraft not being radar vectored but are behind heavy jets or B-757's. <u>(See FIG 2-1-1).</u>	**1.** *TERMINAL:* VFR aircraft not being radar vectored but are behind heavy jets or B757's.
<u>FIG 2-1-1</u>	Delete

4. **OPERATIONAL IMPACT:** None. This figure is confusing and misleading.

---

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-3-1. GENERAL**

2. **BACKGROUND:** With the deployment of the IER, Inc. thermal flight strip printer, facilities can choose from a selection of strip enhancements. Therefore, facilities may need to adopt deletion procedures that accommodate their selected enhancement.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD	NEW
2-3-1. GENERAL	**2-3-1. GENERAL**
Title thru **a.**	No Change
1. Do not erase or overwrite any item. Use an "X" to delete a climb/descend and maintain arrow, an at or above/below symbol, a cruise symbol, and unwanted altitude information. Write the new altitude information immediately adjacent to it and within the same space. <u>For other items, draw a horizontal line through it, and write the new item immediately adjacent to it and within the same space.</u>	**1.** Do not erase or overwrite any item. Use an "X" to delete a climb/descend and maintain arrow, an at or above/below symbol, a cruise symbol, and unwanted altitude information. Write the new altitude information immediately adjacent to it and within the same space.

4. **OPERATIONAL IMPACT:** None.

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-3-2. EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES**

2. **BACKGROUND**: The final phase of the National Route Program became effective on October 7, 1996. The basic requirements for this program are contained in Notice N 7210.452, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM. This notice is now being incorporated into FAAO 7110.65 and FAAO 7210.3, FACILITY OPERATION AND ADMINISTRATION. This change is needed to establish procedures for data entries concerning this program. However, this does not constitute any change to the procedures now being used at field facilities.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD

2-3-2. EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES

Title thru **a.**

26.	Pertinent remarks, minimum fuel, point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information or sector/position number (when applicable in accordance with Para 2-2-1).

NEW

2-3-2. EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES

No Change

26.	Pertinent remarks, minimum fuel, point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information or sector/position number (when applicable in accordance with para 2-2-1, RECORDING INFORMATION)**, or NRP.**

4. **OPERATIONAL IMPACT:** None.

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-3-7. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX; 4-5-1. VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA and 4-5-2. FLIGHT DIRECTION**

2. **BACKGROUND**: This change allows application of 1,000 ft vertical separation minima between approved aircraft within any airspace designated for reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM) or RVSM transition. It also prescribes use of the /W equipment suffix for aircraft approved for RVSM operations. In addition, it amends the definition of Minimum Navigation Performance Specification (MNPS) airspace to correspond to changes made by ICAO.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD

2-3-7. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or RNAV capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant. (See TBL 2-3-3).

TBL 2-3-3, Last Column

AREA NAVIGATION
/W
/C
/R /G /F /E

NEW

2-3-7. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or **navigation** capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant. (See TBL 2-3-3.)

TBL 2-3-3, Last Column

AREA NAVIGATION
/Y
/C
/R /G /F /E **/W**

Add and Renumber	*NOTE–* 6 **The /W suffix will identify aircraft that are approved for reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM). In addition to enhanced altimetry systems, all aircraft will have area navigation and an operating transponder with altitude (Mode C).**
Table 2–3–3 Note 6. All aircraft operating with these equipment suffixes will have operating transponders with altitude (Mode C) capability. If an aircraft is unable to operate with a transponder and altitude encoding, it will revert to the appropriate code listed above under Area Navigation.	7 All aircraft operating with these equipment suffixes will have operating transponders with altitude (Mode C) capability. If an aircraft is unable to operate with a transponder and altitude encoding, it will revert to the appropriate code listed above under Area Navigation.

OLD	NEW
4–5–1. VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA	**4–5–1. VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA**
Title thru b.2.	No Change
Add	**3. In airspace designated for reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM) or RVSM transition – 1,000 feet between approved aircraft.**

OLD	NEW
4–5–2. FLIGHT DIRECTION	**4–5–2. FLIGHT DIRECTION**
TBL 4–5–1	**TBL 4–5–1**

	Aircraft Operating	*On course degrees magnetic*	*Assign*	*Examples*
Add as last row to TBL	**At or above FL 290 within RVSM or RVSM transition airspace**	**Any course**	**Any cardinal flight level**	**FL 290, FL 300, FL 310, FL 320**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Controllers will continue to apply standard separation in airspace not designated for RVSM operations and will be required to transition aircraft to/from reduced separation minima.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-4-20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

2. BACKGROUND: Many identical aircraft types are built by more than one manufacturer (licensed manufacturer, company take-over, company name change, etc.) and listed under the common name of each manufacturer.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-4-20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION	**2-4-20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION**
a.1. Civil – State the aircraft type, the model, the manufacturer's name, or the prefix "November" (denotes U.S. registered aircraft) followed by the ICAO phonetic pronunciation of the numbers/letters of the aircraft registration.	**a.1.** Civil – State the **<u>prefix "November" when establishing initial communications with U.S. registered aircraft followed by the ICAO phonetic pronunciation of the numbers/letters of the aircraft registration. The controller may state the aircraft type, the model, the manufacturer's name, followed by the ICAO phonetic pronunciation of the numbers/letters of the aircraft registration if used by the pilot on the initial or subsequent call.</u>**
EXAMPLE- *"Jet Commander One Four Two Four."* *"Douglas Three Zero Five Romeo."* *"Bonanza One Two Three Four Tango."* *"November One Two Three Four Golf."* *"Bell Two Seven Three Three."*	*EXAMPLE-* *<u>Air traffic controller's initiated call:</u>* *<u>"November One Two Three Four Golf."</u>* *<u>"November One Two Three Four."</u>* *<u>Responding to pilot's initial or subsequent call:</u>* *<u>"Jet Commander One Two Three Four Papa."</u>* *<u>"Bonanza One Two Three Four Tango."</u>*

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: These changes have minimal training impact.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: The Federal Aviation Administration Icing Plan, developed after extensive input from National and International sources, has recommended a clarification of the required information in PIREP's which deal with icing. Specifically, PIREP's which report icing shall include the type and intensity of icing, and outside air temperature where icing is occurring.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION	**2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION**
Title thru **b.4.**	No change
Add	**<u>5. When the PIREP involves icing include:</u>** **<u>(a) Icing type and intensity.</u>** **<u>(b) Air temperature in which icing is occurring.</u>**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-7-2. ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL

2. BACKGROUND: This change is the result of a National Transportation Safety Board recommendation that resulted from an accident. This change requires controllers to issue any change to the altimeter setting when aircraft are using nonprecision approaches when the pressure is falling rapidly.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-7-2. ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL	**2-7-2. ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL**
a. thru **c.4.**	No Change
Add	<u>**5. In addition to the altimeter setting provided on initial contact, issue changes in altimeter setting to aircraft executing a nonprecision instrument approach as frequently as practical when the official weather report includes the remarks "pressure falling rapidly."**</u>

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: This change requires controllers to issue altimeter changes to pilots executing a nonprecision approach when the official weather indicates the pressure is falling rapidly.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-9-3. CONTENT

2. BACKGROUND:
e. First sentence: reports from aviation users and members of the Air Traffic Procedures Advisory Committee indicate a need to require specific taxiway closure information on the Automated Terminal Information Service (ATIS). Currently this information is discretionary as local conditions dictate. Taxiway closures of this nature are not currently receiving D NOTAM dissemination.
Last sentence: as a result of a National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) recommendation, this change incorporates a good operating practice that many controllers already utilize.
g. This change is the result of a National Order for Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO), which incorporates SOIR. This order stipulates the conditions for conducting LAHSO which permit aircraft to land and hold short of intersecting runways, taxiways, or other predetermined points on a runway. LAHSO is a tool used by Air Traffic Controllers to assist in expediting traffic flow. The additional operations outlined in the LAHSO order will assist to reduce delays and improve airport capacity while insuring safety.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-9-3. CONTENT	**2-9-3. CONTENT**
Title thru **d.**	No Change
e. NOTAMs and <u>notification of</u> PIREPs pertinent to operations in the terminal area. Inform pilots of where hazardous weather is occurring and how the information may be obtained.	**e.** <u>**Taxiway closures which affect the entrance or exit of active runways, other closures which impact airport operations, other**</u> NOTAM's and PIREP's pertinent to operations in the terminal area. Inform pilots of where hazardous weather is occurring and how the information may be obtained. <u>**Include available information of known bird activity.**</u>

OLD	NEW
Add	REFERENCE– FAAO 7110.65, BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION, Para 2-1-22.
g. Other optional information as local conditions dictate in coordination with ATC. This may include such items as VFR arrival frequencies, temporary airport conditions, SOIR operations being conducted, or other perishable items that may appear only for a matter of hours or a few days on the ATIS message.	g. Other optional information as local conditions dictate in coordination with ATC. This may include such items as VFR arrival frequencies, temporary airport conditions, **LAHSO** operations being conducted, or other perishable items that may appear only for a matter of hours or a few days on the ATIS message.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT:

e. Applies to first sentence – None.

Applies to last sentence – This change requires controllers to broadcast all available bird activity information in accordance with paragraph 2-1-22, BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION, on ATIS.

g. This change has minimal training impact and reflects operational procedures instituted for conducting LAHSO.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-1-8. LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES

2. BACKGROUND: The Low Level Wind Shear Alert System "Network Expansion" (LLWAS III) has increased reliability as a result of improved algorithms and additional remote sensors. With previous LLWAS, the loss of three sensors rendered the entire system inoperative. The LLWAS III will continue to provide alert information with as many as fifty percent of the remote sensors inoperative.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-1-8. LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES	**3-1-8. LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR ADVISORIES**
a. thru b.2 (e)	No Change
(f) The LLWAS "Network Expansion" is designed to operate with as many as three sensors inoperative. Whenever one to three sensors are inoperative, the system will display this information in the status area. When an LLWAS sensor is inoperative and wind shear/microburst activity is likely; (e.g.; frontal activity, convective storms, PIREPS), a statement shall be included on the ATIS, "LLWAS IMPAIRED FOR WIND SHEAR AND MICROBURST DETECTION."	(f) The LLWAS "Network Expansion" is designed to operate with as many as **50 percent of the total sensors inoperative. When all three remote sensors designated for a specific runway arrival or departure wind display line are inoperative then the LLWAS-NE for that runway arrival/departure shall be considered out of service. When a specific runway arrival or departure wind display line** is inoperative and wind shear/microburst activity is likely; (e.g.; frontal activity, convective storms, PIREPS), a statement shall be included on the ATIS, **"WIND SHEAR AND MICROBURST INFORMATION FOR RUNWAY *(runway number)* ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE NOT AVAILABLE."**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3–9–6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR–1 relating to wake turbulence. One of the safety recommendations was to provide increased protection from wake turbulence for aircraft weighing 41,000 lbs. or less. Therefore, concurrent to this paragraph change is a change to aircraft weight classes.

The criteria for same runway separation categories was previously loosely based on weight class plus performance characteristics. With the change to weight class definitions, the same runway separation categories had to be redefined also.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3–9–6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	**3–9–6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION**
Title thru **a.5.**	No Change
NOTE– *Aircraft same runway separation (SRS) categories are specified in appendix A, B, and C and based upon the following definitions:*	No Change
CATEGORY I– "small" weight class (12,500 lbs. or less), single–engine, propeller–driven aircraft, and all helicopters.	*CATEGORY I– small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, with a single propeller driven engine, and all helicopters.*
CATEGORY II– "small" weight class (12,500 lbs. or less), twin–engine, propeller–driven aircraft.	*CATEGORY II– small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, with propeller driven twin–engines.*
CATEGORY III– all other aircraft.	No Change
e. The minima in FAAO 7110.65, para 5–5–3 may be applied in lieu of the 2–minute requirement in subpara f. When FAAO 7110.65 para 5–5–3 minima are applied, ensure that the appropriate radar separation exists at or prior to the time an aircraft becomes airborne when taking off behind a heavy jet.	**e.** The minima in para 5–5–3, MINIMA, may be applied in lieu of the 2–minute requirement in subpara f. When para 5–5–3, MINIMA, are applied, ensure that the appropriate radar separation exists at or prior to the time an aircraft becomes airborne when taking off behind a heavy jet/**B757**.
f. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet departure by 2 minutes, when departing:	**f.** Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet/**B757** departure by 2 minutes, when departing:
NOTE– *Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet begins takeoff roll.*	*NOTE–* *Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet/B757 begins takeoff roll.*
g. Separate an aircraft from a heavy jet when operating on a runway with a displaced landing threshold if projected flight paths will cross– *2 minutes when:*	**g.** Separate an aircraft from a heavy jet/**B757** when operating on a runway with a displaced landing threshold if projected flight paths will cross– *2 minutes when:*
1. A departure follows a heavy jet arrival.	**1.** A departure follows a heavy jet/**B757** arrival.
2. An arrival follows a heavy jet departure.	**2.** An arrival follows a heavy jet/**B757** departure.

h. The 2–minute minima need not be applied if the pilot of a departing IFR/VFR aircraft has initiated a request to deviate from the 2–minute interval. In this case, issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff.	**h. Air traffic controllers shall not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.**
j. Separate aircraft behind a heavy jet departing or making a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet– *3 minutes.*	**j.** Separate aircraft behind a heavy jet/**B757** departing or making a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet– *3 minutes.*

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Substantial. This change does not allow the controller to deviate from the time interval when the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3–9–7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR–1 relating to wake turbulence. This change is intended to add a 3 minute wake turbulence rule to small aircraft, weighing less than 12,500 lbs., departing from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. This change also reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757.
Subparagraph b.3. only: This change is intended to clarify the 3 minute wake turbulence rule to any small aircraft departing from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding small aircraft weighing between 12,500 lbs. and 41,000 lbs.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3–9–7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES	**3–9–7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES**
Title thru **a.1.**	No change
2. Separate any aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) and parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after a heavy aircraft has taken off.	**2.** Separate any aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) and parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after a heavy aircraft/**B757** has taken off.
Add and Renumber	**3. Separate a small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. by ensuring the following small aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after the preceding aircraft has taken off.**
3. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3–minute interval.	**4.** Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3–minute interval.
b. The 3–minute interval is not required when:	No Change
1. A pilot has initiated a request to deviate from that interval.	**1.** A pilot has initiated a request to deviate from that interval **unless the preceding departing aircraft is a heavy aircraft/B757.**

OLD	NEW
3. Successive touch–and–go and stop–and–go operations are conducted with a small aircraft following a large aircraft in the pattern, or large aircraft departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the small aircraft is maintaining visual separation/spacing behind the preceding large aircraft. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the large aircraft.	**3.** Successive touch–and–go and stop–and–go operations are conducted with a small aircraft following **another small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. or** a large aircraft in the pattern, or **a small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. or** a large aircraft departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the small aircraft is maintaining visual separation/ spacing behind the preceding large aircraft. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the large aircraft.
4. Successive touch–and–go and stop–and–go operations are conducted with any aircraft following a heavy aircraft in the pattern, or heavy aircraft departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the aircraft is maintaining visual separation/ spacing behind the preceding heavy aircraft. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the heavy aircraft.	**4.** Successive touch–and–go and stop–and–go operations are conducted with any aircraft following a heavy aircraft**/B757** in the pattern, or heavy aircraft**/B757** departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the aircraft is maintaining visual separation/ spacing behind the preceding heavy aircraft**/B757**. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the heavy aircraft**/B757**.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Substantial. With the high number of aircraft that have changed from the large weight class to the small weight class, coupled with the increased separation requirement for aircraft following a B757, some negative capacity effects are expected. Training programs at the facility level should emphasize the aircraft that have changed weight classes for easier controller identification.
Subparagraph b.3. only: None.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3–9–8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR–1 relating to wake turbulence. This change reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3–9–8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	**3–9–8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION**
Title thru **b.**	No Change
c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet departure by *2 minutes* when departing:	**c.** Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet**/B757** departure by *2 minutes* when departing:
NOTE– *Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet begins takeoff roll.*	***NOTE–*** *Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet**/B757** begins takeoff roll.*
d. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing heavy jet on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival– *2 minutes.* (See FIG 3–9–11).	**d.** Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing heavy jet**/B757** on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival– *2 minutes.* (See FIG 3–9–11.)
e. The 2–minute minima need not be applied if the pilot of a departing IFR/VFR aircraft has initiated a request to deviate from the *2–minute* interval. In this case, issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff.	**e. Air traffic controllers shall not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Substantial. This change does not allow the controller to approve a pilot request to deviate from the 2 minute rule if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-10-3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: This is an editorial change that correctly relates this paragraph to the paragraph entitled Altitude Restricted Low Approach. This change also reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-10-3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	**3-10-3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION**
a. Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists or unless authorized in para 3-10-12:	**a.** Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists or unless authorized in para 3-10-10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH:
b.	No Change
EXAMPLE-	
[1]	No Change
[2] *"Number two to land, following a Boeing 757 on two-mile final. Caution wake turbulence."*	[2] *"Number two **follow Boeing 757** on two-mile final. Caution wake turbulence."*

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND:

b. This change is the result of a National Order for Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO), which incorporates SOIR. This order stipulates the conditions for conducting LAHSO which permit aircraft to land and hold short of intersecting runways, taxiways, or other predetermined points on the runway. LAHSO is a tool used by Air Traffic Controllers to assist in expediting traffic flow. The additional operations outlined in the LAHSO's order will assist to reduce delays and improve airport capacity while ensuring safety.

c. Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR-1 relating to wake turbulence. This change reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION	**3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION**
a. thru **a.2**	No Change

b. USN NOT APPLICABLE (USAF ONLY: *Major command approval required prior to conducting simultaneous operations on intersecting runways.)* An aircraft may be authorized to takeoff from one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway or an aircraft lands on one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway. The procedure shall be approved by the Air Traffic Manager and be in accordance with a facility directive. The following conditions apply:

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, SIMULTANEOUS OPERATIONS ON INTERSECTING RUNWAYS, Para 12-36.

2. Instruct the landing aircraft to hold short of the intersecting runway being used by the aircraft taking off. In the case of simultaneous landings and no operational benefit is lost, restrict the aircraft in the lesser Group.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD SHORT OF RUNWAY (runway number), (traffic or other information).

EXAMPLE–
1 *"Runway one eight cleared to land, hold short of runway one four left, traffic landing runway one four left."*

(When pilot of restricted aircraft responds with only acknowledgment):

"Runway one four left cleared to land, traffic landing runway one eight will hold short of the intersection."

"Readback hold instructions."

2 *"Runway three six cleared to land, hold short of runway three three, traffic departing runway three three."*

"Traffic landing runway three six will hold short of the intersection, runway three three cleared for takeoff."

b. ***USAF must secure major command approval prior to conducting Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO).*** *Major command approval required prior to conducting* ***LAHSO***. An aircraft may be authorized to takeoff from one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway or an aircraft lands on one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway, **or an aircraft lands to hold short of an intersecting taxiway or some other predetermined point such as an approach/departure flight path using procedures specified in FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations.** The procedure shall be approved by the air traffic manager and be in accordance with a facility directive. The following conditions apply:

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7210.3, LAND AND HOLD SHORT OPERATIONS (LAHSO), Para 11-3-7.

2. Instruct the landing aircraft to hold short of the intersecting runway being used by the aircraft taking off. In the case of simultaneous landings and no operational benefit is lost, restrict the aircraft **of the lesser weight category (if known). LAHSO clearances shall only be issued to aircraft that are listed in the LAHSO Information Management Systems (LIMS) and/or FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations, Appendix 1, whose Available Landing Distance (ALD) does not exceed the landing distance requirement for the runway condition WET or DRY.**

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD SHORT OF RUNWAY (runway number), (traffic, ***type aircraft*** *or other information)*

EXAMPLE–
1 *"Runway one eight cleared to land, hold short of runway one four left, traffic,* ***(type aircraft)*** *landing runway one four left."*

No Change

"Runway one four left cleared to land, traffic, ***(type aircraft)*** *landing runway one eight will hold short of the intersection."*

"Read back hold ***short*** *instructions."*

2 *"Runway three six cleared to land, hold short of runway three three, traffic,* ***(type aircraft)*** *departing runway three three."*

"Traffic, ***(type aircraft)*** *landing runway three six will hold short of the intersection, runway three three cleared for takeoff."*

OLD	NEW
6. Both runways must be dry with no reports that braking action is less than good.	**6. Land and Hold Short runways must be free of any contamination as described in FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations,** with no reports that braking action is less than good.
8. The aircraft restricted to hold short is listed in Appendix A, B, and C.	**8.** The aircraft **required landing distances (WET) and (DRY) are listed in the LIMS database and/or FAAO 7110.114, Land and Hold Short Operations, Appendix 1.**
9. STOL aircraft operations are in accordance with a letter of agreement with the aircraft operator/pilot, the aircraft is listed as a SOIR Group 1 in Appendix A, B, and C or the pilot confirms that it is a STOL aircraft.	**9.** STOL aircraft operations are in accordance with a letter of agreement with the aircraft operator/pilot **or the pilot confirms that it is a STOL aircraft.**
c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing heavy jet on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure– *2 minutes* or the appropriate radar separation minima. (See FIG 3–10–10).	**c.** Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing heavy jet**/B757** on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure– *2 minutes* or the appropriate radar separation minima. (See FIG 3–10–10.)

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT:
b. These changes have minimal training impact.
c. Minimal. There are already special separation standards applied to the B757 aircraft. This change is merely a tie–in to other paragraphs that specify operating procedures.

---

1. PARAGRAPH TITLE AND NUMBER: 3–10–5. LANDING CLEARANCE

2. BACKGROUND: In order to alleviate any pilot confusion and align this paragraph with paragraph 3–9–9, TAKEOFF CLEARANCE, subpara b., the runway number shall be stated with the landing clearance when more than one runway is active.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3–10–5. LANDING CLEARANCE	**3–10–5. LANDING CLEARANCE**
a. Issue landing clearance. Restate the landing runway whenever there is a possibility of a conflict with another aircraft which is using or planning to use another runway, or an instrument approach is being conducted to a closed runway.	**a.** Issue landing clearance. Restate the landing runway whenever **more than one runway is active,** or an instrument approach is being conducted to a closed runway.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-1-2. EXCEPTIONS and 4-4-4. ALTERNATIVE ROUTES

2. BACKGROUND: Most en route facilities have developed substitute routes to be used when a navigational aid is out of service and radar coverage does not exist. The Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA) is normally increased and in some cases the airway or route may be unusable due to distance between navigational aids (NAVAID's). If a pilot is unable to conduct flight at a higher altitude due to aircraft limitation, weather, etc., another route must be requested and issued. FAAO 7110.65J, Chapter 4, does not refer to the /E, /F, /G equipped aircraft and the advantage of proceeding direct to the NAVAID location even though the NAVAID is out of service. Phase IH of GPS has been approved for development and use of "stand alone" GPS instrument approaches provided the appropriate equipment has been installed in accordance with Technical Standard Order (TSO) C 129. Based on the acceptance and approval of the GPS for nonprecision approaches, it seems /E, /F, /G equipped aircraft should be permitted to navigate on an airway or route when a NAVAID is out of service.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-1-2. EXCEPTIONS	**4-1-2. EXCEPTIONS**
Title thru **a.2.**	No Change
Add	**3. Aircraft is /E, /F, or /G equipped.**

OLD	NEW
4-4-4. ALTERNATIVE ROUTES	**4-4-4. ALTERNATIVE ROUTES**
When any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status, clear aircraft via one of the following alternative routes:	When any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status, clear aircraft **other than /E, /F, or /G,** via one of the following alternative routes:
a. thru **d.**	No Change
Add	***NOTE–*** ***Inform area navigation aircraft that will proceed to the NAVAID location of the NAVAID outage.***

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-2-5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS

2. BACKGROUND: Advances in modern technology have increased the number of aircraft equipped to fly "direct." As a result, more aircraft are requesting and receiving clearances "direct" to a point along their route of flight. Also, controllers are issuing more "direct" clearances subsequent to vectors for traffic, spacing, etc. Numerous suggestions have been received to eliminate the requirement to state "Rest of Route Unchanged" when clearing an aircraft direct to a point on their route. The elimination of the extra phraseology will decrease frequency congestion.

Subparagraph d: The final phase of the National Route Program became effective on October 7, 1996. The basic requirements for this program are contained in Notice N 7210.452, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM. This notice is now being incorporated into FAAO 7110.65 and FAAO 7210.3, FACILITY OPERATION AND ADMINISTRATION. This change is needed to publish directions to the Air Traffic Control Specialist regarding the handling of flights participating in the National Route Program.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-2-5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS	**4-2-5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS**
Title thru **a.1.**	No Change
PHRASEOLOGY- *CHANGE (portion of route) TO READ (<u>amended</u> route).*	***PHRASEOLOGY-*** *CHANGE (portion of route) TO READ (<u>new portion of</u> route).*
2.	No Change
PHRASEOLOGY- *(<u>amended</u> route), REST OF ROUTE UNCHANGED.*	***PHRASEOLOGY-*** *(<u>Amendment to</u> route), REST OF ROUTE UNCHANGED.*
Add	3. <u>**Issue a clearance "direct" to a point on the previously issued route.**</u> <u>***PHRASEOLOGY-***</u> <u>*CLEARED DIRECT (fix).*</u> <u>*NOTE-*</u> <u>*Clearances authorizing "direct" to a point on a previously issued route do not require the phrase "rest of route unchanged." However, it must be understood where the previously cleared route is resumed. When necessary, "rest of route unchanged" may be used to clarify routing.*</u>
Renumbered	
<u>3.</u> Issue the entire route by stating the amendment.	<u>4.</u> Issue the entire route by stating the amendment.
b. thru **c.**	No Change
Add	<u>**d. Air traffic control specialists should avoid route and/or altitude changes for aircraft participating in the National Route Program (NRP) and that are displaying "NRP" in the remarks section of their flight plan.**</u> <u>*NOTE-*</u> <u>*Air traffic control specialists retain the latitude necessary to tactically resolve conflicts. Every effort should be made to ensure the aircraft is returned to the original filed flight plan/altitude as soon as conditions warrant.*</u> <u>*REFERENCE-*</u> <u>*FAAO 7110.65, OPERATIONAL PRIORITY, Para 2-1-4.*</u> <u>*FAAO 7110.65, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION, Para 2-2-15.*</u> <u>*FAAO 7110.65, EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES, Para 2-3-2.*</u> <u>*FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 18, Section 17, NATIONAL ROUTE PROGRAM.*</u>

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4–6–4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS and **4–6–6. HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION**

2. BACKGROUND: ATR–42 and ATR–72 pilots are prohibited from operating in freezing drizzle or freezing rain. If pilots inadvertently encounter freezing drizzle or freezing rain, they have been directed to immediately request route and/or altitude deviations. Pilots may request airspeeds in excess of the maximum speed for holding, when they deem it necessary. The higher airspeed may cause the aircraft to deviate from the confines of the holding pattern protected airspace. Up to now, an air traffic control specialist (ATCS) may not have considered clearing a propeller–driven or turboprop aircraft, that has requested a higher holding airspeed, into a civil/military turbojet holding pattern. This change permits an aircraft that is restricted to a smaller pattern due to aircraft type to be cleared into a pattern that protects for a faster holding airspeed. Phraseology is included to be used in advising pilots of the maximum holding airspeed of a holding pattern airspace area. Note: Airspeed *advisories* may be issued, but airspeeds shall not be assigned to aircraft that are in holding. In addition, obstructions have been added to the conditions for consideration prior to approving a request that may cause an aircraft to deviate from the holding pattern airspace area.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4–6–4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS	**4–6–4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS**
When necessary to issue holding instructions, specify:	**When issuing holding instructions,** specify:
a. thru **e.** *NOTE–*	No Change
Add	**f. Issue maximum holding airspeed advisories when an aircraft is:** **1. Approved to exceed the maximum airspeed of a pattern, and is cleared into a holding pattern that will protect for the greater speed; or** **2. Observed deviating from the holding pattern airspace area; or** **3. Cleared into a 210 KIAS pattern whose icon has not been published.**
Add	***EXAMPLE–*** ***Due to turbulence, a turboprop requests to exceed the recommended maximum holding airspeed. ATCS may clear the aircraft into a pattern that protects for the airspeed request, and shall advise the pilot of the maximum holding airspeed for the holding pattern airspace area.***
Add	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** ***"MAXIMUM HOLDING AIRSPEED IS TWO ONE ZERO KNOTS."***

OLD	NEW
4–6–6. HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION	**4–6–6. HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION**
Approve a pilot's request to deviate from the prescribed holding flight path if traffic conditions permit.	Approve a pilot's request to deviate from the prescribed holding flight path if **obstacles and** traffic conditions permit.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: This change requires an air traffic control specialist to issue maximum holding airspeed advisories when an aircraft is: approved to exceed the maximum airspeed of a pattern, and is cleared into a holding pattern that will protect for the greater speed; or observed deviating from the holding pattern airspace area; or cleared into a 210 KIAS pattern whose icon has not been published.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-7-11. APPROACH INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: By monitoring the automated weather frequency, the pilot has access to current one minute updated weather data whereas the controllers weather information for the airport may be totally nonrepresentative of the actual weather conditions due to dissemination delays. This change places the responsibility on the pilot to monitor the ASOS/AWOS frequency to determine the current weather conditions at the airport and then to advise the controller of his/her intentions. This procedure would apply at all uncontrolled airports that have automated weather reporting and ground-to-air one minute weather broadcasts.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-7-11. APPROACH INFORMATION	**4-7-11. APPROACH INFORMATION**
a. Both en route and terminal approach control sectors shall provide current approach information to aircraft destined to airports for which they provide approach control services. This information shall be provided on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter. Approach information contained in the appropriate ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code; otherwise, issue approach information by including the following:	**a.** Both en route and terminal approach control sectors shall provide current approach information to aircraft destined to airports for which they provide approach control services. This information shall be provided on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter. Approach information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code **or items 3-5 below may be omitted for pilots destined to uncontrolled airports when they advise receipt of the automated weather;** otherwise, issue approach information by including the following:
4. Ceiling and visibility if the ceiling at the airport of intended landing is reported below 1,000 feet or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or the visibility is less than 3 miles.	**4.** Ceiling and visibility if the **reported** ceiling at the airport of intended landing is below 1,000 feet or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or the visibility is less than 3 miles.
b. Controllers without access to current airport weather data or upon pilot request shall inform pilots of the frequency where automated weather data may be obtained and, if appropriate, that airport weather is not available.	**b.** Upon pilot request**, controllers** shall inform pilots of the frequency where automated weather data may be obtained and, if appropriate, that airport weather is not available.
PHRASEOLOGY- *(airport) AWOS/ASOS WEATHER AVAILABLE ON (frequency).*	No Change
NOTE- *Automated weather observing systems may be set to provide one minute updates. This one minute data may be useful to the pilot for possible weather trends. Controllers provide service based solely on official weather, i.e. hourly and special observations.*	Delete
Add	**1. ASOS/AWOS shall be set to provide one minute weather at uncontrolled airports that are without ground-to-air weather broadcast capability by a CWO, NWS or FSS observer.**

OLD	NEW
Add	**2. Controllers will consider the long-line disseminated weather from an automated weather system at an uncontrolled airport as trend information only and shall rely on the pilot for the current weather information for that airport.**
Add	**3. Controllers shall issue the last long-line disseminated weather to the pilot if the pilot is unable to receive the ASOS/AWOS broadcast.**
Add	*NOTE–* *Aircraft destined to uncontrolled airports, which have automated weather data with broadcast capability, should monitor the ASOS/AWOS frequency to ascertain the current weather at the airport. The pilot should advise the controller when he/she has received the broadcast weather and state his/her intentions.*

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: This change clarifies the expected pilot responsibilities. Minimal operational impact with the reduction in confusion when the pilot and controller have access to different weather information for the same uncontrolled airport.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE, and **5-9-4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS**

2. BACKGROUND: The Standard T and Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) concepts were developed by the Flight Standards Service in order to take advantage of changes in area navigational (RNAV) technology primarily in satellite-based systems (Global Positioning System (GPS)) and Flight Management Systems (FMS). The Standard T allows aircraft to proceed direct to the nearest IAF and virtually eliminates the need for procedure turns or course reversal. In the case of radar vectors within the TAA, the controller will have the option of clearing the aircraft direct to an appropriate IAF rather than vectors to the final approach course which entails making the baseleg and dogleg turns.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE	**4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE**
a. thru **d.**	No Change
Add	**FIG 4-8-2**
Add	**e. Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches use the procedures under subpara b. above. (See FIG 4-8-2.)** *EXAMPLE–* 1 *Aircraft 1: The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight Approach."* 2 *Aircraft 2: The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR (right corner) IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (CFR Part 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared to CHARR. Maintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA. Cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5–9–4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS	**5–9–4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS**
Title thru **d.**	No Change
Add	**e. Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, inform the aircraft of its position relative to the appropriate IAF and issue the approach clearance. (See FIG 5–9–5.)**
Add	*EXAMPLE–* *[1] Aircraft 1: The aircraft is in the straight in area of the TAA. "Seven miles from CENTR, Cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight Approach."* *[2] Aircraft 2: The aircraft is in the left base area of the TAA. "Fifteen miles from LEFTT, Cleared GPS Runway One Eight Approach."* *[3] Aircraft 3: The aircraft is in the right base area of the TAA. "Four miles from WRITE, Cleared FMS Runway One Eight Approach."*
Add	**NEW FIG 5–9–5**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None. The establishment of the TAA boundary as a feeder fix and segment of the approach is a new concept. However, once this is accepted, the procedural applications are those that we have been using for years.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4–8–11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR–1 relating to wake turbulence. The change to this paragraph reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4–8–11. PRACTICE APPROACHES	**4–8–11. PRACTICE APPROACHES**
Title thru **a.1.**	No Change
a. 2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, standard IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 shall be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for heavy aircraft, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.	**a. 2.** Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, standard IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 shall be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for heavy aircraft/**B757**, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal. There are already special separation standards applied to the B757 aircraft. This change is merely a tie–in to other paragraphs that specify operating procedures.

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-2-10. VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS** and **5-2-14. CODE MONITOR**

2. **BACKGROUND:** One of the revisions to Order 7110.66, National Beacon Code Allocation Plan, was to assign the code 1255 nationwide to fire fighting aircraft not in contact with an ATC facility and to add the code 1255 to controllers' code select lists, if appropriate, to increase controller awareness of these flight activities.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD	NEW
5-2-10. VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS	**5-2-10. VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS**
Title thru **a.**	No Change
b. ***NOTE-***	**b.** ***NOTE-***
Add	[1] **Aircraft not in contact with an ATC facility may squawk 1255 in lieu of 1200 while en route to/from or within the designated fire fighting area(s).**
VFR aircraft which fly authorized SAR missions for the USAF or USCG may be advised to squawk 1277 in lieu of 1200 while en route to/from or within the designated search area.	[2] VFR aircraft which fly authorized SAR missions for the USAF or USCG may be advised to squawk 1277 in lieu of 1200 while en route to/from or within the designated search area.

OLD	NEW
5-2-14. CODE MONITOR	**5-2-14. CODE MONITOR**
a. This includes the appropriate IFR code actually assigned and, additionally, **code 1200** and **code 1277** unless your area of responsibility includes only positive control airspace. During periods when ring-around or excessive VFR target presentations derogate the separation of IFR traffic, the monitoring of VFR **code 1200** and **code 1277** may be temporarily discontinued.	**a.** This includes the appropriate IFR code actually assigned and, additionally, **code 1200, code 1255,** and **code 1277** unless your area of responsibility includes only Class A airspace. During periods when ring-around or excessive VFR target presentations derogate the separation of IFR traffic, the monitoring of VFR **code 1200, code 1255,** and **code 1277** may be temporarily discontinued.

4. **OPERATIONAL IMPACT:** None.

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-5-3. MINIMA.**

2. **BACKGROUND:** Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR-1 relating to wake turbulence. This change clarifies separation standards for B757's and wake turbulence for the terminal environment.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD	NEW
5-5-3. MINIMA	**5-5-3. MINIMA**
Title through **c.**	No Change
d.	No Change
NOTE- *Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.*	No Change

OLD	NEW
1. Heavy behind heavy– *4 miles.*	No Change
2. Small/large/heavy behind B–757– *4 miles.*	2. Large/heavy behind B757– *4 miles.*
Add and Renumber	**3. Small behind B757– *5 miles.***
3. Small/large behind heavy– *5 miles.*	4. Small/large behind heavy– *5 miles.*
(See FIG 5–5–1 and FIG 5–5–2).	Delete
FIG 5–5–1 and FIG 5–5–2	Delete
e.	No Change
NOTE– Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.	No Change
1. Small behind large – *4 miles.*	No Change
Add and Renumber	**2. Small behind B757– *5 miles.***
2. Small behind heavy– *6 miles.*	3. Small behind heavy– *6 miles.*

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Substantial. With the high number of aircraft that have changed from the large weight class to the small weight class, coupled with the increased separation requirement for aircraft following a B757, some negative capacity effects are expected. Training programs at the facility level should emphasize the aircraft that have changed weight classes for easier controller identification.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5–5–9. ADJACENT AIRSPACE

2. BACKGROUND: Editorial change to reflect previous changes to TRSA separation.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5–5–9. ADJACENT AIRSPACE	**5–5–9. ADJACENT AIRSPACE**
a. thru **b.**	No Change
c. The provisions of subparagraphs a. and b. do not apply to VFR aircraft being provided Class B or Class C services. Ensure that targets of these aircraft do not touch the boundary of adjacent airspace.	**c.** The provisions of subparas a. and b. do not apply to VFR aircraft being provided **Class B, Class C or TRSA services.** Ensure that the targets of these aircraft do not touch the boundary of adjacent airspace.
d. VFR aircraft approaching Class B, C, OR D airspace which is under the control jurisdiction of another air traffic control facility should either be provided with a radar handoff or be advised that radar service is terminated, given their position in relation to the Class B, C or D airspace, and the ATC frequency, if known, for the airspace to be entered. These actions should be accomplished in sufficient time for the pilot to obtain the required ATC approval prior to entering the airspace involved, or to avoid the airspace.	**d.** VFR aircraft approaching Class B, Class C, Class D **or TRSA** airspace which is under the control jurisdiction of another air traffic control facility should either be provided with a radar handoff or be advised that radar service is terminated, given their position in relation to the Class B, Class C, Class D **or TRSA** airspace, and the ATC frequency, if known, for the airspace to be entered. These actions should be accomplished in sufficient time for the pilot to obtain the required ATC approval prior to entering the airspace involved, or to avoid the airspace.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES**

2. **BACKGROUND:** This change adds the B757 to the procedure that is being applied to heavy jets with successive or simultaneous departures of small aircraft.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD

5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES

Title thru **a.**

NOTE-
This procedure does not apply when small aircraft are taking off from an intersection on the same runway behind a large aircraft or when aircraft are departing behind a heavy jet.

b.2.
NOTE-
This procedure does not apply when aircraft are departing behind a heavy jet.

NEW

5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES

No Change

NOTE-
This procedure does not apply when a small aircraft is taking off from an intersection on the same runway behind a large aircraft or when an aircraft is departing behind a heavy jet/B757.

b.2.
NOTE-
This procedure does not apply when aircraft are departing behind a heavy jet/B757.

4. **OPERATIONAL IMPACT:** Minimal. There are already special separation standards applied to the B757.

---

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-9-8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT DUAL ILS/MLS APPROACHES-HIGH UPDATE RADAR**

2. **BACKGROUND:** In October 1995, a simulation was conducted by the Multiple Parallel Approach Technical Work Group (MPAP TWG) to evaluate simultaneous approaches to dual runways spaced 3,000 feet apart using the Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) with a 1.0 second update and a 2.5 degree localizer offset. No test criteria violations (TCV) occurred in this real time simulation. Based upon the test results and evaluations from the controller and pilot technical observers, the MPAP TWG unanimously agreed that the procedure met all established test criteria. Enhanced pilot and controller training procedures and modified controller breakout phraseology were two elements that clearly contributed to the success of the operation.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD

5-9-8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT DUAL ILS/MLS APPROACHES-HIGH UPDATE RADAR

a. Authorize simultaneous independent ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches to parallel dual runways with centerlines separated by 3,400 to 4,300 feet when precision runway monitors are utilized with a radar update rate of 2.4 seconds or less, and:

NEW

5-9-8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT DUAL ILS/MLS APPROACHES-HIGH UPDATE RADAR

a. Authorize simultaneous independent ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches to parallel dual runways with centerlines separated by **at least 3,000 feet with one localizer offset by 2.5 degrees using a precision runway monitor system with a 1.0 second radar update system and when centerlines are separated by** 3,400 to 4,300 feet when precision runway monitors are utilized with a radar update rate of 2.4 seconds or less, and:

4. **OPERATIONAL IMPACT:** None.

---

1. **PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 6-1-1. DME; 6-2-1. MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES; 6-2-2. MINIMA ON SAME COURSE; 6-4-2. MINIMA ON SAME, CONVERGING, OR CROSSING COURSES; 6-4-3. MINIMA ON OPPOSITE COURSES** and **6-4-4. SEPARATION BY PILOTS**

2. **BACKGROUND:** The use of "along track distance" (LTD) by aircraft qualified to use the /E, /F, and /G equipment suffixes offers distance measurement accuracy that is equal to or greater than distance measuring equipment (DME). The use of those measurements for limited separation purposes is an incremental and evolutionary step toward using RNAV as a primary source of navigation. The use of LTD distances for separation purposes was discussed at length at a past Satellite Operational Implementation Team meeting and it was their recommendation to pursue this new method of aircraft separation.

In developing the separation standards between RNAV and DME-equipped aircraft, an attempt to substitute LTD exactly for DME was not feasible because of the slant range error inherent with DME. Therefore, basing separation on mileage reports between aircraft using DME and LTD requires that DME slant range error be accommodated, especially at higher altitudes.

3. **CHANGE:**

OLD

6-1-1. DME

Use DME procedures and minima only when direct pilot/controller communications are maintained.

NEW

6-1-1. DISTANCE

Use **mileage-based (DME and/or LTD)** procedures and minima only when direct pilot/controller communications are maintained.

OLD

6-2-1. MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES

Title thru **a.2.**

3. Within 13 miles DME after takeoff– *3 miles* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6-2-3).

NEW

6-2-1. MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES

No Change

3. Within 13 miles DME/**LTD** after takeoff – *3 miles* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6-2-3.)

OLD

6-2-2. MINIMA ON SAME COURSE

Separate aircraft that will fly the same course when the following aircraft will climb through the altitude assigned to the leading aircraft by using a minimum of *3 minutes* until the following aircraft passes through the assigned altitude of the leading aircraft; or *5 miles* if both aircraft are using DME. (See FIG 6-2-8 and FIG 6-2-9).

NEW

6-2-2. MINIMA ON SAME COURSE

Separate aircraft that will fly the same course when the following aircraft will climb through the altitude assigned to the leading aircraft by using a minimum of *3 minutes* until the following aircraft passes through the assigned altitude of the leading aircraft; or *5 miles* **between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID.** (See FIG 6-2-8 and FIG 6-2-9.)

OLD

6-4-2. MINIMA ON SAME, CONVERGING, OR CROSSING COURSES

Separate aircraft on the same, converging, or crossing courses by an interval expressed in time or distance, using the following minima:

NEW

6-4-2. MINIMA ON SAME, CONVERGING, OR CROSSING COURSES

Separate aircraft on the same, converging, or crossing courses by an interval expressed in time or distance, using the following minima:

a. When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 44 knots faster than the following aircraft– *5 miles* between aircraft using DME and/or RNAV; or *3 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions is met:	**a.** When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 44 knots faster than the following aircraft – *5 miles* between **DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID,** or *3 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions is met:
a.1. thru **a.3.**	No Change
b. When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 22 knots faster than the following aircraft– *10 miles* between aircraft using DME and/or RNAV; or *5 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions exists:	**b.** When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 22 knots faster than the following aircraft – *10 miles* between **DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID;** or *5 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions exists:
b.1. thru **b.3.**	No Change
c. When an aircraft is climbing or descending through the altitude of another aircraft:	**c.** When an aircraft is climbing or descending through the altitude of another aircraft:
1. Between aircraft using DME– *10 miles,* if the descending aircraft is leading or the climbing aircraft is following. (See FIG 6–4–7 and FIG 6–4–8).	**1.** Between **DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID**– *10 miles,* if the descending aircraft is leading or the climbing aircraft is following. (See FIG 6–4–7 and FIG 6–4–8.)
c.2. thru **c.3.(b)**	No Change
d. When the conditions of para a., b., or c. cannot be met– *20 miles* between aircraft using DME and/or RNAV; or *10 minutes* between other aircraft. (See FIG 6–4–11, FIG 6–4–12, FIG 6–4–13, FIG 6–4–14, FIG 6–4–15, and FIG 6–4–16).	**d.** When the conditions of subparas a., b., or c. cannot be met– *20 miles* between **DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID;** or *10 minutes* between other aircraft. (See FIG 6–4–11, FIG 6–4–12, FIG 6–4–13, FIG 6–4–14, FIG 6–4–15, and FIG 6–4–16.)
e. Between aircraft, when one aircraft is using DME and the other is not– *30 miles* if both the following conditions are met: (See FIG 6–4–17 and FIG 6–4–18).	**e.** Between aircraft, when one aircraft is using DME/**LTD** and the other is not– *30 miles* if both the following conditions are met: (See FIG 6–4–17 and FIG 6–4–18.)
1. The aircraft using DME derives distance information by reference to the same NAVAID over which the aircraft not using DME has reported.	**1.** The aircraft using DME/**LTD** derives distance information by reference to the same NAVAID **or waypoint** over which the aircraft not using DME/**LTD** has reported.
2. The aircraft not using DME is within 15 minutes of the NAVAID.	**2.** The aircraft not using DME/**LTD** is within 15 minutes of the NAVAID.

OLD

6-4-3. MINIMA ON OPPOSITE COURSES

Title thru **Note**

a. Both aircraft have reported passing NAVAID's or DME fixes indicating they have passed each other. (See FIG 6-4-20).

NEW

6-4-3. MINIMA ON OPPOSITE COURSES

No Change

a. Both aircraft have reported passing NAVAID's, DME fixes**, or waypoints** indicating they have passed each other. (See FIG 6-4-20.)

OLD

6-4-4. SEPARATION BY PILOTS

When pilots of aircraft on the same course in direct radio communication with each other concur, you may authorize the following aircraft to maintain longitudinal separation of *10 minutes*; or *20 miles* if they are using DME.

NEW

6-4-4. SEPARATION BY PILOTS

When pilots of aircraft on the same course in direct radio communication with each other concur, you may authorize the following aircraft to maintain longitudinal separation of *10 minutes*; or *20 miles* **between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using LTD; and between DME and LTD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID.**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR-1 relating to wake turbulence. This change is intended to include the B757 to procedures being applied to heavy jet aircraft when operating with an adjacent airport.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION

The ATC facility providing service to heavy jets and having control jurisdiction at adjacent airports shall separate arriving or departing IFR aircraft on a course that will cross behind the flight path of a heavy jet- *2 minutes.* (See FIG 6-1-1 and FIG 6-1-2).

Adjacent Airport Operation Arrival FIG 6-1-1

Adjacent Airport Operation Departure FIG 6-1-2

NEW

6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION

The ATC facility providing service to heavy jets**/B757's** and having control jurisdiction at adjacent airports shall separate arriving or departing IFR aircraft on a course that will cross behind the flight path of a heavy jet**/B757**- *2 minutes.* (See FIG 6-1-1 and FIG 6-1-2.)

Add **/B757** in FIG 6-1-1 behind the words "Heavy Jet"

Add **/B757** in FIG 6-1-2 behind the words "Heavy Jet"

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal. There are already special separation standards applied to the B757. This change is merely a tie-in to other paragraphs that specify operating procedures.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR-1 relating to wake turbulence. This change reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a B757.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA

Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet by *2 minutes* when arriving:

a. The same runway (use *3 minutes* for a small aircraft behind a heavy jet).

Heading for FIG 6-1-3
Arrival Minima
Landing Behind an Arriving Heavy Jet

NEW

6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA

Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet/**B757** by *2 minutes* when arriving:

a. The same runway (use *3 minutes* for a small behind a heavy jet/**B757**).

Heading for FIG 6-1-3
Arrival Minima
Landing Behind an Arriving Heavy Jet/**B757**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal. There are already special separation standards applied to the B757 aircraft. This change is merely a tie-in to other paragraphs that specify operating procedures.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) relating to wake turbulence. This change reinforces the application of wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind a heavy jet/B757.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH

Title thru **a.**

b. Resolve potential conflicts with all other aircraft, and ensure that weather conditions at the airport are VFR or that the pilot has been informed that weather is not available for the destination airport. Advise the pilot of the frequency to receive weather information where AWOS/ASOS is available.

c.

Add and Renumber

d. Inform the tower of the aircraft's position prior to communications transfer at controlled airports. ARTS functions may be used provided a facility directive or a letter of agreement specifies control and communication transfer points.

NEW

7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH

No Change

b. Resolve potential conflicts with all other aircraft, **advise an overtaking aircraft of the distance to the preceding aircraft and speed difference**, and ensure that weather conditions at the airport are VFR or that the pilot has been informed that weather is not available for the destination airport. Advise the pilot of the frequency to receive weather information where AWOS/ASOS is available.

No Change

d. All aircraft following a heavy jet/B757 must be informed of the airplane manufacturer and model.

EXAMPLE-
"Cessna Three Four Juliet, following a Boeing 757, 12 o'clock, six miles."

e. Inform the tower of the aircraft's position prior to communications transfer at controlled airports. ARTS functions may be used provided a facility directive or a letter of agreement specifies control and communication transfer points.

e. In addition to the requirements of Para 7–4–2 and 7–4–3 a, b, c, and d, ensure that the location of the destination airport is provided when the pilot is asked to report the destination airport in sight.	f. In addition to the requirements of para 7–4–2, VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH, and subparas a., b., c., d. and e., ensure that the location of the destination airport is provided when the pilot is asked to report the destination airport in sight.
f. In those instances where airports are located in close proximity, also provide the location of the airport that may cause the confusion.	g. In those instances where airports are located in close proximity, also provide the location of the airport that may cause the confusion.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal. This application is currently being applied by most controllers and this makes the application mandatory.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 7–4–4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR–1 relating to wake turbulence. This change is intended to make the note in paragraph 7–4–4, c.1. regulatory.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
7–4–4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS	**7–4–4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS**
Title thru c.	No Change
1. Parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Unless standard separation is provided by ATC, an aircraft must report sighting a preceding aircraft making an approach (instrument or visual) to the adjacent parallel runway. When an aircraft reports another aircraft in sight on the adjacent final approach course and visual separation is applied, controllers must advise the succeeding aircraft to maintain visual separation.	1. Parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Unless standard separation is provided by ATC, an aircraft must report sighting a preceding aircraft making an approach (instrument or visual) to the adjacent parallel runway. When an aircraft reports another aircraft in sight on the adjacent final approach course and visual separation is applied, controllers must advise the succeeding aircraft to maintain visual separation. **However, do not permit a heavy/B757 aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.**
NOTE– *Do not permit a heavy / B757 aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.*	Delete

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None. This change is intended to make the note in paragraph 7–4–4, c.1. regulatory.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 7-4-5. CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE

2. BACKGROUND: This change reflects the current version requirements of FAAO 7110.79, Charted Visual Flight Procedures, and deletes the requirement to conduct this type of approach in a radar environment.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
7-4-5. CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE	**7-4-5. CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE**
Clear an aircraft for a CVFP only when the following conditions are met:	No Change
a. <u>The approach is conducted in a radar environment;</u>	Delete
<u>b.</u> There is an operating control tower;	<u>a.</u> There is an operating control tower;
<u>c.</u> The published name of the CVFP and the landing runway are specified in the approach clearance, the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA, and the visibility is 3 miles or more, unless higher minimums are published for the particular CVFP;	<u>b.</u> The published name of the CVFP and the landing runway are specified in the approach clearance, the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA, and the visibility is 3 miles or more, unless higher minimums are published for the particular CVFP;
<u>d.</u> When using parallel or intersecting/converging runways, the criteria specified in para 7-4-4 are applied.	<u>c.</u> When using parallel or intersecting/converging runways, the criteria specified in para 7-4-4, APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS, are applied.
<u>e.</u> An aircraft not following another aircraft on the approach reports sighting a charted visual landmark, or reports sighting a preceding aircraft landing on the same runway and has been instructed to follow that aircraft.	<u>d.</u> An aircraft not following another aircraft on the approach reports sighting a charted visual landmark, or reports sighting a preceding aircraft landing on the same runway and has been instructed to follow that aircraft.

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal. Facilities should review their CVFP's to determine if the phrase "Radar Required" should be eliminated.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 7-7-3. SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: This change is an editorial change that correctly addresses the position that is responsible for approving the application of target resolutions at locations not using broadband radar.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
7-7-3. SEPARATION	**7-7-3. SEPARATION**
Title thru **b.**	No Change
c. Target resolution when using broadband radar systems. The application of target resolutions at locations not using broadband radar will be individually approved by the <u>Air Traffic Rules and Procedures Service, ATP-1.</u>	**c.** Target resolution when using broadband radar systems. The application of target resolutions at locations not using broadband radar will be individually approved by the **<u>Program Director for Air Traffic Operations, ATO-1.</u>**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 7–9–4. SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR–1 relating to wake turbulence. One of the safety recommendations was to provide increased protection from wake turbulence for aircraft weighing 41,000 lbs. or less. Therefore, concurrent to this paragraph change is a change to aircraft weight classes. With the change to small weight class definitions, additional guidance is needed in this paragraph to identify aircraft that weigh 19,000 lbs. or less.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
7–9–4. SEPARATION	**7–9–4. SEPARATION**
a. thru **b.**	No Change
NOTE– *Aircraft weighing 19,000 pounds or less include all of the small category aircraft plus the B31, B32, BE02, BEST, DO82, and SW3.*	***NOTE–*** *Aircraft weighing 19,000 pounds or less include all of the* ***aircraft in SRS categories I and II plus SC7, G73, E110, DO82, STAR, S601, BE30, B350, SW3, B190, and C212.***
c.	No Change
NOTE– *Aircraft weighing 19,000 pounds or less include all of the small category aircraft plus the B31, B32, BE02, BEST, DO82, and SW3.*	Delete

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Minimal. There is no change to separation standards or the aircraft to which the Class B services are provided. This change only modifies the source of information used to identify which aircraft weigh 19,000 lbs. or less.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 8–2–3. AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES INTERFACILITY DATA COMMUNICATIONS (AIDC)

2. BACKGROUND: Interfacility data communications capability is being implemented to provide improvements in the transfer of flight data for advance notification and coordination.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
Add	**8–2–3. AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES INTERFACILITY DATA COMMUNICATIONS (AIDC)** **Where interfacility data communications capability has been implemented, its use for ATC coordination should be accomplished in accordance with regional Interface Control Documents, and supported by letters of agreement between the facilities concerned.**

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 8-9-9. PROCEDURES FOR WEATHER DEVIATIONS AND OTHER CONTINGENCIES IN OCEANIC CONTROLLED AIRSPACE

2. BACKGROUND: The Oceanic Weather Deviation Procedure has been coordinated in many ICAO forums around the world and is an integral piece in the approval process for reduced horizontal separation. This new procedure was developed in association with IFALPA and briefed to the Review of the General Concept of Separation Panel (RGCSP) in September 1996 and then submitted to the Asia/Pacific Planning and Implementation Regional Group (APANPIRG) in October 1996 for adoption throughout the Region. In a continuing effort to maximize safety and increase efficiency, air traffic service providers along with the air traffic system users identified a need to proceduralize weather deviations and other contingencies in oceanic controlled airspace.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
Add	**8-9-9. PROCEDURES FOR WEATHER DEVIATIONS AND OTHER CONTINGENCIES IN OCEANIC CONTROLLED AIRSPACE** **Aircraft must request an ATC clearance to deviate. Since aircraft will not fly into known areas of weather, weather deviation requests should take priority over routine requests. If there is conflicting traffic and ATC is unable to establish standard separation, ATC shall:** **a. Advise the pilot that standard separation cannot be applied;** **b. If possible, suggest a course of action; and** *NOTE-* *ATC may suggest that the pilot climb or descend to a contingency altitude (1,000 feet above or below that assigned if operating above FL 290; 500 feet above or below that assigned if operating at or below FL 290).* **c. To the extent practical, provide traffic information for all affected aircraft.** *PHRASEOLOGY-* *STANDARD SEPARATION NOT AVAILABLE, DEVIATE AT PILOT'S DISCRETION; SUGGEST CLIMB (or descent) TO (appropriate altitude); TRAFFIC (position and altitude); REPORT DEVIATION COMPLETE.* **d. The pilot will follow the advisory altitude when approximately 10 NM from track.** **e. At the completion of the deviation, ATC shall establish standard separation as soon as practicable.** *NOTE-* *In the event that pilot/controller communications cannot be established or a revised ATC clearance is not available, pilots will follow the procedures outlined in the AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL (AIM) and Chart Supplements.*

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: Previously, weather deviation requests would be denied if standard separation was not attainable. This change will allow controllers to issue an advisory/contingency altitude, thereby proactively managing deviations and other contingencies.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: Appendix A. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: Several safety recommendations have been made by AVR-1 relating to wake turbulence. One of the safety recommendations was to provide increased protection from wake turbulence for aircraft weighing 41,000 lbs. or less. Therefore, concurrent to this paragraph change is a change to aircraft weight classes.

The criteria for same runway separation categories was previously loosely based on weight class plus performance characteristics. With the change to weight class definitions, the same runway separation categories had to be redefined also.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
Appendix A. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION	**Appendix A. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION**
TYPE ENGINE ABBREVIATIONS	No Change
CLIMB AND DESCENT RATES	No Change
NOTE– ** Denotes single-piloted military turbojet aircraft or aircraft to receive the same procedural handling as a single-piloted military turbojet aircraft.*	No Change
NOTE– **** Denotes amphibian aircraft.*	No Change
Add	<u>*NOTE–*</u> <u>*+ Denotes aircraft weighing between 12,500 lbs. and 41,000 lbs.*</u>

SEE APPENDIX A FOR SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT CHANGES

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: Appendices A and B. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), in an effort to align with international standards, has adopted ICAO aircraft type designators. This change incorporates the new ICAO aircraft type designators into FAAO 7110.65. The users have until November 5, 1998, to file the new aircraft type designators when operating in domestic airspace.

3. CHANGE:

SEE APPENDICES A AND B FOR SPECIFIC CHANGES

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: These changes have minimal training impact.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: Appendices A, B and C. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: The National Order for Land and Hold Short Operations (LASHO) will incorporate Simultaneous Operations on Intersecting Runways (SOIR). Therefore, SOIR has been deleted in Appendices A, B and C.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
Appendix A. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION and **Appendix B. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION**	**Appendix A. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION** and **Appendix B. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION**
TYPE ENGINE ABBREVIATIONS	No Change
CLIMB AND DESCENT RATES	No Change
SOIR SOIR means "simultaneous operations on intersecting runways;" corresponding group distance criteria can be found in FAAO 7210.3, Chapter 12.	Delete

OLD	NEW
Appendix C. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION	**Appendix C. AIRCRAFT INFORMATION**
In Table – under Performance Information** Column – SOIR Group	Delete

4. OPERATIONAL IMPACT: None.

☆U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1997 -- 432 - 348 - 85309